

Conversational Latin for Oral Proficiency

— FOURTH EDITION —

PHRASE BOOK AND DICTIONARY
CLASSICAL AND NEO-LATIN

— JOHN C. TRaupMAN —

A faint, stylized illustration of a classical Roman or Greek cityscape. In the foreground on the left, a woman with curly hair, wearing a draped garment, stands with her arms crossed. The background features a hillside with several classical buildings, including a temple with a pediment and columns, and a large structure that looks like a library or a public building with many windows. The entire scene is rendered in a light, sketchy style.

**Conversational Latin
for Oral Proficiency**

General editors:
Laurie Haight Keenan
Georgine Cooper

© Copyright 2007
All rights reserved

Bolchazy-Carducci Publishers, Inc.

1000 Brown Street
Wauconda, IL 60084 U.S.A.

<http://www.bolchazy.com>

Printed in Canada

2007

by Friesens

4th edition 2007 (3rd edition 2003; 2nd edition 1999; 1st edition 1997)

Paperback:
ISBN-13: 978-0-86516-622-6
ISBN-10: 0-86516-622-6

Hardbound:
ISBN-13: 978-0-86516-645-5
ISBN-10: 0-86516-645-6

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Traupman, John C.

Conversational latin for oral proficiency : phrase book and dictionary / John C. Traupman. --
4th ed.

p. cm.

Summary: "Presents ancient and neo-Latin language phrases and conversations on a variety of
topics. Includes pronunciation guide, bibliography, and English to Latin vocabulary. Expanded
and

enlarged from the 3rd edition (2003)"--Provided by publisher.

ISBN-13: 978-0-86516-645-5 (hardbound)

ISBN-10: 0-86516-645-5 (hardbound)

ISBN-13: 978-0-86516-622-6 (pbk.)

ISBN-10: 0-86516-622-6 (pbk.)

1. Latin language--Conversation and phrase books. 2. Latin language, Colloquial. I. Title.

PA2107.T74 2006

478.3'421--dc22

2006034010

Other Publications by the Author

The New College Latin & English Dictionary, Second Edition, 1994. Amsco School Publications, Inc., 315 Hudson Street, New York, NY 10013-1085. ISBN 0-87720-561-2. Second Edition, 1995.

Simultaneously published by Bantam Books, Inc., 1540 Broadway, New York, NY 10036. ISBN 0-553-57301-2.

Latin is Fun: Book I: Lively Lessons for Beginners. Amsco, 1989. ISBN 0-87720-550-7. *Teacher's Manual and Key*. Amsco, 1989. ISBN 0-87720-554-X.

Latin is Fun: Book II: Lively Lessons for Beginners. Amsco, 1995. ISBN 0-87720-565-5. *Teacher's Manual with Answers*. Amsco, 1995. ISBN 0-87720-567-1.

The New College German & English Dictionary. Amsco, 1981. ISBN 0-87720-584-1. Bantam, 1981. ISBN 0-533-14155-4.

German Fundamentals: Basic Grammar and Vocabulary. 1992. Barron's Educational Series, Inc., Hauppauge, NY 11788.

Lingua Latina: Book I Latin First Year. Amsco, 1999, ISBN 1-56765-426-6 (Hardbound); ISBN 1-56765-425-8 (Softbound).

Teacher's Manual and Key, 1999, ISBN 1-56765-428-2.

Lingua Latina: Book II: Latin Second Year. Amsco, 2001, ISBN 1-56765-429-0 (Softbound);

Teacher's Manual and Key, Amsco, 2001, ISBN 1-56765-431-2



Contents

Acknowledgements	8
How to Use This Book.....	9
Pronunciation.....	10
Abbreviations	14
Chapter I: Greetings	15
<i>Boy meets girl.</i>	
<i>Mario runs into his friend Julia.</i>	
<i>Tullia introduces her friend to Luke.</i>	
Chapter II: Family	20
<i>The censor asks the father some questions.</i>	
<i>A son learns about his family tree from his</i> <i>father.</i>	
<i>Two friends discuss their family circumstances.</i>	
Chapter III: School.....	25
<i>Checking on homework.</i>	
<i>Getting the lesson straight.</i>	
<i>A teacher conducts her class efficiently.</i>	
<i>The Pledge of Allegiance</i>	
Chapter IV: Daily Activities	35
<i>Mother calls from downstairs to wake her</i> <i>daughters.</i>	
<i>Two sisters bicker as they get ready for the day.</i>	
<i>Mother and daughters do the daily chores.</i>	

Conversational Latin

- Chapter V: Sports and Other Leisure Activities40
- Her teacher asks Dorothy how she spends her free time.*
- His teacher asks Theodore how he spends his free time.*
- Paula and Robert discuss sports.*
- Chapter VI: The Human Body55
- The teacher notices that Linda looks sick. She asks Linda what is wrong with her.*
- A doctor is called in for the sick little girl, Scintilla.*
- A doctor arrives at the scene of a fire to treat one of the victims, a young man.*
- Chapter VII: Health and Physical Fitness60
- A trainer interviews a young athlete.*
- The trainer attends to an injured athlete.*
- A mother checks her daughter's health.*
- Chapter VIII: Food and Drink.....67
- A waitress waits on a senator.*
- A waiter serves dinner.*
- Planning a shopping trip.*
- Chapter IX: Days, Weeks, Months, Years74
- Two friends discuss their birthdays.*
- Two friends discuss their favorite seasons.*
- A father gives his son some family history.*
- Chapter X: Expressions of Time82
- Marie asks her friend how he spends his days.*
- A coach interviews a new athlete.*
- A traveler is about to take a bus trip to Florida.*
- Chapter XI: Useful Colloquial Expressions90
- Brian finds Jeffrey to be in a hurry.*
- Phyllis wants to discuss a problem with Marie.*
- Annette turns to her sister for advice.*

Chapter XII: Clothing and Jewelry113

Priscilla buys clothes.
Peter buys some winter clothes.
Two daughters get dressed for a party.

Chapter XIII: House and Furniture119

Cynthia tries to persuade her friend Gloria to come to her house to play.
A potential buyer wants to purchase a home through a real estate agent.
Sabina tries to impress her friend Silvia with the big home her parents own.

Chapter XIV: Buying and Selling127

Lydia explains to Diane why she bought new clothes.
Sulpicia explains why she is going shopping.
A storekeeper makes a sale.

Chapter XV: The Weather132

A boy and a girl in Rome contrast the weather of Rome with that of Switzerland.
Martha explains to her teacher how the weather kept her from going to school.
The weather of Rome and Switzerland is again debated.

Chapter XVI: Animals138

A visit to the zoo.
A visit to a pet shop.
Young Mark visits old Cato's farm.

Chapter XVII: Emotions and Qualities146

Diane and Debbie discuss the new teacher.
A new girlfriend is the subject of discussion.
Sizing up a political candidate.

Conversational Latin

Chapter XVIII: Trades and Professions160

Donna gets a new hairdo.
Choosing a career.
A man plans to build a home.

Chapter XIX: The City and Public Buildings171

Discussing the merits of city life.
Jennifer wants to go to town.
Asking for directions in the city.

Chapter XX: Government175

A father explains to his son his involvement in politics.
A senator explains how government works.
How the senate conducts business.

Chapter XXI: War and Peace182

Jenna finds that Dennis joined the army.
A grandson asks his grandfather about his military service.
Discussing the merits of alliances.

Chapter XXII: Law and Criminal Justice190

News of an important trial.
The arrest of two hoodlums draws a crowd.
A client gets himself a lawyer.

Chapter XXIII: Geography and Topography198

Colin wants to migrate to the U.S.
Rene wants to learn about the Tiber.
Traveling from Rome to Greece.

Chapter XXIV: Travel.....211

At the New York train station.
At the airport.
Getting ready to go by car.

Contents

7

Chapter XXV: Teaching Grammar in Latin	220
The Parts of Speech.....	220
The Noun.....	220
The Pronoun	223
The Verb.....	225
The Adverb.....	231
The Adjective	232
The Participle	233
The Gerund.....	234
The Gerundive.....	235
The Conjunction.....	235
The Preposition	236
The Interjection	237
The Accent	237
The Parsing of Words	238
Appendix I: Yes and No in Latin.....	250
Appendix II: Colors.....	251
Appendix III: Numbers	253
Appendix IV: Proverbs and Sayings.....	254
Appendix V: Computer Terms.....	260
Appendix VI: Cantūs Latīnī (Latin Songs).....	263
General Vocabulary.....	267
Selected Bibliography	411

Acknowledgements

A debt of gratitude is due to Professor Terence O. Tunberg, of the University of Kentucky, to Professor Jeffrey Wills of the Ukrainian Catholic University, to Professor David W. Morgan of Furman University, SC, and to Professor Christopher Gerald Brown of Ohio State University, for their many suggestions for improvement in both form and substance and for sharing their resources with me. Dr. Domenic M. Roberti, chemistry professor turned desktop publisher, gave much helpful advice; he is responsible for the page design and typesetting of this book. I am also grateful to Thomas Reed, Sterling, VA, and to Mark Miner, Scottsdale, GA, for proofreading the text. The author gratefully acknowledges the kind support of Dr. Ladislaus J. Bolchazy and the staff of Bolchazy-Carducci Publishers, Inc.

How to Use This Book

Unlike your usual textbook, this book allows you to start at any chapter that interests you. Why? Because the chapters are *not* arranged in the order of difficulty. On the other hand, the model conversations in each chapter are arranged in order of difficulty. That is, the grammatical structures of the conversations at Level 1 are simpler than those at Levels 2 and 3. Therefore it is quite possible to go through the entire book using only the conversations at Level 1 and then go through the book again, using Levels 2 and 3.

In the conversations you may run across grammatical forms that you have not covered in class as yet. For instance, you may come across the subjunctive form **eāmus** (let's go). It happened to be called for in that conversation. So what if you haven't learned the entire subjunctive system as yet? You now know what it means, and so you can use it.

You may be used to working your way through a Latin sentence in order to come up with a translation. In this book you are provided with an English translation of all the Latin. (And you'll notice that the translations are not the stiff, literal versions that are sometimes found in textbooks.) So the idea is to practice the model conversations until you have pretty well mastered them. One way to do this is for you to switch roles with your partner and repeat the dialogue again. Then you can proceed to the next stage. This is most easily done by drawing on the topical vocabulary in the chapter to form new Latin conversations of your own choosing on the topic at hand. Because the book is arranged with its facing Latin and English texts, it lends itself to your covering one side, whether the Latin or the English, and then speaking the part in the language that is covered; you could then uncover the concealed text to see how you have done.

The topical vocabulary of each chapter contains not only the words that have occurred in the model conversations but also additional words on that topic that will make it possible for you to have new conversations. The general vocabulary that occurred in the conversations of each chapter is assembled at the end of the book, together with additional useful words. But that general vocabulary will not meet all your needs. You will then have to consult a Latin-English dictionary. Be sure to make full use of the topical vocabulary of the various chapters, no matter what topic you are dealing with. For instance, Chapter XI contains hundreds of everyday expressions that will come in handy in any conversation. Furthermore, whenever you need some expression of time, you will probably find the expression you want in Chapters IX and X. You should use both the topical and general vocabularies to look for the words you need.

To make it easier for you to find what you are looking for, the phrases are arranged alphabetically according to the key word in each phrase. For example, you want to say that someone is "feeding a person a line." In Chapter XI you will find it under the word "line", like this: **line: that fellow is feeding you a line** *iste tibi verba dat*. Sometimes there could be two possible key words in a phrase. If you do not find the phrase under the one key word, check under the other. For instance, in the phrase quoted above, either "feed" or "line" can be considered key words. In this case, the phrase is listed under "line;" it could have been listed under "feed" as well. Such double entries would have made the book too bulky.

In conversational Latin, meaningful and realistic communication is the aim and goal. Accuracy comes with practice.

Pronunciation

VOWELS

CLASSICAL METHOD

ǎ *a* in *ago*: **cómpǎrō**

ā *a* in *father*: **imálgō**

e *e* in *pet*: **próperō**

ē *a* in *late*: **lēnis**

ĩ *i* in *hit*: **quĩd**

ī *ee* in *keen*: **amícus**

ō *o* in *often*: **mōdus**

ō *o* in *hope*: **nōmen**

ũ *u* in *put*: **ũt**

ū *u* in *rude*: **ũtor**

ÿ *ü* in German *Hütte*: **mÿrta**

ÿ *ü* in German *über*: **Tÿdeus**

LATE LATIN METHOD

Generally the same as in the Classical Method. However, in practice the different values of the vowels are frequently not rigidly adhered to.

Note—The length of a long vowel is about one and one half that of a short vowel.

DIPHTHONGS

CLASSICAL METHOD

ae *y* in *by*: **caecus**

au *ow* in *now*: **nauta**

ēi *ey* in *they*: **hēi**

ēu *eu* in *hey you* (without the *h* and *y*):
Orphēus

ōe *oi* in *oil*: **cōepit**

ūi *uey* in *gluey*: **cūi**;
after **q**, *wee* in *week*: **qui**

LATE LATIN METHOD

ae *a* in *late*: **caecus**

au as in Classical Method

ei as in Classical Method

eu as in Classical Method

oe *a* in *late*: **coepit**

ui same as in Classical Method

CONSONANTS

CLASSICAL METHOD

- b** English *b*
- c** always *c* in can: **cīvis, cantō**
- d** English *d*
- f** English *f*
- g** always *g* in go: **gallīna, genus**
- h** English *h*
- i** *y* in yes: **īam, īungō**
- k** English *k*, but unaspirated
- l** English *l*
- m** English *m*, but in verse final **m** before an initial vowel or **h** in the following word was presumably not pronounced
- n** English *n*
- p** English *p*, but unaspirated
- q** English *q*
- r** trilled *r* as in the Romance languages
- s** always *s* in sing: **miser, mors**
- t** English *t*, but unaspirated, as *t* in water
- u** *w* in wine, when unaccented, preceded by **q**, sometimes by **s**, and sometimes by **g**, and followed by a vowel: **qui·a, suā·vis** (but **su·ō·rum**), **dis·tīn·guō** (but **ex·ī·gū·us**)

LATE LATIN METHOD

- b** English *b*
- c** before **e, i, ae**, or **oe** = *ch* in *cherry*: **celsus, cīvis, caelum, coepit**, but before other letters, *c* in can: **cantō, actus**
- d** English *d*
- f** English *f*
- g** before **e** or **i** = *g* in *gentle*: **genus, regīna**, but before other letters except **g** and **n** (see under Consonant Groups) = *g* in *go*: **gallīna, grātus, gula, rogō**
- h** English *h*
- i** as in Classical Method, sometimes written **j**
- k** English *k*
- l** English *l*
- m** English *m*
- n** English *n*
- p** English *p*
- q** English *q*
- r** as in Classical Method
- s** *s* in *sing*: **salūs**, but when standing between two vowels or when final and preceded by a voiced consonant = *z* in *dozen*: **miser, mors**
- t** as in Classical Method
- u** as in Classical Method

CONSONANTS

v *w* in wine: **vīvō**

x *x* in six: **extrā**

z *dz* in adze: **zōna**

v English *v*

x *x* (as **ks**) in six: **pāx**;
but in words beginning with **ex** and
followed by a vowel, **h**, or **s**, = *x* (as
gz) in exhaust: **exaúdí**, **exhálō**,
exsólívō

z as in Classical Method

CONSONANT GROUPS

CLASSICAL METHOD

bs *ps* in apse: **obsídō**, **urbs**

bt *pt* in captain: **obtinére**

cc *kk* in bookkeeper: **ecce**, **occídō**,
occásum, **occlúdō**

ch *ch* in chaotic: **pulcher**

gg *gg* in leg guard: **agger**

gn *ngn* in hangnail: **dignus**

gu see consonant **u**

ph *p-h* in top-heavy: **phōca**

qu see consonant **u**

sc *sc* in scope: **sciō**, **scūtum**

su see consonant **u**

LATE LATIN METHOD

bs *bs* in obsession: **obsídō**,
but in the final position = *bs* (as **bz**)
in observe: **urbs**

bt *bt* in obtain: **obtinére**

cc before **e** or **i** = *tch* in catch: **ecce**,
occídō; but before other letters = *kk*
in bookkeeper; **occásum**, **occlúdō**

ch as in Classical Method

gg before **e** or **i** = *dj* in adjourn: **agger**;
but before other letters = *gg* in leg
guard: **ággregō**

gn *ny* in canyon: **dignus**

gu as in Classical Method

ph *ph* in phoenix: **phōca**

qu as in Classical Method

sc before **e** or **i** = *sh* in shin: **ascéndō**,
sciō; but before other letters = *sc* in
scope: **scandō**, **scūtum**

su as in Classical Method

Note—Double consonants are to be pronounced in such a way that each consonant is heard. For example, in the word **agger** (embankment), each **g** should be heard, in contrast to **ager** (field) with only one **g**.

th *t* in *take*: **theátrum**

ti *ti* in English *patio*: **nátiō**

th as in Classical Method

ti when preceded by **s**, **t**, or **x**, or when followed by a consonant = *ti* in English *patio*: **hóstia**, **admíxtiō**, **fórīter**; but when unaccented, followed by a vowel, and preceded by any letter except **s**, **t**, or **x** = *tzy* in *ritzy*: **nátiō**, **prétium**

Abbreviations

<i>abbr</i>	abbreviation	<i>med</i>	medical
<i>abl</i>	ablative	<i>mf</i>	masculine or feminine noun
<i>acc</i>	accusative	<i>mil</i>	military
<i>adj</i>	adjective	<i>mpl</i>	masculine plural noun
<i>adjs</i>	adjectives	<i>mus</i>	music
<i>adv</i>	adverb	<i>n</i>	neuter noun
<i>adv</i>	adverbs	<i>neut</i>	neuter
<i>anat</i>	anatomy	<i>nom</i>	nominative
<i>biol</i>	biology	<i>npl</i>	neuter plural noun
<i>cf</i>	compare	<i>opp</i>	opposite
<i>coll</i>	colloquial	<i>part</i>	participle
<i>comp</i>	comparative	<i>pass</i>	passive
<i>comput</i>	computer	<i>pej</i>	pejorative
<i>conj</i>	conjunction	<i>perf</i>	perfect
<i>dat</i>	dative	<i>pl</i>	plural
<i>defect</i>	defective	<i>poet</i>	poetry
<i>dim</i>	diminutive	<i>pol</i>	politics
<i>eccl</i>	ecclesiastical	<i>pp</i>	past participle
<i>esp</i>	especially	<i>pref</i>	prefix
<i>f</i>	feminine noun	<i>prep</i>	preposition
<i>fem</i>	feminine	<i>pres</i>	present
<i>fig</i>	figurative	<i>print</i>	printing
<i>fin</i>	finance	<i>pron</i>	pronoun
<i>fpl</i>	feminine plural noun	<i>refl</i>	reflexive
<i>fut</i>	future	<i>rel</i>	relative
<i>gen</i>	genitive	<i>relig</i>	religion
<i>imperf</i>	imperfect	<i>rhet</i>	rhetoric
<i>impers</i>	impersonal verb	<i>s</i>	substantive
<i>indecl</i>	indeclinable	<i>singl</i>	singular
<i>indef</i>	indefinite	<i>s.o.</i>	someone
<i>indic</i>	indicative	<i>spl</i>	substantive plural
<i>inf</i>	infinitive	<i>s.th.</i>	something
<i>interj</i>	interjection	<i>subj</i>	subjunctive
<i>interrog</i>	interrogative	<i>suf</i>	suffix
<i>intr</i>	intransitive	<i>superl</i>	superlative
<i>leg</i>	legal	<i>topog</i>	topography
<i>ling</i>	linguistics	<i>tr</i>	transitive
<i>lit</i>	literal	<i>usu</i>	usually
<i>loc</i>	locative	<i>v</i>	verb
<i>m</i>	masculine noun	<i>vulg</i>	vulgar
<i>masc</i>	masculine	<i>w</i>	with
<i>math</i>	mathematics		
<i>mech</i>	mechanics		

Chapter I: Greetings

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I **Boy meets girl.**

Paulus	Salvē! Quid est nōmen tibi?	<i>Paul: Hello! What is your name?</i>
Glória	Salvē et tū! Mihi nōmen est Glória. Quid est nōmen tibi?	<i>Gloria: Hello yourself! My name is Gloria. What's your name?</i>
Paulus	Nōmen mihi est Paulus. Quid agis?	<i>My name is Paul. How are you doing?</i>
Glória	Váleō, grātiās. Quid agis tū?	<i>I'm fine, thanks. How are you doing?</i>
Paulus	Váleō. Hui, ego tē nōvī! Nōnne in prōximō vicō hábitās?	<i>I'm fine. Hey, I know you. You live in the next block, don't you?</i>
Glória	Étiam, hábitō.	<i>Yes, I do.</i>
Paulus	Quid novī ibi?	<i>What's new there?</i>
Glória	Nihil novī. Valē, Paule.	<i>Nothing new. Goodbye, Paul.</i>
Paulus	Valē, Glória.	<i>Goodbye, Gloria.</i>

LEVEL II **Mario runs into his friend Julia.**

Márius	Salvē, Iúlia! Ut valēs?	<i>Mario: Hello! How are you?</i>
Iúlia	Nōn male. Et tū, Marī?	<i>Julia: Not bad. And you, Mario?</i>
Márius	Égone? Bene mihi est. Ut frāter tuus valet? Salvus est?	<i>I? I'm doing fine. How's your brother doing? How is he?</i>
Iúlia	Sīc valet ut numquam mélius.	<i>He's doing as well as ever.</i>
Márius	Ut valet família tua?	<i>How is your family doing?</i>
Iúlia	Omnēs domī bene sē habent.	<i>All are doing fine.</i>

Márius	Et amícus tuus, quid agit?	<i>And your friend, how is he doing?</i>
Iúlia	Rēctē valet.	<i>He's doing right well.</i>
Márius	Unde venīs?	<i>Where are you coming from?</i>
Iúlia	Dē bibliothēcā.	<i>From the library.</i>
Márius	Quō tē agis?	<i>Where are you going?</i>
Iúlia	Domum.	<i>Home.</i>
Márius	Quīn nunc abeúndum mihi est. Valē.	<i>Well, I must go now. Goodbye.</i>
Iúlia	Bene valē. Cūrā ut váleās.	<i>Goodbye. Take care of yourself.</i>

LEVEL III **Tullia introduces her friend to Luke.**

Lúcius	Salva sīs, Túllia. Quid agis?	Luke: <i>Hello, Tullia. How are you doing?</i>
Túllia	Salvē, Lúci. Quid agis tū?	Tullia: <i>Hello, Luke. How are you doing?</i>
Lúcius	Nōstī mē. Mē semper bellē hábeō. Quis est haec puélla quae tēcum est?	<i>You know me. I'm always fine. Who is this girl that you have with you?</i>
Túllia	Lúci, velim trádere tibi cōnsōbrínam meam, Priscíllam.	<i>Luke, I'd like to introduce you to my cousin Priscilla.</i>
Lúcius	Priscílla, mihi pergrátum est tē conveníre. Habitásne in hāc víciniā? Ego ipse hábitō duōs sōlum vícōs hinc.	<i>Priscilla, I'm glad to meet you. Do you live in this neighborhood? I live only two blocks from here.</i>
Priscílla	Mínimē vērō. Hábitō in oppídulō Árdeā.	<i>No. I live in the little town of Ardea.</i>
Lúcius	Árdea? Estne in Campániā an in Látíō?	<i>Ardea? Is Ardea in Campania or in Latium?</i>
Priscílla	In Látíō, nōn procul ab urbe.	<i>In Latium, not far from the city.</i>
Lúcius	Díc mihi, quótiēs Rōmam venīs?	<i>Tell me, how often do you come to Rome?</i>
Priscílla	Quotiēscúmque cōnsōbrína mea mē invítat.	<i>As often as my cousin invites me.</i>

Túllia	Haec háctenus! Mē paénitet, Lūcī, sed nōbīs nunc eúndum est. Frāter meus nōs in gymnásiō iamdúdum exspéctat.	<i>Enough of this. I'm sorry, Luke, but we have to go now. My brother has been waiting a long time for us in the gym.</i>
Lúcius	Túllia, amábō tē, iubē frātre tuum Túllium salvēre. Priscilla, cūrā ut váleās. Mox, ut spērō, tē íterum vidébō.	<i>Tullia, please say hello to your brother Tullius. Priscilla, take care of yourself. I hope to see you again soon.</i>
Túllia	Valē. Cūrā ut váleās.	<i>Goodbye. Take care of yourself.</i>
Priscilla	Bene valē, Lūcī.	<i>Bye-bye, Luke.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

be fine bene sē habére; vál·eō -ére -uī	meet <i>tr & intr</i> con·vénio -veníre -vénī -véntus
to be very well rēctē valére	name nōm·en -inis <i>n</i>
goodbye valē (<i>pl:</i> valéte); bene valē (<i>pl:</i> bene valéte)	not bad nōn male
hello! salvē (<i>pl:</i> salvéte); salvus (-a) sīs	pleased to meet you! mihi pergrátum est tē conveníre
how are you? (how are you doing?) quid agis? (<i>pl:</i> quid ágitis?); ut valēs? (<i>pl:</i> ut valétis?)	say hello to s.o. iubē (<i>pl:</i> iubéte) áliquem salvére
I am fine bene mihi est	thanks! grátias!
introduce (to) trā·dō -dere -didī -dítus (+ <i>dat</i>)	thanks a lot! grátias máximās!
know <i>defective v</i> nōvī nōvísse (you know nōvístī <i>or</i> nōstī)	thanks a million! sēscéntās grátias!

ADDITIONAL GREETINGS AND RESPONSES

Where are you from?	<i>Unde es?</i>
Where are you coming from?	<i>Unde venīs?</i>
How are you?	<i>Quī valēs?</i>
Fine.	<i>Rēctē.</i>
—	<i>Bellē.</i>
Very well.	<i>Perbélle.</i>
—	<i>Bellíssimē.</i>

I'm fine.	<i>Mē bene hábeō.</i>
I'm doing quite well.	<i>Haud male quidem váleō.</i>
How are you?	<i>Ut tē habēs?</i>
So-so.	<i>Váriē.</i>
Fairly well.	<i>Mediócriter quidem váleō.</i>
Not bad.	<i>Haud male.</i>
Not too well.	<i>Nōn óptimē sánē.</i>
As usual.	<i>Ut sóleō.</i>
Lousy.	<i>Plānē infēlíciter.</i>
Everything O.K.?	<i>Satīn' salvē?</i>
Everything is O.K.	<i>Ómnia sunt pulchrē.</i>
—	<i>Ómnia sunt fēlíciter.</i>
—	<i>Ómnia sunt fēstíviter.</i>
Hello. How've you been?	<i>Salvē. Valuistīne?</i>
Fine! Great!	<i>Probē! Euge!</i>
Well, I'm still alive.	<i>Em, vīvō.</i>
Hello.	<i>Salvē.</i>
Same to you.	<i>Salvē et tū.</i>
Hello. Pleasure to meet you.	<i>Salvē. Tē convēnisse volup est.</i>
Hello. The pleasure is mine.	<i>Salvē. Mihi quidem volup est.</i>
How are things with you? Everything all right?	<i>Quō pactō rēs sē tibi habent? Rēctēne sunt ómnia?</i>
In fair shape.	<i>In mediocrī statū.</i>
In great shape.	<i>In óptimō statū.</i>
Glad to hear that.	<i>Laetus (-a) istud aúdiō.</i>
Glad to hear that.	<i>Haud invítus (-a) aúdiō.</i>
I'm delighted to hear that.	<i>Est mihi istud audítū perquam iúcúndum.</i>
I'm glad for you.	<i>Gáudeō tuā causā.</i>
I'm sincerely glad to hear that.	<i>Audíre istud ex ánimō gáudeō.</i>
Thank heavens.	<i>Laus súperis.</i>

Goodbye for now.

Nunc valē.

God bless you.

Dī tē ament.

Take care (of yourself).

Tē cūrā.

Take it easy.

Ōtīōsus (-a) estō.

Goodbye and good luck.

Vāleās béneque tibi sit.

SUGGESTED CLASSROOM ACTIVITY _____

First, let pairs of students repeat the conversation of each level. After you have greeted several individual students with a question or two, pair off the students and have them ask each other similar questions. Questions and answers

can easily be gleaned from the dialogues, Topical Vocabulary, and Additional Greetings and Responses.

It is important to repeat this activity from time to time so that the questions and answers become spontaneous.

Chapter II: Family

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I

The censor asks the father some questions.

Cēnsor	Quid est nōmen tibi?	<i>Censor: What is your name?</i>
Aulus	Nōmen mihi est Aulus Gabīnius Macer.	<i>Aulus: My name is Aulus Gabinius Macer.</i>
Cēnsor	Esne tū marītus an caelebs?	<i>Are you married or single?</i>
Aulus	Marītus sum. Hābeō uxórem.	<i>I am married. I have a wife.</i>
Cēnsor	Esne tū paterfamíliās?	<i>Are you the head of a family?</i>
Aulus	Ita.	<i>Yes.</i>
Cēnsor	Quid est nōmen uxóri?	<i>What's your wife's name?</i>
Aulus	Nōmen uxóri est Sulpícia.	<i>Her name is Sulpicia.</i>
Cēnsor	Habésne líberōs?	<i>Do you have (any) children?</i>
Aulus	Hābeō.	<i>I do.</i>
Cēnsor	Quot líberōs habēs?	<i>How many children do you have?</i>
Aulus	Duōs fíliōs et ūnam fíliam.	<i>I have two sons and one daughter.</i>
Cēnsor	Habésne frātrēs sorórēsve?	<i>Do you have (any) brothers or sisters?</i>
Aulus	Ūnum frātre[m] et ūnam sorórem hábeō.	<i>I have one brother and one sister.</i>
Cēnsor	Habésne áliōs cognátōs?	<i>Do you have other relatives?</i>
Aulus	Duōs pátruōs et trēs ámitās.	<i>Two uncles and three aunts.</i>
Cēnsor	Vívuntne adhūc paréntēs tuī?	<i>Are your parents still alive?</i>
Aulus	Sānē.	<i>Yes.</i>
Cēnsor	Quis domī tuae hábitat?	<i>Who lives at your home?</i>
Aulus	Uxor et líberī et eórum avus avíaque.	<i>My wife, my children, and their grandfather and grandmother.</i>

Cēnsor	Meā sententiā, habēs familiam admirābilem.	<i>In my opinion, you have a wonderful family.</i>
Aulus	Sic ego quoque putō.	<i>I think so too.</i>

LEVEL II **A son learns about his family tree from his father.**

Fīlius	Pater, velim cognōscere plūra dē familiā nostrā.	<i>Son: Father, I'd like to know more about our family.</i>
Pater	Bene, mī fili. Quid velīs cognōscere dē stirpe nostrā?	<i>Father: Fine, my boy. What would you like to know about our family tree?</i>
Fīlius	Quandō tū Māmmam in mātirimōnium dūxistī?	<i>When did you marry Mom?</i>
Pater	Abhinc vīgintī annōs.	<i>Twenty years ago.</i>
Fīlius	Quot annōs nātus es tū?	<i>How old are you?</i>
Pater	Quadrāgintā annōs nātus sum.	<i>I am forty years old.</i>
Fīlius	Quot annōs nāta est Mamma?	<i>How old is Mom?</i>
Pater	Duodēquadrāgintā annōs nāta est.	<i>She is thirty-eight years old.</i>
Fīlius	Quot sorōrēs habēs?	<i>How many sisters do you have?</i>
Pater	Trēs hābeō.	<i>I have three.</i>
Fīlius	Quae est mākima nātū?	<i>Which one is the oldest?</i>
Pater	Paulīna est mākima nātū.	<i>Pauline is the oldest.</i>
Fīlius	Quot frātēs habēs?	<i>How many brothers do you have?</i>
Pater	Duōs hābeō, Stéphanum et Michaēlem, pátruōs tuōs.	<i>I have two, your uncles Stephen and Michael.</i>
Fīlius	Quis est māior nātū, tū an Stéphanus pátruus?	<i>Who is older, you or uncle Stephen?</i>
Pater	Ego sum duōbus annīs māior nātū quam Stéphanus pátruus sed duōbus annīs minor quam Michaēlis pátruus.	<i>I am two years older than uncle Stephen, but two years younger than uncle Michael.</i>
Fīlius	Habitāvēruntne avus et ávia semper in hāc urbe?	<i>Did grandfather and grandmother always live in this city?</i>
Pater	Ita. Étiam eōrum átavī.	<i>Yes, and also their forefathers.</i>

Filius	Dīc mihi, amābō tē, patērne tuus et avus tuus in rē públicā versātī sunt?	<i>Tell me please, were your father and grandfather involved in politics?</i>
Pater	Immō próavus tuus ōlim erat praefectus urbī.	<i>Well, your great-grandfather was once mayor of the city.</i>
Filius	Quid dē avō meō?	<i>What about my grandfather?</i>
Pater	Avus tuus vērō erat multōs annōs sócīus cōnsiliī. Tūne vīs versārī aliquándō in rē públicā?	<i>In fact, your grandfather was a cabinet member for many years. Do you wish someday to be involved in politics?</i>
Filius	Mínimē vērō hercle! Spērō mē aliquándō futúrum esse āthlétam praeclárum!	<i>Heck no! I hope to be a famous athlete someday.</i>

LEVEL III **Two friends discuss their family circumstances.**

Mārcélla	Anna, fortūnāta es. Habēs paréntēs bonōs, marítum amántem, socrum benígnam. Tibi quidem invídeō.	Marcella: <i>Anna, you are fortunate. You have good parents, a loving husband, and a kind mother-in-law. I really envy you.</i>
Anna	Ita. Ego hábeō étiam admirábilem marítum soróris et uxórem frātris. Sed cūr tū mihi ínvídeš?	Anna: <i>Yes. I also have a wonderful brother-in-law and sister-in-law. But why do you envy me?</i>
Mārcélla	Abhinc duōs annōs mātrem meam āmísī, et nunc novércam hábeō.	<i>I lost my mother two years ago, and now I have a stepmother.</i>
Anna	Mē paénitet haec cognóscere. Estne novérca crūdélis?	<i>I'm sorry to hear that. Is your stepmother cruel?</i>
Mārcélla	Novérca quidem neque crūdélis neque amábilis est, sed locum mātris meae numquam ūsurpáre potest.	<i>Well, my stepmother is neither cruel nor lovable. But she can never take the place of my mother.</i>
Anna	Suntne frāter et soror tua aequē ínfēlícēs?	<i>Are your brother and sister equally unhappy?</i>
Mārcélla	Vídentur ínfēlícēs, sed pauca dē hīs rēbus dīcunt.	<i>They seem unhappy, but they say little about these matters.</i>
Anna	Temptásne ánimōs eórum érígere?	<i>Do you try to cheer them up?</i>

Mārcélla	Ánimōs eōrum ērigere temptō, sed nihil prōdest.	<i>I try to cheer them up, but it does no good.</i>
Anna	Miseram Mārcéllam! Quid dicit pater tuus?	<i>Poor Marcella! What does your father say?</i>
Mārcélla	Est ádmodum sollícitus. Dicit: “Patientiā, patientiā. Tempus omnia sánat.”	<i>He is quite concerned. He says: “Patience, patience. Time heals everything.”</i>

SUGGESTED CLASSROOM ACTIVITY

Ask a few students:

Quot annōs nātus (or nāta) es tū?	<i>How old are you?</i>
Quot annōs nātus est pater?	<i>How old is your father?</i>
Quot annōs nāta est māter?	<i>How old is your mother?</i>
Quot frātrēs habēs?	<i>How many brothers do you have?</i>
Quot sorōrēs habēs?	<i>How many sisters do you have?</i>
Quīs frāter est máximus nātū?	<i>Which brother is the oldest?</i>
Quīs frāter est mínimus nātū?	<i>Which brother is the youngest?</i>
Quae soror est máxima nātū?	<i>Which sister is the oldest?</i>
Quae soror est mínima nātū?	<i>Which sister is the youngest?</i>
Quid nōmen est frātrī?	<i>What is your brother's name?</i>
Quid nōmen est soróri?	<i>What is your sister's name?</i>

Then pair off the students and have them ask each other these questions. From the dialogues of the chapter, many other such simple questions can be generated. Or have the students bring family photographs into the classroom and explain who the members of the family (or extended family) are, e.g.:

Hic est pater meus.
Haec est māter mea.
Hic est avus meus.
Haec est avia mea.
Hic est frāter meus.
Haec est soror mea.

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

adoptive daughter *fīli·a -ae f adoptīva***adoptive son** *fīli·us -ī m adoptīvus***aunt (mother's side)** *mātēter·a -ae f***aunt (father's side)** *āmit·a -ae f***baby** *īnf·āns -āntis mf***brother** *frā·ter -tris m***brother-in-law** *lē·vir -virī m***children** *līber·ī -ōrum mpl***cousin (sister's daughter)** *cōnsōbrīn·a -ae f***cousin (brother's child)** *patruēl·is -is mf***cousin (sister's son)** *cōnsōbrīn·us -ī m***dad, daddy** *tat·a -ae m***daughter** *fīli·a -ae f***daughter-in-law** *nur·us -ūs f***family** *famīli·a -ae f***family tree** *stirp·s -is f***father** *pa·ter -tris m***father-in-law** *soc·er -erī m***father of the family** *paterfamīliās (gen: patrisfamīliās) m***forefathers** *átav·ī -ōrum mpl***granddaughter** *nept·is -is f***granddad** *tat·a -ae m***grandfather** *av·us -ī m***grandma** *mamm·a -ae f***grandmother** *ávi·a -ae f***grandson** *nep·ōs -ōtis m***great-aunt (on father's side)** *ámit·a -ae f magna; (on the mother's side) mātēter·a -ae f magna***great-grandfather** *próav·us -ī m***great-grandmother** *proávi·a -ae f***great-uncle (on the father's side)** *pátru·us -ī m magna; (on the mother's side) avúncul·us -ī m***husband** *marīt·us -ī m***in-law** *affīn·is -is mf***little brother** *frātercul·us -ī m***little sister** *sorórcul·a -ae f***Mom** *Mamm·a -ae f***mother** *mā·ter -tris f***mother-in-law** *socr·us -ūs f***nephew** *fīli·us -ī m soróris; fīli·us -ī m frātris***niece** *fīli·a -ae f soróris; fīli·a -ae f frātris***parent** *párēns -éntis mf***relative** *cognát·us -ī m, cognát·a -ae f***sister-in-law (sister of husband)** *glōs glōris f***sister-in-law (wife of brother)** *ux·or -óris f frātris***son** *fīli·us -ī m***son-in-law** *gener, génerī m***spouse** *con·iūnx -iugis mf***stepdaughter** *prīvīgn·a -ae f***stepfather** *vītric·us -ī m***stepmother** *novérc·a -ae f***stepson** *prīvīgn·us -ī m***uncle (mother's brother)** *avúncul·us -ī m***uncle (father's brother)** *pátru·us -ī m***wife** *ux·or -óris f***young daughter** *fīliol·a -ae f***young son** *fīliol·us -ī m*

Chapter III: School

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I

Checking on homework.

Magístra	Siléntium, quaesō! Andréa!	<i>Teacher: Silence, please! Andrea!</i>
Andréa	Adsum.	<i>Andrea: Present.</i>
Magístra	Cōnfēcistīne tuum praescriptum domesticum?	<i>Did you finish your homework?</i>
Andréa	Cōnfēcī.	<i>I have.</i>
Magístra	Quid fēcistī?	<i>What did you do?</i>
Andréa	Vocábula Latína edidicī.	<i>I memorized the Latin vocabulary.</i>
Magístra	Quid ámplius?	<i>What else?</i>
Andréa	Scrīptúram compósuī.	<i>I wrote a composition.</i>
Magístra	Dē quō?	<i>About what?</i>
Andréa	Dē monuméntis in forō.	<i>About the monuments in the forum.</i>
Magístra	Quae monuménta dēscrīpsistī?	<i>Which monuments did you describe?</i>
Andréa	Basílicās et cúriam et vária templa et cētera.	<i>The courthouses and the senate building and the various temples, and so forth.</i>
Magístra	Trāde mihi.	<i>Hand it in.</i>
Andréa	Ecce.	<i>Here it is.</i>
Magístra	Christína!	<i>Christine!</i>
Christína	Adsum.	<i>Present.</i>
Magístra	Dē quō in compositiōne scrīpsistī?	<i>What did you write about in your composition?</i>
Christína	Dē státū mulierum.	<i>About the status of women.</i>

Magistra	Bene. Trāde mihi.	<i>Fine. Hand it in.</i>
Christína	Ecce.	<i>Here it is.</i>

LEVEL II **Getting the lesson straight.**

Cárolus	Magíster, quid dicās ego nōn intéllegō.	<i>Carl: Teacher, I don't understand what you are saying</i>
Magíster	Cómparō rem públicam Rōmánam cum rē públicā nostrā.	<i>Teacher: I am comparing the Roman government with our government.</i>
Cárolus	At ego sciō nihil ferē dē rē públicā Rōmánā.	<i>But I know practically nothing about the Roman government.</i>
Magíster	Lēgístíne caput quārtum tuae <i>História Rōmánā?</i>	<i>Have you read the fourth chapter of your Roman History?</i>
Cárolus	Adhūc ego lēgī solum ūsque ad caput tērtium.	<i>So far I have read only up to chapter three.</i>
Magíster	At ego caput quārtum assignāvī in diem hodiérnum.	<i>But I assigned chapter four for today.</i>
Cárolus	Éxplicā, quaesō, quid in cápite quārtō sit.	<i>Please explain what is in the fourth chapter.</i>
Magíster	Em, áperī librum tuum ad páginam sexāgésimam séptimam.	<i>Well, open your book to page sixty-seven.</i>
Cárolus	Apéruī eum.	<i>I've opened it.</i>
Magíster	Quid est scríptum in summā páginā?	<i>What is written at the top of the page?</i>
Cárolus	“Dē Rē Públicā Rōmánā.”	<i>“The Roman Government.”</i>
Magíster	Lege ídeō illud caput in diem crástinum. Disputābimus dē illā rē crās.	<i>Then read that chapter for tomorrow. We'll discuss that topic tomorrow.</i>
Cárolus	Certē illud legam.	<i>Sure, I'll read it.</i>
Magíster	Nisi illud légeris, cadēs prō certō in próximā probatióne.	<i>If you don't read it, you'll flunk the next test for sure.</i>

LEVEL III A teacher conducts her class efficiently.		
Magistra	In manūs cāpīte libéllōs vestrōs. Corrigémus exercítium quod modo cōnfēcístis.	Teacher: <i>Get out your notebooks. We're going to correct the exercise that you just completed.</i>
Iásōn	Ignósce mihi, magístra; nōn hábeō cálamum.	Jason: <i>Excuse me, teacher; I don't have a pen.</i>
Magistra	Ubi est cálamus tuus, Iásōn?	<i>Where is your pen, Jason?</i>
Iásōn	Domī relíquī, ut vidétur. Quid fáciam?	<i>I left it at home, it seems. What should I do?</i>
Magistra	Fortásse potes mūtuári cálamum ā próximō tuō.	<i>Perhaps you can borrow a pen from your neighbor.</i>
Iásōn	Estne haec probátiō?	<i>Is this a test?</i>
Magistra	Nōlī sollicitári. Ut prius dīxī, corrigémus tantúmmodo exercítia vestra.	<i>Don't worry. As I said earlier, we're only going to correct your exercises.</i>
Iásōn	Īnsunt multa menda meō exercítio.	<i>There are lots of mistakes in my exercise.</i>
Magistra	Per ignōrātiōnem an incúriam?	<i>Through lack of knowledge or through carelessness?</i>
Iásōn	Per utrámque, ut vidétur.	<i>Through both, it seems.</i>
Magistra	Récitā clārē exercítium tuum et ego menda indicábō.	<i>Read your exercise aloud and I will point out the mistakes.</i>
Iásōn	Legámne statim cunctum exercítium an per síngulās senténtiās?	<i>Should I read the whole exercise at one time or sentence by sentence?</i>
Magistra	Per síngulās senténtiās. Eō modō ego quodque mendum indicábō corrigámque et tū póteris annotáre figúram corréctam.	<i>Sentence by sentence. In that way I can point out and correct each mistake, and you can jot down the correct form.</i>

THE PLEDGE OF ALLEGIANCE

Fidem meam óbligō vexíllō Cívitatū Foederátárum Américae
et Reī Públīcae, cūius vicem gerit, ūnī nātiōnī, sub Deō,
indívīduae, praebéntū libertátem iūstítiamque ómnibus.

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

NOTA BENE! For additional words dealing with grammar, see the topical vocabulary of Chapter XXV.

abbreviate imminu·ō -ere -uī
imminūtus

abbreviation not·a -ae *f* compendiária

ability facúlt·ās -ātis *f*; **ability to read and write** legéndi scribendíque facúltās; **natural ability** ingéni·um -ī *n*

absent abs·ēns -éntis; **to be absent** absum abesse áfuī áfutúrus

absentee ábsēns, abséntis *mf*

academy académi·a -ae *f*

add adíc·iō -ere adiécī adiectus

aloud clārē

answer *s* respóns·um -ī *n*; **to give an answer to s.o.** álicui respónsum red·dō -dere -didī -ditus

answer *tr* (in both speaking and writing: with *dat* of person and *ad* + *acc* of the thing) respón·deō -dēre -dī -sum; **to answer a question** ad interrogátum respondére; **answer in complete sentences** tótis senténtiis respondére

ask rogáre; (for information) quaerō quaerere quaesívi quaesítus; **to ask about (someone, something)** de (áliquō) rogáre; **to ask a few questions** pauca quaerere; **to ask s.o. s.th.** áliquem áliquid rogáre; **to ask s.o. for s.th.** ab áliquō áliquid rogáre; **to ask the teacher (student) a question** docéntem (discéntem) interrogáre; **to ask this question** hoc quaerere

assign assignáre

assignment pēns·um -ī *n*; (written) praescrípt·um -ī *n*

assistant principal *see* principal

audiovisual aid audivísíficum
subsídi·um -ā -um

ballpoint pen stíl·us -ī *m* sphaerátus

basics elemént·a -órum *npl*

bathroom (toilet) latrín·a -ae *f*; **may I go to the bathroom?** licetne mihi in latrínam ire? **yes, OK** licet

blackboard tábul·a -ae *f* átra

book li·ber -brī *m*

book bag cápsul·a -ae *f* scholáris

bright (smart) lūculént·us -a -um

buzzer bombilátr·um -ī *n*; **when the buzzer sounds (or goes)** cum bombilátrum strepit

cafeteria refectóri·um -ī *n*

calculator mächínul·a -ae *f* calculátória

call roll nómina citáre

capital letter lítter·a -ae *f* máiúscula

carbon copy exémpl·um -ī *n*
trānscúsum, antígraph·um -ī *n*

chalk crēt·a -ae *f*

chapter cap·ut -itis *n*

chemistry chémic·ē -ēs *f*

class classis -is *f*; **to be at the head of the class** classem dūc·ō -ere dūxī

classroom concláv·e -is *n* scholáre

college collégi·um -ī *n*

composition scríptúr·a -ae *f*,
composít·ō -ónis *f*

copy *s* exémpl·um -ī *n*

copy *tr* exscríb·ō -ere exscrípsi (from *ex* + *abl*) (by cheating clandestínō)

correct *adj* rēct·us -a -um (*opp*:
prāvus), ēmendát·us -a -um (*free*
from faults), corrēct·us -a -um (*in the*
sense of “corrected”)

- correct** *tr* (*esp. mistakes in writing*)
ēmendāre; (*a person or mistake*)
cōrrig-ō -ere corrēxī corrēctus
- correction** corrēcti-ō -ōnis *f*, ēmendāti-ō
-ōnis *f*
- correctly** rēctē (*opp: prāvē*), ēmendatē;
to speak (spell) correctly rēctē loquī
(scrībere)
- corridor** ambulācr-um -ī *n*, andr-ōn
-ōnis *m*
- day off** (*from school*) (ab scholā)
fēriātus di-ēs -ēī *m*; **have a day off**
fēriātum diem habēre
- deal with** (*topic, person*) tractāre
- dean** decān-us -ī *m*; decān-a -ae *f*
- desk** mēns-a -ae *f* scrīptōria
- dictionary** dictiōnār-ium -ī *n*, lēxic-on
-ī *n*
- discuss** disputāre dē (+ *abl*)
- discussion** disputāti-ō -ōnis *f*
- door** iānu-a -ae *f*
- drive, enthusiasm** stūdi-um -ī *n*, vīs
(*acc: vim*) *f*
- educate** īnstīt-uō -ūere -uī -ūtus
- education** īnstītūti-ō -ōnis *f* (*Note that*
ēducātiō *refers to “raising, bringing*
up” and can apply to the raising of
children as well as livestock, the
training of the body, etc.)
- elementary school** litterārius lūd-us -ī
m
- erase** ērād-ō -ere ērāsī ērāsus
- eraser** (*for a blackboard*) dētērsōri-um
-ī *n*; (*on a pencil*) gumm-is -is *f*
- erasure** litūr-a -ae *f*
- error** (*in writing*) mend-um -ī *n*,
mend-a -ae *f*, vīti-um -ī *n*; **to**
commit (make) an error mendum
admīt-ō -ere admīsī admīssus
- essay** libéll-us -ī *m*
- examination** exāmināti-ō -ōnis *f*
- examine** exāmināre
- exercise** (*written*) exercíti-um -ī *n*;
(*practice*) exercitāti-ō -ōnis *f*
- explain** explānāre, explicāre
- explanation** explānāti-ō -ōnis *f*,
explicāti-ō -ōnis *f*
- express** exprīm-ō -ere exprēssī
exprēssus
- faculty** magistēri-um -ī *n*
- flunk: to flunk a test** cad-ō -ere cēcidī
cāsūrus in probātiōne
- form** (*grammatical*) figūr-a -ae *f*
- freshman** tūr-ō -ōnis *m* *f*
- front of the room** prior par-s -tis *f*
scholae
- get** (*to understand*) tēn-eō -ēre -uī
tentus; **I get it** tēneō; **now I get it**
iam tēneō
- globe** glob-us -ī *m* terrārum
- grade** *s* grad-us -ūs *m*; (*for*
performance) not-a -ae *f*
- grade** *tr* (*papers*) notāre; (*to evaluate*)
aestimāre
- graduate** gradūs suscíp-iō -ere suscēpī
- guidance counselor** cōnsiliā-tor -tōris *m*
scholāsticus; cōnsiliā-trīx -īcis *f*
scholāstica
- hallway** ambulācr-um -ī *n*, andr-ōn
-ōnis *m*
- hand in** *tr* trā-dō -dere -didī -ditus
- handwriting** chīrōgraph-um -ī *n*
- heading** cap-ut -itis *n*, ind-ex -icis *m*
cāpītis
- high school** schol-a -ae *f* supērior
- history** histōri-a -ae *f*
- home room** conclāve -is *n* scholāre
prōprium
- homework** pēns-um -ī *n* domésticum;
(*written*) praescrīpt-um -ī *n*
domésticum

hooky: to play hooky ínscīis paréntibus
ā scholā abesse

illiterate analphabēt·us -a -um

improve (to get better in study)
prōfic·iō -ere prōfēcī prōfēctum

improvement prōfēct·us -ūs *m*

ink ātrāmēt·um -ī *n*

instruct s.o. in s.th. ínstru·ō -ere
ínstruxī ínstrúctus áliquem áliquō

instruction (teaching) ínstitúti·ō -ónis *f*;
instructions praecépt·a -órum *npl*

instructor praecépt·or -óris *m* (·rīx
-rícis *f*), doc·ēns -éntis *mf*

jot down annotáre

junior iúni·or -óris *mf*

key clāv·is -is *m*

know sciō scīre scīvī scītus; **know how**
to scīre (+ *inf*); **not know** nesc·iō
-īre -ívī or -ī

Latin (to know, read, teach, speak,
understand, write) Latínē; **Are you**
learning Latin? Discísne Latínē?;
Did you forget Latin? Esne oblítus
(-a) Lātínē?; **Do you know Latin?**
Nōstíne Latínē?; **Do you know how**
to speak Latin? Scísne Latínē
loquī?; **Do you read Latin easily?**
Legísne Latínē fáclle?; **Do you**
speak Latin (fluently)? Loquerísne
Latínē (prōfluēnter)?; **Do you teach**
Latin? Docésne Latínē?; **Do you**
understand Latin? Intellegísne
Latínē?; **Since when have you been**
learning Latin? Ex quō témpore
Latínē didicístī?; **Where did you**
study Latin? Ubi Latínē studuístī?;
Who is able to write Latin? Quis
Latínē scríbere potest?

Latin teacher Latínitátis magís·ter -trī
m (·tra -trae *f*)

learn disc·ō -ere dídici; **to learn by**
heart edíscere

learner disc·ēns -éntis *mf*

lectern lēctóri·um -ī *n*

line vers·us -ūs *m* (of prose or poetry)

map tábul·a -ae *f* geográphica

manuscript manuscrípt·um -ī *n*

mean signífic·ō -áre

meaning significáti·ō -ónis *f*; **basic**
(figurative, literal) meaning
princeps (trāslátíva, própria)
significátiō

memorize edísc·ō -ere edídici

meter númer·us -ī *m*

mistake mend·um -ī *n*, víti·um -ī *n*

note not·a -ae *f*; **to take notes**
commentáriōs cōnfíc·iō -ere cōnfēcī
cōnfēctus

note pad pugillár·ēs -um *mpl*

notebook libéll·us -ī *m*

page págin·a -ae *f*; **at the bottom (top)**
of the page in ímā (summā) páginā

paper chart·a -ae *f*

paper clip fibícul·a -ae *f* chartárum

paragraph parágraph·us -ī *f*, cap·ut -itis
n

pass: to pass a test probátiónem
sustín·eō -ére -uī

passage (in a text) loc·us -ī (*pl*: locī) *m*

pen penn·a -ae *f*, cálam·us -ī *m*
scríptórius

pencil gráphi·um -ī *n*

period: (class period) spáti·um -ī *n*; **in**
the third period tértiō spátio

podium pódí·um -ī *n*, púlpit·um -ī *n*

poem poém·a -atis *n*

point out indicáre

poster fóli·um -ī *n* mūrále

practice *s* exercitáti·ō -ónis *f*; **extensive**
and continous practice multa et
contínua exercitátiō

practice *tr* exérc·eō -ére -uī -itus

prepare paráre; (*in advance*) praeparáre

present: to be present adsum adesse
ádfuí adfutúrus

principal (lūdī *or* scholae) rēc·tor -tōris
m, rēc·trīx -trícis *f*); **assistant** (*or*
vice principal rēctor vicárius,
rēctrix vicária; **principal's office**
rēctōris (rēctricis) officín·a -ae *f*

progress prōféc·us -ūs *m*; **to make**
progress prōfic·iō -ere prōfēcī
prōfécum

promote ad superiōrem classem
prómóv·eō -ére prómóvī prómótus

pronounce prōnūntiáre

prose prōs·a -ae *f*

pupil discípul·us -ī *m*, discípul·a -ae *f*

question rogát·um -ī *n*; interrogát·um -ī
n; quaesti·ō -ōnis *f*; **to raise a**
question quaestiōnem pōn·ō -ere
pósui

question mark sign·um -ī *n*
interrogātiōnis

quiz quaestiúncul·a -ae *f*

read leg·ō légere lēgī lēctus

reading paus·a -ae *f*; léc·ti·ō -ōnis *f*

recess paus·a -ae *f*; **during (after,**
before) recess inter (post, ante)
pausam

recitation recitáti·ō -ōnis *f*

recite recitáre

repeat répet·ō -ere -ívi -ítus

repetition repetíti·ō -ōnis *f*

research *s* investígáti·ō -ōnis *f*

research *tr* investigáre

restroom loc·us -ī *m* sēcrētus; (**public**)
fóric·a -ae *f*; **may I go to the**
restroom licetne mihi in locum
sēcrētum infre? **Yes, OK** licet

review *s* retractáti·ō -ōnis *f*

review *tr* retractáre

roll call nómīnum recitáti·ō -ōnis *f*; **to**
take roll call nómīna recitáre

rule *s* (*for measuring*) régul·a -ae *f*

scan (poetry) *tr* scand·ō -ere -ī scānsus

school building aed·ēs -is *f* scholáris

school lūd·us -ī *m*; (*advanced*) schol·a
-ae *f*; **to attend school** scholam
frequentáre; **to go to school** scholam
óbeō obíre obiī *or* obívī; **to skip**
school ínciūs paréntibus ā scholā
absum abesse

school supplies ínstrúmēt·um -ī *n*
scholáre

scribble exaráre, cōnscrībilláre

seat subsélli·um -ī *n* (scholáre)

senior séni·or -ōris *mf*

sheet schid·a -ae *f*

silence siléti·um -ī *n*

slide imág·ō -inis *f* phōtográphica
trānlúcida; **to show slides** imáginēs
phōtográphicās exhíb·eō -ére -uí
-itus

slow to learn sēgn·is -is -e

small letter lítter·a -ae *f* minúscula

sophomore sophomór·us -ī *m*,
sophomór·a -ae *f*

spell scrīb·ō -ere scrípsi scríptus

spelling orthográphi·a -ae *f*

staple *s* uncínul·us -ī *m* (metállicus)

staple *tr* cōnsu·ō -ere -ī -útus

stapler uncínátōri·um -ī *n*, cōnsútōri·um
-ī *n* (chartárum)

student stud·ēns -éntis *mf*, discípul·us -ī
m, discípul·a -ae *f*

studies stúdi·a -órum *npl*; (stúdiūm *in*
the singular means “drive,
enthusiasm”)

study period spáti·um -ī *n* studiósūm

stumble over new words nova verba
offénd·ō -ere -ī

subject disciplīn·a -ae *f*; (*topic*)
argūmēt·um -ī *n*

subject matter mātēri·a -ae *f*

subtract dētrah·ō -ere dētrāxī dētrāctus

table of contents in·dex -dicis *m*
cāpitum

take down (*notes, lecture*) excíp·iō -ere
excēpī excēptus

talent ingēni·um -ī *n*

talented ingenió·us -a -um

teach (*w. double acc*) dōc·eō -ēre -uī
-tus

teacher magís·ter -trī *m*, magístr·a -ae *f*;
(*in elementary school*) litterát·or
-ōris *m*, litterātr·īx -īcis *f*

teaching assistant magíst·rae (*or*
magíst·rī) adiūt·or -ōris *m* (adiūtr·īx
-īcis *f*)

teaching method docēndī rāti·ō -ōnis *f*

test probāti·ō -ōnis *f*

textbook lib·er -rī *m* scholáris, ars, artis
f

theme (*topic*) mātēri·a -ae *f*,
argūmēt·um -ī *n*; (*essay*) tractāt·us
-ūs *m*

toilet lātrín·a -ae *f*; **may I go to the
toilet** licēte mihi in lātrínam ire?
Yes, OK licet

topic mātēri·a -ae *f*, rēs, reī *f*

translate (con)vért·ō -ere -ī
(con)vērsus; ; trāns·ferō -fēre -tulī
-lātus; **to translate from Latin to**

English ex Latínō in Ánglicum
(con)vértere

translation trānslāt·a -ōrum *npl*; (*act of
translating*) convērsi·ō -ōnis *f*,
trānslāti·ō -ōnis *f*; (*of a sentence*)
senténtia trānslāta; (*of a book*) liber
trānslātus

transparency págin·a -ae *f* pellúcida

tutor domésticus (-a) praecēpt·or -ōris
m (-rīx -rīcis *f*)

type mächínulā scríptōriā scrīb·ō -ere
scrīpsī scríptus, dactylographāre

typewriter mächínul·a -ae *f* scríptōria,
dactylógraph·um -ī *n*

typewriter key plēctr·um -ī *n*
(dactylogrāphicum) malléol·us -i *m*

typewriter ribbon taeni·a -ae *f*
dactylogrāphica

understand intēleg·ō -ere intellēxī
intellēctus

vacation: be on vacation fēriāt·us -a
-um esse

verse vers·us -ūs *m*

vice principal *see principal*

vocabulary vocābul·a -ōrum *npl*

white board tábul·a -ae *f* alba

window fenēstr·a -ae *f*

workbook libéll·us -ī *m* exercitiórum

write scrīb·ō -ere scrīpsī scríptus

writing scríptúr·a -ae *f*; **writings**
scrípt·a -ōrum *npl*

COMMANDS FOR THE CLASSROOM

N.B. For all commands dealing with Latin grammar see Chapter 25.

answer me respōndē mihi; **answer my question** respōndē (respondēte) ad meum interrogātum

be on time, please venī (venīte) tēperī (or ad tempus), quaesō

be quiet (silent) tacē (tacēte); silēntium tenē (tenēte)

close the door claude (claūdite) iānuam

collect the papers collige (pl collígite) chartās

come here venī (pl: venīte) hūc

come in intrā (pl: intrāte)

come on, try to remember ágedum, temptā (temptāte) meminisse

continue (reading, writing, speaking, translating) perge (pérgite) (légere, scríbere, dícere, vétere)

cut it out dēsine (dēsínite); dēsiste (dēsístite)

cut out the chatter, please omítte (omíttite) garrulitātem, quaesō

cut out the noise, please omítte (omíttite) strépitum, quaesō

cut out the nonsense omítte (omíttite) nūgās

don't cheat nōlī (nōlíte) exscríbere ex próximō

don't forget to do your homework nōlíte oblívíscī perfícere pēnsum vestrum

don't interrupt, please nōlī (nōlíte) interpellāre, quaesō

don't laugh at him (her) nōlī (nōlíte) rīdēre eum (eam)

don't speak English nōlī (nōlíte) loquī Ánglicē

don't tease him (her) nōlī (nōlíte) eum (eam) taxāre

explain this construction explicā (explicāte) hanc cōstructionem

form a single (double) line fac (fácite) agmen únicum (duplex)

get out your book(s) librum in manum cape, librōs in manūs cápite; librum prōme, librōs prōmite

go on (continue) perge (pérgite)

go to the blackboard accēde (accēdite) ad tábulam ātram

hand me the book librum cedo (cette) [an old imperative]

hand in the papers chartās redde (réddite), chartās tráde (tráдите)

hand out the papers distribue (distribúite) chartās or prōmptā (prōmptāte) chartās

hurry up mātúrā (mātúrāte)

I want a word with you after class paucīs tē volō post classem

knock it off, please parce (párcite), quaesō

listen carefully audī (audíte) diligēnter

listen to me mē auscúltā (auscultāte)

look at me convérte (convértite) óculōs in mē

look it up in the dictionary id inquíre (inquírte) in dictiōnário

lower your voice remítte (remíttite) vōcem

make it brief in pauca cōnfer (cōnférte)

never mind sine (sínite)

open your book(s) to page ... áperī librum (aperíte librōs) ad páginam ...

outline the story (the essay) *dēlíneā*
(*dēlíneáte*) *fābulam* (*tractātum*)

pass around *circúmfer* (*pl* *circumfērite*)

pass out the papers *see hand out the papers*

pass the papers to the front *chartās*
trāde (*trādite*) *ad frontem*

pay attention *attēnde* (*attēndite*); **pay attention to what I am saying**
attēnde (*attēndite*) *dicta mea*

put your book(s) away *sēpōne* *librum*
(*sēpōnite* *librōs*)

raise your hand(s) *attólle* *manum*
(*attóllite* *manūs*)

read the next sentence *lege* (*légite*)
senténtiam *próximam*; (*read aloud*)
recítā (*recitāte*) *senténtiam* *próximam*

read aloud (slower, faster, louder, with inflection of the voice) *lege*
(*légite*) *clārē* (*léntius*, *celérius*,
clārius, *flexā* *vōce*)

repeat after me *éisdem* *verbīs* *mihi*
redde (*reddite*)

repeat the passage *répete* (*repétite*)
locum

repeat what you just said *répete*
(*repétite*) *quid* *modo* *díxerīs*
(*díxerítis*)

review: let's review the pronouns
prōnómīna *retractémus*

show me your homework *ostēnde*
(*ostēndite*) *mihi* *pēnsūm* (*or*
praescríptum)

silence, please! *siléntium*, *quaesō!*

sit down, please *cōnsíde* (*cōnsídite*),
quaesō

sit up straight *rēctē* *sedē* (*sedēte*)

speak slowly (louder), please *lóquere*
(*loquímīni*) *lentē* (*clārius*), *quaesō*

speak up *ēlóquere* (*ēloquímīni*)

stop arguing *désine* (*dēsinite*)
argūmentārī (*squabbling*) *rīxārī*

stop talking *désine* (*dēsinite*) *loquī*

stand up surge (*cōnsúrgite*); (*esp. as a mark of respect*) *assúrge* (*assúrgite*)

stop writing *désine* (*dēsinite*) *scrībēre*

take notes *énotā* (*ēnotāte*)

take up (*for reading, studying*) *in*
manūs *sūme* (*pl*: *súmite*)

take your seats *revértite* *ad subséllia*

translate this sentence from English to Latin *convérte* *hanc* *senténtiam* *ex*
Ánglicō *in* *Latínūm*

translate this sentence from Latin to English *convérte* (*convértite*) *hanc*
senténtiam *ex* *Latínō* *in* *Ánglicūm*

turn around *tē* *verte* (*pl*: *vōs* *vértite*)

turn to page *ēvólve* *librum*
(*ēvólвите* *librōs*) *ad* *páginam*

use your dictionary *útere* (*útímīni*)
dictiōnáriō

whoa! not so fast! *eho*, *nōn* *tam* *cito!*

write out the sentences *senténtiās*
perscrībē (*perscrībite*)

write that on the board *scrībē*
(*scrībite*) *id* *in* *tábulā* *ātrā* (*or* *albā*)

Chapter IV: Daily Activities

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I **Mother calls from downstairs to wake her daughters.**

[NOTE—Time of day can be computed according to the Roman system, beginning at 6:00 A.M., or according to the modern system, beginning the day at midnight. See page 80 on the Roman hours.]

Māter	Victória, surge. Tempus est súrgere.	Mother: <i>Victoria, get up. It's time to get up.</i>
Victória	O māter, ego tam fessa sum. Librum meum ad multam noctem lēgī. Quota hōra est?	Victoria: <i>Oh mother, I'm so tired. I read my book till late at night. What time is it?</i>
Māter	Iam hōra octáva est. Vigilásne?	<i>It's already eight o'clock. Are you awake?</i>
Victória	Vígilō. Ubi sunt cálceī meī?	<i>Yes, I am. Where are my shoes?</i>
Māter	Quómodo sciam? Ubi, ut opínor, tū eōs dētrāxístī herī véspērī. Victória, éxcitā ē somnō tuam sorórculam Olíviam.	<i>How should I know? I suppose, where you took them off last night. Wake up your little sister Olivia.</i>
Victória	Māter, Olívia nōn vult súrgere. Sub strágulis adhūc iacet et sē nōn movet.	<i>Mother, Olivia doesn't want to wake up. She's still lying under the covers and doesn't move.</i>
Māter	Vigilatne nunc Olívia?	<i>Is Olivia awake now?</i>
Victória	Mínimē édepol! Ista pigra nē óculōs quidem áperit. Quid fáciam nésciō.	<i>Heck no! That lazy thing doesn't even open her eyes. I don't know what to do.</i>
Māter	Éxcitā eam íterum.	<i>Wake her again.</i>
Victória	Excitāvī. Nōn prōdest. Díctitat: "Omnínō ođī súrgere tam bene māne."	<i>I have. It doesn't do any good. She keeps on saying: "I absolutely hate to get up so early in the morning."</i>

Māter	Éxtrahe eam ē léctulō. Alióquīn ego ipsa sūrsum véniam et eam excitábō.	<i>Drag her out of bed. Otherwise I'll come upstairs myself and wake her up.</i>
Victória	Bene est, Mamma; Olívia tandem ē léctulō rēpsit.	<i>It's O.K., Mom. Olivia has finally crawled out of bed.</i>

LEVEL II **Two sisters bicker as they get ready for the day.**

Victória	Olívia, ágedum, tē lavā et dentēs purgā.	<i>Victoria: Olivia, come on, wash yourself and brush your teeth. [lit: "clean" your teeth]</i>
Olívia	Cūr omnēs in hāc famíliā mē carpunt? Quómodo possum mē lavāre sī aquálem nōn hábeō?	<i>Olivia: Why does everyone in this family pick on me? How can I wash myself if I don't have a basin?</i>
Victória	Postquam tū tē lāvísti, meméntō purgāre dentēs. Et meméntō stérnere léctulum tuum.	<i>After you have washed, remember to brush your teeth. And remember to make your bed.</i>
Olívia	Quómodo dentēs purgāre possum, sī tū pastam dentáriam habēs?	<i>How can I brush my teeth if you have the toothpaste?</i>
Victória	Et meméntō péctere capíllōs, sī nōn vīs vidéri símilis Medúsae.	<i>And remember to comb your hair if you don't want to look like Medusa.</i>
Olívia	Quómodo capíllōs péctere possum, sī quis péctinem meum sústulit?	<i>How can I comb my hair if someone swiped my comb?</i>
Victória	Et meméntō, mea cāra sorórcula, críspāre capíllōs.	<i>And remember, my dear little sister, to curl your hair.</i>
Olívia	Quómodo capíllōs críspāre possum, sī neque calamístrum neque spéculum inveníre possum?	<i>How can I curl my hair if I can't find the curler or the mirror?</i>
Victória	Mísera Olívia, tōtus mundus tibi adversátur!	<i>Poor Olivia, the whole world is against you!</i>
Māter	Puéllae, dēsínite rīxārī. Veníte deórsum. Ientáculum est parátum.	<i>Girls, stop bickering. Come downstairs. Breakfast is ready.</i>

LEVEL III Mother and daughters do the daily chores.

Māter	Victória et Olívia, desíderō auxílium vestrum hódīē. Ego iam lectōs omnēs strāvī et pavíméntum lāvī.	<i>Victoria and Olivia, I need your help today. I have already made all the beds and have washed the floor.</i>
Victória	Promptae sumus. Dīc quid velīs ut nōs faciāmus.	<i>We are ready. Tell us what you want us to do.</i>
Māter	Victória, primum ómnium, lavā pátinās et vāsa quibus in prándiō ūsī sumus.	<i>Victoria, first of all, wash the dishes and the pots and pans which we used at lunch.</i>
Victória	Vísne étiam mē mēnsam pónere ad cēnam?	<i>Do you also want me to set the table for dinner?</i>
Māter	Ita. Deínde prōme áliquid vīnī ē cellā vīnáriā.	<i>Yes. Then get out some wine from the wine cellar.</i>
Olívia	Quid ego faciā?	<i>What should I do?</i>
Māter	Fortásse tū potes hauríre aquam ē cistérnā. Ecce sítulam.	<i>Perhaps you can draw some water from the cistern. Here's the bucket.</i>
Olívia	Quid aquā faciā?	<i>What should I do with the water?</i>
Māter	Implē sólium in balnéolō.	<i>Fill the bathtub in the bathroom.</i>
Olívia	Quicquam áliud?	<i>Anything else?</i>
Māter	Implē aquálēs in ómnibus cubículīs.	<i>Fill the wash basins in all the bedrooms.</i>
Olívia	Postquam ego ómnia fēcerō, licébítne forās éxeam lūsum? Amícae meae mē expéctant.	<i>After I have done everything, may I go outside to play? My friends are waiting for me.</i>
Mater	Certē, exī forās et lūde cum amícīs tuīs usque ad hōram cēnándī.	<i>Certainly, go outside and play with your friends until dinner time.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

answering machine respónsr·um -ī *n*

awake: to be awake vigilāre

basin aquál·is -is *m (f)*

breakfast ientácul·um -ī *n*; **to eat**

breakfast ientāre; ientáculum sūm·ō
-ere sūmpsī sūmptus

brush the teeth dentēs purgāre [*lit: to clean the teeth*]

cell phone tēlephónul·um -ī *n* portábile

clean purgāre, mundāre; **to clean out the kitchen** culínám mundándam cūrāre

comb *tr* pect·ō -ere pexī pectus; **to comb the hair** capíllum (*or* capíllōs *or* crínēs *or* comam) péctere; **to comb out** expéctere; **to comb back** repéctere

comb *s* pect·en -inis *m*

curl crīspāre

curler calamístr·um -ī *n*

dine cēnāre

dish pátin·a -ae *f*; **to wash the dishes** pátinās lavāre

draw water aquam háur·iō -íre hausī haustus

dust the furniture supelléctilem dētér·geō -gēre -sī -sus

eat edō ēsse edī ēsus; (*breakfast, lunch, dinner*) sūm·ō -ere sūmpsī sūmptus

fill ímpl·eō -ēre -éví -étus; **to fill the water basins** aquálēs -ium implēre

floor pavímént·um -ī *n*

get up surg·ō -ere surrēxī surrēctum

go to bed dormítum (*or* cúbitum) [*supine*] eō ire īī *or* īví itum

go shopping obsōnāre

iron clothes vestíménta prem·ō -ere pressī pressus

layer the hair comam in gradūs frang·ō -ere frēgī frāctus

make the bed lectum (*or* léctulum) stern·ō -ere strāvī strātus

mirror spécul·um -ī *n*

mow the lawn grām·en -inis *n* résecō -āre -uī -tus

nap brevis somn·us ī *m*; **to take a nap** brevem somnum cáp·iō -ere cēpī captus

polish shoes cálceōs pól·iō -íre -ívī -ítus

pots and pans vās·a -órum *npl*

put on (clothes) índu·ō -ere -ī -útus (*opp: exúere*)

set the table cibária (váscula) in mēnsam appón·ō -ere appósuī appósitus

snack merénd·a -ae *f*; **to have a snack** meréndam cáp·iō -ere cēpī captus

soap sap·ō -ónis *m*; **bar of soap** sapónis quádrul·a -ae *f*

sweep the floor pavíméntum verr·ō -ere -ī versus

take off (clothes) dētrah·ō -ere dētráxī dētráctus; éxu·ō -ere -ī -útus

telephone *s* tēlephón·um -ī *n*; **by**

telephone tēlephónicē; **to call s.o.**

on the telephone aliquem

tēlephónicē compellāre; **to dial a**

(telephone) (area code) number

númerum (tēlephónicum) (númerum

praeselēctórium) sēlig·ō -ere sēlégī

sēlēctus; **to speak with s.o. on the**

telephone cum áliqūō tēlephónicē

cólloquor cólloquī collocútus sum; **to**

use a pay phone tēlephónō monētáli

ūtor ūtī ūsus sum

telephone *adj* tēlephónic·us -a -um;

telephone call (local, long-distance)

tēlephónicum collóqui·um -ī *n*

(locále, longínquum)

telephone *tr* per tēlephōnum vocāre

telephone book catālog·us -ī *m*
tēlephōnicus

telephone booth cell·a -ae *f* tēlephōnica

telephone number númer·us -ī *m*
tēlephōnicus

television *s* tēlevīsōri·um -ī *n*; (*see*
television, Chapter IV) **to watch**
television tēlevīsōri·um spectāre

tidy up ordināre

tired fess·us -a -um

toothbrush pēnicul·us -ī *m* dentārius

toothpaste past·a -ae *f* dentāria

vacuum *tr* pūlveris haurītōriō purgāre

vacuum cleaner pūlveris haurītōri·um
-ī *n*

wake up *tr* (ē somnō) excitāre **||** *intr*
expergīsc·or -ī experréctus sum

wash *tr* lav·ō -āre lāvī lautus **||** *intr*
lavārī, sē lavāre

water the flowers flōrēs adaquāre

Chapter V: Sports and Other Leisure Activities

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I

Her teacher asks Dorothy how she spends her free time.

Magistra	Quómodo cōsúmīs ótium diēbus prōfēstīs?	<i>Teacher: How do you spend your leisure time on weekdays?</i>
Dorothea	Postquam stúdia cōnfēcī, cum amícīs meīs lūdō.	<i>Dorothy: After I have finished my studies, I play with my friends.</i>
Magistra	Quid facis fīne hebdómadis?	<i>What do you do on the weekend?</i>
Dorothea	Prīmum, dórmiō quam diū mihi libet.	<i>First, I sleep as long as I please.</i>
Magistra	Quid facis pósteā?	<i>What do you do after that?</i>
Dorothea	Deínde ego et amícae deambulámus.	<i>Then I and my friends go for a walk.</i>
Magistra	Quid facis diē Sātúrnī vésperi?	<i>What do you do on Saturday evening?</i>
Dorothea	Intérdum eō in cínēmatéum.	<i>Sometimes I go to the movie theater.</i>
Magistra	Quid ámplius facis?	<i>What else do you do?</i>
Dorothea	Intérdum amāns meus mē ad saltatiónem dūcit.	<i>Sometimes my boyfriend takes me to a dance.</i>
Magistra	Quid áliud facis?	<i>What else do you do?</i>
Dorothea	Saepe tēlevísórium spectō.	<i>I often watch television.</i>
Magistra	Quómodo vacatiónem aestívam cōsúmīs?	<i>How do you spend your summer vacation?</i>
Dorothea	Scílicet áliquot pēnsa domī faciō; multum autem tempus líberum hábeō.	<i>Of course I do some chores at home; still, I have a lot of free time.</i>

Magistra	Quid ergō facis?	<i>So, what do you do?</i>
Dorothea	Multa quidem. Intērdum vīsītō cognātōs meōs. Intērdum ōram marítimam petō.	<i>A lot of things, really. At times I visit my relatives. Sometimes I head for the shore.</i>
Magistra	Quibúscum?	<i>With whom?</i>
Dorothea	Aut cum famíliā aut cum amánte meō.	<i>Either with my family or with my boyfriend.</i>
Magistra	Quid áliud facis?	<i>What else do you do?</i>
Dorothea	Per occāsiōnem ad concéntum eō.	<i>Occasionally I go to a concert.</i>

LEVEL II **His teacher asks Theodore how he spends his free time.**

Magister	Quómodo tempus líberum tuum cōsúmīs?	Teacher: <i>How do you spend your free time?</i>
Theodorus	Diébus prófēstīs plērúmque in áthléticā versor.	Theodore: <i>On weekdays I am generally involved in sports.</i>
Magister	Quid facis fine hebdómadis?	<i>What do you do on the weekend?</i>
Theodorus	Multa. Pilā lūdō. Latrúnculis lūdō. Atque músicam amō.	<i>A lot of things. I play ball. I play checkers. And I also love music.</i>
Magister	Potesne cánere ínstrúmētō músicō?	<i>Can you play a musical instrument?</i>
Theodorus	Possum pulsáre týmpanum atque cánere tubā.	<i>Yes, I can play the drum as well play the trumpet.</i>
Magister	Potésne lúdere cítharā Hispānicā?	<i>Can you play the guitar?</i>
Theodorus	Nōn.	<i>No.</i>
Magister	Quid facis fine hebdómadis?	<i>What do you do on the weekend?</i>
Theodorus	Diē Sātúrnī ego et amíci meī ad forum ímus et ínspícimus multās tabérnās.	<i>On Saturday I and my friends go to the mall and look at many shops.</i>
Magister	Vósne umquam in bibliothécam ítis?	<i>Do you ever go to the library?</i>
Theodorus	Rārō. Sed saepe ímus ad áream lúsóriam extrā bibliothécam. Patinámus aut corbípilā ibi lúdimus.	<i>Rarely. But we often go to the playground outside the library. We skate there or play basketball.</i>

Magister	Quid facis inter fēriās aestīvās?	<i>What do you do during the summer holidays?</i>
Theodórus	Saepe piscátum eō cum patre meō.	<i>I often go fishing with my father.</i>
Magister	Habēsne instrūmentum piscātōrium?	<i>Do you have fishing tackle?</i>
Theodórus	Nūper pater instrūmentum piscātōrium mihi ēmit: cálamum, líneam, rēte.	<i>Recently my father bought me fishing tackle: a rod, line, and a net.</i>
Magister	Scīsne piscārī?	<i>Do you know how to fish?</i>
Theodórus	Ut tibi vērum dīcam, pater pōnit ēscam in hāmō prō mē.	<i>To tell you the truth, my father puts the bait on the hook for me.</i>

LEVEL III **Paula and Robert discuss sports.**

Paula	Quibus, Robérte, athléticīs lūdis?	<i>Paula: Robert, what sports do you play?</i>
Robértus	Vernō témpore plērúmque pilamálleō lūdō, sed intérdum étiam tenísiā lūdō.	<i>Robert: In the springtime I usually play golf, but at times I also play tennis.</i>
Paula	Euge! Quibus athléticīs aestáte lūdis?	<i>Great! What sports do you play in summer?</i>
Robértus	Ut vērum dīcam, aestáte in pilamálleī campō saepe sum; egō prōrsus amō pilamálleō lūdere. Postíllac in nostrā piscínā novā aliquámdíū natō. Sed étiam mē dēlectat basípilā lūdere.	<i>To tell you the truth, in summer I am often on the golf course; I just love to play golf. After that I swim in our new pool for a while. But I also like to play baseball.</i>
Paula	Quō locō lūdis?	<i>What position do you play?</i>
Robértus	Ad prīmam basim lūdō, sed intérdum intermédius basiárius lūdō. Nempe audíre clāmórēs fautórum mihi placet, quandōcúmque pilam extrā campum lūsórium pulsō.	<i>Mostly I play first base, but at times I play shortstop. Naturally, I like to hear the cheers of the fans in the stands whenever I hit the ball out of the ball park.</i>

Paula	Macte virtūte estō, Robērtē! Et quid dē autūmnō?	<i>Good for you! And what about the fall?</i>
Robērtus	Au! Nōlī dē autūmnō mentiōnem mihi fācere, quia eō tēmpore in scholam iterum mihi redeūndum est.	<i>Ouch! Don't mention fall to me. That's when I have to go back to school.</i>
Paula	At nōn semper in scholā es. Ágedum, áliquid temporis subsicīvi áthlētīcīs habēs	<i>But you are not always in school. You certainly have some spare time for sports.</i>
Robērtus	Rēctē dīcis. Ineūnte autūmnō adhūc basípilā lūdō. Sed deīnde cum forīs frīgēscit, corbifólle intus lūdere praēferō.	<i>You're right. At the beginning of fall I still play baseball. But when it gets cold, I prefer to play basketball inside.</i>
Paula	Quō locō in turmā lūdis?	<i>What position do you play on the team?</i>
Robērtus	Quod ego statūrā prōcērā sum, ego centrālis sum. Annō superiōre turma nostra invīcta erat.	<i>Because I am tall, I am the center. Last year our team was undefeated.</i>
Paula	Quibus áthlētīcīs híeme lūdis?	<i>What sports do you play in winter?</i>
Robertus	Híeme amō per gláciem patināre in stagnō nōn procul ā mē. Postquam nivis cāsum, saepe nartō in cóllibus in prōximō.	<i>Well, in winter I love to skate on the pond not far from my home. After a snowfall, I often ski on the hills nearby.</i>
Paula	Édepol, tū quidem magnus áthléta es. Vīsne nunc audīre quibus áthlētīcīs ego stúdeam? Ego . . .	<i>Gee, you are a great athlete. Now do you want to hear what sports I go in for? I . . .</i>
Robērtus	Benígnē, Paula. Enimvērō occupātíssimus sum. Gymnásium petō. Amícī meī mē iam dudum exspéctant. Nunc bene valē.	<i>No, thank you, Paula. You see, I'm really very busy. I am heading for the gym. My friends have been waiting there for me for a long time. Bye for now.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

Sports

GENERAL TERMS The following terms can be applied to several sports:

athlete āthlēt·a -ae *m*, āthlētri·a -ae *f*

athletic āthlētīc·us -a -um

athletics āthlētīc·a -ae *f*

ball pil·a -ae *f*; (*inflated*) fol·lis -is *m*;

catch the ball pilam *or* follem

excíp·iō -ere excēpī excēptus; **kick**

the ball follem pede pulsāre *or* īcō

īcere īcī ictus; **play ball** pilā *or* folle

lūdere; **throw the ball** pilam *or*

follem conīc·iō -ere conīcēcī

conīcētus

ball field camp·us -ī *m* lūsórius

ball game lūs·us -ūs *m* pilae (*or* follis)

ball park camp·us -ī *m* lūsórius

bench *s* (*wooden seat*) scamn·um -ī *n*;

(*ballplayers*) cōpi·ae -ārum *fpl*

subsidiāriae

bench *tr* ad scamnum relegāre

bleachers for·ī -órum *mpl*

block ob·stō -stāre -stīti (+ *dat*),

obsíst·ō -ere óbstitī (+ *dat*), óbstru·ō

-ere obstrúxī obstrúctus

coach *s* exercitā·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)

coach *tr* & *intr* exercitāre

compete against conténd·ō -ere -ī

contrā (+ *acc*)

competition conténti·ō -ónis *f*; (*event*)

certām·en -inis *n*

competitor competī·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx

-trícis *f*)

equipment apparát·us -ūs *m*,

īnstrūmént·um -ī *n*

fan fau·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)

foul offēns·a -ae *f*; **commit a foul**

offēnsam committ·ō -ere commísī

commíssus, poenāliter agō āgere ēgī

āctus

game lūd·us -ī *m*, lūs·us -ūs *m*;

(*contest*) certām·en -inis *n*

half: first half prior pars *f* certāminis;

second half āltera pars certāminis

half-time dīmídium temp·us -oris *n*

lose *tr* **lose a game** lūdō superārī, lūdum

per·dō -dere -didī -ditus **||** *intr*

vinc·or -ī victus sum

losing team turm·a -ae *f* victa

match certām·en -inis *n*

net rēt·e -is *n*

offside: be offside seórsum esse *or* stāre

opponent adversári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

overtime additícium temp·us -oris *n*

place: be in first place primári·us -a

-um esse; **be in second place**

secundári·us -a -um esse; **be in third**

place térti·us -a -um esse; **hold first**

(**second, third**) **place** statum

primárium (secundárium, tertium)

habére

play lūd·ō -ere lūsī lūsum; **play a game**

lūsum lūdere; **play ball** pilā lūdere

player lūs·or -óris *m*, lūstr·īx -ícis *f*

playing field camp·us -ī *m* lūsórius

position loc·us -ī *m*; **what position do**

you play? quō locō lūdis?

referee árbi·ter -trī *m* (·tra -trae *f*)

point pūct·um -ī *n*; **score a point**

pūctum ferō ferre tulī lātus

score summ·a -ae *f* pūctórum, status

-ūs *m*; (*in golf*) summa íctuum; **final**

score status finālis; **keep score**

ratiónem pūctórum notāre; **the**

score is tied *summae pūnctōrum sunt parēs*

scoreboard *tābul·a -ae f pūnctōrum*

sport *dīspōrt·us -ūs m, āthlētīc·a -ae f;*

go in for sports *dīspōrtibus (or āthlētīcae) stūd·eō -ēre -uī; play sports in dīspōrtibus (or āthlētīcā) vers·or -ārī -ātus sum, dīspōrtibus (or āthlētīcā) lūdere*

sport shirt *camīsi·a -ae f campēstris*

sportswear *vest·is -is f campēstris*

squad *turm·a -ae f*

stadium *stādi·um -ī n*

stands (for seating) *for·ī -ōrum mpl*

sub, substitute *succēdāne·us -ī m (·a -ae f), suppositīci·us -ī m (-a -ae f)*

team *turm·a -ae f*

throw s.o. out of the game *āliquem ā campō (lūsōriō) relegāre*

umpire *ārbī·er -rī m (·tra -trae f)*

warm-up *exercitāti·ō -ōnis f*

whistle *sībil·us -ī m; blow the whistle* *sībilum ēmitt·ō -ere ēmīsī ēmīssus; final whistle* *sībilus finālis; starting whistle* *sībilus initiālis*

win *victōri·a -ae f*

win a game *lūdō vinc·ō -ere vīcī*

winning team *turm·a -ae f victrīx*

win on points *praevalēnti·a -ae f pūnctōrum*

win on points *praeval·eō -ēre -uī per pūncta*

SPECIFIC SPORTS

archery *sagittāti·ō -ōnis f*

arrow *sagitt·a -ae f*

bow *arc·us -ūs m*

hit *fēr·iō -īre*

bull's eye *mēdius scop·us -ī m*

target *scop·us -ī m*

badminton *lūd·us -ī m pilae pinnātae;*

play badminton *pilā pinnātā lūdere*

net *rēt·e -is n*

net ball *pil·a -ae f rēte perstrīngēns*

racket *rētīcul·um -ī n (manubriātum)*

baseball (the ball itself) *basīpil·a -ae f; (the sport) lūd·us -ī m basīpilae; play*

baseball *basīpilā lūdere*

base (first, second, third, home)

bas·is -is (acc: -im) (prīma, secūnda, tertia, summa or domēstica)

baseball game *basīpilae lūs·us -ūs m, basīpilae certāmen -inis n*

baseman (first, second, third)

(prīmus, secūndus, tertiū) basiāri·us -ī m (·a -ae f)

bat *clāv·a -ae f (lūsōria)*

batter *clāvā·tor -tōris m (·trīx -trīcis f), pulsā·tor -tōris m (·trīx -trīcis f)*

catch *excīp·iō -ere excēpī excēptus*

catcher *excēpt·or -ōris m, excēptr·īx -īcis f*

fly *pil·a -ae f volāns*

glove *digitābul·um -ī n*

hit *s puls·us -ūs m*

hit tr *pulsāre; hit the ball out of the park* *pilam extrā campum lūsōrium pulsāre*

home plate *bas·is -is f summa, basis domēstica*

home run *circūit·us -ūs m bāsium;*

hit a home run *circūitum bāsium fācere*

inning *miss·us -ūs m*

outfielder *extērnus (-a) cust·ōs -ōdis mf*

pitcher coniect·or -ōris *m*,
coniectr·ix -īcis *f*

pitcher's mound coniectōris
(coniectricis) grūm·us -ī *m*

shortstop intermédius (-a) basiári·us
-ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

basketball (*ball*) corbifóll·is -is *m*;
(*game*) corbifóllis lūd·us -ī *m*; **play**
basketball corbifólle lúdere

basket corb·is -is *m*; **make a basket**
corbifóllem per corbem iníciō incítere
iniécti iniéctus

center centrál·is -is *mf*

court aul·a -ae *f* lūsória

dribble *tr* & *intr* repercutitāre

dribbling repercuti·ō -ōnis *f*

forward oppugnā·tor -tōris *m* (·trix
-trícis *f*)

foul offēns·a -ae *f*; **commit a foul**
offēnsam committ·ō -ere commísī
commíssus, poenáliter agō ágere ēgī

foul line líne·a -ae *f* poenális

foul shot iact·us -ūs *m* ā líneā
poenáli

guard cust·ōs -ōdis *mf*

pass (*the act*) corbifóllis trānsiéci·ō
-ōnis *f*; (*the passed ball*) corbifóllis
m trānsiéctus

pass the ball corbifóllem trāns·iciō
-ícere -iécī -iéctus

slam dunk tuxtax (per corbem)
iniéct·us -ūs *m*

boxing pugilát·us -ūs *m*, pugiláti·ō
-ōnis *f*

box *intr* pugi(l)láre

boxer pugil -is *mf*

boxing champion púgilum rēx, rēgis
m; **heavy-weight champion** púgilum
rēx máximī pōnderis

boxing glove caest·us -ūs *m*

boxing match certám·en -inis *n*
pugilátórium

knock down stern·ō -ere strāvī
strātus

knock out s.o. cérebrum álicui
dīmínu·ō -ere -ī

punch *s* pugn·us -ī *m*; **land a punch**
on s.o. pugnum álicui dúcere

punch *tr* pugnō (*or* pugnīs) caed·ō
-ere cecídī

punching bag córyc·us -ī *m*, foll·is
-is *m* pugilátórius

ring suggést·us -ūs *m* pugilátórius

round congréss·us -ūs *m*; **lose a**

round congréssū vinc·ōr -ī victus
sum; **win a round** congréssū vinc·ō
-ere vícī

bowling cōnórum lūd·us -ī *m*,
cōnilúdi·um -ī *n*

bowl *intr* globum volutāre, cōnīs
lúdere

bowling alley (*single lane*) cōnórum
ārēol·a -ae *f*; (*building of bowling*
alleys) aed·ēs -is *f* ad cōnilúdiūm

bowling ball glob·us -ī *m* lūsórius,
glob·us -ī *m* cōnórum

bowling lane cōnórum ārēol·a -ae *f*

bowling pin cōn·us -ī *m* lūsórius

make a strike omnēs cōnōs
(lūsóriōs) simul decút·iō -ere decússi
decússus

discus throwing discī iact·us -ūs *m*

fishing piscát·us -ūs *m*

bait ēsc·a -ae *f*

catch, haul piscát·us -ūs *m*

catch fish piscēs captāre

- fish** *intr* (hamō) pisc·or -ārī -ātus sum; **go fishing** piscātum eō ire īvī or -ī
- fish** *s* pisc·is -is *m*
- fisherman** piscāt·or -ōris *m*
- fish hook** hām·us -ī *m*; **put the bait on the hook** ēscam hāmō im·pōnō -pōnere -pōsuī -pōsitus
- fishing line** líne·a -ae *f* (piscātōria)
- fishing net** rēt·e -is *n* (piscātōrium)
- fishing rod** cálam·us -ī *m*
piscātōrius, harúnd·ō -inis *f*
- fishing tackle** ínstrúmēt·um -ī *n*
piscātōrium
- net** rēt·e -is *n*
- football** (*game*) pedifól·i·um -ī *n*,
pedilúdi·um -ī *n* (mōre Americānō)
(*ball*) pedifóll·is -is *m*; **play football**
pedifólle lúdere
- center** centrál·is -is *m*
- end** (**left, right**) (siníster, dexter)
ālári·us -ī *m* or ext·er -erī *m*
- extra point** pūct·um -ī *n*
additícium; **kick an extra point** prō
pūctō additício pede pulsáre
- football player** pedilús·or -ōris *m*
- football shoes** calceāmēt·a -ōrum
npl pedifólī
- fullback** póster·us -ī *m*
- goal line** calx, calcis *f*, crēt·a -ae *f*
- goal post** pāl·us -ī *m* portae
- guard** *s* custōs, custōdis *m*
- halfback** sēmipóster·us -ī *m*
- intercept** inter·cípiō -cípere -cēpī
-cēptus
- interception** intercēpti·ō -ōnis *f*
- interceptor** intercēpt·or -ōris *m*
- kick** pede pulsáre, pede īc·ō ícere īcī
ictus
- kickoff** pede puls·us -ūs *m* initiális
- linesman** iūd·ex -icis *m* lineárius
- pass** pedifóllis tráiect·us -ūs *m*
- pass the ball to** pedifóllem trā·ícíō
-ícere -íecī -íectus ad (+ *acc*)
- play in the first (second) half in**
parte prióre (álterā) certáminis lúdere
- quarterback** cardinál·is -is *m*
- punt** pedifóllem pede pulsáre
- sideline** líne·a -ae *f* laterális
- tackle** *s* assultát·or -ōris *m*
- tackle** *tr* stern·ō -ere strāvī strátus
- touchdown: make or score a**
touchdown calcem (*or* crētam)
attingō -ere áttigī atátus
- golf** pilamálle·us -ī *m*; **play golf**
pilamálleō lúdere
- bunker** obstrácul·um -ī *n*
- caddy** clávig·er -erī *m*
- fairway** prāt·um -ī *n* perlóngum
- golf club** clāv·a -ae *f*; (*driver*) clāva
agitātōria; (*iron*) clāva férrea
- golf course** pilamállei camp·us -ī *m*
- golfer** pilamállei lūs·or -ōris *m*
(lūstr·īx -ícis *f*)
- green** áre·a -ae *f* víridis
- hit** īcō ícere īcī ictus
- hole** fovéol·a -ae *f*
- miniature golf course** loc·us -ī *m*
pilamállei minútī
- sand trap** harēnári·a -ae *f*
- score** summ·a -ae *f* íctuum
- stroke** ict·us -ūs *m*
- tee** grúm·ul·us -ī *m*
- tee off** primum īc·ō -ere īcī

gymnastics gymnásitic·a -ae *f*

balance beam tīgn·um -ī *n*
aequilībrīi

gym, gymnasium gymnási·um -ī *n*

gym shoes cálcē·ī -órum *mpl*
gýmnicī

horizontal bar ferr·um -ī *n*
trānsvérsūm

horse ecúle·us -ī *m*

high jump salt·us -ūs *m* in altum

hockey lūd·us -ī *m* hoccēius, alsulégi·a
-ae *f*; **play hockey** hoccēiō lūdere

blue line líne·a -e *f* caerúlea

center centrál·is -is *mf*

defenseman dēfēns·or -óris *m*

field hockey lūdus hoccēius *m*

goal port·a -ae *f*; **score a goal**
dísculum in portam immitt·ō -ere
immísī

goalie portári·us -ī *m*

hockey stick ped·um -ī *n*, fērul·a -ae
f repánda

left defenseman dēfēns·or -óris *m*
siníster

left wing álári·us -ī *m* siníster

puck díscul·us -ī *m*; **pass the puck**
to dísculum trā·íciō -ícere -iēci
-iēctus ad (+ *acc*)

red line líne·a -ae *f* rubra

right defenseman dēfēns·or -óris *m*
dexter

right wing álári·us -ī *m* dexter

rink stádi·um -ī *n* glaciále

wing ál·a -ae *f*

hunting vēnāti·ō -ónis *f*; (*the practice of hunting*) vēnātūr·a -ae *f*

hunt *s* vēnát·us -ūs *m*

hunt *tr & intr* vēn·or -ári -átus *sum*

hunting dog can·is -is *m* vēnáticus

hunting gear instrūmēt·um -ī *n*
vēnātórium

hunting gun sclopētum -ī *n*
vēnātórium

game (*prey*) vēnāti·ō -ónis *f*

shotgun focíl·e -is *n* bifistulátum

ice-skating (per gláciem) patināti·ō
-ónis *f*

figure skating patināti·ō -ónis *f*
artificiósā

ice-skate *s* pátin·us -ī *m*

ice-skate *intr* (per gláciem) patináre

speed skating patināti·ō -ónis *f*
vélōx

judo luctāti·ō -ónis *f* Iūdóica (*or*
Iapónica)

karate luctāti·ō -ónis *f* carática

lacrosse lūd·us -ī *m* lacrossēnsis

crosse *or* **lacrosse stick** cróci·a -ae
f; **cradle the crosse** cróciā agítāre

long jump salt·us -ūs *m* in longum

mountain climbing ascēnsi·ō -ónis *f*
móntium

climb ascēnd·ō -ere -ī ascēnsus

mountain climber ascēns·or -óris *m*
(ascēnstr·īx -ícis *f*) móntium

repel fūne dēscēnd·ō -ere -ī

rope fūn·is -is *m* scēnsórius

pentathlon pentáthl·um -ī *n*; **win the**

pentathlon pentáthlō vinc·ō -ere vícī

Ping-Pong mēnsális pilae lūd·us -ī *m*;

play Ping-Pong mēnsáli pilā lūdere

net rēt·e -is *n*

net ball pil·a -ae *f* rēte perstríngēns

paddle pálul·a -ae *f*

pole vaulting salt·us -ūs *m* perticárius

- pole-vault** *intr* pérticā sál·iō -íre -uī
bar repágul·um -ī *n*; **to clear the bar** repágulum trāsíl·iō -íre -uī
pole pértic·a -ae *f*
- polo** alsülégi·a -ae *f* equéstris
rollerskating patináti·ō -ónis *f* rotális
rollerblade pedírotīs lābor lābī lāpsus *sum*
rollerblades pedírot·ae -árum *fpl*
rollerskate rotéllis patináre
rollerskates pátin·ī -órum *mpl* rotálēs
skating *s* patináti·ō -ónis *f*
skate patináre
skate board tábul·a -ae *f* subrotáta
skater patiná·tor -tóris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)
- rowing** rēmigáti·ō -ónis *f*
crew rēmígi·um -ī *n*
oar rēm·us -ī *m*
regatta certám·en -inis *f* rēmígīi
row rēmigáre
rowboat cumb·a -ae *f* or scaph·a -ae *f* rēmígera
rower rēm·ex -igis *m*
- rugby** harpást·um -ī *n*; **play rugby** harpástō lúdere
- sailing** vēlificáti·ō -ónis *f*
mast māl·us -ī *m*
sail vēl·um -ī *n*
sail vēlificáre
sailboat scaph·a -ae *f* vēlífica
tack *intr* scapham flect·ō -ere flexī
topsail súppar·um -ī *n*
- skiing** *s* nartáti·ō -ónis *f*
- ski** *s* nart·a -ae *f*; **put on skis** nartās pédibus aptáre, nartās adstrín·gō -gere -xī; **take off the skis** nartās dēstríngere; **wax the skis** nartās incēráre
ski *intr* nartáre
ski boot cálig·a -ae *f* nartátória
skier nartát·or -óris *m*, nartát·īx -ícis *f*
ski instructor nartándi magís·ter -trī *m* (·tra -trae *f*)
ski jump suggést·us -ūs *m* dēsultórius
ski jump(ing) dēsultúr·a -ae *f* nartátória
ski lift anabáthr·um -ī *n* nartátórium
ski lodge cas·a -ae *f* nartátórum
ski pole bácul·um -ī *n* nartátórium
ski run currícul·um -ī *n* nivále
ski slope clīv·us -ī *m* nartátórius
slalom (*slope*) dēcúrsi·ō -ónis *f* flexuōsa; (*contest*) certám·en -inis *n* dēcúrsiōnis flexuōsae
snow nix, nivis *f*; **powdery snow** nix pulvérea
soccer pedifólli·um -ī *n*, pedilúdi·um -ī *n*; **play soccer** pedifólle lúdere
card: show the red (yellow) card chártulam rubram (flāvam) mōnstráre
corner kick pede puls·us -ūs *m* anguláris
fullback (left, right) (siníster, dexter) dēfēns·or -óris *m*, (sinístra, dextra) dēfēnstr·īx -ícis *f*
get possession of the ball pedifólle pót·ior -írī -ítus *sum*
goal port·a -ae *f*; **score a goal** follem per portam pede pulsáre
goal! Hei, follis per portam!

goalie portári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

goal area áre·a -ae *f* portária

goal line líne·a -ae *f* portária

half-time score stat·us -us *m* dīmídiī
témporis

header cápíte puls·us -ūs *m*

head the ball pedifóllem cápíte
pulsáre

heel kick calce puls·us -ūs *m*

kick pede pulsáre

linesman iūd·ex -icis *m* lineárius

midfield (center, left, right)
(centrális, siníster, dexter) lūs·or
-óris *m* médius, (centrális, sinístra,
dextra) lüst·rix -rícis *f*

pass the ball to pedifóllem
trānspulsáre ad

pass trānspúl·us -ūs *m*

penalty area áre·a -ae *f* poenális

penalty kick pede puls·us -ūs *m*
poenális; (*from 11 meters*) pede
puls·us -ūs *m* úndecim metrórūm;
(*from 7 meters*) pede puls·us -ūs *m*
septem metrórūm

**period: play in the first (second,
third) period** in parte prióre (álterā,
tértiā) certáminis lúdere

soccer player pedilús·or -óris *m*
(·tr·ix -trícis) *f*

soccer shoes calceámént·a -órum *npl*
pedifóllī

soccer stadium stádi·um -ī *n*
pedifóllī

striker oppugnā·tor -tóris *m* (·trix
-trícis) *f*

sweeper lūs·or -óris *m* líber, lüstr·ix
-ícis *f* líbera

wing (left, right) (siníster, dexter)
álári·us -ī *m*, (sinístra, dextra) álári·a
-ae *f*

surf *intr* tábulā flūctívagā per summās
undās próláb·or -ī prólápsus sum

surfboard tábul·a -ae *f* flūctívaga

swimming *s* natāti·ō -ónis *f*

back stroke natātiō *f* resupína

dive *s* praeceps salt·us -ūs *m*

dive praeceps sál·iō -íre -iī (*or* -uī)

diving board tábul·a -ae *f* dēsultória

free-style natātiō *f* líbera

breast stroke natātiō *f* pectorális (*or*
prōna)

swim natáre

swimming instructor natándī
magist·er -rī *m* (·ra -rae *f*)

swimming meet certám·en -inis *n*
natátórium

swimming pool piscín·a -ae *f*,
natábul·um -ī *n*

tennis tenilúdi·um -ī *n*, tenísi·a -ae *f*;

play tennis tenísiā lúdere

backhand drive puls·us -ūs *m*
invérsus

doubles tenilúdi·um -ī *n* bis binórūm

drive *s* pila *f* vī prōpúl·sa

drive *tr* **drive the ball** pilam vī
prōpéll·ō -ere prōpúl·sī prōpúl·sus

fault víti·um -ī *n*

hit pulsáre; **to hit out of bounds**
ultrā líneam pulsáre

net rēt·e -is *n*

net ball pil·a -ae *f* rēte praestríngēns

racket rētícul·um -ī *n* (manubriátum)

serve *s* dēiéc·us -ūs *m*

serve *intr* dēic·iō -ere dēiécī

set āct·us -ūs *m*

singles tenilúdi·um -ī *n* singuláre

tennis ball pil·a -ae *f* tenísiac

- tennis court** camp·us -ī *m* tenísiæ
tennis match certám·en -inis *n*
 tenísiæ
tennis player tenilūs·or -ōris *m*
 (·trīx -trícis *f*), lenilúdi·us -ī *m* (·a
 -ae *f*)
- track** (*the sport*) cursúr·a -ae *f*; (*course
 laid out for running*) currícul·um -ī *n*
finish line calx, calcis *f*, crēt·a -ae *f*;
reach the finish line calcem (*or
 crētam*) atting·ō -ere áttigī attáctus
hundred meter dash curs·us -ūs *m*
 centum metrōrum
lap currícul·um -ī *n*, spátī·um -ī *n*
long-distance running curs·us -ūs *m*
 spátīi longī
runner curs·or -ōris *m*, curstr·īx
 -ícis *f*
start iníti·um -ī *n* cursūs
volleyball foll·is -is *m* volátilis; (*game*)
 lūd·us -ī *m* follis volátilis
net rēt·e -is *n*
play volleyball folle volátilī lúdere
spike the ball follem magnā vī
 prōpéll·ō -ere prōpúlsī prōpúlsus
water-skiing per summās undās
 nartáti·ō -ōnis *f*
water-ski *intr* per summās undās
 nartáre
water-ski *s* nart·a -ae *f* aquática
weight-lifting subláti·ō -ōnis *f*
 librāmentōrum
wrestling luctáti·ō -ōnis *f*
wrestle luct·or -árī luctátus *sum*
wrestler luctát·or -ōris *m*
wrestling match certámen -inis *n*
 luctātiónis
- OTHER LEISURE ACTIVITIES**
admission ticket tésser·a -ae *f* aditiális
amplifier amplificátr·um -ī *n*
amusement park hort·ī -ōrum *mpl*
 públicī oblectárii
band symphóni·a -ae *f*
camera phōtomáchin·a -ae *f*,
 máchínul·a -ae *f* phōtográphica;
digital camera phōtomáchin·a
 digítális
card chártul·a -ae *f* lūsória; (**ace** bínī·ō
 -ónis *m*; **card game** chártulárum
 (lūsoriárum) lūd·us -ī *m*; **club** crux,
 crucis (*gen pl*: crucum) *f*; **diamond**
 rūt·a -ae *f*; **heart** cor, cordis *n*; **jack**
 pedísequ·us -ī *m*; **joker** chártul·a -ae
f fortúnāns; **king** rēx, rēgis *m*; **queen**
 rēgín·a -ae *f*; **spade** pāl·a -ae *f*)
play cards chártulis (lūsóriis) lúdere
pass cēterīs cēd·ō -ere cessī
shuffle (cut, deal) the cards
 chártulās mísc·eō -ére -uī mixtus
 (sēpón·ō -ere sēpósuī sēpósitus,
 dístríbu·ō -ere -uī)
suit col·or -ōris *m*
trick vicēs *fppl* (sínghulae, bīnae,
 trīnae, quatérnae)
trump *s* col·or -ōris *m* praelátus
trump *intr* (chártulās) fér·iō -íre
cartoon (*on television*) spectácul·um -ī
n animátum
checker latrúncul·us -ī *m*; **checkers**
 (*game*) latrúnculōrum lūd·us -ī *m*;
play checkers latrúnculis lúdere
crown corōnāre
king rēx, rēgis *m*
chess lūd·us -ī *m* scācōrum, scācilúdium
 -ī *n*; **castle** *s* turr·is -is *f*; *tr*
 adroccāre; **checkmate** rēgem tén·eō
 -ére -uī; **checkmate!** cavē rēgī!;

- chessboard** scācāri·um -ī *n*; **chess piece** scāc·us -ī *m*; **king** rēx, rēgis *m*; **knight** equ·es -itis *m*; **pawn** ped·es -itis *m*; **queen** rēgīn·a -ae *f*; **rook** roch·us -ī *m*; **square** (*on chessboard*) cas·a -ae *f*; **play chess** scācīs lūdere
- chore** pēns·um -ī *n*; **do chores** pēnsa fāc·iō -ere fēcī factus
- CD** compāctus disc·us -ī *m*
- CD player** discophōni·um -ī *n*
- comedy** cōmoēdi·a -ae *f*
- concert** concēnt·us -ūs *m*
- dance** *intr* saltāre
- dance** *s* saltāti·ō -ōnis *f*
- dancer** saltāt·or -ōris *m*, saltātr·īx -īcis *f*
- discotheque** discothēc·a -ae *f*
- documentary** documentāri·um -ī *n*
- evening** vēsper·a -ae *f*; **in the evening** vēsperī; **on Saturday evening** diē Sātūrnī vēsperī
- film** pellīcul·a -ae *f*, taenīol·a -ae *f*; **documentary film** pellīcul·a -ae *f* documentāria; **educational film** pellīcula didascālica; **movie film** pellīcula cīnēmatogrāphica; **photographic film** taenīola phōtogrāphica; **show a film** pellīculam (cīnēmatogrāphicam) exhīb·eō -ēre -uī -itus
- free time** tempus *n* līberum
- gamble** āleā lūd·ō -ere lūsī
- game** (*prey*) praed·a -ae *f*, vēnāti·ō -ōnis *f*; (*play*) lūd·us -ī *m*
- game show** spectācul·um -ī *n* lūsōrium
- gun** sclopēt·um -ī *n*
- hide and seek: play hide and seek** per lūsum latitāre et quaeritāre
- holidays** fēri·ae -ārum *fpl*
- library** bibliothēc·a -ae *f*
- monopoly** monopóli·um -ī *n*; **play monopoly** monopóliō lūdere
- motor boat** nāvīcul·a -ae *f* automatāria
- movie** *adj* cīnēmatogrāphic·us -a -um, cīnēmātic·us -a -um
- movie** pellīcul·a -ae *f* cīnēmatogrāphica; **go to see (watch) a movie** pellīculam cīnēmatogrāphicam vīs·ō -ere -ī (spectāre); **horror movie** pellīcula horrífera; **show a movie** pellīculam cīnēmatogrāphicam exhīb·eō -ēre -uī -itus
- movie camera** māchīnul·a -ae *f* cīnēmatogrāphica
- movie film** pellīcul·a -ae *f* (*or* taenīol·a -ae *f*) cīnēmatogrāphica
- movies** imāgin·ēs -um *fpl* movēntes
- movie screen** línte·um -ī *n* lātē extētum
- movie theater** cīnēmatē·um -ī *n*; **go the movie theater** (*or to the movies*) in cīnēmatēum eō ire īvī
- music** músic·a -ae *f*
- musical** *adj* músic·us -a -um
- musical** *s* melodramāti·um -ī *n*
- musician** músic·us -ī *m*, músic·a -ae *f*
- nightclub** discothēc·a -ae *f*
- opera** melodram·a -atis *n*; **go to see an opera** melodráma vīs·ō -ere -ī
- operetta** melodramāti·um -ī *n*
- organ** órgan·um -ī *n*
- overture** exórdi·um -ī *n* (melodramatis)
- paint** *s* pigmēt·um -ī *n*, col·or -ōris *m*
- paint** *tr & intr* ping·ō -ere pīnxī pīctus
- paint brush** pēnicīll·us -ī *m*
- painting** (*the art; picture*) pictūr·a -ae *f*
- pheasant** phāsīán·a -ae *f*

- photograph** imág·ō -inis *f*
phōtographica
- photograph** *tr* phōtographīcē rédd·ō
-ere réddidī rédditus
- photographer** phōtograph·us -ī *m* (·a
-ae *f*)
- photographic film** taeníol·a -ae *f*
phōtographica
- piano** clāvicórdi·um -ī *n*
- picnic** cénul·a -ae *f* subdiális; **go on a
picnic** excursiónem ad cénulam
subdiálem sūméndam fáci·ō -ere fēcī
- picnic basket** pānári·um -ī *n*
- Ping-Pong** mēnsális pilae lūs·us -ūs *m*;
play Ping-Pong mēnsáli pilā lūd·ō
-ere lūsī
- play** (*in a theater*) fábul·a -ae *f*
- play** lūd·ō -ere lūsī lūsum; (*an
instrument*) can·ō -ere cécinī cantus
(+ *abl of the instrument*); (*records,
tape recorder, tapes*) impéll·ō -ere
ímpulī impúlsus; **play a game** lūdum
lúdere; **play ball** pilā lúdere; **play
chess** scācīs lúdere; **play the drum**
týmpanum pulsáre;
- playground** áre·a -ae *f* lūsória
- polka** saltáti·ō -ónis *f* Bohémica; **dance
the polka** Bohémicē saltáre
- radio** radiophón·um -ī *n*; **by** (*or on the*)
radio radiophónicē; **listen to the
radio** radiophónum audíre; **turn
down the radio** vim radiophónī
remítt·ō -ere remísī remíssus; **turn
on (off) the radio** radiophónum
excitáre *or* impéd·iō -íre -ívi -ítus
(expedíre)
- radio broadcast** emíssi·ō -ónis *f*
radiophónica
- radio station** státi·ō -ónis *f*
radiophónica
- record** orb·is -is *m* phōnographicus;
play (**listen to**) **records** orbēs
phōnographīcōs impéll·ō -ere ímpulī
impúlsus (aúdi·ō -íre -ívi)
- record player** mächínul·a -ae *f*
phōnographica
- remote control** moderátr·um -ī *n*
remótum
- sneakers** cálce·ī -órum *mpl* gýmnicī
- stage play** fábul·a -ae *f* theátrális (*or
scáénica*)
- stereo system** systéma -atis *n*
stereophónicum
- summer** *s* aest·ās -átis *f*
- summer vacation** fériae aestívae; **spend
the summer vacation** fériās aestívās
agō ágere egī áctus
- swing** *intr* oscilláre
- swing** *s* oscíll·um -ī *n*
- talk show** spectácul·um -ī *n*
disputátívum
- tape** *s* (*audiotape*) phōnotaeníol·a -ae *f*;
(*audiocassette*) phōnocasēt·a -ae *f*
- tape** *tr* in phōnotaeníolā ímprim·ō -ere
ímpressī ímpressus
- tape recorder** magnētophón·um -ī *n*
- television** tēlevísi·ō -ónis *f*; **television
set** tēlevísóri·um -ī *n*; **run on** (**turn
off**) **the television** tēlevísórium
excitáre (impéd·iō -íre -ívi -ítus)
(expedíre); **turn down** (**turn up**) **the
television** vim tēlevísórii remítt·ō
-ere remísī remíssus (aúg·eō -éere
auxī auctus); **watch television**
tēlevisiónem spectáre, tēlespectáre
- television audience** tēlevísór·ēs -um
mpl
- television broadcast** emíssi·ō -ónis *f*
tēlevísifica
- television channel** canál·is -is *m*
tēlevísíficus

television commercial praecóni·um -ī *n*
tēlevīsíficum

television news tēlediúrni·a -órum *npl*

television program prográmm·a -atis *n*
tēlevīsíficum, ēmissi·ō -ónis *f*
tēlevīsífica

television screen quadr·um -ī *n*
tēlevīsíficum

television series séri·ēs -ēī *f* tēlevīsífica

television set tēlevīsóri·um -ī *n*

television show spectácul·um -ī *n*
tēlevīsíficum

television station státi·ō -ónis *f*
tēlevīsífica

television viewer tēlevís·or -óris (*·trīx*
-trícis f)

tragedy tragoédi·a -ae *f*

TV room concláve -is *n* tēlevīsóriō
instrúctum

vacation vacáti·ō -ónis *f*, féri·ae -árum
fpl; **at the end of vacation** fériīs

peráctīs; **spend the vacation** fériās
agō ágere ēgī āctus; **summer**
vacation fēriae aestívae, vacátiō
aestíva

video cassette casét·a -ae *f*
magnētoscópia; **listen to (play) a**
video cassette aúd·iō -íre -ívī *or* -iī
-ítus (ēvól·o -ere -ī) casétam
magnētoscópiam

video cassette recorder (VCR)
magnētoscópi·um -ī *n*

video game lūs·us -ūs *m*
magnētoscópicus; **play video games**
lūdōs magnētoscópicōs lúdere

walk: go for a walk dēambuláre

week hébdom·as -adis *f*, septimán·a -ae
f

weekday di·ēs -ēī *m* proféstus

weekend fin·is -is *m* hebdomadis; **on**
the weekend hebdomade exeunte,
fine hebdomadis

Chapter VI: The Human Body

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I

The teacher notices that Linda looks sick. She asks Linda what is wrong with her.

Magistra	Linda, esne tū aegrōta?	<i>Teacher: Linda, are you sick?</i>
Linda	Ita, magistra.	<i>Linda: Yes, teacher.</i>
Magistra	Pállida es. Quid est tibi?	<i>You are pale. What's the matter with you?</i>
Linda	Stómachus meus dolet.	<i>My stomach hurts.</i>
Magistra	Dolétne quicquam áliud?	<i>Does anything else hurt?</i>
Linda	Caput meum dolet.	<i>My head hurts.</i>
Magistra	Habésne febrem?	<i>Do you have a fever?</i>
Linda	Fortásse. Frōns et genae sunt cálidae.	<i>Maybe. My forehead and my cheeks are hot.</i>
Magistra	Vise médicum quam p̄imum.	<i>Go see a doctor as soon as possible.</i>
Linda	Grátias tibi, magistra.	<i>Thank you, teacher.</i>

LEVEL II

A doctor is called in for the sick little girl, Scintilla.

Scintilla	Salvē, médice. Mē male hábeō hódie.	<i>Scintilla: Hello, doctor. I'm not feeling good today.</i>
Médicus	Salvē, Scintilla. Quid est?	<i>Doctor: Hello, Scintilla. What's the trouble?</i>
Scintilla	Mē male hábeō. Aegrōta enim sum.	<i>I don't feel good. You see, I'm sick.</i>
Médicus	Quid dolet? Habésne dolórem stómachī?	<i>What hurts? Do you have a stomach ache?</i>

Scintilla	Vae mihi, caput dolet; stómachus dolet; faucēs dolent.	<i>Oh my, my head hurts; my stomach hurts; my throat hurts.</i>
Médicus	Frōns vidétur cálida. Febrem magnam habēs. Habēsne cibī appeténtiam bonam?	<i>Your forehead seems hot. You are running a high fever. Do you have a good appetite?</i>
Scintilla	Mínimē. Ego nūllam omnínō appeténtiam hábeō.	<i>No. I have no appetite at all.</i>
Médicus	Potésne noctū dormíre?	<i>Are you able to sleep at night?</i>
Scintilla	Noctem pervigilábam.	<i>I was awake all night long.</i>
Médicus	Gravédine labórās. Ecce, medicínam tibi hábeō. Et necesse est tibi manére in lectō duōs trēsve diēs.	<i>You're suffering from a cold. Look, I have medicine for you. And it is necessary for you to stay in bed for two or three days.</i>
Scintilla	Num in scholam íre possum?	<i>I can't go to school, can I?</i>
Médicus	Mínimē vērō!	<i>Definitely not.</i>
Scintilla	Ō, grátias, médice; multās grátias! Iam mē mélius hábeō.	<i>Oh, thanks, doctor; thanks a lot. I already feel better.</i>

LEVEL III **A doctor arrives at the scene of a fire to treat one of the victims, a young man.**

Médicus	Quid nōmen est tibi? Et quid tibi cóntigit?	Doctor: <i>What is your name? And what happened to you?</i>
Aduléscēns	Nōmen mihi est Domínicus. Fuit incéndium in cēnáculō meō.	Young man: <i>My name is Dominic. There was a fire in my apartment.</i>
Médicus	Incendiúmne? Quómodo effūgístī?	<i>A fire? How did you escape?</i>
Aduléscēns	Flammae capíllōs et fáciem et bráccia cremábant. Deínde dē fenéstrā in terram dēsílui.	<i>The flames burned my hair and my face and my arms. Then I jumped from the window to the ground.</i>

Médicus	Licet vídeam num ūlla ossa frégeris. Genū dextrum et tālus dexter sunt tumidíssima; fortásse crūs frégístī.	<i>Let me see whether you have broken any bones. Your right knee and ankle are very swollen; maybe you broke your leg.</i>
Aduléscēns	Cénseō mē étiam áliquās costās frégísse. Latus dextrum valdē dolet.	<i>I think that I also broke some ribs. My right side hurts a lot.</i>
Médicus	Potésne pedem dextrum movére?	<i>Can you move your right foot?</i>
Aduléscēns	Possum. Sed dextrō pede stāre nōn possum. Ego quidem nōn omnínō cōnsúrgere possum.	<i>I can. But I can't stand on my right foot. In fact, I can't get up at all.</i>
Médicus	Nōlī temptāre cōnsúrgere! Crédíbile est tē áliqua ossa frégísse.	<i>Don't try to get up. It is possible that you broke some bones.</i>
Aduléscēns	Quid fáciam?	<i>What should I do?</i>
Médicus	Prīmum dābō tibi pílulam quae dolórem levábit. Deínde púerī meī tē in lectícā domum meam gerent. Possum cūrāre tē mélius ibi.	<i>First, I will give you a pill which will relieve your pain. Then my boys will carry you in a litter to my home. I can take care of you better there.</i>
Aduléscēns	Tibi hábeō magnam grátiam ob beneficium tuum.	<i>I am very grateful to you for your kindness.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

ankle tál·us -ī *m*

appendix appénd·ix -icis *f*

arm brácc·i·um -ī *n*; (*upper*) lacért·us -ī *m*

armpit āl·a -ae *f*, axíll·a -ae *f*

artery artéri·a -ae *f*

back terg·um -ī *n*

backside postíc·um -ī *n*

beard barb·a -ae *f*

belly alv·us -ī *f*

belly button umbilíc·us -ī *m*

bile bīl·is -is *f*

bladder vēsíc·a -ae *f*

blood sangu·is -inis *m*; (*outside the body*) cru·or -óris *m*

bone os, ossis *n*

bosom sin·us -ūs *m*

bowels alv·us -ī *f*

brain cérebr·um -ī *n*

breast pect·us -oris *n*; (*female*) mamm·a -ae *f*, mammíll·a -ae *f*

buttocks nat·ēs -ium *fpl*

calf sūr·a -ae *f*

cartilage cartilág·ō -inis *f*

cheek gen·a -ae *f*

chin ment·um -ī *n*

colon cōl·on -ī *n*

curl cirr·us -ī *m*, cincínnul·us -ī *m*

curly cirrát·us -a -um, cincínnul·us -a -um; **to have curly hair** cincínnulō capíllō esse

diaphragm praecórdi·a -órum *npl*

ear aur·is -is *f*; (*outer*) aurícul·a -ae *f*

elbow cúbit·um -ī *n*, uln·a -ae *f*

esophagus gul·a -ae *f*

eye ócul·us -ī *m*

eyeball orb·is -is *m* óculi

eyebrow supercili·um -ī *n*

eyelashes cíli·um -ī *n*

eyelid pálpebr·a -ae *f*

face fáci·ēs -éi *f*

finger dígit·us -ī *m*

finger tip dígitus *m* extrémus

index finger ind·ex -icis *m*

little finger dígitus *m* mínimus

middle finger dígitus *m* médius

ring finger dígitus *m* ānuláris

thumb poll·ex -icis *m*

finger nail ungu·is -is *m*

fist pugn·us -ī *m*

flesh car·ō -nis *f*

foot pēs, pedis *m*

forehead frōns, frontis *f*

genitals genitál·ia -ium *npl*; (*female*) muliébr·ia -ium *npl*; (*male*) viríl·ia -ium *npl*

groin ingu·en -inis *n*

gum gingí·v·a -ae *f*

hair (*a single hair or hair collectively*) capíll·us -ī *m*, crín·is -is *m*

hair of the head capíll·ī -órum *npl*; com·a ae *f*; caesári·ēs -éi *f*

hamstring popl·es -itis *m*

hand man·us -ūs *f*

head cap·ut -itis *n*

back of the head occipíti·um -ī *n*

top of the head vert·ex -icis *m*

hearing (*sense*) audīt·us -ūs *m*

heart cor, cordis *n*

heel cal·x -cis *f*

hip cox·a -ae *f*, coxénd·ix -icis *f*

intestines intestín·a -órum *npl*

jaw maxíll·a -ae *f*

joint artícul·us -ī *m*

kidneys rēn·ēs -ium *npl*

knee gen·ū -ūs *n*

kneecap patéll·a -ae *f*

knuckle artícul·us -ī *m* dígitū

lap grémi·um -ī *n*

leg crūs, crūris *n*

ligament ligám·en -inis *n*

lip labr·um -ī *n*

lower lip labrum *n* inférius

upper lip labrum *n* supérius

liver iec·ur -oris *n*

lung pulm·ō -ónis *m*

marrow medúll·a -ae *f*

mouth ōs, ōris *n*

muscle múscul·us -ī *m*

mustache súbi·um -ī *n*

mucus mūc·us -ī *m*

nail ungu·is -is *m*; **to cut the nails** unguēs résec·ō -áre -uī -tus

navel umbilíc·us -ī *m*

neck coll·um -ī *n*, cerv·īx -ícis *f*

nipple papíll·a -ae *f*

nose nās·us -ī <i>m</i>	taste (<i>sense</i>) gustāt·us -ūs <i>m</i>
nostrils nār·ēs -ium <i>fpl</i>	tear lácim·a -ae <i>f</i>
organ vīsc·us -eris <i>n</i>	temple temp·us -oris <i>n</i>
palate palát·um -ī <i>n</i>	tendon tend·ó -inis <i>m</i>
pancreas páncre·as -atis <i>n</i>	testicle testícul·us -ī <i>m</i>
pelvis pelv·is -is <i>f</i>	thigh fem·ur -oris <i>n</i>
penis pēn·is -is <i>m</i>	thumb poll·ex -icis <i>m</i>
phlegm pītúft·a -ae <i>f</i>	throat fauc·ēs -ium <i>fpl</i>
pill pílul·a -ae <i>f</i>	toe dígit·us -ī <i>m</i> (pedis)
pupil pūpíll·a -ae <i>f</i>	big toe poll·ex -icis <i>m</i>
rectum ān·us -ī <i>m</i>	toenail ungu·is -is <i>m</i> pedis
rib cost·a -ae <i>f</i>	tongue lingu·a -ae <i>f</i>
saliva salív·a -ae <i>f</i>	tonsils tonsíll·ae -árum <i>fpl</i>
shinbone túbī·a -ae <i>f</i>	tooth dēns, dentis <i>m</i>
shoulder húmer·us -ī <i>m</i>	incisors dentēs <i>mpl</i> p̄rīmórēs
shoulder blade scápul·a -ae <i>f</i>	molars dentēs <i>mpl</i> maxillárēs
side lat·us -eris <i>n</i> , íli·a -órum <i>npl</i>	touch (<i>sense</i>) tact·us -ūs <i>m</i>
sight (<i>sense</i>) vīs·us -ūs <i>m</i>	vagina vāgín·a -ae <i>f</i>
skull calvári·a -ae <i>f</i>	vein vēn·a -ae <i>f</i>
smell (<i>sense</i>) odōrāt·us -ūs <i>m</i>	vertebra vértēbr·a -ae <i>f</i>
sole sol·um -ī <i>n</i> , plant·a -ae <i>f</i>	windpipe artéri·a -ae <i>f</i>
spine spīn·a -ae <i>f</i>	womb úter·us -ī <i>m</i>
spit spūt·um -ī <i>n</i>	waist média pars <i>f</i> córporis
stomach stómach·us -ī <i>m</i> , ven·ter -tris <i>m</i>	wrist p̄rīmóris man·us -ūs <i>f</i>
sweat sūd·or -óris <i>m</i>	wrist bone carp·us -ī <i>m</i>

Chapter VII: Health and Physical Fitness

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I **A trainer interviews a young athlete.**

Exercitátor	Claudī, vīsne esse āthlḗta?	Trainer: <i>Claude, do you want to be an athlete?</i>
Claúdius	Ita. Ego cōfīdiē mē exerceō.	Claude: <i>Yes. I exercise every day.</i>
Exercitátor	Quid facis?	<i>What do you do?</i>
Claúdius	Ego cōfīdiē tolūtīm cúrsitō.	<i>I jog daily.</i>
Exercitátor	Euge! Quam longē tolūtīm cúrsitās?	<i>Terrific! How far do you jog?</i>
Claúdius	Duo mīlia pássuum tolūtīm cúrsitō.	<i>I jog two miles.</i>
Exercitátor	Quid áliud facis?	<i>What else do you do?</i>
Claúdius	Sī tempus mihi est, líbrāmēnta tollō.	<i>If I have time, I lift weights.</i>
Exercitátor	Euge! Quid áliud facis?	<i>Terrific! What else do you do?</i>
Claúdius	Ego natō in piscīnā nostrā.	<i>I swim in our swimming pool.</i>
Exercitátor	Sī tū haec assíduē faciēs, tū quidem eris āthlḗta summus.	<i>If you do this regularly, you'll surely become a top athlete.</i>

LEVEL II **The trainer attends to an injured athlete.**

Exercitátor	Paule, quid tibi est?	Trainer: <i>Paul, what's wrong with you?</i>
Paulus	Ego mihi nócuī in gymnásiō.	Paul: <i>I hurt myself in the gym.</i>
Exercitátor	Quid áccidit? Vídeō contúsiōnēs in crúribus.	<i>What happened? I see bruises on your legs.</i>
Paulus	Ego et amícus currēbāmus; ego cāsū cecidī et mē cóntudī.	<i>My friend and I were running; I accidentally fell and bruised myself.</i>

Exercitátor	Habésne dolórem ingéntem?	<i>Do you have a lot of pain?</i>
Paulus	Sānē. Ecce genū sinístrum tumēscit.	<i>Yes. Look, my left knee is swelling up.</i>
Exercitátor	Vídeō genū esse tumidíssimum.	<i>I see that your knee is very swollen.</i>
Paulus	Quid fáciam?	<i>What should I do?</i>
Exercitátor	Prímum ómnium, fovē illud genū in aquā frígida bis in diē.	<i>First of all, soak that knee in cold water twice a day.</i>
Paulus	Id hódie ter iam fōvī, sed nihil prōdest.	<i>I've already soaked it three times today, but it doesn't do any good.</i>
Exercitátor	Potésne ambulāre?	<i>Are you able to walk?</i>
Paulus	Agrē. Cum ambulāre temptō, genū vehemēter dolet. Quid fáciam nésciō.	<i>Hardly. When I try to walk, my knee hurts terribly. I don't know what to do.</i>
Exercitátor	Cum prímum fferī potest, ī in valētudináriū. Nōn possum id cūrāre hīc. Médicus genū sánābit.	<i>As soon as it is possible, go to the infirmary. I can't treat it here. The doctor will heal your knee.</i>

LEVEL III A mother checks her daughter's health.

Māter	Amánda, quid est tibi? Nōn salva vidēris. Óculi rubent et vidēris febricitāre.	Mother: <i>Amanda, what's wrong with you? You don't look well. Your eyes are red and you seem to be running a fever.</i>
Amánda	Vídeor labōrāre gravēdine. Faucēs meae sunt raucae et ego contínuē álgeō et cōstānter tússiō.	Amanda: <i>I seem to be suffering from a cold. My throat is hoarse, and I am continually cold, and constantly coughing.</i>
Māter	Mírūm est, nam valētúdine bonā úteris.	<i>That's strange, since you enjoy good health.</i>
Amánda	Vēra dīcis, māter. Valētúdinem semper cūrāvī. Assíduē mē exérceō.	<i>You're right, mother. I have always taken care of my health. I exercise constantly.</i>

Māter	Id sciō. Tū es cōrporis hábitūs excellētis. Fortásse tū hanc gravédinē contrāxístī apud scholam.	<i>I know that. You are in excellent shape. Maybe you caught this cold at school.</i>
Amánda	Id fierī potest, Mamma. Plēraéque ex amíciīs meīs gravédine labórant.	<i>That's possible, Mom. Most of my friends are suffering from colds.</i>
Māter	Vídeō. Fortásse áliquis puer, gravédine labórāns, tē bāsiávit.	<i>I see. Perhaps some boy with a cold kissed you.</i>
Amánda	Rēs omnínō nōn ita est. Ego iam tussiébam ántequam mē bāsiávit!	<i>That's not at all the case. I already had a cough before he kissed me.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

ache *s* dol·or -ōris *m*

ache *intr* dol·eō -ēre -uī; **my muscle aches** mūsculus mihi dolet

aching dol·ēns -éntis

acne acn·ē -ēs *f*

acupuncture acūpūctūr·a -ae *f*

acute (*illness*) acūt·us -a -um

adrenaline adrēnālín·um -ī *n*; **the adrenaline flows** adrēnālínūm fluit

agile ágil·is -is -e

ail: what ails you? quid est tibi?

ailment mal·um -ī *n*

appetite (cibī) appetēnti·a -ae *f*; **lack of appetite** inédi·a -ae *f*; **to give s.o. a good appetite** álicui (cibī) appetēntiam excitāre *or* fác·iō -ere fēcī factus

apply (*a remedy*) adhīb·eō -ēre -uī -itus

arthritis arthrit·is -idis *f*

aspirin aspirín·um -ī *n*

asthma asthm·a -atis *n*

athlete áthlēt·a -ae *mf*; **like an athlete** áthlētice

athletic áthlētíc·us -a -um; **athletic competition** áthlētárūm certám·en -inis *n*

athletics áthlētíc·a -ae *f*

attack *s* (*of illness*) ímpet·us -ūs *m*, accéssi·ō -ōnis *f*

attack *tr* (*of a disease*) occupāre

bad aliénus -a -um; **wine is bad for you** vīnum est aliénūm tibi

bad breath foet·or -ōris *m*

bald calv·us -a -um

baldness calvíti·um -ī *n*

bandage *s* fāsci·a -ae *f*

bandage *tr* ligāre

bathe (*a sore limb*) fōv·eō -ēre fōvī

bed lect·us -ī *m*; **to be confined to bed** lectō tén·eor -ērī tentus sum; **to get out of bed** ē lectō sur·gō -gere -rēxī

bed-ridden valētūdínári·us -a -um

biopsy biópsi·a -ae *f*

black and blue lívid·us -a -um; **black and blue mark** lív·or -ōris *m*

blood pressure préssi·ō -ōnis *f* sánguinis

bloodshot: he has bloodshot eyes <i>oculi eius ságuine suffúsi sunt</i>	<i>morbum or advérsam valētúdinem contráhere</i>
boil <i>fúruncul·us -ī m</i>	convalesce <i>convalésc·ō -ere</i>
bowlegged <i>valg·us -a -um</i>	cool off <i>tr refrīgeráre intr refrīgerári</i>
breathe <i>spíráre; to breathe in</i> <i>inspíráre; to breathe out</i> <i>expíráre</i>	cough <i>intr túss·iō -íre</i>
bruise <i>s contúsi·ō -ónis f</i>	cough <i>s túss·is -is m; to have a cough</i> <i>túss·iō -íre</i>
bruise <i>tr contúnd·ō -ere cóntudī contúsus</i>	cough drop <i>pastíll·us -ī m tussiculáris</i>
bundle up <i>sē bene opér·iō -íre -uī</i>	cramp <i>convúlsi·ō -ónis f</i>
cancer <i>can·cer -crī m</i>	curable <i>sánábil·is -is -e</i>
capsule <i>cápsul·a -ae f</i>	cure <i>sánáre</i>
cardiac arrest <i>stas·is -eōs f cardíaca</i>	dentist <i>médic·us -ī m dentárius; medic·a -ae f dentária</i>
carcinoma <i>carcinóm·a -atis n</i>	dermatologist <i>dermatológ·us -ī m (·a -ae f)</i>
care <i>cūr·a -ae f; take good care of your health!</i> <i>cūrā dīligénte valētúdinem tuam!</i>	diabetes <i>diabét·ēs -is m mellítus</i>
catarracts <i>catarráct·ae -árum fpl oculárēs</i>	diaphragm <i>praecórdi·a -órum npl</i>
cause (<i>pain, swelling</i>) <i>móveō movére mōvī mōtus</i>	diet <i>s victūs rát·iō -ónis f</i>
chicken pox <i>varicéll·ae -árum fpl</i>	diet <i>intr victūs ratióne observáre</i>
chronic <i>long·us -a -um, diútúrnus -a -um</i>	digest <i>cón·coquō -cóquere -cóxī -cóctus</i>
coach (<i>of gymnastic training</i>) <i>exercitát·or -óris m, (·rīx -rícis f)</i>	digestion <i>concócti·ō -ónis f</i>
cold <i>s gravéd·ō -inis f; to catch a cold</i> <i>gravédinem cón·trahō -tráhere -tráxī -tráctus; to have a cold</i> <i>gravédine labóráre</i>	disease <i>morb·us -ī m</i>
cold <i>adj frígid·us -a -um; to feel cold</i> <i>álg·eō -ére alsī</i>	dizziness <i>vertíg·ō -inis f</i>
complexion <i>col·or -óris m; having a healthy complexion</i> <i>colóráť·us -a -um</i>	dizzy <i>vertiginós·us -a -um</i>
condition <i>stat·us -ūs m; physical condition</i> <i>córpōris hábit·us -ūs m</i>	doctor <i>médic·us -ī m, medic·a -ae f</i>
confined to bed <i>lectō tenéři</i>	doctor's office <i>medicín·a -ae f</i>
contract <i>cóntrah·ō -ere contráxī contráctus; to contract an illness</i>	dose <i>pórti·ō -ónis f; small dose</i> <i>portiúncul·a -ae f</i>
	drug (<i>as remedy, medicine</i>) <i>medicámént·um -ī n, medicám·en -inis n; (as hallucinogen)</i> <i>medicámēt·um -ī n psychotrópicum</i>
	enjoy (<i>good health</i>) <i>ūtor ūtī ūsus sum (valētúdine prósperā)</i>
	exercise <i>s exercitáti·ō -ónis f</i>
	exercise <i>intr sē exérc·eō -ére -uī</i>
	exhale <i>spíritum émítt·ō -ere émísi émíssus</i>

fart *s* pēdit·um -ī *n*

fart *intr* pēd·ō -ere pepēdī

fat obēs·us -a -um (*opp*: grācil·is -is -e)

fatigue fatigāti·ō -ōnis *f*

fever febr·is -is *f*; **constant fever**
contīnua febris; **high fever** magna *or*
ardēns febris; **slight fever** febrīcul·a
-ae *f*; **to run a fever** febrīcitāre

fracture fractūr·a -ae *f*

germ germ·en -inis *n*

glaucoma glaucōm·a -atis *n*

go down (*fever*) conquiēsc·ō -ere
conquiēvī; (*swelling*) sē summīt·ō
-ere summīsī

gym gymnāsi·um -ī *n*

gym instructor exercitāt·or -ōris *m*;
exercitāt·ix -īcis *f*

gymnastic gymnāstic·us -a -um

gymnastics ars, artis *f* gymnāstica

hale and hardy salv·us et vālid·us -a
-um

hard on inimíc·us -a -um (+ *dat*)

have or suffer from (*an illness, a
disease*) affic·ior afficī afféctus sum
(+ *abl*) *or* labōrāre (+ *abl*, ab + *abl*,
ex + *abl*); **that man has cancer** ille
cancrō afficitur *or* cancrō labórat

heal *tr* sārāre **II** *intr* sārēsc·ō -ere

health (*good or bad*) valētūd·ō -inis *f*;
bad health advērsa (*or* mala, gravis,
infirma) valētūdō; **bad health
suddenly hit me** mala valētūdō mē
repēntē invāsīt; **good health** bona,
(*or* firma, cōmmoda, prōspera)
valētūdō; **in sound health** vālid·us
-a -um

health food alimént·um -ī *n* salūbre

healthy sār·us -a -um, salv·us -a -um

heart attack impet·us -ūs *m* cardíacus

heart failure dēfēcti·ō -ōnis *f* cardíaca

heart transplant cordis trānsplantāti·ō
-ōnis *f*

hernia hērni·a -ae *f*

heroin heroín·um -ī *n* **to use heroin**
heroīnō ūtor ūtī ūsus sum

high blood pressure hypertóni·a -ae *f*

hoarse rauc·us -a -um

hormone hormón·um -ī *n*

hospital valētūdināri·um -ī *n*

hygiene hygiēni·ē -ēs *f*; **practice
hygiene** hygiēniēn exercēre

hygienic hygiēnic·us -a -um

illness morb·us -ī *m*, (*mala*) valētūd·ō
-inis *f*; **serious illness** gravis
valētūdō

ills mal·a -ōrum *npl*

indigestion crūdīt·ās -ātis *f*

infirmary valētūdināri·um -ī *n*

inflamm inflammāre

inflammation inflammāti·ō -ōnis *f*

irritate exasperāre

kidney stones cálcul·ī -ōrum *mpl*
rēnālēs

jog tolūtīm cursitāre

lack of appetite inēdi·a -ae *f*

laxative medicām·en -inis *n* laxātivum

lift weights librāmēt·a -ōrum *npl* toll·ō
-ere sústulī sublātus

ligament ligām·en -inis *n*

lotion linimēt·um -ī *n*

lump túbércul·um -ī *n*

medical practice medicín·a -ae *f*

medication medicāmēt·um -ī *n*

medicine medicín·a -ae *f*; **to practice
medicine** medicínam exerc·eō -ēre
-uī

mouthwash collūtóri·um -ī *n*

mumps parōtīt·is -idis *f*

muscle mŭscul·us -ī *m*; **pull a muscle**
mŭsculum distórqu·eō -ĕre distórsi
distórtus

musclebound mŭsculīs nimis
cōnstríct·us -a

muscle cramp mŭsculī convúlsi·ō
-ōnis *f*

muscle spasm mŭsculī spasm·us -ī *m*

muscular mŭsculós·us -a -um

muscular dystrophy dystróphi·a -ae *f*
mŭsculáris

nearsighted my·ops -ópis

nearsightedness myópi·a -ae *f*

nerve nerv·us -ī *m*

nourishment alimént·um -ī *n*

nurse nosócom·a -ae *f*; nosócom·us -ī *m*

nursing home gerontocómi·um -ī *n*

obese obés·us -a -um

obesity obésit·ās -átis *f*

ophthalmologist ophthalmólog·us -ī *m*
(·a -ae *f*)

pacemaker impulsóri·um -ī *n*
cardíacum

pain dol·or -óris *m*; **severe pain** ingēns
or véhemēns dolor

patient *s* ae·ger -grī *m*, ae·gra -grae *f*

physical condition córporis hábit·us
-ūs *m*

pill pílu·a -ae *f*

pimple pústul·a -ae *f*

pulse vĕnárūm puls·us -ūs *m*; (**fast**
vegétior; **weak** languídior); **to feel**
s.o.'s pulse vĕnās *or* pulsum
vĕnárūm alicúius tentāre

psychiatrist psŭchĭá·ter -trī *m* (·tra -trae
f)

psychologist psŭchológic·us -ī *m*
(·a -ae *f*)

radiation treatment cūrátī·ō -ónis *f*
radiális

recover recíp·iō -ere recĕpī suam
valĕtúdinem bonam; **to recover**
from a serious illness ē gravī morbō
recreári

relieve leváre

remedy for remédi·um -ī *n* (+ *gen*)

run curr·ō -ere cucurrī cursum

running cursúr·a -ae *f*

runny nose distillātió·n·ēs -um *fpl*

shape: to be in bad (good) shape malī
(bonī) hábitus esse, in malō (bonō)
hábitū esse

shiver trem·or -óris *m*; (*severe*)
membrórum quassáti·ō -ónis *f*

shiver trem·ō -ere -uī

shortness of breath anhĕláti·ō -ónis *f*

sick ae·ger -gra -grum, aegrót·us -a
-um; **to get sick** in morbum íncid·ō
-ere -ī

sickly male válid·us -a -um

sickness morb·us -ī *m*

situps: to do situps idéntidem resíd·eō
-ĕre resĕdī

skin cut·is -is *f* (**pale** pállida; **dry** árida;
soft mollis; **tough** dŭra; **wrinkled**
rŭgós·us -a -um)

skinny macilént·us -a -um

slim grácil·is -is -e (*opp*: obĕsus)

smallpox variól·ae -árūm *fpl* **smallpox**
vaccination vaccínáti·ō -ónis *f*
variólárum

sneeze stérn·uō -úere -uī

sneezing sternŭmĕnt·um -ī *n*

sore dol·ĕns -ĕntis; **my back is sore**
tergum mihi dolet

sound ínte·ger -gra -grum

spasm spasm·us -ī *m*

sprain *s* luxátŭr·a -ae *f*

sprain *tr* luxáre

stroke apopléxi·a -ae *f* cérebrī

strong válid·us -a -um (*opp*: imbēcíl·us -a -um)

sun tan adústus col·or -óris *m*; **to get a sun tan** coloráre

suntanned adústus

surgeon chīrúrg·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

sweat *s* sūd·or -óris *m*; **to break a sweat** insūdáre

sweat *intr* sūdáre

swell sē attóll·ō -ere (*opp*: sē summíttere)

swell up (*of limbs*) túrg·eō -ére tursī

swollen túmid·us -a -um

symptom not·a -ae *f*, sign·um -ī *n*

tablet pastíl·us -ī *m*

tendonitis tendovāgīnít·is -idis *f*

throat fauc·ēs -ium *fpl*

toothache dol·or -óris *m* déntium

toothbrush pēnicúl·us -ī *m* dentárius

toothpaste past·a -ae *f* dentária

train *tr* (*for physical proficiency*) exercitáre || *intr* sē exercitáre

trainer (*of athletes*) exercitát·or -óris *m*, exercitátr·ix -ícis *f*

treat cūráre

treatment (for) cūrāti·ō -ónis *f* (+ *gen of illness*)

trouble: to have stomach trouble stómachō labōráre

tuberculosis phtís·is -is *f*

turn for the worse in detérius inclinári

virus vīr·us -ī *n*; **there is a virus going around** vīrus percrēbréscit

vitamin vítamín·um -ī *n*

well salv·us -a -um

wrinkle rūg·a -ae *f*

wrinkled rūgós·us -a -um

Chapter VIII: Food and Drink

CONVERSATIONS

	LEVEL I	A waitress waits on a senator.
Minístra	Salvē, senátor. Possúmne tibi ministráre?	<i>Waitress: Hello, senator. Can I help you?</i>
Senátor	Étiam.	<i>Senator: Yes.</i>
Minístra	Vísne súmere ientáculum an prándium?	<i>Do you want to eat breakfast or lunch?</i>
Senátor	Quín bene máne est. Ítaque ientáculum súmam, quaesō.	<i>Why, it's early in the morning. And so I'll have breakfast, please.</i>
Minístra	Vísne ōva frícta an ōva mīxta an ōva dūra an ápala?	<i>Do you want fried eggs or scrambled eggs or hard-boiled eggs or soft-boiled?</i>
Senátor	Volō habére láganum ex ōvīs.	<i>I want to have an omelet.</i>
Minístra	Vísne lardum cum láganō?	<i>Do you want bacon with your omelet?</i>
Senátor	Étiam, at tantúmmodo pauca segménta.	<i>Yes, but just a few strips.</i>
Minístra	Vísne pānem tostum an pāniculōs?	<i>Do you want toast or rolls?</i>
Senátor	Affer ad mē áliquid pānis tostī.	<i>Bring me some toast.</i>
Minístra	Et quid vīs pōtáre? Cáffeam?	<i>And what do you want to drink? Coffee?</i>
Senátor	Ita, pocíllum cáffea cum cremō. Et própera! Fame móríor.	<i>Yes, a cup of coffee with cream. And hurry! I'm dying of hunger.</i>
Minístra	Ientáculum tuum mox hīc erit.	<i>Your breakfast will soon be here.</i>

LEVEL II **A waiter serves dinner.**

Minister	Salvē. Possúmne tibi nunc servíre, bone vir?	Waiter: Hello. Can I serve you now, sir?
Philíppus	Sānē potes.	Philip: Yes, indeed, you can.
Minister	Quid in cēnā sūmēs?	What will you have for supper?
Philíppus	Búbulam assam velim, quaesō.	I'd like roast beef, please.
Minister	Utrum sēmicoctam an percóctam?	Rare or well done?
Philíppus	Percóctam, quaesō. Et pōma terrēstria frīcta.	Well done, please. And fried potatoes.
Minister	Vīsne iūs an acētária?	Do you want soup or a salad?
Philíppus	Quod iūs habēs hódie?	What kind of soup do you have today?
Minister	Iūs collýricum suāve ex búbulā.	Delicious beef noodle soup.
Philíppus	Accípiam acētária.	I'll take the salad.
Minister	Vīsne pocíllum cáffee an pocíllum theae?	Do you want a cup of coffee or a cup of tea?
Philíppus	Neutrum vērō. Praéferō vīnum.	Actually, neither. I prefer wine.
Minister	Utrum vīnum album an sanguíneum?	White wine or red?
Philíppus	Accípiam vīnum sanguíneum. Praéferō vīnum austérum vīnō dulcī.	I'll take the red wine. I prefer dry wine to sweet wine.
Minister	Vīsne bellária?	Do you want dessert?
Philíppus	Estne in promptū placénta ex socolátā?	Is chocolate cake available?
Minister	Sānē quidem. Vīsne áliquid ámplius?	Yes, indeed. Do you want anything else?
Philíppus	Nihil ámplius, grátias.	Nothing else, thanks.
Minister	Appónam cibum quam p̄imum.	I'll serve your meal as soon as I can.

LEVEL III Planning a shopping trip.		
Māter	Phyllis, nōbīs obsōnāndum est hōdiē māne. Esne prompta?	<i>Mother: Phyllis, we have to go shopping this morning. Are you ready?</i>
Phyllis	Bene, Mamma. Dīc mihi quid velīs et ego ōmnia in hāc tābulā dēnotābō.	<i>Phyllis: Fine, Mom. Tell me what you want and I'll jot down everything on this tablet.</i>
Māter	Prīmum ōmniū, ad laniēnam ībimus.	<i>First of all, we will go to the butcher shop.</i>
Phyllis	Quibus cārnibus egēmus?	<i>What meats do we need?</i>
Māter	Velim ēmere offās porcīnās et būbulam assam, et fortāsse āliquot hillās calētēs.	<i>I'd like to buy pork chops and roast beef and some hot dogs.</i>
Phyllis	Āliquid āmplius?	<i>Anything else?</i>
Māter	Nihil āmplius apud laniēnam. Cārō hōdiē tam pretiōsa est! Dēinde ībimus in forum hōlitōrium.	<i>Nothing more at the butcher shop. Meat is so expensive nowadays. Next we will go to the vegetable market.</i>
Phyllis	Quae hōlera vīs ēmere ibi?	<i>What vegetables do you want to buy there?</i>
Māter	Lactūcam, cucūmerēs, carōtās, brāssicam. Adhūc hābeō satis aliōrum hōlerum.	<i>Lettuce, cucumbers, carrots, and cabbage. I still have enough of the other vegetables.</i>
Phyllis	Vīsne ire étiam in forum piscārium?	<i>Do you also want to go to the fish market?</i>
Māter	Tantūmodo sī passer recēs est vēnālis hōdiē.	<i>Only if fresh flounder is for sale today.</i>
Phyllis	Egēmūsne āliquō dē pīstrīnā?	<i>Do we need anything from the bakery?</i>
Māter	Ita, trēs pānēs et decem pāniculōs atque āliquot crūstula.	<i>Yes, three loaves of bread and ten rolls, as well as some cookies.</i>
Phyllis	Cūr tot obsōnia nōbīs emēnda sunt?	<i>Why do we have to buy so many groceries?</i>

Māter	Pater pátruum suum et ámitam et eórum líberōs ad cēnam vocávit. Spērō eōs canem suum nōn allātúrōs.	<i>Because father invited his uncle and aunt and their children to dinner. I hope they don't bring their dog along.</i>
Phyllis	Sic ego ipsa spērō.	<i>I hope so too.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

alcohol álcohol -is <i>n</i>	butcher láni·us -ī <i>m</i>
alcoholic alcoholíc·us -a -um	butcher shop laniéñ·a -ae <i>f</i>
almond amýgdal·um -ī <i>n</i>	butter <i>s</i> butýr·um -ī <i>n</i>
appetizer gustátí·ō -ónis <i>f</i>	butter <i>tr</i> butýrum adhib·eō -ēre -uī -itus ad (+ <i>acc</i>)
apple māl·um -ī <i>n</i>	cabbage brássic·a -ae <i>f</i> , cramb·ē -ēs <i>f</i>
apple pie crúst·um -ī <i>n</i> ex mālīs	cake placént·a -ae <i>f</i>
apricot armeníac·um -ī <i>n</i>	candy cuppédi·ae -árum <i>fpl</i>
artichoke cínar·a -ae <i>f</i>	carrot carót·a -ae <i>f</i>
asparagus aspárag·us -ī <i>m</i>	catsup <i>see</i> ketchup
bacon lard·um -ī <i>n</i>	cauliflower brássic·a -ae <i>f</i> Pompēiána
baker pīst·or -óris <i>m</i> , pīst·rīx -rícis <i>f</i>	celery helēoselín·um -ī <i>n</i>
bakery pīstrín·a -ae <i>f</i>	cereal cereál·ia -ium <i>npl</i>
banana ariéñ·a -ae <i>f</i> , banán·a -ae <i>f</i>	cheese cake savíll·um -ī <i>n</i>
bean fab·a -ae <i>f</i>	cheese cásē·us -ī <i>m</i>
beef búbul·a -ae <i>f</i>	cherry céras·um -ī <i>n</i>
beer cervísi·a -ae <i>f</i>	cherry pie crúst·um -ī <i>n</i> ex cérasīs
berry bacc·a -ae <i>f</i>	chestnut castáne·a -ae <i>f</i>
birthday cake líb·um -ī <i>n</i> nātále	chicken (<i>as food</i>) gallínáce·a -ae <i>f</i>
bland lēn·is -is -e	chocolate socolát·a -ae <i>f</i>
blueberry vaccíni·um -ī <i>n</i>	clam my·ax -acis <i>m</i>
boiled ēlíc·us -a -um	clear the table mundáre mēnsam
booze tēmét·um -ī <i>n</i>	cocktail própom·a -atis <i>n</i> , cinn·is -is <i>m</i>
bread pān·is -is <i>m</i>	coffee cáffe·a -ae <i>f</i>
breaded salígne·us -a -um	coffee cup pocíll·um -ī <i>n</i> cafféárium
breakfast ientácul·um -ī <i>n</i>	coffee pot oll·a -ae <i>f</i> cáffea
broil tórr·eō -ēre -uī tostus	coffee set sýnthēs·is -is <i>f</i> cafféária
broth iūs, iūris <i>n</i> , iúscul·um -ī <i>n</i>	cook coqu·ō -ere coxī coctus
bun collýr·is -idis <i>f</i>	

- cookie** crústul·um -ī *n*
corkscrew extrácul·um -ī *n*
corn maízi·um -ī *n*; **corn on the cob**
 maízium -ī *n* in spicā
course fércul·um -ī *n*
cream crem·um -ī *n*, flōs, flōris *m* lactis
cucumber cúcum·is -eris *m*
cup of coffee (of tea) pocíll·um -ī *n*
 cáffae (theae)
dessert bellári·a -órum *npl*, mēns·a -ae *f*
 secúnda
dine cēnāre; **to dine out** forīs cēnāre
dinner cēn·a -ae *f*; **to eat dinner**
 cēnāre, cēnam sūm·ō -ere -psī -ptus;
to have a roast for dinner assum in
 cēnā háb·eō -ére -uī -itus
dressing embámm·a -atis *n*; **Caesar**
(Blue Cheese, French, Italian,
Russian, Thousand Island)
 embámma Caesáriánum (cáseī
 caerúleī, Gállicum, Itálicum,
 Rússicum, mille ĩnsulárum)
drink *s* pōti·ō -ónis *f*; **drinks** pōtióñ·ēs
 -um *fpl*, pōtulént·a -órum *npl*
drink *tr* pōtāre
duck (*as food*) anafín·a -ae *f*
eat edō ēsse ēdī ēsus; (*a meal*) sūm·ō
 -ere -psī -ptus
egg ōv·um -ī *n*; **fried** frīctum; **hard-**
boiled dūrum; **soft-boiled** ápalum;
scrambled permíxtum
fish (*as food*) piscát·us -ūs *m*
flounder pass·er -eris *m*
food cib·us -ī *m*
fork furcíll·a -ae *f*, fuscínul·a -ae *f*
French fries pōm·a -órum terréstria
 frīcta
fresh rec·ēns -éntis
fruit pōm·a -órum *npl*
frozen congelāt·us -a -um; **frozen**
dinner cēn·a -ae *f* congelāta; **frozen**
food(s) cib·ī -órum *mpl* congelātī
fry fríg·ō -ere frīxī frīctus
frying pan sartág·ō -inis *f*
garlic áli·um -ī *n*
grape ūv·a -ae *f*
green pepper piperít·is -idis *f*
grill *s* crātícul·a -ae *f*
grill *tr* super crātículam assáre
ham pern·a -ae *f*; **smoked ham** perna
 fūmósa
hamburger búbul·a -ae *f* concísa
have (*e.g., dinner*) sūm·ō -ere -psī -ptus
hazelnut avellán·a -ae *f*
honey mel, mellis *n*
hot dog hill·a -ae calēns (*gen:* hillae
 caléntis) *f*
horseradish amoráci·a -um *npl*
hunger fam·ēs -is *f*
ice cream congélidum crem·um -ī *n*
jelly quil·on -ī *n*
juice succ·us -ī *m*
ketchup kétsup·um -ī *n*
kidney bean phasél·us -ī *m*
ladle trull·a -ae *f*
lamb (*as food*) agnín·a -ae *f*
lemon cítre·um -ī *n*
lemonade límonát·a -ae *f*
lentil lēn·s -tis *f*
lettuce lactíc·a -ae *f*
loaf of bread pān·is -is *m*
lobster locúst·a -ae *f*
macaroni past·a -ae *f* tubuláta
margarine margarín·um -ī *n*
market macéll·um -ī *n*

mashed potatoes pultícul·a -ae *f* ex solánīs

mayonnaise liquám·en -inis *n*
Magónicum

meal cib·us -ī *m*

meat car·ō -nis *f*

meat tray carnári·um -ī *n*

menu ind·ex -icis *m* (or tabéll·a -ae *f*)
cibōrum

milk lāc lactis *n*

mineral water aqu·a -ae *f* minerális

mixed salad commíxta acētári·a
-ōrum *npl*

muffin scriblít·a -ae *f*

mulberry mōr·um -ī *n*

mushroom fung·us -ī *m*

mustard sináp·i (or sináp·e) -is *n*

napkin mapp·a -ae *f*

noodle soup iū·s -ris *n* collýric·um

nut nux, nucis *f*

olive oil óle·um -ī *n*

olive olív·a -ae *f*

omelet lágan·um -ī *n* ex òvīs

onion caep·a -ae *f*

orange māl·um -ī *n* aurántium

orangeade mālī aurántiī pōti·ō -ōnis *f*

orange juice aurántiī succ·us -ī *m*

oyster óstre·a -ae *f*

pancake artolágan·um -ī *n*

parsley ápi·um -ī *n*, petroselín·um -ī *n*

pasta collýr·a -ae *f*

pea pīs·um -ī *n*

peach pérsic·um -ī *n*

peanut árach·is -idis *f* (hypogéa)

peanut butter bütýr·um -ī *n* ex
arachidibus

pear pir·um -ī *n*

peel *s* cut·is -is *f*

peel *tr* reseccáre cutem (+ *gen*)

pepper pip·er -eris *n*

pepper shaker piperín·um -ī *n*

pickle sálgam·um -ī *n*

pie crúst·um -ī *n*

piece frúst·um -ī *n*

pineapple píne·a -ae *f* (Americána)

pitcher úrce·us -ī *m*

plate patéll·a -ae *f*

plum prūn·um -ī *n*

pork porcín·a -ae *f*

pork chop off·a -ae *f* porcína

potato pōm·um -ī *n* terréstre; **baked**

potato pōmum terréstre in furnō

coctum; **fried potatoes** pōma

terréstria frícta; **mashed potatoes**

pultícul·a -ae *f* ex pōmīs terréstribus

potato chips lámín·ae -árum *fpl*

pōmōrum terréstrium

powder sugar sácchar·um -ī *n*

pulvéreum

pretzel pretíol·a -ae *f*; **soft pretzel**

mollis pretíola

prune prūn·um -ī *n* condítum

radish rádícul·a -ae *f*

raisin (ūva) pass·a -ae *f*

rare sēmicóct·us -a -um (*opp*:

percóctus)

raspberry mōr·um -ī *n* Īdaeum

restaurant caupón·a -ae *f*

rice orýz·a -ae *f*

roast *tr* assáre

roast *s* ass·um -ī *n*

roast beef búbul·a -ae *f* assa

roast pork porcín·a -ae *f* assa

roll pānícul·us -ī *m*

salad acētári·a -ōrum *npl*

- salad dressing** *see* dressing
salt sāl, salis *n*
salt shaker salín·um -ī *n*
sandwich pastíll·um -ī *n* fartum; **ham sandwich** pastíllum pernā fartum
sardine sard·a -ae *f*
sauce iūs, iūris *n*
sausage farcím·en -inis *n*, bótlus -ī *m*
seasoning condímént·um -ī *n*
serve (*a person*) sérv·iō -íre -iī; (*food*) appón·ō -ere appósuī appósitus
shell putám·en -inis *n*
shrimp squill·a -ae *f*
silverware argénte·a -órum *npl*
sip sorbilláre
slice segmént·um -ī *n*
soup iūs, iūris *n*, iúscul·um -ī *n*; **hot soup** iūs férvēns
spicy ácer ácris ácre
spoon cóchle·ār -áris *n*
steak frúst·um -ī *n* búbulae
stew iūrulént·um -ī *n*
stewed iūrulént·us -a -um
stove foc·us -ī *m*
straw (*for drinking*) sīph·ō -ónis *m*
strawberry frāg·um -ī *n*
strip segmént·um -ī *n*
sugar sácchar·um -ī *n*
sugar bowl váscul·um -ī *n* sáccharī
sugar cube sácchar·um -ī *n* cúbicum
table mēns·a -ae *f*
taste sáp·iō -ere -ívi or -iī; **to taste like** sápere (+ *acc*)
tea the·a -ae *f*
tip corollári·um -ī *n*; stips, stipsis *f*
toast pān·is -is *m* tostus
tomato lycopérsic·um -ī *n*
tray fércul·um -ī *n*
veal vitulín·a -ae *f*
vegetable hol·us -eris *n*
venison vēnāti·ō -ónis *f*
vinegar acēt·um -ī *n*
waiter minís·ter -trī *m*
waitress ministr·a -ae *f*
walnut iūgl·āns -ándis *f*
water aqu·a -ae *f*
watermelon mēlópep·ō -ónis *m*
white bread pān·is -is *m* cándidus
whole-wheat bread autopýr·us ī *m*
wine vīn·um -ī *n*; **dry** austérum; **sweet** dulce; **red** sanguíneum; **light** ténue; **white** album

[NOTE—The Romans did not have candy, chocolate, coffee, corn, ice cream, peanuts, potatoes, popcorn, tea, tomatoes, or turkey. They knew of butter and sugar, but used them only for medicinal purposes. Some of these items came into use in the Middle Ages, when Latin was still a widely spoken language.]

Chapter IX: Days, Weeks, Months, Years

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I

Two friends discuss their birthdays.

Patricius	Márcia, quārē tū hódīē tam exōrnáta es?	<i>Patrick: Marcia, why are you so decked out today?</i>
Márcia	Quod hódīē est meus diēs nātális.	<i>Marcia: Because today is my birthday.</i>
Patricius	Quot annōs nāta es?	<i>How old are you?</i>
Márcia	Duodēvīgintī annōs nāta sum. Quot annōs nātus es tū?	<i>I am eighteen years old. How old are you?</i>
Patricius	Ūndēvīgintī annōs.	<i>I'm nineteen.</i>
Márcia	Quō mēnse nātus es?	<i>In what month were you born?</i>
Patricius	Ego mēnse Augústō nātus sum. Quō diē nāta es?	<i>I was born in August. On what day were you born?</i>
Márcia	Quíntō diē mēnsis Máiī sc̄līcēt.	<i>On the fifth of May, of course.</i>
Patricius	At enim quō diē hebdomadis nāta es?	<i>What I mean is, on what day of the week were you born?</i>
Márcia	Ut v̄era dicam, certum nōn sciō. Diē Véneris, crēdō.	<i>To tell you the truth, I don't know for sure. On Friday, I believe.</i>
Patricius	Quómodo nātálem celebrábis?	<i>How are you going to celebrate your birthday?</i>
Márcia	Māter agitábit nātáliciam hódīē vésperī. Et tū invítáris.	<i>My mother is throwing me a birthday party this evening. And you are invited.</i>
Patricius	Grátias. Áfferam tibi bellum nātálicium.	<i>Thanks. I'll bring you a nice birthday present.</i>

LEVEL II Two friends discuss their favorite seasons.

Glória	Robérte, quod tempus annī tibi máximē placet?	<i>Gloria: Robert, which season do you like best?</i>
Robértus	Aestátem praecipuē amō, quia in piscínā nostrā aut in stāgnō natāre possum. Pilā porrō lúdere possum.	<i>Robert: I especially love summer because I can swim in our swimming pool or in the pond. Besides, I can play ball.</i>
Glória	Quod tempus annī tibi mínimē placet?	<i>Which season do you like least?</i>
Robértus	Hiems, opīnor. Nivem amō, sed frīgoris impātiēns sum. Inter Decémbrem et Februáriū ego semper gravēdinem terríbilem cóntrahō.	<i>Winter, I suppose. I love the snow, but I can't take the cold. I always catch a terrible cold between December and February.</i>
Glória	Sed híeme nartāre et patináre et pilās níveās concícere pōssumus. Et tráheā vehī pōssumus.	<i>But in winter we can ski and skate and throw snowballs. And we can go sleigh riding.</i>
Robértus	Probē dicis, at, illō témpore annī, viae nōnnúmquam sunt lúbricae et periculósae.	<i>You're right, but at that time of the year the roads are often slippery and dangerous.</i>
Glória	Placétne tibi vēr?	<i>Do you like spring?</i>
Robértus	Placet. Post sevēram híemem, amoénū est íterum forīs lúdere. Quid tū dē vère putās?	<i>Yes, I do. After a harsh winter, it is pleasant to play outside again. What do you think of spring?</i>
Glória	Ō, amō vidére flōrēs flōrēscere. Quid autem dē autúmnō?	<i>O, I love to see the flowers begin to blossom. Now, what about the fall?</i>
Robértus	Cum dē autúmnō putō, statim dē scholā putō. Saepe mīror num magístrī sint vērō tam cúpidī ad scholam redeúndī post fēriās aestívās.	<i>When I think about autumn, I immediately think about school. I often wonder whether teachers are really all that eager to return to school after summer vacation.</i>
Glória	Nesciō, sed id dúbitō.	<i>I don't know, but I doubt it.</i>

LEVEL III A father gives his son some family history.		
Marcus	Pater, quandō nātus es?	<i>Mark: Father, when were you born?</i>
Cícero	Tértiō diē (mēnsis) Iānuárii.	<i>Cicero: On the third of January.</i>
Marcus	Ubi adulēscēbās?	<i>Where did you grow up?</i>
Cícero	Adulēscēntiam omnem in oppídulo Arpínō tránségī.	<i>I spent my entire youth in the small town of Arpinum.</i>
Marcus	Ubi lūdum frequentábās ut adulēscēntulus?	<i>Where did you attend school as a youngster?</i>
Cícero	Prímō lūdum Arpínī frequentábam. Ante autem décimum quártum annum meum, pater meus Rómam migráre cōnstítuit.	<i>First I attended school in Arpinum. But before my fourteenth year, my father decided to move to Rome.</i>
Marcus	Redístī umquam Arpínum?	<i>Did you ever return to Arpinum?</i>
Cícero	Nōn per multōs annōs. Décimum quíntum agēns, ego togam virílem sūmpsī. Nōn diútius eram adulēscēntulus sed adulēscēns.	<i>Not for many years. At the age of fifteen, I received the toga of manhood. I was no longer a youngster, but a young man.</i>
Marcus	Quandō tū cōsul creátus es?	<i>When were you elected consul?</i>
Cícero	Quadrágésimum quártum annum agēns, cōsul creátus sum. Tum vix eram vir médiac aetátis.	<i>I was elected consul in my forty-fourth year. At that time I was barely a middle-aged man.</i>
Marcus	Sentēntiā tuā, tē nunc senēscēnte, quae actās erat óptima ómnium?	<i>In your opinion, now that you are growing old, what age was the best of all?</i>
Cícero	Est difícilē dictū. Quaeque enim aetās—infántia, puerítia, adulēscēntia, iuvēnta, média aetās, étiam senéctūs—habet et gaúdia et incómmoda.	<i>It is hard to say. For each age—infancy, boyhood, adolescence, youth, middle age, even old age—has its joys and disappointments.</i>
Marcus	Quod est gaúdiū máximum senectútis?	<i>What is the greatest joy of old age?</i>
Cícero	Quamquam iam aetáte prōvéctus sum, tamen conténtus sum, quod mihi est mēns sāna in córpore sánō. Sed gaúdiū máximum est família amāns et amfī fidélēs.	<i>Although I am now up in years, I am content, because I have a sound mind in a sound body. But the greatest joy is a loving family and loyal friends.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

adult *adj* adúlt·us -a -um

age aet·ās -átis *f*; **at age fifteen**
dēcimum quīntum annum ag·ēns
-éntis; **he was ten years of age** erat
decem annōs nātus

aged longaév·us -a -um

be up in years aetáte prōvéct·us -a -um
esse

birth nātfívít·ās -átis *f*

born: to be born nāsc·or -ī nātus (-a)
sum

boyhood puerítí·a -ae *f*, aet·ās -átis *f*
puerílís; **from boyhood on** ā púerō

calendar fāst·ī -órum *mpl*, calendári·um
-ī *n*

century saécul·um -ī *n*

death mor·s -tis *f*

die mór·ior -ī mórtuus (-a) sum

grow old senésc·ō -ere sénuī

grow up iuvenésc·ō -ere iúveni

growing up adulésc·ēns -éntis

grown-up *adj* adúlt·us -a -um

infancy infánti·a -ae *f*

month mēns·is -is *m*

January Iānuári·us -ī *m*

February Febrúári·us -ī *m*

March Márít·us -ī *m*

April Apríl·is -is *m*

May Mái·us -ī *m*

June Iúni·us -ī *m*

July Iúli·us -ī *m*

August Augúst·us -ī *m*

September Septém·ber -bris *m*

October Octó·ber -bris *m*

November Novém·ber -bris *m*

December Decém·ber -bris *m*

more (less) than ... years old māior
(minor) quam ... annōs nāt·us -a -um

old vétul·us -a -um; **older** māi·or -or
-us nātū; **oldest** máxim·us -a -um
nātū; **to be ... years old ...** annōs
nāt·us -a -um esse

old age senéct·ūs -útis *f*, senéct·a -ae *f*

old lady an·us -ūs *f*; **little old lady**
anícul·a -ae *f*

old man sen·ex -is *m*

old woman an·us -ūs *f*

oldster sen·ex -is *m*

over sixty years old māior (quam)
annōs sexāgíntā nāt·us -a -um

period of life aet·ās -átis *f* vítae

season temp·us -oris *n* annī

spring vēr, vēris *n*

summer aest·ās -átis *f*

fall autúmn·us -ī *m*

winter hi·ems -emis *f*

week hébdomas, hebdomadis *f*,
septimán·a -ae *f*; **every week**
sínghlís septimánis (*or*
hebdomádibus); **last (previous, next,
this) week** próximā (superióre,
ínsequente, hāc) hebdomade

weekday di·ēs -éī *m* prófěstus

Sunday di·ēs -éī *m* Sōlis; domíníc·a
-ae *f*

Monday di·ēs -éī *m* Lūnae

Tuesday di·ēs -éī *m* Mārtis

Wednesday di·ēs -éī *m* Mercúrii

Thursday di·ēs -éī *m* Iovis

Friday di·ēs -éī *m* Véneris

Saturday di·ēs -éī *m* Sātúrnī,
Sábbat·a -órum *npl*

year ann·us -ī *m*; **in my twenty-first
year** annum primum et vicésimum
ag·ēns -éntis ego ...

young parv·us -a -um, párvul·us -a -um;
younger iúni·or -or -us; min·or -or
-us (nātū); **youngest** mínim·us -a
-um (nātū)

young lady adulēsc·ēns -ētis *f*,
muliércul·a -ae *f*

young man adulēsc·ēns -ētis *m*,
iuven·is -is *m*

youngster adulēscéntul·us -ī *m*,
adulēscéntul·a -ae *f*

youth (*age*) adulēscénti·a -ae *f* (*between puer and iúvenis, between 15 and 30 years and even beyond*); (*young men collectively*) iuvént·ūs -útis *f*; (*young person*) iúven·is -is *m/f*

youthful iuveníl·is -is -e; iúven·is -is -e

THE JULIAN CALENDAR

- ◆ The names of the Roman months are: **Iānuārius, Februārius, Mártilus, Aprílís, Māius, Iūnius, Iúlius, Augústus, Septémber, Octóber, Novémber, Decémber**. The name of the month functions as an adjective in agreement with **Kaléndae, Nōnae, Īdūs**. Before Augustus, the months July and August were called **Quīntílis** and **Sextílis**. (*Originally the Roman calendar began with March. This explains the names Septémber, Octóber, etc. In the year 153 B.C., in order to give the new consuls time to organize their armies and reach the latest frontier, the year was made to begin with January.*)
- ◆ The Romans counted backward from three points in the month, Calends (**Kaléndae**), Nones (**Nōnae**), and Ides (**Īdūs**), to which the names of the months are added as adjectives: **Kaléndae Iānuāriae, Nōnae Iānuāriae, Īdūs Iānuāriae**. The Calends are the first day, the Nones the fifth, and the Ides the thirteenth. In March, May, July, and October the Nones and the Ides are two days later.
- ◆ In counting backward, the Romans used **prídiē** (+ acc) for “the day before”: **prídiē Kaléndās Iānuāriās** (= December 31), **prídiē Nōnās Iānuāriās** (= January 4); **prídiē Īdūs Iānuāriās** (= January 12).
- ◆ Because the Romans, in counting backward, counted both ends of the series, the second day before (by our system of reckoning) was designated as **diē tértiō ante Kaléndās, Nōnās, Īdus**. Similarly, the third day before (by our system of reckoning) was designated as **diē quārtō**, and so on.
- ◆ To complicate matters further, the Romans generally did not say, for example, “the third day before the Calends of January” but “before the third day Calends January,” **ante diem tértiam Kaléndās Iānuāriās**, often abbreviated **a. d. III Kal. Iān.** This was the most common form for indicating dates. Others were:
diē tértiō ante Kaléndās Iānuāriās
tértiō ante Kaléndās Iānuāriās
tértiō (III) Kaléndās Iānuāriās
- ◆ These phrases are treated as nouns and combined with the prepositions **ex** (from), **ad** or **in** (up to), e.g.:
ex ante diem tértium Kaléndās Iānuāriās (from December 30)
ad (or in) ante diem tértium Kaléndās Iānuāriās (up to December 30)
- ◆ In leap years, the 25th was reckoned as the extra day in February. The 24th was called **ante diem VI Kaléndās Mártilās** and the 25th as **ante diem bis VI Kaléndās Mártilās**.

day of the month March, May, July, October	January, August, December	April, June, September, November	February	February (leap year)
1 Kaléndis	Kaléndis	Kaléndis	Kaléndis	Kaléndis
2 VI Nōnās	IV Nōnās	IV Nōnās	IV Nōnās	IV Nōnās
3 V Nōnās	III Nōnās	III Nōnās	III Nōnās	III Nōnās
4 IV Nōnās	Prīdiē Nōnās	Prīdiē Nōnās	Prīdiē Nōnās	Prīdiē Nōnās
5 III Nōnās	Nōnīs	Nōnīs	Nōnīs	Nōnīs
6 Prīdiē Nōnās	VIII Īdūs	VIII Īdūs	VIII Īdūs	VIII Īdūs
7 Nōnīs	VII Īdūs	VII Īdūs	VII Īdūs	VII Īdūs
8 VIII Īdūs	VI Īdūs	VI Īdūs	VI Īdūs	VI Īdūs
9 VII Īdūs	V Īdūs	V Īdūs	V Īdūs	V Īdūs
10 VI Īdūs	IV Īdūs	IV Īdūs	IV Īdūs	IV Īdūs
11 V Īdūs	III Īdūs	III Īdūs	III Īdūs	III Īdūs
12 IV Īdūs	Prīdiē Īdūs	Prīdiē Īdūs	Prīdiē Īdūs	Prīdiē Īdūs
13 III Īdūs	Īdibus	Īdibus	Īdibus	Īdibus
14 Prīdiē Īdūs	XIX Kal.	XVIII Kal.	XVI Kal.	XVI Kal.
15 Īdibus	XVIII Kal.	XVII Kal.	XV Kal.	XV Kal.
16 XVII Kal.	XVII Kal.	XVI Kal.	XIV Kal.	XIV Kal.
17 XVI Kal.	XVI Kal.	XV Kal.	XIII Kal.	XIII Kal.
18 XV Kal.	XV Kal.	XIV Kal.	XII Kal.	XII Kal.
19 XIV Kal.	XIV Kal.	XIII Kal.	XI Kal.	XI Kal.
20 XIII Kal.	XIII Kal.	XII Kal.	X Kal.	X Kal.
21 XII Kal.	XII Kal.	XI Kal.	IX Kal.	IX Kal.
22 XI Kal.	XI Kal.	X Kal.	VIII Kal.	VIII Kal.
23 X Kal.	X Kal.	IX Kal.	VII Kal.	VII Kal.
24 IX Kal.	IX Kal.	VIII Kal.	VI Kal.	VI Kal.
25 VIII Kal.	VIII Kal.	VII Kal.	V Kal.	bis VI Kal.
26 VII Kal.	VII Kal.	VI Kal.	IV Kal.	V Kal.
27 VI Kal.	VI Kal.	V Kal.	III Kal.	IV Kal.
28 V Kal.	V Kal.	IV Kal.	Prīdiē Kal.	III Kal.
29 IV Kal.	IV Kal.	III Kal.		Prīdiē Kal.
30 III Kal.	III Kal.	Prīdiē Kal.		
31 Prīdiē Kal.	Prīdiē Kal.			

HOURS OF THE DAY AND WATCHES OF THE NIGHT _____

Table of Hours of the Day and Watches of the Night Among the Romans
Tabula Hōrārum Diēi Vigiliārumque Noctis Apud Rōmānōs

DAY		DIES	
Morning	7 o'clock	Mātūtīnum	hōra p̄rīma
	8 o'clock	tempus	hōra secūnda
	9 o'clock		hōra t̄rtia
	10 o'clock		hōra quārta
	11 o'clock		hōra quīnta
Midday	12 o'clock	Merīdiēs	hōra sexta
	1 o'clock		hōra s̄ptima
	2 o'clock		hōra octāva
	3 o'clock		hōra nōna
	4 o'clock		hōra d̄cima
	5 o'clock		hōra ūnd̄cima
NIGHT		NOX	
Evening	6 o'clock	Vespertīnum	hōra duod̄cima
	7 o'clock	tempus	hōra p̄rīma
	8 o'clock		hōra secūnda
	9 o'clock		hōra t̄rtia
	10 o'clock		hōra quārta (vigīlia secūnda)
11 o'clock		hōra quīnta	
Midnight	12 o'clock	M̄dia nox	hōra sexta (vigīlia t̄rtia)
	1 o'clock		hōra s̄ptima
	2 o'clock		hōra octāva
	3 o'clock		hōra nōna
	4 o'clock		hōra d̄cima (vigīlia quārta)
	5 o'clock		hōra ūnd̄cima
6 o'clock		hōra duod̄cima	

Note—The Romans considered a day as extending from midnight to the next midnight, just as we do. However, they counted the hours from 6:00 a.m. When the Romans wished to distinguish day-time hours from night hours, they said, for example **p̄rīma diēi hōra** and **p̄rīma noctis hōra**.

TELLING TIME IN LATIN ACCORDING TO THE MODERN METHOD

Hōrās ab aliquō quaerere.	<i>to ask s.o. the time</i>
Quota hōra est?	<i>What time is it?</i>
Est p̄ima hōra ante mer̄idiem. / Est p̄ima hōra mātūtīna.	<i>It is one o'clock A.M.</i>
Est p̄ima hōra postmer̄idiāna. / Est p̄ima hōra post mer̄idiem.	<i>It is one o'clock P.M.</i>
Est p̄ima ferē hōra.	<i>It is about one o'clock.</i>
Est p̄ima hōra minūta quīnta dēcima.	<i>It is 1:15.</i>
Est p̄ima hōra et quadrāns.	<i>It is 1:15. / It is quarter after one.</i>
Est p̄ima hōra et sēmihōra.	<i>It is 1:30.</i>
Est p̄ima hōra minūta trīcēsima.	<i>It is 1:30.</i>
Est p̄ima hōra minūta quadrāgēsima quīnta.	<i>It is 1:45.</i>
Est p̄ima hōra et dōdrāns.	<i>It is 1:45</i>
Est secūnda hōra. / Sunt duae hōrae.	<i>It is two o'clock.</i>
Est tērtia hōra. / Sunt trēs hōrae.	<i>It is three o'clock.</i>
Est quarta hōra. / Sunt quattuor hōrae.	<i>It is four o'clock.</i>
Est quīnta hōra. / Sunt quīque hōrae.	<i>It is five o'clock.</i>
Est sexta hōra. / Sunt sex hōrae.	<i>It is six o'clock.</i>
Est sēptima hōra. / Sunt septem hōrae.	<i>It is seven o'clock.</i>
Est octāva hōra. / Sunt octō hōrae.	<i>It is eight o'clock.</i>
Est nōna hōra. / Sunt novem hōrae.	<i>It is nine o'clock.</i>
Est dēcima hōra. / Sunt decim hōrae.	<i>It is ten o'clock.</i>
Est ūndēcima hōra. / Sunt ūndecim hōrae.	<i>It is eleven o'clock.</i>
Est duodēcima hōra. / Sunt duódecim hōrae.	<i>It is twelve o'clock.</i>
Quotā hōrā māne surgis?	<i>At what hour do you get up in the morning?</i>
Hōrā sēptimā mātūtīnā.	<i>At seven o'clock in the morning.</i>
Hōrā sēptimā et quadrānte.	<i>At 7:15.</i>
Hōrā sēptimā et sēmihōrā.	<i>At 7:30.</i>
Hōrā sēptimā et dōdrānte.	<i>At 7:45.</i>

Chapter X: Expressions of Time

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I		Marie asks her friend how he spends his days.
María	Ioséphe, quómodo diem ágitās?	<i>Marie: Joseph, how do you spend your day?</i>
Ioséphus	Bene máne surgō et mē lavō.	<i>Joseph: I get up early in the morning and wash (myself).</i>
María	Quotā hōrā ientáculum sūmis?	<i>At what time do you eat breakfast?</i>
Ioséphus	Octáva hōrā mātūtínā aut mox deínde ientáculum sūmō.	<i>I eat breakfast at 8:00 A.M. or soon thereafter.</i>
María	Lūdísne deínde in aédibus an forīs?	<i>Do you then play in your house or outdoors?</i>
Ioséphus	Intérdum in aédibus lūdō, áliās lūdō forīs.	<i>Sometimes I play in my house, at other times I play outdoors.</i>
María	Lūdísne semper domī?	<i>Do you always play at home?</i>
Ioséphus	Nōnnúmquam tempus mātūtínum apud amícum ágitō. Nōn idem cōfídiē faciō.	<i>Sometimes I spend the morning at my friend's house. I don't do the same thing every day.</i>
María	Quotā hōrā prándium sūmis?	<i>At what time do you eat lunch?</i>
Ioséphus	Plērúmque merídie aut prímā hōrā post merídiem. Váriat in diēs.	<i>Generally at noon or 1:00 P.M.. It varies from day to day.</i>
María	Quid facis postmerídiē? Pater tē adhūc in forum dūcit?	<i>What do you do in the afternoon? Does your father still take you to the forum?</i>
Ioséphus	Utcúmque tempus patrī est, mē in forum dūcit.	<i>Whenever my father has time, he takes me to the forum.</i>
María	Quidnam in forō faciētis?	<i>Just what do you do in the forum?</i>
Ioséphus	Cum prímum in forum pervenímus, tabérnās novās ibi vīsítámus.	<i>As soon as we get to the forum, we visit the new shops there.</i>

María	Quid in tabérnīs fáctis?	<i>What do you do in the shops?</i>
Ioséphus	Obsónámus. Pater mihi múnúsculum saepe emit.	<i>We shop. My father often buys me a little gift.</i>
María	Pater tē in forum cōfídiē dūcit?	<i>Does your father take you to the forum every day?</i>
Ioséphus	Nōn cōfídiē. Praetérea, hīs tempóribus pater est occupátíssimus.	<i>Not every day. Besides, these days my father is very busy.</i>
María	Eō cāsū, quómodo tempus postmeridiánum ágitās	<i>In that case, how do you spend the afternoon?</i>
Ioséphus	Ego plērúmque tempus postmeridiánum cum amícīs ágitō.	<i>I generally spend the afternoon with my friends.</i>
María	Quid vésperī post cēnam facis?	<i>What do you do in the evening after dinner?</i>
Ioséphus	Áliqua pēnsa fáciō. Deínde, sī tempus mihi est, librum legō, dōnec dormítum eō.	<i>I do some chores. Then, if I have time, I read a book till I go to sleep.</i>

LEVEL II **A coach interviews a new athlete.**

Exercitátor	Salvē. Tūne áthléta novus es?	Coach: <i>Hello. Are you the new athlete?</i>
Áthléta	Sum.	Athlete: <i>Yes, I am.</i>
Exercitátor	Quandō ad gymnásium pervénístī?	<i>When did you arrive at the gym?</i>
Áthléta	Paulō ante. Sērōne vēnī?	<i>A little while ago. Am I late? [lit: have I come late?]</i>
Exercitátor	Nōn. Vénístī quidem témperī. Sed álii áthlétae omnēs iam adsunt. Quótiēns tē exércēs?	<i>No. Indeed, you're on time. But all the other athletes are already here. How often do you exercise?</i>
Áthléta	Ut vēra dícam, cōfídiē: māne, merídiē, noctū.	<i>To tell you the truth, daily: morning, noon, and night.</i>
Exercitátor	Quótiēns ad fūnem salís?	<i>How often do you jump rope?</i>
Áthléta	Saltem bis in diē.	<i>At least twice a day.</i>

Exercitátor	Ante merídiem an post merídiem?	<i>Before noon or in the afternoon?</i>
Āthléta	Modo ante merídiem, modo post merídiem. Váriat.	<i>Sometimes before noon, sometimes in the afternoon. It varies.</i>
Exercitátor	Quam diū ad fūnem salīs?	<i>How long do you jump rope?</i>
Āthléta	Saltem sēmihóram.	<i>At least for half an hour.</i>
Exercitátor	Quandō novíssimē tolútim cursitāvístī?	<i>When did you last jog?</i>
Āthléta	Núdius tértius et herī.	<i>The day before yesterday and yesterday.</i>
Exercitátor	Hodiēne tolútim cursitábis?	<i>Are you going to jog today?</i>
Āthléta	Ita. Mihi in ánimō est tolútim cursitáre póstea aliquántō.	<i>Yes. I intend to jog a little later.</i>
Exercitátor	Senténtiā meā, tū eris āthléta praestāns.	<i>In my opinion, you will be an outstanding athlete.</i>

LEVEL III **A traveler is about to take a bus trip to Florida.**

Viátor	Velim iter fácere ā Septentriónālī Cārolínā in Flóridam.	<i>Traveler: I'd like to travel from North Carolina to Florida.</i>
Amícus	Quī est tibi locus dēstinátus?	<i>Friend: What is your destination?</i>
Viátor	Locus dēstinátus mihi est Miámī.	<i>My destination is Miami.</i>
Amícus	Habésne vectúram in promptū?	<i>Do you have your fare ready?</i>
Viátor	Ecce vectúram. Quandō raeda longa discédet?	<i>Here's the fare. When does the bus depart?</i>
Amícus	Mox. Proféctō secúndā hōrā.	<i>Soon. In fact, at eight o'clock.</i>
Viátor	Bene! Intérdiū magis quam noctū iter fácere praéferō.	<i>Fine. I prefer to travel by day rather than at night.</i>
Amícus	Quóúsque vīs ire p̄imō diē?	<i>How far do you want to go on the first day?</i>
Viátor	Velim perveníre in Merīdiónálem Cārolínā crās sub noctem, sī f̄erī potest.	<i>I'd like to arrive in South Carolina tomorrow by nightfall, if possible.</i>

Amícus	Ubi pernoctábis?	<i>Where will you spend the night?</i>
Viátor	Probábiliter in nésciō quō dēversóriō vehiculáriō.	<i>Probably in some motel or other.</i>
Amícus	Quam diū ibi manébis?	<i>How long will you stay there?</i>
Viátor	Nōlō équidem multum témporis ibi pérdere.	<i>I don't want to waste a lot of time there.</i>
Amícus	Quómodo vésperam agēs?	<i>How will you spend the evening?</i>
Viátor	Statim post cēnam, bálneō plúviō ūtar et deínde rēctē ibō dormítum.	<i>Immediately after dinner, I'll take a shower and then I will go right to sleep.</i>
Amícus	Quotā hōrā illinc discédere cupis?	<i>At what time do you want to leave from there?</i>
Viátor	Statim post ientáculum. Ad próximam noctem spērō nōs in merídiōnālī Geórgiā futūrōs esse.	<i>Immediately after breakfast. By the following night, I hope that we will be in southern Georgia.</i>
Amícus	Istud mehércle est spátium longíssimum!	<i>Gee, that's a very long stretch!</i>
Viátor	Sī illūc ante tempus pervēnérimus, póterō mē remíttere paulísper.	<i>If we arrive there before time, I'll be able to relax a bit.</i>
Amícus	Quam diū vīs ibi manére?	<i>How long do you want to stay there?</i>
Viátor	Mihi in ánimō est bene māne postrídiē discédere. Sī merídiē in septentriōnālī Flóridā prándērō, locum dēstinátum sub noctem pervéniam.	<i>I intend to leave early in the morning on the next day. If I eat lunch in northern Florida, I will arrive at our destination by nightfall.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

ago (*prepositive*) abhinc, e.g., **ten years ago** abhinc decem annōs; **a short while ago** paulō ante; **how long ago?** quam prīdem?; **long ago** iamdūdum, iamprīdem; **not so long ago** haud ita prīdem; **sometime ago** prīdem dūdum

after *conj* postquam (+ *indic*); *prep* post (+ *acc*); **after this** post hāc

afternoon temp·us -oris *n* postmerīdiānum; **in the afternoon** postmerīdiē, post merīdiem

afterwards posthāc

again and again étiam atque étiam, idéntidem

always semper

around circā, círciter (+ *acc*), dē (+ *abl*); **around midnight** dē médiā nocte; **around noon** círciter merīdiem

as long as quámdiū (+ *indic*); **as soon as possible** quam prīmum; **as yet** adhūc

at: at least útique; **at most** summum; **at once** contínuō, mōmémentō

before *conj* ántequam, priúsqvam (+ *indic*); *adv* ántea; *prep* ante (+ *acc*); **before daylight** ante lūcem; **before long** propédiem; **before now** ántehāc

beginning prīncipi·um -ī *n*; **at the beginning of the year** prīncipiō annī

briefly summátim

by (*not later than*) ad (+ *acc*); **by January** ad mēnsem Iānuārium; **by now: iam**; **by the sixth hour** ad sextam hōram

calendar fāst·ī -ōrum *mpl*; calendāri·um -ī *n*

century saécul·um -ī *n*

clock hōrológi·um -ī *n* (*see also* **clock**, Chapter XIII)

dark: after dark dē nocte; **in the dark** dē nocte

darkness ténebr·ae -árūm *fpl*

date: di·ēs -éī *f*; **by what date?** quam ad diem?

day: di·ēs -éī *mf*; **a day, e.g., twice a day bis** (in) diē; **any day now** propédiem; **by day** intérdiū; **day and night** et diēs et noctēs; **every day** cōtídiē, in síngulōs diēs; **from day to day** in diēs; **from that day on** ex eō diē; **just the other day** nūper quidem; **one day** (*on a certain day in the past*) quōdam diē; **on the day before he departed** prīdiē quam abíret; **on the day before the Ides** prīdiē Ídūs; **(on) the following day** pósterō diē; **on the third day before the Calends of March** ante diem quārtum Kaléndās Mártiās; **the day after** postrīdiē; **the day after that** postrīdiē eius diēi; **the day after tomorrow** peréndiē; **the day before** prīdiē; **till late in the day** ad multum diem; **two days after that** post diem tértium eius diēi; **these days** his tempóribus

dawn: at dawn prīmā lūce; **before dawn** antelúculō

daybreak: at daybreak prīmā lūce, dílúculō; **till daybreak** in prīmam lūcem, úsque dílúculum

during inter (+ *acc*)

end: in the end ab extrémō; **toward the end of his life** témpore extrémō

evening vesp·er -erī *m*, vésper·a -ae *f*; **in the early evening** prīmā vésperā; **in the evening** vésperī; **last evening** herī vésperī; **this evening** hodiē vésperī; **very late in the evening** pervésperī

ever umquam

every day cōtídiē

finally ad extrēmum, tandem

first (*at first*) prīmō; (*in a series, followed by* deinde, postrēmō) primum; **at first** inītiō; **first of all** primum ómnium; **for the first time** prīmō

for (*during a certain period, expressed by acc*), e.g., **for ten days** decem diēs; (*to denote the appointment of definite time*) in (+ *acc*), e.g., **he invited her to dinner for the following day** eam ad cēnam vocávit in pósterum diem

from *prep* ab or dē or ex (+ *abl*); **from day to day** diem dē diē; diem ex diē; in síngulōs diēs; **from sunrise till late in the day** ab sōle ortō in multum diēi; **from that day to this** ex eā diē ad hanc diem; **from the time when** ex quō; **from the very beginning** iam inde ā prīncipiō; **from this (that) time forward** ex hōc (illō) témpore

future futūr·a -órum *npl*; **in the future** in pósterum

half hour sēmihór·a -ae *f*; dīmídi·um -ī *n* hōrae

hereafter posthāc

here and now dēpraesentiárum (*adv*)

hour hōr·a -ae *f*; **a half hour** sēmihór·a -ae *f*; **an hour and a half** sēsquihór·a -ae *f*; **a quarter of an hour** quadr·āns -ántis *m* hōrae; **every hour** síngulīs hōrīs; **from hour to hour** in hōrās; **three quarters of an hour** dōdr·āns -ántis *m* hōrae; **to last a few hours** in paucās hōrās dūrāre

hourly in hōrās

how long? quam diū?

how long ago? quam prīdem?; quam dūdum?

how often? quótiēns?

how soon? quam mox?

immediately statim, contínuō

just *adv* modo; **just as** cum máximē; **just as I was writing** cum haec máximē scrīberem; **just before** (*an event*) sub (+ *acc*); **just in time** témporī; **just then** tunc máximē; **just the other day** modo; **just when** cum máximē

last (*adj used where English uses an adv*) novíssim·us -a -um, e.g., **Cicero spoke last** Cícero novíssimus locútus est; **last night** próximā nocte

late *adj* sēr·us -a -um

late *adv* sērō; **all too late** immō iam sērō; **too late** sérius; **very late** séríssimē

lately nūper

later pósteā; **a little later** pósteā aliquántō; **to postpone till later** dí·ferō -fēre dístulī dílátus in áliud témpus

latest: perhaps tomorrow, at latest the day after that fortásse crās, summum perēndiē

least: at least saltem

long diū; **how long** quam diū; **how much longer** quám diū étiam; **long ago** prīdem; **long after (before)** multō post (*ante*); **longer** diútius; **too long** diútius, nímiū diū

meanwhile ínterim

midnight média no·x, -ctis *f*; **around midnight** médiā círciter nocte; **at midnight** médiā nocte

minute minút·a -ae *f*; **in a minute** mōmētō témporis; **the minute I saw you** extémplo ubi ego tē vídī; **this minute (right now)** iam; **wait a minute** exspéctā paulum, manē dum, manē paulísper

morning temp·us -oris *n* mātūtínūm; **early in the morning** bene māne, multō māne; **from morning till evening** ā māne ūsque ad vésperam;

in the morning māne; **the next morning** māne postrīdiē; **this morning** hōdiē māne

nick: in the nick of time in ipsō articulō témporis

night nox, noctis *f*; **at night** noctū; **at this time of night** hōc noctis; **by night** noctū; **every night** per sīngulās noctēs; **last night** prōximā nocte, hāc nocte; **night after night** per sīngulās noctēs; **on the following night** prōximā nocte; **on the night before last** superiōre nocte; **till late at night** ad multam noctem

nightfall: just before nightfall sub noctem; **till nightfall** ūsque ad noctem

never numquam; **never yet** nōndum

no longer nōn diūtius

noon merīdi·ēs -ēī *m*; **at noon** merīdiē

not yet nōndum

now nunc; (*denoting emphasis and urgency*) iam; **even now** iam nunc; **just now** (*a moment ago*) modo; **now and then** subīnde, nōnnūquam, aliquándō; **now at last** nunc tandem; **now ... now** modo ... modo; **now that** posteāquam (+ *indic*); **right now** (*immediately*) iam; **ten years from now** ad decem annōs

nowadays hōdiē, nunc

occasion: for the occasion in tempus

occasionally subīnde

o'clock: at two o'clock hōrā secūndā (*see p. 81*)

once (*on a certain occasion*) quōdam diē; (*one time*) semel; **at once** ílicō, statim; (*simultaneously*) simul; **once or twice** semel atque íterum; **once upon a time** ōlim

past: in the past ántehāc

period spāti·um -ī *n*

point: at this point (in time) hōc locō

previously ántehāc, prius

rarely rārō

right from the start in prīncipiō ílicō; **right now** nunc iam

second secūnd·a -ae *f*

since (*temporal*) ut (+ *indic*)

someday (*in indef. fut.*) aliquándō, áliquā diē

sometime aliquándō

sometimes nōnnūquam; intérdum; **sometimes ... sometimes** áliās ... áliās, modo ... modo, intérdum ... intérdum

soon mox; (*in a minute*) iam; **as soon as** cum prīmum; **as soon as possible** quam prīmum; **soon thereafter** mox deīnde; **too soon** nīmium cito

sooner or later sérius ócius, sérius aut cítius

then (*at that time*) tum; (*next*) deīnde; **just then** tunc máximē; **then and there** ílicō

till ūsque ad (+ *acc*), in (+ *acc*); **till the month of July** in mēsem Iúlium

time temp·us -oris *n*; **ahead of time** ante tempus; **a long time already** (+ *present tense*) iam dūdum, e.g., **I've been here a long time already** iam dūdum adsum; **around the time of** sub tempus (+ *gen*); **at about the same time** sub idem tempus; **at another time** áliās; **at one time ... at another** áliās ... áliās; **at that time** ad id témporis; **at the right time** tempestívē; **at the time when** quā tempestáte; **at the wrong time** intempestívē; **at times** intérdum; **a very short time ago** modo; **before time** (*prematurely*) ante tempus; **for a long time** iam diū; **for a short time** brevī témpore; **for the first time** prīmum; **for the last time** extrémum; **for the time being** in

tempus; **from time to time** subínde; **I have no time** tempus nōn est mihi; **in a short time** in brevī spátio; **in good time, in plenty of time** mātúrē; **in (the course of) time** témpore; **it is high time for you to** tempus máximē est ut tū (+ *subj*); **long ago** iam dūdum; **make up for lost time** cessáta témpora córrig-ō -ere corréxī; **not to have the time to** ótium nōn habére (*w. dat ger*); **once upon a time** ólim; **on time** témporē; **some time ago** dūdum, prīdem; **there was a time when** (tempus) fuit cum; **to ask what time it is** hōrās inquírere; **to postpone to another time** différre in áliud tempus; **to ask the time** quaérere hōrās; **to see what time it is** hōrās ínspicere; **to spend time** tempus súmere (ágere, agitáre); **to waste time** tempus pérdere; **what time is it?** quota hōra est?; quot hōrae sunt?; **to while away the time** tempus fall-ō -ere fefélli

times (*use numeral adverbs*) e.g., **ten times** déciēs; **no more than three times** ter nec ámplius

today hódíē; **before today** ante hunc diem; **starting today** ex hōc diē

tomorrow crās; **day after tomorrow** peréndiē; **tomorrow morning** crās māne; **until tomorrow** in crástinum

tonight hāc nocte

twilight crepúscul-um -ī *n*; **at twilight** crepúsculō

until *conj* dōnec; *prep* ūsque ad (+ *acc*)

up till now ántehāc

when cum, ubi, ut; (*interrog*) quandō

whenever quandōcúmque, utcúmque, quótiēns

while *s* **a little while before** paulō ante; **after a little while** paulō post; **a short while ago** paulō ante

while *conj* dum

while *tr* **to while away the time** tempus fall-ō -ere fefélli

year: annus -ī *m*; **every year** quotánnīs; **the following year** próximus annus; **the previous year** supérior annus; **at the beginning of the year** ineúnte annō, prīncipiō annī; **at the end of the year** exeúnte annō; **a hundred years from now** ad centum annōs

yesterday herī; **the day before yesterday** núdius tértius (*adv, also written as one word*); **yesterday morning** herī māne

Chapter XI: Useful Colloquial Expressions

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I **Brian finds Jeffrey to be in a hurry.**

Bríanus	Astā, Gálfride; manē dum, quaesō.	<i>Brian: Hold it, Jeffrey. Wait a minute, please.</i>
Gálfridus	Quid reī est, Bríane? Mē paénitet, vērūm enim próperō.	<i>Jeffrey: What's up, Brian? I'm sorry but I'm really in a hurry.</i>
Bríanus	Quid festínās? Quō tē agis?	<i>What's your hurry. Where are you going?</i>
Gálfridus	Ego bibliothécā petō.	<i>I'm heading for the library.</i>
Bríanus	Quam ob rem?	<i>Why?</i>
Gálfridus	Certē nōn ánimī causā.	<i>Certainly not for my amusement.</i>
Bríanus	Cūr ígitur?	<i>Why then?</i>
Gálfridus	Rogās? Sc̄ílicet óperis árduī amóre.	<i>What a question! Of course, out of love for hard work.</i>
Bríanus	Quid tibi in ánimō est ibi fácere?	<i>What do you intend to do there?</i>
Gálfridus	Ut sóleō, indāgatióne m̄ áctúrus sum.	<i>As usual, I am going to do research.</i>
Bríanus	Em, eō cāsū tē nōn dētínēbō.	<i>Well, in that case I'll not hold you up.</i>
Gálfridus	Nunc valē. Ōtíósus estō.	<i>So long for now. Take it easy.</i>

LEVEL II **Phyllis wants to discuss a problem with Marie.**

Phyllis	Heus Maríā. Velísne mēcum forīs cēnāre?	<i>Phyllis: Hey Marie, would you like to go out to dinner with me?</i>
María	Quíppinī? Sed quid tibi in ánimō est?	<i>Marie: Why not? But what's on your mind?</i>

Phyllis	Ut v̄era dīcam, ego in angústīs versor.	<i>To tell you the truth, I'm in a tight spot.</i>
María	Nōn tēneō. Quid est negōtīi?	<i>I don't get it. What's the problem?</i>
Phyllis	Ego équidem ádmodum sollícitor.	<i>I'm really quite worried.</i>
María	Quid id est? Quā causā ádeō perturbáris?	<i>What is it? Why are you so upset?</i>
Phyllis	Ūnō verbō, sollícitor dē rē pecūniári.	<i>In a word, I'm worried about my personal finances.</i>
María	Perge porrō. Quid dē rē pecūniári?	<i>Go on. What about your personal finances?</i>
Phyllis	Mālim tēcum dē eā in privátō loquī. Rem enim tōtam per cēnam per síngula ínfbō.	<i>I'd rather talk to you about that in private. You see, I'll go into the whole matter in detail over dinner.</i>
María	Eámus ígitur. Nempe tibi succúrram quoad possim. Nōlī sollicitári.	<i>Let's go then. Naturally, I'll help you as far as I can. [lit: as far as I may be able] Don't worry.</i>

LEVEL III Annette turns to her sister for advice.

Annétta	Christína, cāra soror, rēcta cōnsília semper dās. Nunc velim ā tē cōnsílium pétēre.	Annette: <i>Christine, my dear sister, you always give good advice. Now I'd like to ask you for advice.</i>
Christína	Cedo, Annétta. Cōnsílium dē quō?	Christine: <i>Out with it, Annette. Advice about what?</i>
Annétta	Ut bréviter dīcam, iam dūdum géstiō iter in Itáliam fácere.	<i>To make a long story short, I have been itching for a long time to take a trip to Italy.</i>
Christína	Euge! Rōma vērō hōc annī témpore est bellíssima. At quid est negōtīi?	<i>Splendid! Rome, in fact, is very pretty at this time of the year. But what's the trouble?</i>
Annétta	Em, argéntum mihi, ut ita dīcam, paúlulum déficit.	<i>Well, I am, so to speak, a little short of money. [lit: money is running a little low for me]</i>
Christína	Quam mox profícisci tibi in ánimō est?	<i>How soon do you intend to leave?</i>

Annétta	Cum p̄imum argéntum conr̄adere póterō.	<i>As soon as I can scrape the money together.</i>
Christína	Nōnne ades fr̄equēns ūnā cum áliquot am̄ic̄is divítibus? Quidn̄i eās argéntō mútuō feris?	<i>You hang out with rich friends, don't you? Why don't you hit them for a loan?</i>
Annétta	In gr̄atiā quidem cum eīs sum, sed eās numquam possim argéntum roḡare.	<i>I'm on good terms with them all right, but I could never ask them up for money.</i>
Christína	Iam ténéō. Ex verb̄is tuīs cólligō tē pecúniā magis quam cōnsílium ā mē pétere. Nōnne ita est?	<i>Now I get it. I infer from what you say that you are asking me for money rather than advice. Right? [lit: isn't it so?]</i>
Annétta	Bene putās, Christína! Quid fáciā sine tē? Et benévola et benéfica es. Ut aiunt, ea am̄ica est quae in rē dúbiā rē iuvat.	<i>Good thinking, Christine! What would I do without you? You're both kind and generous. As they say, a friend in need is a friend indeed.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

Additional colloquial expressions will be found in the General Vocabulary.

ability: to the best of my ability p̄o meā parte	afraid: what are you afraid of? quid est quod métuis?
above: to be above (e.g., bribery) indígn·or -árī -átus sum (+ acc)	after all rē vērā
absence: in my absence mē absénte	aha! attat!
absolutely nothing nihil p̄orsus	ahead: go ahead, tell me! ágedum, dic mihi!
active: to be active in vers·or -árī -átus sum in (+ abl)	ail: what ails you? quid tibi est?
addition: in addition accédit quod (+ indic)	all along: I knew all along ūsque ab inítiō sc̄ivī
advantage: to be of advantage p̄osum p̄odésse p̄ofuī	all but propémodum; I have all but given up hope propémodum spem dēm̄isī
advantage: to take advantage of the opportunity occāsiónem nanc̄isc·or -ī nāctus sum	all over: it's all over! Āctum est!
advice: I will take your advice on the matter cōnsílium tuum ill̄us reī cápiā	all the same (anyhow) níhilō sētius
advice: on your advice tē auctóre	all there: are you quite all there? sat̄sne s̄anus (-a) es?
	all's well salva rēs est
	amount: it amounts to the same thing tantúndem est

amusement: for one's amusement
ánimī causā

and so forth et perinde

angry: he did nothing for you to be angry at nihil fēcit quod suscēnsēās

answer: I'll answer you point by point
tibi respondēbō (*in writing:*
rescrībam) ad sīngula

answer: now I'll answer your questions nunc respondēbō ad ea quae rogāvistī

answer: that's not an answer to my question áliud tē rogō

answer: to give s.o. an answer álicui respōnsum rédd·ō -ere -idī -itus

anyhow (just the same) nec eō sētius;
(*in any event*) útique

anything else I can do for you? num quid áliud mē vīs?

apologize: I apologize to you mē tibi excūsō

apology: please accept my apologies
quaesō, áccipe excūsātiōnēs

apparently ut vidētur

applecart: to upset the applecart
plaustrum percēll·ō -ere pérículī

appointment: to have an appointment with cōstitútum háb·eō -ēre -uī cum (+ *abl*)

appointment: to keep an appointment
ad cōstitútum vén·iō -īre vēnī

appreciate: I appreciate your kindness benefícium tuum túeor

argue: stop arguing! désine (*pl:*
dēsínite) argūmentārī!

argument: to get into an argument in
lītem ambíguam dēscénd·ō -ere -ī

argument: to put up an argument
recūsāre

ashamed: I'm ashamed of it mē pudet ēius

ashamed: I'm ashamed to say mē pudet dícere

ask further questions quaer·ō -ere quaesívī ultrā

ask: he asked me whether quaesívit ā mē (*or* dē mē *or* ex mē) num

ask: he asked you a question ille tē interrogávit

ask: I want to ask you this hoc tē rogāre volō

ask: to ask s.o. for s.th. áliquem áliquid rogāre

ask: why do you ask me that? quid mē istud rogās?

at all prōrsum, omnínō; **you have no common sense at all** nōn cor omnínō habēs

attend: I'll certainly attend to it dabō équidem óperam

available: to be available praestō esse

average: on the average médiā hábitā ratióne

aw, keep quiet! au, tacē!

aye yai yai! heu heu!

back: to back s.o. álicui fáveō -ēre fāvī fautúrus

bad: wine is bad for you aliénum tibi vīnum est

baloney! fábulae!

bamboozle: you bamboozled me mihi dedfī verba

beat around the bush circumitióne út·or -ī úsus sum

begin: to begin with primum enim

best: to do one's best prō virfī parte

best: to make the best of it aequō ánimō ferō ferre tulī látus

bet: I bet he has taken off pōnō eum abivísse

bet: I bet you he doesn't win tē
spōnsiōne prōvocō illum nōn esse
victūrum

better half: where is your better half?
Úbinam est tua áltera?

better: it's better to commódius est (+
inf)

better: it's for the better in mélius est

better late than never pótius sērō quam
numquam

better: there, that's better! em istuc
rēctius!

big-mouth! ōs dūrum!

**big-mouth: he was always a big-
mouth** semper dūrae buccae fuit

blame: I don't blame you tibi nōn
impróperō

blame: to push the blame on culpam in
(+ *acc*) cōnferō conférre cōntulī
collátus

blame: you are to blame tū peccās *or*
tū in culpā es

bless you dī tē ament; (*after a sneeze*)
salvē *or* salútem!

bore: don't be a bore nē sīs odiósus
(-a)

bother: don't bother me nē mihi
moléstus (-a) sīs

bother: don't bother nōlī tē (*pl*: nōlíte
vōs) movére

**brag: he brags too much about his
money** pecúniā nimis iactat

brains: she's got brains corcillum
habet

brief: make it brief! in pauca cōnfer!

briefly: to put it briefly ut bréviter
dícam

brilliant! sophos!

bring oneself to (*do s.th.*) ánimū
indúcō -ere indúxī ut (+ *subj*)

broke: to be broke solvéndō nōn esse

bump into s.o. álicui occurrere (*or*
álicui óbviā fferī)

burst out laughing rīsum effúndō -ere
effúdi

bury the hatchet similtátem dēpónō
-ere dēpósui

bush: don't beat around the bush nōlī
(*pl*: nōlíte) schēmās loquī

bush: he didn't beat around the bush
nīl circuitiōne ūsus est

**business: I always mind my own
business** negótium agō semper
meum

**business: it's my (your, etc.) business
to see what's going on** meum (tuum,
etc.) est vidére quid agátur

business: that's none of my business
nihil ad mē áttinet

business: to put s.o. out of business
álicuem dē negótio dēicō -ere
dēicō dēiectus

business: what business is it of yours?
quid id ad tē áttinet?

busy: I'm busy labōriósus (-a) *or*
occupátus -a sum

busybody: ardéliō -ónis *mf*

buttonhole s.o. álicuem prehēnsáre

cahoots: to be in cahoots with s.o. cum
álicuō collūdō -dere -sī

care: for all I care meā causā

care: I don't care about such things
Ista nōn cūrō

care: I don't care for (*don't like*) nīl
mor·or -árī -átus sum (+ *acc*)

care: I don't care to say more nōn
libet plūra dícere

care: I don't really care as long as ...
meā nīl rēfert dum (+ *indic*)

care: take care of yourself cūrā ut
válēās (*pl*: cūráte ut valéátis)

care: what do I care! quid meā!

- carry away: don't get carried away with enthusiasm** nōlī (*pl.*: nōlíte) stúdiō efferrī
- case: get off my case!** nē mihi moléstus (-a) sīs!
- case: if that's the case,** sī rēs sic habet,
- case: in any case** utcúmque
- case: in case you have not ...** sī minus ...
- case: in no case** haudquáquam
- case: in that case** ígitur; eō cāsū
- case: since that's the case,** quae cum ita sint,
- case: that's not the case** nōn ita rēs est
- case: that's the case** sunt ista *or* sic rēs habet
- catch breath: let me catch my breath, please** sine respírem, quaesō
- catch red-handed** flagrántī dēlíctō dēprehén·dō -dere -dī -sus
- catch sight of** cōnspíc·iō -ere cōnspéxī
- catch: I didn't catch what you're saying** nōn satis exaudiēbam quae lóqueris
- catch: there's a catch to it** enim istaec cáptiō est
- certain: I don't know for certain** nōn certō (*or* certum) sciō **I take it as certain** prō certō hábeō
- chance: he didn't give me a chance to answer** mihi nōn potestátem dedit respondéndī
- change: for a change** varietátis causā
- chat: to have a chat with** cōnfābulārī cum (+ *abl*)
- chew out: why did the instructor chew you out?** quā dē causā docēns tē pilávit?
- clear out of here!** hinc ápage!
- clear: to clear \$1000 in the first year** primō annō mille dóllarōs dētérg·eō -ére dētérsī dētérsus
- clever: very clever! (well said!)** facétē dictum!
- come here this minute!** concēde hūc āctútum!
- come about** ēvén·iō -íre ēvénī ēvéntum
- come: come back soon** redī (*pl.*: redíte) cito
- come down with an illness** morbō corríp·ior -ī corréptus sum
- come: come what may, we'll take it philosophically** quod fors feret, ferémus aequō ánimō
- comfortable: make yourselves comfortable** rogō ut vōbīs suávitē sit
- coming: he's got what's coming to him** habet quod sibi dēbēbátur
- common sense: to have common sense** cor háb·eō -ére -uī
- company: to keep each other company** inter sē cólere
- concern: as far as I'm concerned** per mē
- concern: how does that concern you?** quid id ad tē áttinet?
- concerned: I'm not terribly concerned about ...** labórō nōn valdē dē (+ *abl*)
- condition: in excellent condition** habitíssim·us -a -um
- condition: in good (bad) condition** bene (male) hábít·us -a -um
- condition: on condition that** eā lēge ut (+ *subj*)
- congratulations!** macte virtúte estō!
- consent: without my consent** mē invítō
- contradict oneself** pugnántia loqu·or -ī locútus sum

control yourself tē cōtinē

convenience: do it at your

convenience id fac cōmodō tuō

convenience: write me at your earliest

convenience scribe ad mē cum
commodīssimē pōteris

**convenient: when it will be convenient
for you** cum erit tuum cōmodum

conversation: to engage in

conversation with sermōnēs cum (+
abl) cōnferō cōnferre cōntulī

cook up (fig) excōgitāre

count: you can count on it that ... erit
tibi perspēctum (+ acc & inf)

count: you can count on me potes nīti
mē [abl]

count: you don't count extrā nūmerum
es mihi

crazy: he's crazy about her dēperit
eam

crazy: he's crazy about sports
morbōsus est in lūdōs

creep: it makes my skin creep facit ut
hórream

cut it out dēsīnās! (pl: dēsīnātis!);
dēsīste! (pl: dēsīstite!)

cut that out right now supersedē istīs
rēbus iam

cut the talk! it's boring ségregā
sermōnem! taedet

damned: I'll be damned if I know dī
mē perdant, sī sciō

**darn: I don't give a darn about that
(him, them)** id (eum, eos) nōn faciō
floccī

darned: I'll be darned if ... male mī
sit, sī ...

darned: Well, I'll be darned if I ever
male mī sit, sī umquam (+ fut indic)

dead: I'm dead! intérii! or pērii!

deaf: you're preaching to deaf ears ad
surdās aurēs cantās

deal: a good deal of aliquántum (+ gen)

deal: it's a deal pactam rem habētō (pl:
habētōte)

**decked out: why are you all decked
out?** quámobrem sic subōrnátus (-a)
es?

**deliver: the mailman delivered the
letter yesterday** tabellárius lítterās
herī réddidit

deny: I do not deny that ... nōn
ínfítī·or -ári (+ acc & inf)

**depend: it depends a lot on whether
... plúrimum** rēfert num ...

depend: it (all) depends on you tōtum
in tē pōsitum est

detail: to go into a matter in detail
rem per síngula ín·eō -íre -iī or -ívi

difference of opinion díssénti·ō -ónis f

difference: it makes no difference nīl
ínterest

**difference: it makes no difference to
me (you, etc.) whether ... or nīl**
meā (tuā, etc) ínterest (or rēfert)
utrum ... an (+ subj)

**difference: what's the difference
anyhow!** quíd útique ínterest! or
quíd útique rēfert?

dig up s.th. about quicquam ērúere dē
(+ abl)

dirt cheap prō lutō

dirty look: to give s.o. a dirty look
respíc·iō -ere respéxi áliquem minus
famiári vultū

disagree: I strongly disagree with you
veheménter ā tē dísséntiō

disappear: to disappear from sight ē
cōspéctū aúferor auférrī ablátus
sum

disappoint: I'll not disappoint you nōn
fallam opiniónem tuam

- do good: it will do you (a lot of, no) good** *próderit* (multum, nihil) tibi
- do in: he has done me in** *pérdidit mē*
- do one's best** *óperam dō dare dedi*
- do: I don't know what to do** *quid fáciam nés-ciō*
- do: it won't do to** (+ *inf*) *nōn satis est* (+ *inf*)
- do: what else can I do?** *quid áliud fáciam?*
- do: what more can I do?** *quid fáciam ámplius?*
- do: will this do?** *sátin(e) est?*
- dogs: they're going to the dogs** *pessum eunt*
- doing: what's doing?** *quid ágitur?*
- done for: I'm done for!** *nūllus sum or Pér-i*
- doubt: I have no doubt that ...** *nōn mihi dúbium est quān (+ subj)*
- down pat: you have the whole thing down pat** *órdine omnem rem tenēs*
- downhill: it was all downhill after that** *proclívia ómnia erant postílla*
- downhill: things are going downhill** *inclináta rēs est*
- drive s.o. mad:** *áliquem dēméntem fáciō -ere fēcī factus*
- drop it! (no more of that!)** *missa istaec fac!*
- drop it, please!** *mitte, amábō!*
- drop in on (to visit)** *invís-ō -ere -ī*
- drop: let's drop the subject** *missa haec faciámus*
- duck the issue** *rem ēvítáre*
- duped: you've been duped good and proper** *tibi ós est súblitum plānē et probē*
- dying to know: I am dying to know how you are doing** *valdē áveō scíre, quid agās*
- eat out** *forīs cēnāre*
- effort: make an effort to be on time** *dā óperam ut tempestívē adsís*
- effort: you've wasted all your effort** *omnem óperam perdidísti*
- else: who else is more deserving?** *quis alter est dígnior homō?*
- embarrassed: I am embarrassed by** *sum perturbátus cum (+ abl)*
- end: put an end to** *finem impón-ō -ere impósuī (+ dat)*
- end: that's the end of me** *Áctum est dē mē*
- enough of this!** *haec quidem háctenus!*
- evidently** *vidélicet*
- excuse: excuse me** *ignósce mihi*
- excuse: please excuse me** *óbsecrō, mihi ignós-cās*
- expect: what do you expect?** *quid vís fíerī?*
- expression: to change one's expression** *vultum flect-ō -ere flexī flexus*
- eye: keep an eye on that guy** *adsérvā (pl: adserváte) istum*
- eye: look me in the eye** *aspícédum contrā mē*
- eyes: keep your eyes open** *cavē circumspíciās*
- face to face: to be face to face with you** *praesēns praesénti tibi esse*
- face to face: we can discuss that face to face** *cōram id ágere possumus*
- face: make a face** *ós dūc-ō -ere dūxī*
- fact: as a matter of fact** *enimvērō*
- fact: in fact** *vērō; quidem*
- fact: the facts speak for themselves** *rēs ipsa índicat or rēs prō sē lóquitur*
- fact: the fact that ...** *quod (+ indic)*
- fail: words fail me** *quid dícam nōn invéníō*

fair: fair and square sine fūcō ac fallāciīs

fair: I think that's fair id aequī fāc·iō -ere -fēcī

fair: that's not fair of you nōn aequum facis

fall flat (*of a speech, etc.*) frīgēō frīgēre

fall for (*a trick*) fall·or -ī (+ *abl*)

fall sick in morbum íncid·ō -ere -ī

far from it! mínimē!

far-fetched idea conquísítum cōnsíli·um -ī *n*

far: as far as I'm concerned per mē

fault: to be at fault in culpā esse

favor: ask s.o. for a favor grātiam ab áliquo pet·ō -ere petīvī

favor: do s.o. a favor grātum álicui fāc·iō -ere fēcī factus

favor: please do me this favor amábō tē, fac (*or for a previous favor, refer*) hanc grātiam mihi

fear of God: he put the fear of God into them cūrāvít ut illis Iúppiter írātus esset

feel bad (good) sē male (bene) habére; **to feel really bad about** valdē dól·eō -ére -uī dē (+ *abl*)

feel better (*physically*) mélius vál·eō -ére -uī

feel well: not feel quite well minus vál·eō -ére -uī

feel: because I felt like it quia mihi líbitum est

feel: I felt like it líbuit

feel: you'll feel bad tibi cordólium erit

feelers: put out feelers to tentāre

feeling: I wasn't feeling well ego mē nōn bellē habébam

figure on (*rely on*) nīt·or -ī nīxus sum *or* nīsus sum

figure out excōgitāre

fine! probē!

fine: you did fine fēcísti probē

fine: everything's fine rēctē est

fine: that's fine bene hoc habet

finger: not lift a finger pressīs mánibus sēd·eō -ére sēdī

finger: to point the finger at s.o. dígitum ad áliquem inténd·ō -ere -ī

fingers: to snap the fingers dígitis cóncrep·ō -āre -uī

fix: to be in a fix in angústis vers·or -ārī -átus sum

flabbergast conturbāre

flabbergasted: we were absolutely flabbergasted nōs omnínō conturbábāmur

fly: to fly off the handle cito fērv·eō -ére -ī

fond: to be fond of dílig·ō -ere dílēxī dílēctus

for all that nec eō sētius *or* níhilō sētius

for that matter ádeō

forget about it! éice id ex ánimō!

free: if you are free sī vacābis

friend: she's my best friend amíca summa mea est

from a to z: he explained everything to me from a to z ab áciā et acū mihi ómnia expósuit

fun: he always makes fun of me (*or pokes fun at me*) iste mē semper élúdit (*or inrídēt*)

fun: it was pure fun hilária mera erat

fun: it's no fun if you ... nōn iūcúndum est sī tū ...

geez eu édepol *or* eu hercle

general: in general ferē, vulgō

get out of my way! dē viā meā decéde (*pl: decéдите!*)

- get (the business) over and done with** (negótiūm) absólv·ō -ere -ī absolútus
- get along: they get along well with each other (or one another)** concórditer inter sē cóngruunt
- get carried away by or with** éfferor efférrī ēlátus sum (+ *abl*)
- get: do you get it now?** iam tenēs? **I get it** téneō
- get: don't you get it?** nōn tū tenēs? **now I get it!** iam téneō!
- get even with s.o. for** ulcísco·or -ī ultus sum áliquem quod (+ *indic*)
- get even: if only I could get even with him for what he did** Útinam istum ulcíscoi possem prō factīs ēius
- get: I can't get him to talk** nōn queō ōráre ut loquátur
- get: I get it all right** satis ea téneō
- get: now get this** nunc cognósce rem
- get rid of: I want to get rid of that pest** istum moléstum ámolíri volō
- gist: the gist of what he said was this:** hanc in senténtiam díxit:
- give it here** cedo (*pl*: cette) (*an old imperative; can take a direct object*)
- give it to 'em!** ádhibē! (*pl*: adhíbite!)
- glued: I'm glued to my books** in librīs haér·eō -ére haesī
- glum: why so glum?** quid tū es tam trístis?
- go and see whether he has come home or not** abī, víse redierítne an nōndum domum
- go on!** perge (*pl*: pérgite) porrō
- go on: what's going on here?** quid reī hīc est?
- go well: things are going fairly well** ágitur satis
- go: I don't go for (don't like)** nīl mor·or -áři -átus sum (+ *acc*)
- go: I don't go in for sports** lūdīs [*dat*] nōn stúdeō
- go: please let me go** mitte mē sīs
- go: what's going on?** quid negóti est? *or* quid ágitur?
- go: where are you going?** quō tē agis?
- god bless you!** tibi dī bene fáciant; (*after a sneeze*) salvē *or* salútem
- going: good going!** bene factum!
- goner: geez, I'm a goner** périi hercle
- good for you!** macte virtúte estō! (*said in praise*)
- good job!** bene factum!
- good lord!** o dī boni!
- good thinking!** bene putās!
- good for: how long is that good for?** quam diū valébit?
- good, good!** euge, euge!
- good-for-nothing** *adj* nēquam (*indecl*)
- good-for-nothing s: to be a good-for-nothing** nihil hómīnis esse
- good: to do a lot of good** multum prōsum prōdésse prōfui
- good: you're a good fellow** frūgī es
- grateful: I am deeply grateful to you** tibi grátiam hábeō máximam (*or* grátíās máximās)
- great!** eu!
- great: that's great!** bene hercle factum!
- ha, ha, ha!** hahahaé!
- hand over: hand it over!** cedo (*pl*: cette)! (*an old imperative; can take a direct object*)
- hand: hand me that food** pórrige mihi illum cibum
- hands: to have one's hands full** sátag·ō -ere satégī
- hands: to sit on one's hands (doing nothing)** compréssis mánibus séd·eō -ére sédi

hang around with frequēns adesse unā cum (+ *abl*)

hang: you can just go and hang yourself! ī dīrēctē in máximam malam crucem!

happen: what happened? quid factum est?

hard: he was hard on me in mē dūrus erat

hard: it's hard to do, but I'll try just the same difficile factū est, sed cōnābor nīhilō sētius

hard: to take this hard hoc dūrum accip·iō -ere accēpī

harp on the same theme cantilēnam eāndem can·ō -ere cecinī

have it your way! estō ut lubet!

have a tough time of it valdē labōrāre

have it in for s.o. ālicui periculum dēnūntiāre

have to do: what do you have to do with him? quid reī tibi est cum illō?

have to say: this I have to say haec hābeō dīcere

head: come into one's head in buccam vēn·iō -īre vēnī [*lit: come into one's cheek*]

head: from head to foot ā cāpite ūsque ad calcem

head: to put heads together cāpita cōnferō cōnfērre cōntulī

headway: we are making some headway, I hope ut spērō, prōfīcimus aliquāntum

health: for reasons of (bad) health valētūdinis causā

heart: from the heart ex ānimō; **heart and soul** tōtō pēctore

heart: my heart was in my throat ānima mihi in nāsō erat [*lit: my breath was in my nose*]

heart: to take to heart familiārīter ferō ferre tulī lātus

heaven: for heaven's sake óbsecrō [*lit: I pray*]

heaven: I'm in seventh heaven dígitō caelum attingō

heavens above! o dī immortalēs!

heck: who the heck are they? quī, malum, istī sunt?

heels: to take to his heels sē conícere in pedēs

hell: I'm going to catch hell habébō convíciū

hello: Terentia says hello to you Teréntia tibi salūtem dicit

here I am Ecce mē

here with it! cedo! (*pl: cette!*) (*can take an accusative object, e.g.: here with that book!* cedo istum librum!)

hey you, I'm talking to you! heus tū, tibi ego dīcō!

hide: to be after s.o.'s hide córiū alicūius pet·ō -ere petívī

hide: to risk his own hide córiō suō lūdere

hide: to save his own hide córiū servāre

hit it off: did you hit it off with them? concordābāsne cum illīs?

hit: hit s.o. for a loan ferre alíquē mūtuō argētō

hmmmm hem

hogwash: that's hogwash! quisquíliae!

hold it! I won't let you leave astā! abíre hinc nōn sinam

honest to god médius fídus

honestly: tell me honestly dīc bonā fide

hoot: I don't give a hoot about him eum floccī nōn faciō

how come? quī istuc?

how so? quīdum? *or* quid ita?

how's that? (*what did you say?*)
quīdum? *or* quid iam?

humor: to humor s.o. álicui mōrem
gerō gérére gessi

hurray! euax!

hurry! mātūrā! (*pl.*: mātūrāte!)

hurry: but I'm in a hurry at próperō

hurry: what's your hurry? quid
festínās?

I'll be right there iam áderō

idea: you're full of ideas plēnus (-a)
cōnsílii es

**importance: it is of the greatest
importance to me that ...** permágnī
meā ínterest (+ *acc & inf*)

**important: it is (very) important to
me (you) that** magnī (máximē) meā
(tuā) ínterest (+ *acc & inf*)

important: it's not all that important
tantī nōn est

**impression: to make a deep
impression on** máximē commóv·eō
-ére commóvī (+ *acc*)

in: is your father in? estne pater intus?

**infer: I infer from what you say that
... ex verbīs tuīs cólligō** (+ *acc &*
inf)

**influence: to have a lot of influence
with** multum posse in (+ *abl*)

inform: to inform s.o. about áliquem
certiōrem facere dē (+ *abl*)

initiative: on my own initiative meā
sponte

inside: go inside! ī (*pl.*: íte) intus!

**intend: I intended to set out straight
for home** erat mihi in ánimō rēctā
proficīscī domum

intentions: with the best intentions
óptimō ánimō ütens

interested: I am interested in music
músicae [*dat*] stúdeō

interested: I am interested in that id
mihi cūrae est

interesting: that book is interesting
ille liber mē tenet

interrupt: don't interrupt me! nōlī (*pl.*:
nōlíte) mihi óbloquī!

is that so? ítane?

itch: I'm just itching to gést·iō -íre
quidem (+ *inf*)

jam: to be in a jam in angústíis vers·or
-áři -átus sum

job: good job! rēctē factum!

job: it's a big job but ... magnum opus
est sed tamen ...

joke: all joking aside iocō remóto

joke: as a joke per iocum

joke: now you're joking iocáris nunc tū

jokingly per iocum *or* inter iocum

**judgment: against my better
judgment** advérsum ingénium meum

just about (*pretty well, virtually*)
propémodum

just the same (*anyhow*) tamen *or* níhilō
sétius

keep this to yourself haec tū tēcum
habétō

keep your cool! compésce mentem!

keep a stiff upper lip! fac ut ánimō
fortī sīs!

keep: am I keeping you? num dētíneō
tē?

kept: what kept you? quid ténuit quō
minus venírēs?

kick the bucket ánimam bullíre

kid: don't kid me nē mē lūdās

kidding: you're kidding lūdis mē

kill time tempus fall·ō -ere feféllī

knock it off! parce! (*pl.*: párcite!)

know better: he thinks he knows better than I do cēnsēt sē plūs sápere quam mē

know for sure certum (*or* certō) sciō scīre scīvī

know: get to know nōsc·ō -ere nōvī nōtus

know: let me know what you are doing tū mē velim certiōrem fáciās, quid agās

know: let me know where you are fáciťō ut sciam ubi sīs

latest: today, at latest tomorrow hódie, summum crās

laugh: I laughed till I cried rīsī ūsque ad lácrimās

lay a finger on s.o. áliquem ūnō dígitō attíng·ō -ere áttigī

lay it on the line dířéctum loquor loquī locútus sum

lay off! désine (*pl.*: dēsínite) tandem!

leave me alone! omítte (*pl.*: omítтите) mē

leave it up to s.o. to ... álicui mandáre (+ *subj*)

leave no stone unturned nūllō locō dēsum dēesse dēfui

let down: to let s.o. down álicui dēsum dēesse dēfui

let fall: dēmítt·ō -ere dēmíssī dēmíssus

let me go! mítte (*pl.*: míttite) mē!

let me know fáciťō (*pl.*: facitóte) ut sciam

life and death: it's not a question of life or death nōn cápítis rēs ágitur

life: but such is life sed vīta fert; **to lead the life of riley** vītam chiam ger·ō -ere gessī

life: on my life! ita vīvam!

light: to make light of in levī háb·eō -ĕre -uī

like: he said something like this haec ferē dīxit

like: I like this hoc mihi placet

like: I like to do this mē iuvat hoc fácere

like: I'd like you to come velim (ut) véniās

like: that's more like it propémódum est

likely: it is more likely that facílius est ut (+ *subj*)

likely: most likely he will come próximum est ut véniat

line: drop me a line when you have time scribe áliquíd litterárum quandō vacās

line: he's feeding you a line verba tibi iste dat

line: to form a long line longum agmen fáciťō -ere fēcī factus

line: to lay it on the line dířéctum loquor loquī locútus sum

lip: keep a stiff upper lip fac, ut ánimō fortī sīs

live it up pergraéc·or -áři

living: to make a living quaestum fácere *or* víctum quaerítare

living: you're living on borrowed time dē lucrō vīvis (*pl.*: vívítis)

loaded with money cōpiós·us -a -um

loaf cessáre

loan: may I hit you for a loan? licet tē mítuō feríre?

long: it would take too long to ... longum erat (+ *inf*)

look like: I don't know what he (or she) looks like quā sit fáciē, nesciō

look: aha, the very person I was looking for Attát, quem quaerébam!

look: it looks that way to me ita mihi vidétur

low: I am low on (*e.g., paper*) (*charta*)
mihi dēest

luck: good luck! fēlīciter!

lump s.o. together with *aliquem*
accūd·ō -ere (+ *dat*)

mad: I'm mad at you tibi suscēnseō *or*
ego tibi irātus sum

mad: to be mad about (*be madly in*
love with) dēpēr·iō -īre -iī (+ *acc*)

mad: to go mad mente aliēnārī

mail: I mailed the letter yesterday
litterās herī dedi

matter: for that matter ádeō

matter: it doesn't matter to me nihil
ad mē pērtinet

matter: no matter how... quamvīs (+
subj)

matter: what does that matter to me
(**you, us**)? quid id meā (tuā, nōbīs)
rēfert?

matter: what on earth's the matter?
quidnam est?

matter: what's the matter? quid est?
or quid istuc est reī?

mean: do you know whom I mean?
scīsne quem dīcam?

mean: do you mean me? mēne vīs?
yes, you tē

mean: do you really mean it? ain
vērō? **yes, I do** aiō

mean: how do you mean that? quī
istuc vīs?

mean: now you know what I mean
scīs iam quid loquar

mean: what do you mean? quid tibi
vīs?

mean: what do you mean by that?
quid istuc est verbī?

mean: what does this mean? quid hoc
sibi vult?

mean: what I mean is (*in correcting a*
misunderstanding) at enim

means: by all means! máximē!

memory: if my memory serves me
right, sī ego satis commémīnī,

memory: in memory of in memóriam
(+ *gen*)

memory: to commit to memory
memóriae committ·o -ere commīsī

mention: I don't want to mention him
by name eum nōlō nōmināre

mention: not to mention ut nōn (*or*
nihil) dīcam dē (+ *abl*)

mention: not to mention the fact that
... ut mittam quod (+ *indic*)

mention: since mention has been
made of money, quóniam
nummōrum mēntiō facta est,

mess: geez, what a mess! eu édepol rēs
turbulētās!

mince: without mincing words sine
fūcō ac fallāciīs

mind: he's out of his mind aliēnātus
est ā sē

mind: I don't mind if you stay,
provided you're quiet nōn labórō sī
manēs, modo táceās

mind: I don't mind that ... nōn cūrō
quod (+ *indic*)

mind: I made up my mind not to
hurry erat in ánimō nihil festīnāre

mind: I made up my mind to leave
cōnstítuī hinc abīre *or* certum est
mihi hinc abīre

mind: I really don't mind that istuc
quidem nōn moléstē ferō ferre tulī

mind: I was out of my mind when ...
dēsipiēbam mentis cum ...

mind: I've made up my mind mihi
certum est

mind: if you don't mind sī tibi
moléstum nōn est *or* sī tibi vidētur

mind: it had not entered my mind
mihi in mentem nōn vēnerat

mind: it slipped my mind to write to you fūgit mē ad tē scrībere

mind: never mind! (*let it pass*) sine!
(*pl: sínite*)

mind: never mind what he says mitte
id quod dīcit

mind: set your mind at ease habē
ánimum lēnem et tranqúillum

mind: to change one's mind mentem
mūtāre

mind: to have in mind to in ánimō
habēre (+ *inf*)

mind: to mind s.o. else's (one's own)
business aliēna (sua) negótia cūrāre

mind: what's on your mind? quid tibi
in ánimō est?

misquote: you are misquoting me mē
áliis verbīs pōnis

mistake: by mistake imprūdēns,
pérperam

mistake: you're making a big mistake
errās pervérsē *or* veheménter errās

mood: to be in a good mood bonum
ánimum háb·eō -ēre -uī

more of this another time sed dē hōc
áliās plúrībus

mouth: I had better keep my mouth shut táceam óptimum est

mouth: shut your mouth óbserá ōs
tuum!

my oh my! vae míserō (-ae) mihi!

naturally (*of course*) nempe

necessary: if it is necessary for you to stay on sī opus est tē commorārī

necessary: if it is necessary for your health sī opus est ad valētúdinem

need: I (you, we) need money opus est
mihi (tibi, nobīs) argéntō [*abl*]

needless to say quid quaeris?

neither: that's neither here nor there
(*a matter of indifference*) *susque*
dēque est

nerve: what nerve! Ō audáciam!

news: if you happen to have any news about ... sī quid forte novī habēs dē
(+ *abl*); **if you have no news about ...** sī nihil novī habēs dē (+ *abl*); **I'll tell you when I have any news** narrábō, cum áliquid habébō novī **is there any news?** num quid novī? **no other news** nihil praeterea novī

nice: it was nice of you to invite me, but no, thank you bene vocās, sed tam grátia est

nice: it wasn't nice of you to say that nōn bellē fēcísti quī id dīxerīs

nick: you've come in the nick of time in ipsō artículō témporis ádvenīs

no way! mínimē! *or* nullō modō!

no, thanks tam grátia est *or* benígnē

nonsense! nūgās!

nonsense: cut out the nonsense omítte
nūgās

nonsense: that's a lot of nonsense nūgae sunt istae magnaē

nonsense: you are talking nonsense nūgās garrīs

nose: to have a good nose for these things haec festívē odórārī

nose: under one's very nose ante
óculōs

nosey: I don't want to be nose-y but ... nōn libet cūríosus (-a) esse sed ...

now here's the point nunc cognósce
rem

now what? quid nunc?

nuts: he's nuts aliēnátus est ā sē

nuts: you're nuts delírās

O.K. fiat *or* licet

O.K.: if it's O.K. with you, *sī tibi vidētur*

O.K.: we're O.K. *bene habēmus*

objection: I have no objection *per mē licet*

obliged: I'm much obliged to you for sending me your book *fēcístī mihi pergrátum quod librum ad mē mīsístī*

occasion: if occasion should arise, *sī fúerit occásiō,*

occur: that had never occurred to me *mihi istuc numquam in mentem vénerat*

of course *sc̄līcet, proféc̄tō*

off: I'm off to the forum *ego hinc mē ad forum (agō)*

off: where are you off to? *quō tē agis?*

oh boy! *eu!*

once I get started, I can't stop *quandō inc̄ipiō, dēs̄inere nōn queō*

one on one: we can discuss that one on one *id cōram ágere pōssumus*

ouch! *oié!*

out with it! (tell me!) *cedo! (pl: cettē!) (an old imperative)*

out of place: if it is not out of place, *nisi aliēnum est,*

over: it's all over! *Āctum est! or f̄licet!*

overwhelmed: to be overwhelmed with work *óbruī, tamquam flūctū, s̄ic ópere*

pain : stop being a pain in the neck *moléstus (-a) nē sis*

pain: feel pain *dolóre aff̄ic̄ior -ī aff̄éctus sum*

pardon: pardon me for what I said *ignósce mihi, quod d̄ixerō*

particular: in particular *pot̄issimum*

pass for (appear to be) *prob̄are prō (+ abl)*

pave: to pave the way to *viam fác̄iō -ere f̄ec̄i factus ad (+ acc)*

pay: it pays to listen *prétium óperae est auscultáre*

pay s.o. a visit *áliquem invís̄o -ere -ī*

period: I'll not give in *period nōn conc̄edam d̄ixī*

pickle: to be in a pickle *in angúst̄iis vers̄or -árī -átus sum*

pinch: in a pinch *in rē dúb̄iā*

pity: I pity you *miséreor tuī (pl: vestrī)*

place: this is not the place to ... *nōn est hic locus ut (+ subj)*

plans: to make plans for the trip *cōns̄ilium cáp̄iō -ere c̄ep̄i dē it̄inere*

play up to s.o. *áliquem col̄o -ere coluī*

play: stop playing games *dēs̄iste lūdōs fácere*

please *sōdēs (= sī audēs); quaesō; (very informal) amábō tē*

pleasure: with pleasure *libénter*

plus: consider it a plus *id députā esse in lucrō*

point: at this point *h̄ic*

point: beside the point *nihil ad rem; get the point?* *tenēsne (pl: tenēt̄isne)*

rem? get to the point! *venī ad rem!*

it got to the point where *eō*

dēc̄úrsum est ut (+ subj); that's the main point *id caput est up to this*

point *h̄áctenus; what was the point of your writing to me?* *quid r̄etulit*

tē mittere ad mē lítt̄erās? what's the point of that? *quam ad rem istud*

r̄efert? what's your point? (what

are you driving at?) *quō ev̄ádis? you*

miss the point *nihil ad rem p̄rtinet*

point: but to return to the point ...

sed ad pr̄p̄ositum ...

point: on that point *h̄ac dē rē*

- point: the point is that I no longer care about such things** quod caput est, iam ista nōn cūrō
- possible: is it really possible that ... numquid; is it really possible that you are telling the truth?** numquid vēra dīcis?
- pretend: I'll pretend I don't know him** dissimulābō mē eum nōvīsse
- pretend: I'll pretend I'm leaving** assimulābō quasi ābeam
- pretext: he left under the pretext that ... hinc ābiit quasi (+ subj)**
- pretty well (just about)** propēmodum
- privately: I want to speak with you privately** velim tēcum loquī in prīvāto *or* in sēcrētō
- problem: what's the problem?** quid est negōtī?
- promise: I am not making any definite promise** nihil certī pollicēor
- promises: to break promises** prōmīssa frang·ō -ere frēgī frāctus
- promises: to keep promises** prōmīssa servāre
- promises: to make many promises** multa pollic·eor -ērī pollicītus sum
- prove: this proves that ...** documētō est (+ *acc & inf*)
- public: in public** forīs
- pull a fast one on** verba dare (+ *dat*)
- pull oneself together** sē collig·ō -ere collēgī
- put off: let's put this off to another time** hanc rem in āliud tempus differāmus
- put up with with s.o.** āliquem perpēt·ior -ī perpēssus sum
- put yourself in my place** fac quī ego sum, esse tē
- put: you're putting it on a little thick** es pūtīdīsculus
- question: many questions are raised** multa quaerūntur
- question: no question, he's at fault** nempe in culpā est
- question: that's a loaded question** captiōsum interrogātum est
- question: to answer the question** ad rogātum (*or* interrogātum) respōnd·eō -ēre -ī
- question: to ask a loaded question** captiōsē interrogāre
- question: why do you ask such questions?** cūr ista quaeris?
- quiet: why don't you keep quiet?** quīn tū tacēs?
- racket: to raise a racket** clāmōrem toll·ō -ere sūstulī sublātus
- raise a rumpus** turbās dare
- rat: I smell a rat** āliquid mihi sūbolet
- rate: at any rate** útique
- rather: do you know this fellow?** hunc nōvīstī? **rather!** fácile!
- reason: for various reasons** multīs dē causīs
- reason: what's the reason why ...** quid est enim, cūr ...
- recall: as I recall** ut mea memōria est
- red cent: I don't owe anyone a red cent** assem aerārium nēminī dēbeō
- red cent: I haven't a red cent** assem aerārium hābeō nūllum
- regards: give him (her) my best** regards dīcitō eī multam meis verbīs salūtem
- remember: if I remember right,** sī bene mēminī,
- reminder: as a reminder** memōriae causā
- retire** in ōtium vēn·iō -īre vēnī ventūrus
- right away** contínuō
- right from the start** in prīncipiō ílicō

- right now** nunciam
- right: that's right** sīc est
- right: you have every right to ...**
omne fās tibi est (+ *inf*)
- right: you're right** bene dīxistī *or* vēra dīcis
- risk: at your own risk** tuō perīculō
- rough guess** ĩnfōrmāta cōgītātiō
- round up** cōg·ō -ere cōēgī cōāctus
- rubbish!** quisquīliae!
- ruckus: why are you raising such a ruckus?** quid istum clāmōrem tollis (*pl*: tōllitis)?
- run into s.o. on the street** āliquem offēnd·ō -ere -ī in platēā
- sake: for the sake of** causā (+ *gen*); **for heaven's sake** óbsecrō (*lit*: *i pray*); **for your sake** tuā (*pl*: *vestrā*) causā
- same: it's all the same to me** meā nihil ĩnterest
- satisfaction: to your satisfaction** ex tuā sentēntiā
- satisfy: you can't satisfy everyone** nōn potes ómnibus satis fácere
- say: so they say** ita aiunt
- scared: I am scared to death** exanimātus (-a) metū sum
- score: he doesn't know what the score is** nescit quid agātur
- scram!** ápage
- scrape: I'll try to scrape together the money** cōnābor argéntum conrādere
- see that you do it** fáctiō ut fáciās
- see: now I see (I understand)** iam téneō
- see: I'll see to it that ...** cūrābō ut (+ *subj*) ...
- self: he was not his usual self** nōn fuit cūius modī solet
- serious: are you serious?** sēriōne dīcis tū?
- service: to be at s.o.'s service** praestō (+ *dat*) esse
- seventh heaven: to be in seventh heaven** in caelō esse
- shake hands** dextrae iúngere dextram *or* dextram iúngere cum āliquō
- shame on you!** prō pudor!
- shame: that's a darn shame** édepol fácinus ĩmprobum
- shame: what a shame!** fácinus indígnum! *or* Ō rem indígnam!
- shoes: please put yourself in my shoes** fac, quaesō, quī ego sum, tē esse
- shook: all shook up** vehemēter perturbátus
- short: in short** in summā, ad summam
- show: this shows that ...** indíciō est (+ *acc & inf*)
- shut up!** óbserā ōs tuum!
- shut: why don't you just shut up?** quīn tū tacē modo?
- sick and tired: I am sick and tired of hearing the same thing over and over** (mē) pertaédet iam audíre éadem idéntidem
- sick and tired: I am sick and tired of the business** mē negótī pertaédet
- silly: don't be silly** nōlī ineptíre
- simply: I simply don't know what he is thinking of** iam plānē quid cōgitet néscio
- situation: that's the situation here in Rome** hīc Rōmae rēs sē sīc habent
- situation: you see what the situation is** vidēs quō in locō haec rēs sit
- skull: I'll break your skull** dīmínuam ego tibi caput
- slip: a slip of the tongue** laps·us -ūs *m* linguae
- slip: it has slipped my mind** memóriā éxcidit

- slip: it slipped my mind to ...** fūgit mē (+ *inf*)
- smart: don't talk smart to me** nōlī male dīcere mihi
- smart: she is smart** ingeniōsa est
- snowed: to be snowed under with** ōbruī, tamquam fluctū, sīc (+ *abl*)
- so far so good** bellē adhūc
- so to speak** ut ita dīcam
- so help me god!** médius fīdius!
- so: that's not so!** haud ita est
- sooner: no sooner said than done** dictō cītius *or* dictum factum
- speak of the devil** lupus in fābulā
- speak I'm listening** lōquere aúdiō
- speak: well, speak up!** quīn tū ēlōquere
- spirit: that's the right spirit now** nunc tū frūgī bonae es
- splendid!** euge!
- splendid: absolutely splendid!** nimis factum bene!
- split one's sides laughing** ília sua rīsū díssól·v·ō -ere -ī
- square: this simply doesn't square** nōn sānē quadrat
- stand: I can't stand him** istum ferre nequeō
- stand: I'd like to know how matters stand** velim scīre quō modō rēs sē hábeat
- standing ovation: to give s.o. a standing ovation** álicui stantēs plau·dō -dere -sī
- start: you've made a good start** bene habent tibi prīncípia
- starters: for starters** prīncipiō
- step on it!** mātúra! (*pl:* mātūráte!)
- stick to one's guns** in senténtiā stō stāre stetī
- stick to the truth** in vērítate mán·eō -ére mānsī
- stone: I will leave no stone unturned** nihil praetermittam
- stop right there!** stā ílicō!
- stop off at** dēversári apud (+ *acc*)
- stop off at s.o.'s house** dēvért·ō -ere -ī ad áliquem
- stop!** astā!
- stop: he finally stopped talking** finem loquéndi dēmum fēcit
- story: to make a long story short** nē longus sim *or* nē longam fáciam
- straighten out a matter** rem explicáre
- strictly speaking** própriē
- stroll: would you like to take a stroll?** velísne spatiári?
- stuck: he is stuck on some girl or other** in amórem haeret apud nésciō quam vírginem
- stuck: I'm stuck** (*out of ideas*) haéreō
- suggestion: at your suggestion** tē auctóre
- sum: to sum up** ad summam *or* in summam *or* in summā
- suppose: I suppose** (*parenthetical*) ut opínor
- sure: be sure to come** fácitō (*or* fac) modo ut véniās
- sure: I am sure that** certus (-a) sum (+ *acc & inf*)
- sure: to know for sure** certum (*or* certō) scīre
- suspense: not to keep you any longer in suspense** nē diútius péndeās
- suspense: to be in suspense** ánimī péndeō pendére pepéndī
- sweat: no sweat** nōn labóro
- take it easy!** parce! (*pl:* párcite!)

- take into consideration** respíc·iō -ere
respéxī
- take it hard that** grávitèr ferō ferre tulī
(+ *acc & inf*)
- take pains to** in magnō negótiō háb·eō
-ére -uī (+ *inf*)
- take place** fīō fierī factus sum
- take upon oneself (to)** in sē cōnférre (+
inf)
- take: here, take it** áccipe, em
- take: I can't take it anymore** patī
néqueō ámplius
- take: I take it** (*parenthetical*) ut opínor
- taken in: they know that they were
taken in** sciunt sibi data esse verba
- talk: that's mere talk** verba istaec sunt
- tear: I can't tear myself away from
writing (from my books)** in
scribéndō (in librīs) haér·eō -ére
haesī
- tenterhooks: to be on tenterhooks**
ánimī pénd·eō -ére pepéndī
- terms: I'm on good terms with in**
grátiā sum cum (+ *abl*); mihi cum (+
abl) magna necessitúdō est
- thank you** (*for a future favor*) amábō tē;
(*for a favor done*) amō tē
- thank you for** (+ *gerund*) tibi grátiās
agō ágere ēgī quod (+ *indic*)
- thank: I thank you for helping me**
grátiās tibi agō quod mē iūvistī
- thankful: I am thankful to you** grátiam
tibi hábeō
- thankful: you ought to be thankful to
me** grátiam hábeās mihi
- thanks a lot** multum tē amō
- thanks for your gifts** grátiās tibi dē
dōnīs tuīs
- thanks to me (you, etc.)** meā (tuā, etc)
óperā
- that'll do** sat est
- that's it!** (*enough!*) tantum est!
- that's right** (*in response to a question*)
sīc est
- that's so** ita est
- then and there** ibi contínuō; ílicō
- think over** reputáre
- think s.th. over** áliquid sēcum reputáre
- think: I don't think so** ego nōn putō
- think: I think so** sīc opínor
- think: that is exactly what I think** ita
prōrsus exístimō
- think: what do you think?** quid
cēnsēs?
- tie up** impéd·iō -íre -ívi -ítus
- tie: to be tied up** (*e.g., with business*)
impéd·ior -írī -ítus sum
- time: for the time being** prō témpore
- time: he's having a good time by
himself** eī bene est sōlī
- time: I haven't the time** haud mihi
ótium est
- time: I'm having a good (lousy) time**
mihi bene (male) est
- time: in my spare time** cum tempus
subscícŕvum mihi est
- time: there is no time to study** nōn
vacat studére
- tip: it was on the tip of the tongue** erat
in labrīs primóribus
- to each his own** cuique suum
- too bad about** male (mehércule) dē (+
abl)
- too bad about Marcus!** male dē Mārcō!
- tooth and nail** tōtō córpore et ómnibus
úngulīs
- top** (*surpass*) superáre
- top banana: he wants to be top**
banana vult sē esse primum ómnium
rērum

top: at the top of one's voice summā
vōce

topsy-turvy: everything was topsy-turvy ōmnia erant sūrsum deōrsum

track down s.th. āliquid indagāre

trick: is this a trick? num hoc est
cāptiō?

tricks: to be up to some tricks
lascīv-us -a -um esse

trouble: I'm expecting some big trouble nésciō quod magnum malum
exspécō

trouble: if it is no trouble sī grave nōn
erit

trouble: more trouble āmplius negōtī

trouble: to be in trouble labōrāre

trouble: to make big trouble for s.o.
dare magnum malum ālicui

trouble: what's the trouble? quid illuc
malī est? *or* quid est negōtī?

true: that's true rēs ita est *or* ita
profécō est

truth: to tell you the truth ut vērum
loquar *or* nē quid mēntiar

try one's best to (not to) óperam dō
dare dedī ut (nē) (+ *subj*)

turkey: to talk turkey with latínē
loqu-or -ī locútus sum cum (+ *abl*)

turn out fine bellē cādō -ere cécidī
cāsúrus

turn up: something will turn up, I hope fiet āliquid, spērō

uh-uh (*seeing s.o. unexpectedly*) attát

understand: do you understand now?
iam tenēs?

understand: I don't quite understand
nōn satis intéllegō

up in the air (*in uncertainty*) in médiō
relíct-us -a -um; **to be up in the air**
(*to be undecided*) péndeō pendére
pepéndī

ups and downs: there are ups and downs modo sīc, modo sīc

upset: don't be upset nōlī (*pl*: nōlíte)
perturbāri

upset: that upset me istuc mē ipsum
commovébat

upsetting: that was more upsetting to me than to you illud mihi māiōrī
stómachō erat quam tibi

upside down: everything was upside down ōmnia erant sūrsum deōrsum

use: it's no use ílicet

use: what's the use! quid opus est?

utter: she never uttered a word
nūllum verbum émísit

vein: in a similar vein ad símilem
senténtiam

very well (*in agreement*) fiat

virtually propémódum

visit: to go to visit, pay a visit to vīs-ō
-ere -ī -úrūs

wait a minute if you don't mind manē
dum nisi piget

wait a minute, please manē dum,
quaesō

want: now what do you want? quid
nunc tibi vīs?

waste one's breath óperam per-dō
-dere -didī

waste: I'm wasting my time frūstrā
tempus cónterō

watch out: hey you, watch out! heus
tū, cavē!

way: by the way óbiter

- way: he must always have his own**
way semper faciéndum est quod vult
- way: I'm in a bad way** mihi male est
- way: if it's not too much out of the way for you** sī tibi nōn sãnē dēvium erit
- way: is that the way you help me?**
istócine pactō mē ádiuvās?
- way: on one's way** inter viās
- way: to be on the way to** iter habére ad (+ *acc*)
- well done!** factum óptimē!
- well said!** facétē dictum!
- well** immō *or em or quīn*
- well, well** enim vērō
- what (is the trouble) now?** quid iam?
- what about me?** quid ego?
- what about the dough (money)?** quid dē argéntō?
- what do you take me for? for a fool?**
prō quō mē habēs? prō stultō?
- what else can I do for you?** quid est quod tibi effícere possum ámplius?
- what for?** quam ob rem?; quā causā?
- what is it? (what's the probem?)** quid est negótī?
- what is it? out with it!** quid est? cedo!
- what next?** quid deínde?
- what's it to me how you ...** quid istuc ad mē áttinet, quómodo tū (+ *subj*)
- what's that? (what did you say?)** quid est?
- what's that to you?** quid ad tē áttinet?
- what's the reason why ...** quid est quod (+ *indic*)
- what's up?** quid reī est?
- while away the time** fall-ō -ere fefélli tempus
- who are you?** quis tū homō es?
- who is he (she)?** quis homō est?
- who is it? it's me** quis homō est? ego sum
- who says so?** quis hoc dicit factum?
- whole: taken as a whole** in summam
- why is it that ...** quid est quod (+ *indic*)
- why not? (challenging what has been said)** quid ita nōn?; (*as an expression of assent: of course*) quíppinī? *or* quidnī?
- why say more?** quid plūra?
- why so?** quid ita? *or* quāprópter?
- why so? because ...** quid ita? quia ...
- why, this very day** quīn hódie
- willy-nilly** nōlens volēns
- wise guy!** ímpudēns!
- wise guy: don't be a wise guy** nē sīs ímpudēns
- wonder: and no wonder** nec mīrum
- wonder: I wonder what's up** mīror, quid hoc sit negótī
- wonder: I wonder where he is** ubi sit cógitō
- word: I want a word with you** paucīs tē volō *or* volō tē verbīs pauculīs
- word: to give (break, keep) one's word** fidem dare (frángere, serváre)
- word: why should I take your word for it?** cūr tibi crēdam?
- words fail me** mihi verba dēsunt
- worry: don't you worry!** tū nōlī sollicitáři!

worse: to get worse *ingravēsc·ō -ere*; **to turn out for the worse** *in pēiōrem partem vertor vertī versus sum*

worth: he's worth a lot of money
divítiās máximās habet

worth: he's worth nothing *nihil est*

worth: it isn't worth it *nōn est óperae prētium* **it's not worth all that** *tantī nōn est*

worthwhile: it is worthwhile *óperae prētium est*

wow! (*in shocked surprise*) *papaé!*

wrong: if I have done anything wrong, I'm sorry *sī quid pérperam fēcī, mē paénitet*

wrong: what's wrong with you? *quid est tibi? or quid est tēcum?*

yes: I say yes you say no *ego aiō tū negās*

Chapter XII: Clothing and Jewelry

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I Priscilla buys clothes.

Vestiária	Salvē. Quómodo tibi ministráre possum?	Saleslady: Hello. How can I help you?
Priscilla	Salvē. Ego stolam émere volō.	Priscilla: Hello. I want to buy a dress.
Vestiária	Quem colórem cupis?	What color do you want?
Priscilla	Stolam caerúleam cúpiō.	I want a blue dress.
Vestiária	Cupísne quicquam áliud?	Do you want anything else?
Priscilla	Ita, pār soccórum cúpiō.	Yes, I want a pair of shoes.
Vestiária	Cupísne émere sandália?	Do you want to buy sandals?
Priscilla	Mínimē. Soccōs albōs cúpiō.	No. I want white shoes.
Vestiária	Habémus hódie vestēs séricās bellās.	We have nice silk dresses today.
Priscilla	Benígnē. Quantī haec cōstant?	No, thank you. How much do these (items) cost?
Vestiária	Decem dóllarīs ex tōtō.	Ten dollars in all.
Priscilla	Ecce tibi decem dóllarōs.	Here are your ten dollars.

LEVEL II Peter buys some winter clothes.

Vestiárius	Salvē. Quómodo tibi ministráre possum?	Salesman: Hello. How can I help you?
Petrus	Salvē. Velim émere mihi áliquot vestíménta hībérna.	Peter: Hello. I'd like to buy myself some winter clothes.
Vestiárius	Em, habémus paénulās scórteās ex Hispániā.	Well, we have leather raincoats from Spain.
Petrus	Bene. Cúpiō paénulam. Vēnditásne digitália?	Fine. I want a raincoat. Do you sell gloves?

Vestiárius	Hábeō digitália scórtea et lánáta.	<i>I have leather and woolen gloves.</i>
Petrus	Dā mihi duo pária digitálium lánátórum. Égeō étiam pílleō lánátō.	<i>Give me two pairs of woolen gloves. I also need a woolen cap.</i>
Vestiárius	Vísne émere tibiália lánáta?	<i>Do you want to buy (some) woolen stockings?</i>
Petrus	Sānē, égeō duóbus páribus.	<i>Yes, I need two pairs.</i>
Vestiárius	Vísne quicquam áliud?	<i>Do you want anything else?</i>
Petrus	Cíngulum scórteum, sī praestō est.	<i>A leather belt if it's available.</i>
Vestiárius	Cíngula semper in hāc tabérnā vestiáriā praestō sunt. Quot cíngula cupis?	<i>Belts are always available in this clothing store. How many belts do you want?</i>
Petrus	Ūnum, opínor, satis est.	<i>I suppose one is enough.</i>
Vestiárius	Quámobrem egēs hīs vestiméntis hibérnis?	<i>Why do you need these winter clothes?</i>
Petrus	Quia ego iter factúrus sum tráns Alpēs in Germániam.	<i>Because I'm going to take a trip across the Alps to Germany.</i>

LEVEL III **Two daughters get dressed for a party.**

Māter	Lēda et Vanéssa, vósne parátae estis ad convívium quod Maríā ágitat?	Mother: <i>Leda and Vanessa, are you ready for the party that Maria is throwing?</i>
Lēda	Māter, ego hábeō nihil prōrsus quod geram.	Leda: <i>Mother, I have absolutely nothing to wear.</i>
Māter	Nūgās! Habēs vērō cēnátória bellíssima. Habēs enim tálárem vestem róseam et tálárem vestem violáceam et tálárem vestem caerúleam.	Nonsense! <i>In fact, you have very pretty party clothes. You have, you know, a pink dress, a violet dress, and a blue dress.</i>
Lēda	Ita rēs est. At ego eās omnēs abhinc trēs diēs ad fullónicam áttulī.	<i>That's true. But I took all of them to the laundry three days ago.</i>

Māter	Vanéssa, tū útique sat supérque vestēs habēs. Quoad ego sciō, tū habēs pulchrās tunicās manicātās et tunicās sine mánicīs. Dā Lēdae ūnam ex tuīs tunicīs.	<i>Vanessa, you at least have more than enough clothes. As far as I know, you have beautiful long-sleeved and sleeveless dresses. Give Leda one of your dresses</i>
Vanéssa	Māter, Lēda semper vestēs meās mūtuátur. Praetérea, mea túnica coccínea et túnica víridis sunt vétérēs et trítæ.	<i>Mother, Leda is always borrowing my clothes. Besides, my deep red dress and my green dress are old and worn out.</i>
Māter	Lēda!	<i>Leda!</i>
Lēda	Quid est?	<i>What is it?</i>
Māter	Cūrā ut ábeās currículō ad fullónicam et petās vestēs tuās.	<i>See to it that you take off on the double for the laundry and fetch your clothes.</i>
Lēda	Eī óperam dabō extéplō, māter.	<i>I'll attend to that immediately, mother.</i>
Māter	Et tū, Vanéssa . . .	<i>And you, Vanessa . . .</i>
Vanéssa	Quid?	<i>What?</i>
Māter	Sī vīs ire exōrnáta ad convívium, tibi licet gerās meās inaúrēs et moníle gemmátum.	<i>If you want to go to the party all decked out, you may wear my earrings and my necklace of precious stones.</i>
Vanéssa	Grátias, māter.	<i>Thank you, mother.</i>
Māter	Lēda, tibi licet gérās meam armíllam et moníle baccátum.	<i>Leda, you may wear my bracelet and my pearl necklace.</i>
Lēda	Papaé! Quāle convívium id erit!	<i>Great! What a party that will be!</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

ankle-length tálár·is -is e

apron súblig·ar -áris n

belt cingul·um -ī n; zōn·a -ae f (*wide belt, usu. of cloth, used by men and women with a tunic; often used as money belt*)

blouse pēlúsi·a -ae f

boot pēr·ō -ónis m (*of rawhide, reaching up to the calf, worn by peasants, shepherds, soldiers*); cálig·a -ae f (*worn by soldiers of lower rank*)

bra stróphi·um -ī n, mamillár·e -is n

bracelet armíll·a -ae f (*worn on the upper arm*)

brocade séric·um -ī n aurō (*or argéntō*) intéxtum (*or intertéxtum*)

bundle up (*against the cold*) sē bene opér·iō -íre -uī

button s glóbul·us -ī m

button tr glóbulis string·ō -ere strínxī strictus

cap pílle·us -ī m

cape lacérn·a -ae f

chain catéll·a -ae f

change mūtáre

charm amulét·um -ī m

clasp fībul·a -ae f

cloak pálli·um -ī n (*Greek item*)

clogs sóle·ae -árum fpl lígneae

cloth (*as a fabric*) text·um -ī n; (*a piece of cloth*) pann·us -ī m

clothe vést·iō -íre -ívī or -īi ítus

clothes vestimént·a -órum npl; hábit·us -ūs m (*outfit of a particular class or occasion*)

clothier (*sales person in a clothing store*) vestiári·us -ī m, vestiári·a -ae f

clothing store tabérn·a -ae f vestiária

clothing vest·is -is f, vestít·us -ūs m, vestimént·um -ī n

coat paénul·a -ae f, amícul·um -ī n

collar collár·e -is n

deep red coccíne·us -a -um

dinner clothes cēnātóri·a -órum npl, sýnthes·is -is f

dress s vest·is -is f muliebris; (*ankle-length*) vestis táláris; (*Roman*) stol·a -ae f

dress tr índuō índuere índuī indútus, vést·iō -íre -ívī or -īi ítus; amíc·iō -íre amícuī or amíxī amíctus; **to dress oneself, get dressed** sē índuere, sē vestíre, sē amícíre; **to dress up** sē exórnáre

dress shoes socc·ī -órum mpl, sóccul·ī -órum mpl (*for women, of different colors and often decorated with gems*)

earrings inaúr·ēs -ium fpl

embroidered (*with colors*) pict·us -a -um

emerald smarágd·us -ī m

evening wear cēnātóri·a -órum npl

fabric (*pattern of weaving*) text·us -ūs m (**coarse** crassus; **sheer, thin** ténuis; **thick** pinguis)

fashion cultūs mod·us -ī m

fringe fīmbrī·a -ae f

fur coat amícul·um -ī n pellícium

fur jacket iacc·a -ae f pellícia

garter períscelis, periscélidis f

girdle strop·p·ī -órum mpl

gloves digitál·ia -ium npl

gown táláris vest·is -is f; (*Roman*) stol·a -ae f

- green** vírid·is -is -e
- handbag** (of leather) pέρul·a -ae f
coriácea
- hat** pétas·us -ī m (with broad brim)
- hem** limb·us -ī m
- housecoat** vest·is -is f mātūfína
- jacket** iacc·a -ae f; (of leather) iacc·a
-ae f scórtea; **fur jacket** iacca
pellícea
- jeans** brāc·ae -árum fpl Genuénsēs
- jewel** gemm·a -ae f
- laundry** fullónic·a -ae f; (dirty clothes)
lavandári·a -órum npl
- leather** adj ex córiō; (for
weatherproofing) scórte·us -a -um
- leather** s córi·um -ī n
- leather raincoat** scórte·a paénul·a -ae f
(waterproof)
- linen** adj líne·us -a -um
- linen** s línteum -ī n, līn·um -ī n
- linen cloth** sában·um -ī n
- locket** (worn by boys, of leather, silver
or gold) bull·a -ae f; **wearing a
locket** bullát·us -a -um
- long-sleeved** manicát·us -a -um
- miniskirt** cástul·a -ae f brevíssima
- money belt** ventrál·e -is n, (of cloth)
zōn·a -ae f
- necklace** torqu·ēs -is m, moníl·e -is n;
(of precious stones) moníle
gemmátum
- necktie** focál·e -is n
- nightgown** camísi·a -ae f noctúrna
- outfit** hábit·us -ūs m, sýnthes·is -is f
- overcoat** superindūment·um -ī n
- pajamas** sýnthes·is -is f dormitória
- palla** (female “toga,” worn over the
stola) pall·a -ae f
- pallium** (Greek “toga,” made of wool)
pállī·um -ī n; **wearing a pallium**
palliát·us -a -um
- pants** brāc·ae -árum fpl
- pattern** (of weaving) text·us -ūs m
- pearl earrings** margarítæ -árum fpl
dēpendéntēs
- pearl necklace** moníl·e -is n baccátum
- pink** róse·us -a -um
- pleated** undulát·us -a -um
- pocket** lócul·us -ī m
- print** vest·is -is f imāgínibus impréssa
- purse** pέρul·a -ae f
- put on** índuō índuere índuī indútus
- raincoat** scórte·a -ae f; (hooded)
paénul·a -ae f; (open mantle,
fastened at shoulder) lacérn·a -ae f
- ribbon** taéni·a -ae f
- ring** ánul·us -ī m
- robe** vest·is -is f
- safety pin** fíbul·a -ae f
- saleslady** (in a clothing store) vestiári·a
-ae f
- sandal** (w. covered toes) sandáli·um -ī
n; (simplest form of sandal, with the
sole fastened to feet with thongs)
sóle·a -ae f; (with thick leather sole,
tied with straps, characteristically
worn by Greeks) crépid·a -ae f
- sash** zōn·a -ae f
- scarf** amictóri·um -ī n
- sheer** (fabrics) rall·us -a -um
- shirt** indúsi·um -ī n
- shoe** (worn with toga) cálce·us -ī m;
(oxfords) cálceī subtālārēs; (fancy
low shoe, of different colors, gold,
yellow, decorated with pearls, etc.)
socc·us -ī m, sóccul·us -ī m; (red
shoes of senator) cálceus múlleus m
- shoelace** corrígi·a -ae f

shorts subligácul·um -ī *n*; (*street wear*)
breviōrēs brāc·ae -ārum *fpl*

ski boot cálig·a -ae *f* nartātória

ski jacket iacc·a -ae *f* nartātória

silk *adj* sēric·us -a -um; **silk clothes**
sēric·a -ōrum *npl*

silk *s* sēric·um -ī *n*

skirt cástul·a -ae *f*

skirt indúcul·a -ae *f*; gunn·a -ae *f*

sleeve mánic·a -ae *f*

sleeveless sine mánicī

slip hypozóni·um -ī *n*

slipper sóle·a -ae *f*, socc·us -ī *m*; (*of felt*)
ūd·ō -ōnis *m*

sneakers cálce·ī -ōrum *mpl* gýmnicī

sole (*of shoe or foot*) sol·um -ī *n*

stocking tibiál·e -is *n*; (*of felt and covering part of the legs*) impíli·um
-ī *n*

strap (*for shoe or sandal, sometimes decorated with gems*) obstrágul·um
-ī *n*

street clothes forēns·ia -ium *npl*

style modus -ī *m*; **to go out of style**
ex(s)olēsc·ō -ere ex(s)ólulī
ex(s)olētus

suit sýnthes·is -is *f*

sweater thōr·āx -ācis *m* lánius

swimsuit vest·is -is *f* balneáris

swim trunks súblig·ar -áris *n* balneáre

take off (*clothes*) éxuō exúere éxulī
exútus; (*clothes, shoes, ring*) détrahō
détráhere détráxī détráctus

toga tog·a -ae *f*; (*bright-white toga, worn by candidates*) toga cándida;
(*worn by men and boys after the age of about fifteen*) toga virílīs or pūra;
(*toga with purple border, worn by curule magistrates, by boys up to the age of manhood, and by girls until marriage*) toga praetéxta; (*toga embroidered with silver stars*) toga picta; (*toga of smooth cloth*) toga rāsa

topcoat superindūmént·um -ī *n*

trousers brāc·ae -ārum *fpl*

try on (*clothes*) induéndō probáre

undershirt (*worn by both sexes*)
subúcul·a -ae *f*

undress éxuō exúere éxulī exútus; **to get undressed** sē exúere

uniform hábit·us -ūs *m*; **in uniform**
subōrnát·us -a -um

veil vĕl·um -ī *n*

wear ger·ō -ere gessī gestus, gest·ō -áre
-ávī -átus; **wearing a belt** zōnā
incíntus

women's winter shoes calceátus -ūs *m*
fēminárum hībérnus

wool lān·a -ae *f*

woolen lānát·us -a -um, lāni·us -a -um

wrap amíct·us -ūs *m*

wrist watch hōrológi·um -ī braccihále

zipper clausúr·a -ae *f* tráctilis

Chapter XIII: House and Furniture

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I

Cynthia tries to persuade her friend Gloria to come to her house to play.

Cynthia	Glória, potésne veníre domum meam?	<i>Cynthia: Gloria, can you come to my house?</i>
Glória	Quid potérimus fácere ibi?	<i>Gloria: What can we do there?</i>
Cynthia	Potérimus librōs légere in cubículō meō.	<i>We can read books in my bedroom.</i>
Glória	Benígnē. Ego multōs librōs domī hábeō.	<i>No, thank you. I have many books at home.</i>
Cynthia	Fortásse potérimus cóquere crústula in culínā nostrā.	<i>Maybe we can bake cookies in our kitchen.</i>
Glória	Benígnē. Ego saepe coquō crústula in culínā meā.	<i>No, thank you. I often bake cookies in my kitchen.</i>
Cynthia	Recēns ego comparāvī novum cátulum. Vísne lúdere cum meō novō cátulō in peristýliō nostrō?	<i>Recently I got a new puppy. Do you want to play with my new puppy in our courtyard?</i>
Glória	O, ego prōrsus adórō cátulōs! Eámus illūc currículō!	<i>Oh, I absolutely adore puppies! Let's go there on the double!</i>

LEVEL II

A potential buyer wants to purchase a home through a real estate agent.

Ēmptor	Mónstrā mihi, quaesō, partem interiōrem huius domūs.	<i>Buyer: Please, show me the interior of this home.</i>
Praediátor	Libénter. Est vērō domus élegāns. Sunt pictúrae in quōque pariete.	<i>Real Estate Dealer: Gladly. It is really an elegant home. There are pictures on every wall.</i>
Ēmptor	Quot cubícula sunt in hāc domō?	<i>How many bedrooms are there in this house?</i>
Praediátor	Omnínō quáttuor cubícula.	<i>Four bedrooms in all.</i>

Ēmptor	Quid est in quōque cubículō?	<i>What is in each bedroom?</i>
Praediātor	Bīnī lēctī et bīnae cáthedrae et vestīārium.	<i>Each bedroom has two beds and two chairs and a clothes closet.</i>
Ēmptor	Estne tablínum huic dómuī?	<i>Does this house have a study?</i>
Praediātor	Étiam. Est profécō magna mēnsa scrīptória rōbōrea ibi; atque sunt plūteī circā parietēs omnēs.	<i>Yes. There is, in fact, a large oak desk there; and there are bookshelves around all the walls.</i>
Ēmptor	Habétne domus amplam culínam?	<i>Does the house have a spacious kitchen?</i>
Praediātor	Ita; est magnus camínus in culínā atque fūsórium.	<i>Yes; there is a big stove in the kitchen as well as a sink.</i>
Ēmptor	Ubi est trīclínum?	<i>Where is the dining room?</i>
Praediātor	Trīclínum situm est inter culínam et bálneum. Prope bálneum est látrína. In bálneō est sólium magnum.	<i>The dining room is located between the kitchen and the bathroom. Near the bathroom is a toilet. There is a large bathtub in the bathroom.</i>
Ēmptor	Quantī cōnstat haec domus?	<i>How much does this house cost?</i>
Praediātor	Cōnstat centum mīlibus dollarórum.	<i>It costs \$100,000.</i>
Ēmptor	Fortásse potes mihi mōnstrāre domum minórem?	<i>Perhaps you can show me some smaller home?</i>
Praediātor	Possum, sed nōn in hāc regiōne urbis.	<i>I can, but not in this section of the city.</i>

LEVEL III **Sabina tries to impress her friend Silvia with the big home her parents own.**

Sílvia	Sabína, habitásne in aédibus an in ínsulā?	Silvia: <i>Sabina, do you live in a house or in an apartment building?</i>
Sabína	In aédibus hábitō. Magnam vērō domum hábeō.	Sabina: <i>I live in a house. In fact, I have a large home.</i>

Sílvia	Ítane? Quot conclávia domus habet?	<i>Is that so? How many rooms does your home have?</i>
Sabína	Átrium, tablínum, trīclínium, culínam, bálneum, sex cubícula, peristýlium cum bellō hortō.	<i>An atrium, study, dining room, kitchen, bathroom, six bedrooms, and a courtyard with a nice garden.</i>
Sílvia	Suntne cubícula ómnia in pedeplánīs?	<i>Are all the bedrooms on the ground floor?</i>
Sabína	Quáattuor cubícula in pedeplánīs sunt; cétera in tabulátō secúndō sunt. Servī et ancillae in tabulátō secúndō dórmiunt.	<i>There are four bedrooms on the ground floor; the rest are on the second floor. The servants and maids sleep on the second floor.</i>
Sílvia	Síquidem marítus tuus cōsul est, conveniúntne multī cliéntēs domī tuae ad offícium?	<i>Since your husband is a consul, do many clients gather at your home for the courtesy call?</i>
Sabína	Ita, nam sic est mōs. Bene māne cliéntēs frequéntant nōn solum vēstíbulum sed étiam átrium. Deínde cliéntēs marítum meum in forum dēdúcut.	<i>Yes, for that is the custom. Early in the morning the clients pack not only the vestibule but also the atrium. Then they accompany my husband to the forum.</i>
Sílvia	Manésne in átriō inter offícium?	<i>Do you stay in the atrium during the courtesy call?</i>
Sabína	Mínimē vērō, eō témpore ego sátagō in culínā aut in peristýliō.	<i>Not at all. At that time I am busy in the kitchen or in the courtyard.</i>
Sílvia	Quid facis in peristýliō?	<i>What do you do in the courtyard?</i>
Sabína	Ego cūrō rosās et áliās plantās in hortō.	<i>I look after the roses and the other plants in the garden.</i>
Sílvia	Quid facis in culínā?	<i>What do you do in the kitchen?</i>
Sabína	Cēnam coquō, quia marítus meus saepe vocat cliéntēs ad cēnam. Ego ipsa cibum adpónō in trīclíniō.	<i>I cook dinner, since my husband often invites clients to dinner. I myself serve the food in the dining room.</i>
Sílvia	Sit dīs grátia, ego in víllulā rūrī hábitō! Víta est tam simplex ibi!	<i>Thank heaven I live in a little farmhouse in the country! Life is so simple there!</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

See also the General Vocabulary for additional items.

air conditioner instrūment·um -ī *n* āērī
temperāndō

alarm suscitābul·um -ī *n*; **the alarm
went off** suscitābulum sōnuit; **to set
the alarm for (seven o'clock)**
ōbīcem īnfīg·ō -ere īnfīxī īnfīxus ad
(sēptimam hōram)

alarm clock hōrolōgi·um -ī *n*
suscitātōrium

apartment diaēt·a -ae *f*; **furnished
apartment** diaēta omnī supellēctile
īnstrūcta

apartment building īnsul·a -ae *f*

armchair sell·a -ae *f* braccīiāta

atrium ātri·um -ī *n*

attic subtēgulāne·um -ī *n*

back door postīc·um -ī *n*

balcony maeniān·um -ī *n*

banister adminīcul·um -ī *n*

barrel dōli·um -ī *n*, cup·a -ae *f*;
(*wooden barrel*) līgneum vās, vāsīs *n*

basement hypogē·um -ī *n*, cellāri·um -ī
n subterrāneum

bathroom bālne·um -ī *n*

bath towel gausāpin·a -ae *f*

bathtub sōli·um -ī *n*, lābr·um -ī *n*

bay window prōiectūr·a -ae *f*

bed lect·us -ī *m*; (*small*) léctul·us -ī *m*;
to go to bed cúbitum īre; **to make
the bed** lectum stern·ō -ere strāvī
strātus

bed covers strāgul·a -ōrum *npl*

bedding strāgul·a -ōrum *npl*

bed frame spond·a -ae *f*

bedroom dormītōrium cubīcul·um -ī *n*

bedspread opertōri·um -ī *n*, peristrōm·a
-atis *n*

bench scabéll·um -ī *n*

blanket lōd·īx -īcis *f*

blinds see Venetian blinds

bolt (*on door*) péssul·us -ī *m*; **to bolt
the door** óstium obserāre

bookcase bibliothéc·a -ae *f* parietī
īnsérta

bookshelf plúte·us -ī *m*

bowl catín·us -ī *m*

broom scōp·ae -ārum *fpl*

bucket sítul·a -ae *f*

carpet tapēt·um -ī *n*

cassette casēt·a -ae *f*; (*for video*) casēta
magnētoscópica

cassette recorder casētophōn·um -ī *n*

ceiling tēct·um -ī *n*; (*arched or vaulted*)
cāmer·a -ae *f*; (*paneled*) lacún·ar
-āris *n*

cellar cellāri·um -ī *n* (subterrāneum)

central heating calefācti·ō -ōnis *f*
centrālis

chair (*normally without back or arm-
rests*) sell·a -ae *f*; (*w. rounded back*)
arciséli·um -ī *n*; **back of the chair**
arc·us -ūs *m* sellae

chandelier lāmpadum corýmb·us -ī *m*

chimney fūmāri·um -ī *n*

China fictīlia Sinénsium vās·a -ōrum
npl

clock hōrolōgi·um -ī *n*; **the clock keeps
good time** hōrolōgium rēctē mētītur;
to look at the clock hōrolōgium
īnspīc·iō -ere īnspēxī; **to set the
clock** hōrolōgium temperāre; **to
wind the clock** hōrolōgium intén·dō
-dere -dī intēnsus

closet armāri·um -ī *n* parietī īnsértum

- clothes closet** vestiári·um -ī *n* parietī
īnsértum
- clothes hook** unc·us -ī *m* vestiárius
- clothes rack, coat rack** sustentácul·lum
-ī *n* vēstium
- couch** tor·us -ī *m* tōmētō fartus
- courtyard** peristýli·um -ī *n*
- cup** pōcul·um -ī *n*, pōcíl·um -ī *n*
- curtains** aulaé·a -órum *npl*, cortín·ae
-árum *fpl*
- desk** mēns·a -ae *f* scrīptória
- dining couch** lect·us -ī *m*
- dining room** trīclīni·um -ī *n*; (*informal*)
cēnāti·ō -ónis *f*
- dish** catíll·us -ī *m*; (*open and flat*)
pátin·a -ae *f*; (*large*) lān·x -cis *f*;
dishes (*including pots and pans*)
vās·a -órum *npl*
- dishwasher** máchin·a -ae *f* ēlūtória
- door** iánu·a -ae *f*, ósti·um -ī *n*; **folding
doors** valv·ae -árum *fpl*
- doorknob** iánuae manúbri·um -ī *n*
- doorstep** lim·en -inis *n*
- doorway** ósti·um -ī *n*
- double home** dom·us -ūs *f* duárum
familiárum
- downstairs: he is downstairs** in īmō
tabulátō est; **to go downstairs** scālās
dēscēnd·ō -ere -ī
- drawer** lócul·us -ī *m*
- dressing table** mēns·a -ae *f* cōmātória
- dryer** (*for hair; for clothes*)
īnstrūmént·um -ī *n* siccātórium
(capillórum; vēstium)
- easy chair** arcisélli·um -ī *n* tōmētō
fartum
- electrical appliance** ēléctricum
īnstrūmént·um -ī *n* [īnstrūméntum
*can be used for a single appliance or
collectively for all the appliances*]
- electrical outlet** cápsul·a -ae *f* contáctūs
ēléctricī
- electric fan** máchin·a -ae *f* ventígēna
- electric shaver** rāsóri·um -ī *n*
ēléctricum
- faucet** epitóni·um -ī *n*; **to turn on (off)
the faucet** epitónium versáre
(reversáre)
- fireplace** foc·us -ī *m*
- floor** (*paved*) pavímént·um -ī *n*, sol·um
-ī *n*; **ground floor** pedēplān·a -órum
npl; **marble floor** pavíméntum (*or
solum*) marmóreum; **mosaic floor**
pavíméntum (*or solum*) tesselátum;
wooden floor tabulát·um -ī *n*
- fluorescent light** túbul·us -ī *m* lūcífliuus
- food processor** máchin·a -ae *f*
coquinária
- freezer** caps·a -ae *f* frīgórífica
- front door** antíc·um -ī *n*
- front hall** vēstíbul·um -ī *n*, fauc·ēs -ium
fpl
- furnish a home** domum supelléctile
ínstru·ō -ere ínstrúxī ínstrúctus
- furnish an apartment** diaétam
supelléctile ínstrúere
- furniture** suppéll·ex -éctilis *f*; **piece of
furniture** supelléctilis par·s -tis *f*
- garden** hort·us -ī *m*; **vegetable garden**
hortus (h)olítórius
- ground floor** pedēplān·a -órum *npl*
- guest room** hospíti·um -ī *n*
- hall** (*large room*) oec·us -ī *m*
- hallway** andr·ōn -ónis *m*
- home** dom·us -ūs *f*
- home appliance** īnstrūmént·um -ī *n*
domésticum ēléctricum; **home
appliances** ēléctrica domūs
ūtēnsíl·ia -ium *npl*
- hopper** lābéll·um -ī *n* íntimum, sell·a
-ae *f* familiária

house dom·us -ūs *f*, aed·ēs -ium *fpl*

kitchen culīn·a -ae *f*

kitchen knife cult·er -rī *m* coquīnāris

kitchen utensils instrūmēt·a -ōrum *npl*
coquīnātōria

ladle trūll·a -ae *f*

lamp lucērn·a -ae *f*

landing (*on stairs*) scālāri·um -ī *n*

laundry lāvātōri·um -ī *n*

light lūm·en -inis (ēléctricum) *n*; **to turn on (off) the light** lūmen
accēnd·ō -ere -ī accēnsus
(expéd·iō -īre -īvi *or* -ī -ītus)

light bulb glóbul·us -i *m* ēléctricus

linen closet armāri·um -ī *n* linteārium
(parfētī īnsértum)

living room sessōri·um -ī *n*, synoeci·um
-ī *n*

mattress cúlci·a -ae *f*; **air mattress**
cúlci·a inflātilis

microwave oven furn·us -ī *m* undārum
brévium

night table mēnsul·a -ae *f* cubiculāris

oven furn·us -ī *m*

pantry cell·a -ae *f* pēnāria

peristyle peristýli·um -ī *n*

pillow cervíc·al -ālis *n*

pillow case cervicālis tégim·en -inis *n*

pipe fistul·a -ae *f* aquāria

pitcher úrce·us -ī *m*

plate pátin·a -ae *f*

plug spin·a -ae *f* contactūs ēléctricī

plug in adnéc·ō -ere adnéxūī adnéxus

porch pérgul·a -ae *f*

portico pórtic·us -ūs *f*

pot (*ceramic*) oll·a -ae *f*; (*of metal*)
a(h)ēn·um -ī *n*; **pots and pans** vās·a
-ōrum *npl* coquīnāria

radiator calóris radiá·trum -trī *n*

radio radiophón·um -ī *n*; **to turn on**
(**turn off**) **the radio** radiophónum
excitāre *or* accēnd·ō -ere -ī (expéd·iō
-īre -ī -ītus); **to turn down (turn**
up) the radio vim radiophónī
remítt·ō -ere remísī (amplificāre)

radio broadcast ēmíssi·ō -ōnis *f*
radiophónica

rain basin (*in the atrium*) implúvi·um
-ī *n*

reading lamp lampas, lámpadis *f*
lēctōria

receiver (*of telephone*) auscultābul·um
-ī *n*

record player discophón·um -ī *n*

refrigerator frīgidār·ium -ī *n*

roof tile tégul·a -ae *f*

roof tēct·um -ī *n*

room cubícul·um -ī *n*, concláv·e -is *n*;
(*small room*) cell·a -ae *f*

room with bath (shower) cubícul·um -ī
n bálneō (bálneō pluviō) īnstrúctum

row home aed·ēs -ium *fpl* seriālēs

rug tapēt·e -is *n*

salt shaker salín·um -ī *n*

saucer páter·a -ae *f*

section (*of a city*) régi·ō -ōnis *f*

sew su·ō -ere -ī sūtus

sewing machine máchin·a -ae *f* sūtōria

sheet strágul·um -ī *n* línteum

shower balnéol·um -ī *n* plúvium; **to**
take a shower balnéolō plúviō ūtor
ūtī ūsus sum

shower curtain aulaé·um -ī *n* balnéolī
plúviī

shower door for·ēs -um *fpl* balnéolī
plúviī

shrine sacrāri·um -ī *n*

shutter forícul·a -ae *f*

silverware argēte·a -ōrum *npl* escāria

sink (*in a bathroom*) lābēll·um -ī *n*; (*in a kitchen*) fusōri·um -ī *n*

sitting room exēdr·a -ae *f*, sessōri·um -ī *n*

skylight complūvi·um -ī *n*

sofa tor·us -ī *m* tōmētō fartus

stairs scāl·ae -ārum *fpl*

steps grad·ūs -uum *mpl*

stereo stereophōn·um -ī *n*

stool scabēll·um -ī *n*; (*for sitting or mounting*) scamn·um -ī *n*

storeroom cell·a -ae *f*

story tabulāt·um -ī *n*

stove fōcul·us -ī *m*; **electric (gas) stove** fōculus ēlēctricus (gāseus)

study (room) studīol·um -ī *n*; (*in a Roman home*) tablīn·um -ī *n*

sugar bowl vāscul·um -ī *n* sáccharī

suite (*of rooms*) diaēt·a -ae *f*

table mēns·a -ae *f*; **to set the table** mēnsam pōn·ō -ere pōsūī pōsitus

tablecloth mantēl·e -is *n*

tableware īnstrūmēt·a -ōrum *npl* escāria

tape recorder magnētophōn·um -ī *n*, casētophōn·um -ī *n*

telephone tēlephōn·um -ī *n* (*see Chapter IV on Daily Activities*)

television (set) tēlevīsōri·um -ī *n* (*see Chapter V on Sports and Other Leisure Activities*)

television screen quadr·um -ī *n* tēlevīsíficum

toaster tostr·um -ī *n*

toilet lātrīn·a -ae *f*; (*public*) fōric·a -ae *f*

toilet bowl lābēll·um -ī *n* íntimum, lāsān·um -ī *n*

towel gausápin·a -ae *f*; **bath towel** gausápina balneária; **hand towel** manutērgi·um -ī *n*

tray fércul·um -ī *n*

TV room conclāv·e -is *n* tēlevīsōriō īnstrúctum

upstairs: the upstairs dom·us -ūs *f* supērior; **to go upstairs** scālas ascēnd·ō -ere -ī

upstairs bedroom cubícul·um -ī *n* supērius

vacuum cleaner púlveris haurītōri·um -ī *n*

VCR videoexceptōri·um -ī *n*

vegetable garden hort·us -ī *m* hōlitōrius

Venetian blinds trānsēnn·a -ae *f* volúbilis; **to close (open, let down, raise) the blinds** trānsēnnam clau·d·ō -dere -sī -sus (apér·iō -íre -uī, dēmítt·ō -ere dēmísī dēmíssus, subvól·v·ō -ere -ī)

[NOTE 1. The most common Latin word for “room” is **cubiculum**, or, for a smaller room, **cella**. **Cubiculum** very frequently means “bedroom.” To avoid ambiguity where the context did not make it clear, the Romans used **dormitōrium** **cubiculum** or simply **dormitōrium** to designate a “bedroom.”

NOTE 2. **Iánua** and **óstium** both mean “door” and are often used interchangeably, but **óstium** also means “doorway.” A **iánua** often had two panels, called **forēs** or **valvae**.

NOTE 3. The common Latin word for “house” is **aed·ēs -ium** *fpl*; **domus** is normally used to designate an upscale home. The declension of

domus is partly of the fourth and partly of the second declension. In the following paradigm, the more common form is given first:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM	domus	domūs
GEN	domūs	domórum (dómuum)
DAT	domō (dómuī)	dómibus
ACC	domum	domōs (domūs)
ABL	domō	dómibus
LOC	domī	

Prepositions are used with **domum** when modified by an adjective, e.g., **domum meam** or **in domum meam**. The preposition **apud** (*w. acc of the pronoun*) is often used in place of the locative, e.g., **apud mē** at my home, **apud eum** at his house; **ad mē** “to my house” is used at times in place of **domum** as the accusative. The locative **domī** “at home” takes the possessive pronominal adjective in the genitive, e.g., **domī suae** “at his own home,” **meae domī** “at my home.”]

Chapter XIV: Buying and Selling

CONVERSATIONS

	LEVEL I	Lydia explains to Diane why she bought new clothes.	
Diána	Lýdia, ubi terrarum illam stolam bellam emisti?		<i>Diane: Lydia, where on earth did you buy that pretty dress?</i>
Lýdia	In taberna vestiaria in Via Lata.		<i>Lydia: In the clothing store on Broad Street.</i>
Diána	Quantum constabat?		<i>How much did it cost?</i>
Lýdia	Percara erat. Triginta dollaris constabat.		<i>It was very expensive. It cost thirty dollars.</i>
Diána	Et habes novos soccos.		<i>And you have new dress shoes.</i>
Lýdia	Ita. Etiam inares et monile aureum.		<i>Yes. Also earrings and a gold necklace.</i>
Diána	Dic mihi, cur haec vestimenta nova emisti?		<i>Tell me, why did you buy these new clothes?</i>
Lýdia	Quia meus amans novus me ad saltationem scholarem invitavit.		<i>Because my new boyfriend invited me to the school dance.</i>
Diána	Ego quoque saltationi intererem. Itaque desiderabo novam stolam.		<i>I, too, will attend the dance. And so I'll need a new dress.</i>
Lýdia	Videbo te apud saltationem, ut spero. Bene vale!		<i>I'll see you at the dance, I hope. Bye!</i>
Diána	Bene vale! Abeo curriculo ad Viam Latam.		<i>Bye! I'm taking off on the double for Broad Street.</i>

LEVEL II Sulpicia explains why she is going shopping.

Aulus	Quō hinc abīs, Sulpícia?	<i>Aulus: Where are you off to, Sulpicia?</i>
Sulpícia	Ad macéllum in Subúram.	<i>Sulpicia: To the market in the Subura.</i>
Aulus	Obsōnātúra es íterum?	<i>You're going shopping again?</i>
Sulpícia	Quidnī? Placet mihi obsōnāre.	<i>Why not? I like to shop.</i>
Aulus	Quid cupis émere?	<i>What do you want to buy?</i>
Sulpícia	Multa, sī annóna in macéllō nōn nímia est.	<i>Many things, if the price of food at the market is not too high.</i>
Aulus	Et sī annóna nōn cāra est?	<i>And if the price of food is not high?</i>
Sulpícia	Obsōnábō pōma, hólera, cáseum, búbulam, cuppédia.	<i>I'll shop for fruit, vegetables, cheese, beef, and pastries.</i>
Aulus	Cūr, malum, tot mercēs obsōnábis?	<i>Why the devil are you going to buy so many items?</i>
Sulpícia	Quia crās est nātális diēs amántis meī. Agitábō convívium prō eō.	<i>Because tomorrow is my boyfriend's birthday. I'm going to throw him a party.</i>
Aulus	Emésne étiam novam stolam ad convívium?	<i>Will you also buy a new gown for the party?</i>
Sulpícia	Certē. Sed nōn in macéllō. Tabérna vestiária autem nōn procul illinc est.	<i>Certainly. But not in the market. The clothing store, however, is not far from there.</i>
Aulus	Quīn, ego quoque novam togam emam, sī tū mē invitábis.	<i>Well, I, too, am going to buy a new toga, if you invite me.</i>
Sulpícia	Invitábō, profécetō, tē. Valē in crástinum.	<i>Of course I'll invite you. So long till tomorrow.</i>

LEVEL III A storekeeper makes a sale.

Tabernárius	Quómodo possum tē iuváre?	<i>Storekeeper: How can I help you?</i>
Ēmptor	Numquam ántea fuī in Subúra. Subúra vidétur esse plēna praestántium tabernárum.	<i>Customer: I've never been in the Subura before. The Subura seems to be full of fine shops.</i>

Tabernárius	Ut vidēs, sunt quidem multae tabérnae in hōc locō: tabérna vestiária, tabérna chartária, tabérna librária, medicamentária. Quid vīs inspícere?	<i>As you see, there indeed are many stores around here: a clothing store, a stationery store, a bookstore, a drugstore. What do you wish to look at?</i>
Ēmptor	Estne quoque tabérna ferrária? Et tabérna vínária?	<i>Is there also a hardware store? And a wine shop?</i>
Tabernárius	Sānē; étiam laniéna et cuppédō et pístrína. Quidquid cupis, id in hōc locō émere potes.	<i>Yes. Also a butcher shop and a pastry shop and a bakery. You can buy whatever you wish around here.</i>
Ēmptor	Suntne mercēs in hīs tabérnīs cārae?	<i>Is the merchandise expensive in these shops?</i>
Tabernárius	Ut álibí, áliae mercēs sunt cārae, áliae sunt vilēs. In hāc tabérnā ego vénditō státuās extrínsecās.	<i>As elsewhere, some items are expensive, others are cheap. In this shop I sell statues from abroad.</i>
Ēmptor	Quantī cōnstat haec imágō Vénéris?	<i>How much does this bust of Venus cost?</i>
Tabernárius	Est cāríssima. Ut vidére potes, ūsque ē Graeciā vēnit. Quadrāgintā dēnáriis cōnstat.	<i>It's very expensive. As you can see, it came all the way from Greece. It costs forty denarii.</i>
Ēmptor	Nōn possum dēnumeráre tibi argéntum praesentárium.	<i>I cannot pay you the money in cash.</i>
Tabernárius	Nōlī sollicitári. Bonā fidē es. Potes dare mihi hódie vīgintī dēnáriōs arrabóni.	<i>Don't worry. Your credit is good. You can give me twenty denarii today as a down payment.</i>
Ēmptor	Bene. Céterōs nummōs ad diem dictam solvam.	<i>Fine. I'll pay you the rest of the money on time.</i>
Tabernárius	Quot dēnáriōs potes mihi sólvare hódie?	<i>How many denarii can you pay me today?</i>
Ēmptor	Ego vīgintī solum dēnáriōs mēcum hábeō.	<i>I have only twenty denarii with me.</i>
Tabernárius	Id mihi placet. Quómodo solvēs quod réliquum est?	<i>That's fine with me. How will you pay the rest?</i>
Ēmptor	Sī licébit, duábus pēnsiónibus persólvam.	<i>If I may, I'll pay it off in two installments.</i>

Tabernārius	Probē! Mihi crēde, bene emis hanc imāginem. Ecquid placet?	<i>Fine! Believe me, you are buying this statue at a bargain. Do you like it?</i>
Ēmptor	Immō édepol vērō pérplacet.	<i>Heavens, yes. I really like it a lot.</i>
Tabernārius	Grātias! Et nunc, sis, potes vísere álterās tabérnās in Subúrā.	<i>Thanks. And now, if you wish, you can go to see the other shops in the Subura.</i>
Ēmptor	Vísam proféctō. Valē!	<i>I will indeed. Goodbye!</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

advertise prōscrīb·ō -ere prōscríp̄sī prōscríptus	(parvī, grātis, plūris, minōris) cōnstāre
ask the price of an item mercis prētium inquír·ō -ere inquísivī inquísitus	cost s impēns·a -ae f
bargain prēti·um -ī n speciāle	credit (com) fid·ēs -eī f; to buy on credit fidē suā émere; pecūniā haud praesentáriā emere; to have good credit bonā fidē esse
be sold, be up for sale vén·eō -íre -iī	customer ēmpt·or -ōris m, ēmpt·īx -ícis f
bookstore librāri·a -ae f	deal mercimōni·um -ī n
business district empóri·um -ī n	dealer merc·āns -ántis mf, mercāt·or -ōris m, mercāt·īx -ícis f
butcher lāni·us -ī m	debt aes, aeris n aliēnum; this has put me in debt hoc mihi aes aliēnum áttulit
butcher shop laniēna -ae f	denarius dēnāri·us -ī m (worth about one dollar)
buy parāre; em·ō -ere emī ēmptus (from s.o. dē áliquō); to buy at a bargain bene émere	discount remíssi·ō -ónis f; five- (ten- twenty-) percent discount quinárūm (dēnárūm, vicēsímárūm) centēsímárūm remíssiō
buyer ēmpt·or -ōris m, ēmpt·īx -ícis f	dollar dóllar·us -ī m
cash argént·um -ī n presentárium; to pay \$10 in cash for dēnumerāre decem dóllarōs praesentáriōs prō (+ abl)	down payment árrab·ō -ónis f; to make a down payment of \$20 (or to pay \$20 down) vīgintī dóllarōs arrabónī dare
cent centésim·a -ae f	drugstore medicāmentári·a -ae f
cheap vīl·is -is -e	expensive cār·us -a -um; very expensive percárus
cheaply parvō or vīlī prētiō; more cheaply minōris prētīi	flea market for·um -ī n rērum vēnálium
check sýngraph·a -ae f; to write a check for sýngrapham (+ gen) perscrīb·ō -ere perscríp̄sī perscríptus	
clerk tabernári·us -ī m, tabernári·a -ae f	
clothing store tabérn·a -ae f vestiária	
cost intr cōnst·ō -áre -itī; to cost a lot (little, nothing, more, less) multī	

- go for: at what price do these items go for?** quibus pretiis hae mercēs vēneunt?
- groceries** obsōni·a -ōrum *npl*
- grocery store** macéll·um -ī *n*
- hardware store** tabérn·a -ae *f* ferrária
- how much did you sell it for?** quantū hoc vēnit?; **how much is this?** quantū hoc cōnstat?
- installment** pēnsi·ō -ōnis *f*; **to pay in five installments** quīnque pēnsiōnibus solv·ō -ere -ī solūtus
- item of merchandise** merx, mercis *f*
- mall** for·um -ī *n* subtēgulāneum
- market** mercāt·us -ūs *m*, macéll·um -ī *n*
- marketable** vēndibil·is -is -e
- marketplace** mercāt·us -ūs *m*, for·um -ī *n*
- merchandise** vēnālīci·a -ōrum *npl*, merc·ēs -ium *fpl*
- money** pecūni·a -ae *f*, argēnt·um -ī *n*, numm·ī -ōrum *mpl*
- pastries** cuppēdi·a -ōrum *npl*
- pastry baker** cuppēdināri·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
- pastry shop** cuppēd·ō -inis *f*
- pay** solv·ō -ere -ī solūtus; **to pay s.o. \$20 for** dēnumerāre ālicuī viginti dōllarōs prō (+ *abl*); **to pay off a debt** dēbitum persolvere; **to pay on time** ad tempus *or* ad diem dictam solvere; **to pay out (money) to** dēnumerāre (nummōs) (+ *dat*)
- percent** centēsīm·a -ae *f*
- pound** libr·a -ae *f*; **per pound** in librās
- price** preti·um -ī *n*; **at a high (low, very low, exorbitant) price** magnō (parvō, mīnimō, nīmīō); **higher price** pretium āmplius; **to set a price** pretium facere; **the price for it is 10 denarii per pound** pretium eī in librās est decem dēnāriis; **the price of food** annōn·a -ae *f*
- purchase** s empt·um -ī *n*
- purchase** tr merc·or -ārī -ātus *sum*
- purchasing** ēmpti·ō -ōnis *f*
- receipt** āpoch·a -ae *f*
- run a business** negōtium exerc·eō -ēre -uī -itus; **to run a shop** tabērnam exercēre
- sale** vēnditi·ō -ōnis *f*; **for sale, on sale** vēnālīci·us -a -um, vēnāl·is -is -e; **to put up for sale** vēnum dō dare dēdī datus
- sell** vēnd·ō -ere vēndidī vēnditus; (*of a merchant*) vēnditāre
- seller** vēndit·or -ōris *m*, vēnditr·ix -īcis *f*
- set a price** pretium fac·iō -ere fecī factus *or* stātu·ō -ere -ī statūtus
- shoe store** tabérn·a -ae *f* sūtrīna
- shop, store** tabérn·a -ae *f*
- shop** intr (*at a grocery store*) obsōnāre; **to shop for** emō emere emī ēmptus; obsōnāre (*groceries*)
- shopkeeper** tabernāri·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
- shopping** ēmpti·ō -ōnis *f*; (*for groceries*) obsōnāt·us -ūs *m*; **to go shopping** ēmptum ire; (*for groceries*) obsōnātum ire
- shopper** empt·or -ōris *m*; (*for groceries*) obsōnāt·or -ōris *m*, obsōnātr·ix -īcis *f*
- small change** nūmmul·ī -ōrum *mpl*
- stationery** rēs, rērum *fpl* chartāriae
- stationery store** tabérn·a -ae *f* chartāria
- store** tabérn·a -ae *f*
- supermarket** superīnstitōri·um -ī *n*
- trade** mercātūr·a -ae *f*
- valuable: to be valuable** pretium háb·eō -ēre -uī -itus
- wares** merc·ēs -ium *fpl*
- wholesale** magnāri·us -a -um
- wholesaler** negōtiāt·or -ōris *m* magnārius

Chapter XV: The Weather

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I

A boy and a girl in Rome contrast the weather of Rome with that of Switzerland.

Puer Rōmānus Est frīgidum hódīē.

Roman Boy: It's cold today.

Puella Helvétia Frīgidúmne? Quómodo id dīcere potes?

Swiss Girl: Cold? How can you say that?

Puer Quia ego álgeō.

Because I feel cold.

Puella At sōl lūcet et véntulus mītis flat. Prōrsus, est diēs bellus et tépidus.

But the sun is shining and a gentle breeze is blowing. All in all, it is a nice warm day.

Puer Haec dīcis, quia tempéstās in Helvétīā semper frīgida est. Nihil habēs in Álpibus praeter nivem et gláciem.

You say that because the weather is always cold in Switzerland. You have nothing in the Alps but snow and ice.

Puella Parum vērum est! Estō; híemēs in Álpibus sunt longae. Sed tempéstās ibi aestáte est bellíssima.

That's not quite true. Granted, the winters are long in the Alps. But the weather there in summer is very nice.

Puer Hīc hiems est plúvia, et diēs aestáte sunt calidíssimī.

Here the winter is rainy and the days in summer are very hot.

Puella Sed hīc Rōmae neque grándinat neque ningit. Ágedum, eámus forās lūsum. Mox tū nōn iam algébis.

But here in Rome it neither hails nor snows. Come on, then, let's go play outside. Soon you will no longer be cold.

Puer Vēra dīcis. Iam disserénat.

You're right. The weather is already clearing up.

LEVEL II **Martha explains to her teacher how the weather kept her from going to school.**

Magistra Cūr nōn in scholam herī vēnístī? *Teacher: Why didn't you come to school yesterday?*

Martha Propter procéllam. *Martha: Because of the storm.*

Magistra Quid áccidit? *What happened?*

Martha Mātútínum quidem erat serénum, sed súbitō Áquilō perfláre incépit. Imber cádere incépit. *The early morning was fair all right, but suddenly the north wind began to blow hard. Rain began to fall.*

Magistra Erásne adhūc domī eō témpore? *Were you still at home at that time?*

Martha Modo discēdébam domō. Mox vehementíssimē pluit. Imber vērō urceátim cadébat. *I was just leaving home. Soon it rained very hard. In fact, the rain came down in buckets.*

Magistra Erásne formídolōsa? *Were you afraid?*

Martha Ita. Ictūs fúlminis et tónitrus mē terrébant. Ventī árborēs dēiēcérunt trāns viās. Vix póteram vidére quō írem. *Yes. The bolts of lightning and thunder frightened me. The winds knocked down trees across the streets. I could scarcely see where I was going.*

Magistra Quid deinceps fēcístī? *What did you do then?*

Martha Cōnstítuī ílicō domum redíre, ubi māter mē ánxia exspectábat. *I decided on the spot to return home where my mother was waiting anxiously for me.*

Magistra Sapiénter dēcrēvístī. *You made a wise decision.*

LEVEL III **The weather of Rome and Switzerland is again debated.**

Caecilius Quālis tempéstās tibi potíssimum placet? *Cecil: What kind of weather do you like best?*

Sonja Caelum tépidum mihi potíssimum placet. In Álpibus nix per mǎiõrem partem annī perdúrat. *Sonja: I like warm weather best. In the Alps the snow lasts through most of the year.*

Caecilius	Quid ibi facis cum ningit?	<i>What do you do there when it snows?</i>
Sonja	Postquam n̄nixit, in nive l̄dimus. Int̄rdum pilās n̄vis inter n̄s con̄cimus. Int̄rdum virum n̄vis f̄acimus. Int̄rdum dē colle tráheā l̄bimur.	<i>After it has snowed, we play in the snow. Sometimes we throw snowballs at one another. Sometimes we build a snowman. Sometimes we slide down the hill on a sled.</i>
Caecilius	Quam tibi inv̄deō! Ego numquam nivem v̄dī. M̄ter tamen mihi dē nive et gr̄ndine et gl̄aciē n̄r̄bat.	<i>How I envy you! I have never seen snow. However, my Mother told me about snow and hail and ice.</i>
Sonja	Numquam v̄dīstī sf̄riās dē t̄ctīs d̄pend̄ntēs?	<i>You never saw icicles hanging from a roof?</i>
Caecilius	Ego tant̄modo im̄gin̄rī possum sf̄riās dē t̄ctīs d̄pend̄ntēs et t̄cta d̄muum nive mollī obd̄cta.	<i>I can only imagine icicles hanging from the roofs and the roofs of houses covered with soft snow.</i>
Sonja	At cum Áquilō perflat et ningit et gr̄ndinat in Álpibus, v̄ta potest esse d̄ra in Helv̄tiā. Ítaque prāferō tempest̄tem t̄pidam R̄mae. Ibi saltem numquam álgeam.	<i>But in the Alps, when the north wind blows and it snows and hails, life can be tough in Switzerland. And so I prefer the warm climate of Rome. At least there I would never feel cold.</i>
Caecilius	Mihi cr̄de, v̄vere sub aestūsō caelō nullō modō ros̄rium est! Hab̄mus aest̄tēs aestūsās.	<i>Believe me, living in a sultry climate is by no means a bed of roses! We have sweltering summers.</i>
Sonja	Tū saltem n̄n gel̄aris. Potes l̄dere for̄s s̄ngulīs dībus.	<i>You at least do not freeze. You can play outdoors every day.</i>
Caecilius	At quis, malum, potest l̄dere in tam aestūsā tempest̄te? S̄d̄amus et s̄d̄amus. Et muscae culic̄esque sunt molest̄ssim̄.	<i>But who the devil can play in such sweltering weather? We sweat and sweat. And the flies and mosquitoes are a big pain in the neck.</i>
Sonja	Pactīnem facīamus. Tū in Helv̄tiam migr̄ et ego R̄mam migr̄b̄. Ítaque ut̄rque nostrum cont̄ntus erit.	<i>Let's make a deal. You move to Switzerland, and I'll move to Rome. Then both of us will be satisfied.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

Note: Expressions such as **it is hot**, etc., can be expressed as **cálidum est** (used impersonally, or with *caelum* = **weather understood**) or **cálida est** (with *tempéstās* understood).

bad (*weather*) *advérs·us -a -um, grav·is -is -e*

barometer *barómetr·um -ī n*

blast *flāt·us -ūs m*

blow *flāre*; **to blow hard** *perflāre*

bolt of lightning *ict·us -ūs m fúlminis*

breeze *véntul·us -ī m, aur·a -ae f*

bright *serén·us -a -um*

bucket: to come down in buckets *ūrceátim cad·ō -ere cécidī cāsúrus*;
to rain buckets *ūrceátim plúere*

changing (*weather*) *vári·us -a -um*

chilly *frīgídul·us -a -um*

clear *serén·us -a -um, sūd·us -a -um*

clear up *disserenāre*

climate *cael·um -ī n*

cloud *nūb·ēs -is f*

cloudless *sūd·us -a -um*

cloudy *nūbilós·us -a -um*; **to become cloudy** *nūbilāre*

cold *s frīg·us -oris n, gel·ū -ūs n*; **to catch a cold** *gravédinem cón·trahō -trāhere tráxi tráctus*; **to have a cold** *gravédine laborāre*

cold *adj* (*the most general word, applied to all degrees from pleasant coolness to severe cold*) *frīgíd·us -a -um*; *gelid·us -a -um*; **liable to get cold** *alsiós·us -a -um*; **to feel cold** *álgeō algére alsī*; **to get cold** *algésc·ō -ere*; **to turn cold** *frīgésc·ō -ere frīxī*

cold spell *frígor·a -um npl*

cold weather *gel·u -ūs n*

cover up (*against the cold*) *opér·iō -íre -uī -tus*

dark *adj* *obscur·us -a -um*; **as soon as it got dark** *prīmīs ténebrīs*

dark *s: after dark* *dē nocte*; **in the dark** *per obscurum; sine lúmine*

darkness *ténebr·ae -árum fpl*; **darkness had suddenly come** *ténebrae factae sunt repéntē*

degree *grad·us -ūs m*

dew *rōs, rōris m*

drizzle *s plúvi·a -ae f rāra et minúta*

drizzle *intr* *léniter pluit plúere pluit*

drop (*e.g., of rain*) *gutt·a -ae f*

east wind *Eur·us -ī m*

fair *serén·us -a -um*

fall *s autúmn·us -ī m*

favorable (*wind*) *secúnd·us -a -um*

fine (*weather*) *serén·us -a -um*; **fine weather** *serénit·ās -átis f*

flash of lightning *fulg·ur -uris n*

fog *nébul·a -ae f*

foggy *nebulós·us -a -um*

freeze *tr* *gelāre* || *intr* *gelāri*

freezing *gélid·us -a -um*

frost *pruín·a -ae f*

frosty *pruínós·us -a -um*

frozen *rig·ēns -entis*

gale *procéll·a -ae f*

glisten *nít·eō -ére -uī*

good (*weather*) *serén·us -a -um*

hail *s grand·ō -inis f*

hail *impers v* *grándin·at -āre*

hailstorms *grándin·ēs -um fpl*

hot (*of a person, sun, water, bath, day*)
cálid·us -a -um (*opp: frígid·us -a -um*); **it is hot** cálidum est; **to become hot** calésc·ō -ere; **to be hot** cál·eō -ére -uī; **to be uncomfortably hot** aestuāre

hot weather aest·us -ūs *m*

hurricane tŷph·ōn -ōnis *m*

ice gláci·ēs -ēī *f*; **to turn to ice** glaciārī

icicle stŷri·a -ae *f*

icy glaciál·is -is -e

lightning *s* fulm·en -inis *n*

lightning: it is lightning fulget fulgére
fulsit, fúlgur·at -āre -āvīt

lousy (*weather*) spurc·us -a -um

melt *tr* dissól·vō -vere -vī -útus **|| intr**
liquésc·ō -ere

mild mīt·is -is -e

mist nébul·a -ae *f*

misty nebulós·us -a -um

muggy aestuós·us -a -um

nice bell·us -a -um

north wind Áquil·ō -ōnis *m*

open: in the open (air) sub dīvō

overcast nūbilós·us -a -um, nūbil·us -a -um; **to become overcast** nūbilāre

partly partim; **it is partly cloudy**
(**sunny**) **today** (caelum) hódīē est
partim nūbilōsum (aprícum)

rain *impers v* pluit pluere pluit; **to rain**
hard veheménter (*or* multum) plúere

rain *s* plúvi·a -ae *f*, im·ber -bris *m*;
heavy, steady rain magnī et adsíduī
imbrēs; **the rain is letting up** imber
dētūméscit; **it looks like rain** vidétur
quasi pluat

rainbow arc·us -ūs *m* caeléstis, plúvius
arcus

rain cloud nimb·us -ī *m*

rainy plúvi·us -a -um

scorching (heat, sun) flagrantíssimus
(sōl, sōlis *m*, .aest·us -ūs *m*)

shifting (*wind, weather*) vári·us -a -um

shine lú·c·eō -ére lūxī; **to shine on**
illú·c·eō -ére illūxī (+ *dat*)

shower im·ber -bris *m*

sky cael·um -ī *n*

sleet im·ber -bris *m* grándine mīxtus

slippery lúbric·us -a -um

sloppy (*weather*) spurc·us -a -um

snow nix, nivis *f* **covered with snow**
níve·us -a -um

snow *impers v* ningit níngere nīnxit

snowball pil·a -ae *f* nivis

snowdrift ningu·is -is *f*

snowfall nivis cās·us -ūs *m*

snowstorm ning·or -ōris *m*

snowy nivós·us -a -um, nivál·is -is -e

south wind Aus·ter -trī *m*

spring vēr, vēris *n*

storm tempést·ās -átis *f*; procéll·a -ae *f*;
a storm arose tempéstās coórta est

stormy procellós·us -a -um,
turbulént·us -a -um

summer aest·ās -átis *f*

sun sōl, sōlis *m*; **full sun** plúrimus sōl

sunny apríc·us -a -um

sunshine sōl, sōlis *m*

sultry aestuós·us -a -um

sweltering aestuós·us -a -um

temperature temperátūr·a -ae *f*; **the**
temperature fell below thirty-two
degrees temperátúra lāpsa est subter
duōs et trīgintā gradūs; **what is the**
temperature? quō gradū stat
temperátúra?

thermometer thermómetr·um -ī *n*

thunder *s* tónitr·us -ūs *m*

thunder *impers v tonat tonáre tónuit*

thunderbolt *fulm·en -inis n*

tide *aest·us -ūs m*; **high tide** *aestūs accéss·us -ūs m*; **low tide** *aestūs recéss·us -ūs m*

tornado *turb·ō -inis m*

warm *tépid·us -a -um*; **it is getting warm** *tepéscit*

weather (*good or bad*) *tempést·ās -átis f*, *cael·um -ī n*; **depending on the weather** *ut diēs suādet*; **kinds of weather** *tempestátēs*; **owing to changes in the weather** *propter caelī varietátēs*

weather conditions *tempestát·ēs -um fpl*

west wind *Zéphyr·us -ī m*

wind *vent·us -ī m*; **head wind** *ventus advérsus*; **tail wind** *ventus secúndus*; **the wind is dying down** *ventus dētuméscit*; **the wind is picking up** *ventus increbréscit*

wind storm *procéll·a -ae f*

windy *ventós·us -a -um*

winter *hiem·s -is f*; **at the end of winter** *híeme exeúnte*; **because of the severity of the winter** *propter híemis magnitúdinem*

zero *zer·um -ī n*

Chapter XVI: Animals

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I A visit to the zoo.

Bárbara	Salvē, David. Unde venīs?	<i>Barbara: Hello, David. Where are you coming from?</i>
David	Modo vīvārium vīsēbam.	<i>David: I was just visiting the zoo.</i>
Bárbara	Quās ferās ibi vīdīstī?	<i>What wild animals did you see there?</i>
David	Panthérās et leónēs et elephántōs et tigrēs et zebrās.	<i>Panthers, lions, elephants, tigers, and zebras.</i>
Bárbara	Nōne frēmītūs ferārum tē terruērunt?	<i>The roars of the wild animals scared you, didn't they?</i>
David	Mínimē, hercle. Omnēs enim ferae in claustrīs cohibēntur.	<i>Heavens, no! You see, all the wild animals are kept in cages.</i>
Bárbara	Quod ánimal tē potíssimum dēlectávit?	<i>What animal did you like best?</i>
David	Símiī.	<i>The monkeys.</i>
Bárbara	Quam ob rem?	<i>Why?</i>
David	Tam iocōsī sunt, quod sē gerunt paene quasi hómīnēs.	<i>They are so funny because they behave almost like human beings.</i>
Bárbara	Vīdístīne étiam crocodílōs et strūthiocamélōs et rhīnocerótēs?	<i>Did you also see the crocodiles and ostriches and rhinoceroses?</i>
David	Eī quidem in vīvāriō sunt, sed eōs nōn vīdī.	<i>They're in the zoo all right, but I didn't see them.</i>
Bárbara	Ítaque cūr eōs nōn vīsīstī?	<i>Then why didn't you go see them?</i>
David	Ótium mihi nōn erat ad omnēs ferās vīsēndās.	<i>I didn't have the time to visit all the wild animals.</i>
Bárbara	Vīdístīne dinosaúrōs?	<i>Did you see (any) dinosaurs?</i>
David	Tū sánē iocáris!	<i>You must be kidding!</i>

LEVEL II **A visit to a pet shop.**

Grátia	Salvē. Velim dēficiās émere.	Grace: <i>Hello. I'd like to buy a pet.</i>
Cóciō	Euge! Hábeō omnis géneris dēficiās vēnālēs.	Dealer: <i>Great! I have every kind of pet for sale.</i>
Grátia	Ita vídeō.	<i>So I see.</i>
Cóciō	Vísne émere catéllum vel fēlem vel cunículum?	<i>Do you want to buy a puppy or a cat or a rabbit?</i>
Grátia	Mínimē, iam mihi est catéllum et fēlis et cunículus. Quantū cōnstat ille psíttacus?	<i>No, I already have a puppy, cat, and rabbit. How much does that parrot cost?</i>
Cóciō	Cōnstat trecéntōs dóllarīs. Ūsque enim ex Áfricā dēvéctus est.	<i>It costs 300 dollars. You see, it was shipped all the way from Africa.</i>
Grátia	Et quantū cōnstant fringíllae Canáriae?	<i>And how much do canaries cost?</i>
Cóciō	Tantúmmodo decem dóllarīs.	<i>Only ten dollars.</i>
Grátia	Vāh, nimis cārae mihi sunt. Hábesne híppurōs vēnālēs?	<i>Wow, they are too expensive for me. Do you have goldfish for sale?</i>
Cóciō	Scílicet hábeō. Meī híppurī sunt vīlēs. Quisque cōnstat ūnō dóllarō. Et dōnábō tibi áliquíd ēscae piscáriae grātīs.	<i>Of course I have. My goldfish are inexpensive. They are one dollar apiece. And I'll give you some fish food gratis.</i>
Grátia	Nunc Latínē lóqueris! Duōs emam. Ecce duōs dóllarōs.	<i>Now you're talking turkey! I'll buy two. Here are the two dollars.</i>
Cóciō	Grátias tibi. Bene valē.	<i>Thank you. Goodbye.</i>

LEVEL III **Young Mark visits old Cato's farm.**

Marcus	Catō, quam ob rem māvīs rūrī habitāre quam in urbe?	Marcus: <i>Cato, why do you prefer to live in the country rather than in the city?</i>
Catō	Quia víta in fundō ácta longē iúcúndior est quam in urbe.	Cato: <i>Because life spent on the farm is far more pleasant than in the city.</i>

Marcus	Quid ita?	<i>How so?</i>
Catō	Quī victum in fundō quaeritat, quamvis dives numquam fiat, liber tamen est.	<i>One who makes his living on a farm, although he may never get rich, is nevertheless free.</i>
Marcus	Ostēde mihi pecus, quaesō, sī ótium tibi est.	<i>Please show me your livestock, if you have the time.</i>
Catō	Libēter. Ecce vaccās ovésque in prātō ac equōs in pāscuō.	<i>Gladly. See the cows and sheep in the meadow and the horses in the pasture.</i>
Marcus	Ēducāsne pullōs gallínáceos et ánsērēs?	<i>Do you raise chickens and geese?</i>
Catō	Ita. Éducō étiam porcōs et caprōs. Eī sunt ultrā hórreum.	<i>Yes. I also raise pigs and goats. They are on the other side of the barn.</i>
Marcus	Exstántne piscēs in illō rívulō quī per prātum fluit?	<i>Are there fish in that brook that flows through the meadow?</i>
Catō	Ut vĕra dicam, piscósus est ille rívulus. Tructōs captāre queō, quotiēscúmque libet.	<i>To tell you the truth, that brook is teeming with fish. I can catch trout whenever I please.</i>
Marcus	Óbiter, forte notávi fundum silvam continére. Illícne umquam vĕnárís?	<i>By the way, I happened to notice that your farm includes a forest. Do you ever go hunting there?</i>
Catō	Étiam. Vĕnor cunícúlōs, phásiánās, cervōs.	<i>Yes. I hunt rabbits, pheasants, and deer.</i>
Marcus	Habēsne canem vĕnáticum?	<i>Do you have a hunting hound?</i>
Catō	Hábeō quidem sagācíssimum canem; sine eō numquam vĕnor.	<i>I do have a very keen-scented hound; I never go hunting without him.</i>
Marcus	Valdē fortunátus es, Catō. Aliquándō ego fundum mihi parábō.	<i>You are very fortunate, Cato. Someday I will get myself a farm.</i>
Catō	Probum cōsílíum, aduléscēns!	<i>Good idea, young man!</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

animal ánim·al -ális *n*; **wild animal**
fer·a -ae *f*

ant formíc·a -ae *f*

ape sími·us -ī *m*, sími·a -ae *f*
chatter stríd·eō -éire -uī

bat vespertíli·ō -ónis *m*

bear urs·us -ī *m*, urs·a -ae *f*

cub ursae cátul·us -ī *m*

grunt *intr* grunn·iō -íre -ívi *or* -iī -ítum

grunt *s* grunnít·us -ūs *m*

beaver fi·ber -brī *m*

bedbug sciníph·is -is *m*

bee ap·is -is *f*

beehive álve·us -ī *m*

buzz bombiláre

hum murmuráre

sting *tr* íc·ō -ere ícī ictus

sting *s* (*on the bee*) acúle·us -ī *m*;
(*bite*) ict·us -ūs *m*

swarm of bees ápium exám·en
-ínis *n*

bird av·is -is *f*

beak rōstr·um -ī *n*

cage cáve·a -ae *f*

chirp pīpáre, pīpiláre

egg ōv·um -ī *n*

feather penn·a -ae *f*

flap the wings ális plaud·ō -ere
plausī plausum

flight volát·us -ūs *m*

fly voláre; **to fly away** ávoláre

land (on) ínsíd·ō -ere ínsédī (+ *dat*)

nest nīd·us -ī *m*; **to build a nest**
nīdificáre

sing can·ō -ere cécinī cantum

song cant·us -ūs *m*

tail caud·a -ae *f*

wing āl·a -ae *f*

blackbird mérul·a -ae *f* (*see bird*)

boar ap·er -rī *m*

grunt grunn·iō -íre -ívi *or* -iī -ítum

buffalo ūr·us -ī *m*

bug cīm·ex -icis *m*

bull taur·us -ī *m* (*see cattle*)

butterfly pāpíli·ō -ónis *m*

cage claustr·a -órum *npl*, cáve·a -ae *f*

calf vítul·us -ī *m*, vítul·a -ae *f* (*see*
cattle)

camel camél·us -ī *m*

hump gibb·er -eris *m*

canary fringill·a -ae *f* Canária (*see*
bird)

cat fēl·is *or* fēl·ēs -is *f*; catt·a -ae *f*,
catt·us -ī *m*

meow fēl·iō -íre

purr *intr* murmuráre

purr *s* murm·ur -uris *n*

caterpillar ērúc·a -ae *f*

catfish silúr·us -ī *m*

cattle bov·ēs -um *mpl* (*dat & abl pl*:
bōbus *or* būbus)

bellow (or low) múg·iō -íre -ívi *or*
-iī -ítum

graze pāsc·or -ī pāstus sum

head of cattle pec·us -oris *n*

chick pull·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)

peep pīpiláre

chicken (gallínáceus) pull·us -ī *m* (*see*
bird)

chicken coop gallínári·um -ī *n*

cluck glóc·iō -íre

egg ōv·um -ī *n*
eggshell (ōvī) putām·en -inis *n*
egg white (ōvī) alb·um -ī *n*
lay (*eggs*) pár·iō -ere péperī partus
yolk vitéll·us -ī *m*
cockroach blatt·a -ae *f*
colt équol·us -ī *m* (*see horse*)
cow vacc·a -ae *f*
milk *s* lac lactis *n*
milk *tr* múl·geō -gére -sī -ctum
moo múg·iō -íre -íví *or* -iī -ítum
udder ūb·er -eris *n*
crane grūs, gruis *mf* (*see bird*)
crinkle gru·ō -ere
cricket gryll·us -ī *m*
chirp fritínn·iō -íre
crocodile crocodíl·us -ī *m*
crow corn·ix -ícis *f* (*see bird*)
caw crōcitáre
deer cerv·us -ī *m*, cerv·a -ae *f*
bray rud·ō -ere -íví -ítum
dinosaur dinosaúr·us -ī *m*
dog can·is -is *mf*
bark *intr* latráre; **bark at** allatráre
bark *s* latrát·us -ūs *m*
collar collár·e -is *n*
growl ring·or -ī rictus sum
leash cíngul·um -ī *n*
leash a dog canem cíngulō alligáre
pet (*stroke*) permúlc·eō -ére -sī
snarl gánn·iō -íre
tail caud·a -ae *f*; **wag the tail**
caudam movére
take for a walk dūc·ō -ere dūxī
ductus
dolphin delphín·us -ī *m*

donkey ásin·us -ī *m*
heehaw *intr* rud·ō -ere -íví -ítum
heehaw *s* rudít·us -ūs *m*
dove palumb·ēs -is *f* (*see bird*)
coo gem·ō -ere -uī
duck an·as -atis *f* (*see bird*)
quack tetrínn·iō -íre
eagle áquil·a -ae *f* (*see bird*)
screech stríd·eō -ére -uī
eel anguíl·a -ae *f*
elephant elephánt·us -ī *m*
trumpet bárr·iō -íre
trunk man·us -ūs *f*
falcon falc·ō -ónis *m* (*see bird*)
screech stríd·eō -ére -uī
farm animals pec·us -oris *n or* pécor·a
-um *npl*
fish *s* pisc·is -is *m*
fin pinn·a -ae *f*
fish food ēsc·a -ae *f* piscária
fish pond piscín·a -ae *f*
gills bránci·ae -árum *fpl*
scale *s* squām·a -ae *f*
scale *tr* dēsquāmáre
scaly squāmós·us -a -um
swim natáre
fish *intr* piscor piscārī piscátus sum
flea pūl·ex -icis *m*
flounder pass·er -eris *m* (*see fish*)
fly musc·a -ae *f*
buzz bombiláre
flock (*of birds, sheep, goats*) grex,
gregis *m*
fox vulp·ēs -is *f*
yelp gánn·iō -íre
frog rán·a -ae *f*

- croak** coaxáre
game preserve thērotrophí·um -ī *n*
giraffe camēlopárdal·is -is *f*
gnat cul·ex -icis *m*
goat cap·er -rī *m*, capr·a -ae *f*
bleat bālāre
goldfish híppur·us -ī *m* (*see fish*)
goose ans·er -eris *m* (*see bird*)
cackle gíngr·iō -íre
grasshopper grill·us -ī *m*
chirp fritúnn·iō -íre
haddock gad·us -ī *m* (*see fish*)
hawk accípi·ter -tris *m* (*see bird*)
caw plípiáre
shriek clāmáre
heifer iuvénc·a -ae *f* (*see cattle*)
hen gallín·a -ae *f*
cluck glóc·iō -íre
herd armént·um -ī *n*
hippopotamus hippopótam·us -ī *m*
hog sū·s -is *mf*
oink grúnn·iō -íre
hornet crābr·ō -ónis *m* (*see bee*)
horse equ·us -ī *m*
hoof úngul·a -ae *f*
mane iūb·a -ae *f*
neigh *intr* hínn·iō -íre -iī; **neigh at** adhinníre
neigh(ing) hinnít·us -ūs *m*
tail caud·a -ae *f*
horsefly tabán·us -ī *m*
buzz bombiláre
insect inséct·um -ī *n*
jellyfish pulm·ō -ónis *m*
lamb agn·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
bleat bālāre
lark alaúd·a -ae *f* (*see bird*)
leopard pard·us -ī *m*
mew rictáre
lion le·ō -ónis *m*, leaén·a -ae *f*
mane iūb·a -ae *f*
roar rúg·iō -íre
livestock pec·us -oris *n*
lizard lacért·us -ī *m*, lacért·a -ae *f*
lobster ástac·us -ī *m*
locust locúst·a -ae *f*
chirp stríd·eō -éire -uī
louse pēdícul·us -ī *m*
mackerel scomb·er -rī *m* (*see fish*)
mole talp·a -ae *f*
monkey símī·us -ī *m*, símī·a -ae *f*
chatter stríd·eō -éire -uī
moth blatt·a -ae *f*
mouse mū·s -ris *m*
squeak míntr·iō -íre
mule mūl·us -ī *m*, mūl·a -ae *f*
bray rud·ō -ere -ívī -ítum
ostrich strúthiocamél·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)
owl búb·ō -ónis *m* (*see bird*)
hoot búbiláre
ox bōs, bovis *m* (*dat & abl pl: bōbus or būbus*)
bellow boáre
oyster óstre·a -ae *f*
oyster bed ostreári·um -ī *n*
shell conch·a -ae *f*
panther panthér·a -ae *f*
parakeet melopsítac·us -ī *m*
parrot psítac·us -ī *m*
partridge perd·ix -ícis *mf* (*see bird*)
peacock pāv·ō -ónis *m*, pāv·a -ae *f* (*see bird*)

- pelican** onocrótal·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)
- perch** (*fish*) perc·a -ae *f* (*see fish*)
- pet** dēlíci·ae -árum *fpl*
- pheasant** phāsián·a -ae *f* (*see bird*)
- pig** porc·us -ī *m*
oink grúnn·iō -íre
pigsty suíl·e -is *n*
- pigeon** colúmb·a -ae *f*; colúmb·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)
coo gem·ō -ere -uī -itum
pigeon coop columbári·um -ī *n*
- pony** mann·us -ī *m* (*see horse*)
- porcupine** hystr·ix -icis *f*
- poultry** av·ēs -ium *fpl* cohortálēs
- pup** cátul·us -ī *m*
whimper gánn·iō -íre
puppy catéll·us -ī *m*
- quail** cotúrn·ix -ícis *f* (*see bird*)
- rabbit** cunícul·us -ī *m*
squeal vág·iō -íre
- ram** ári·ēs -etis *m*
bleat bāláre
- rat** mū·s -ris *m*
squeak mínr·iō -íre
- raven** corv·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)
croak crōcítáre
- reindeer** taráandr·us -ī *m*
- rhinoceros** rhinócer·ōs -ótis *m*
- robin** rubécul·a -ae *f* (*see bird*)
chirp pīpáre
- rooster** gall·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)
crow cūcúr·iō -íre; can·ō -ere cécinī cantum
- salmon** salm·ō -ónis *m* (*see fish*)
- sardine** sardín·a -ae *f* (*see fish*)
- scorpion** scórpi·ō -ónis *m*
- sting** *tr* íc·ō -ere ícī ictus
sting *s* ict·us -ūs *m*
- seahorse** hippocámp·us -ī *m*
- seal** vítul·us -ī *m* marínus
- serpent** serp·ēns -éntis *m*
bite *tr* íc·ō -ere ícī ictus
bite *s* ict·us -ūs *m*
- crawl** serp·ō -ere -sī
- hiss** sībiláre
- shark** pistr·is -is *m*
dorsal fin pinn·a -ae *f* dorsális
- sheep** ov·is -is *f*
bleat bāláre
shepherd pāst·or -óris *m*
pen (*for sheep*) ovíl·e -is *n*
wool lān·a -ae *f*
- snake** angu·is -is *mf* (*see serpent*)
- snail** cóchle·a -ae *f*
- sow** sū·s -is *f*
oink grúnn·iō -íre
- sparrow** pass·er -eris *m* (*see bird*)
chirp pīpáre
- spider** aráne·us -ī *m*
cobweb aráne·a -ae *f*
- squirrel** sciúr·us -ī *m*
- stag** cerv·us -ī *m*
bray rud·ō -ere -ívī -ítum
- starling** sturn·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)
chirp fritínn·iō -íre
- steer** iuvénc·us -ī *m*
- stork** cicóni·a -ae *f* (*see bird*)
- swallow** hirúnd·ō -inis *f* (*see bird*)
- swan** cync·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)
- swordfish** xíphi·ās -ae *m*
- thrush** turd·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)

tiger tigr·is -is *or* -idis *m*

growl frem·ō -ere -uī

toad būf·ō -ónis *m*

trout truct·us -ī *m*, truct·a -ae *f* (*see fish*)

tuna thunn·us -ī *m* (*see fish*)

turkey gallopáv·ō -ónis *m*

turtle testūd·ō -inis *f*

shell testūd·ō -inis *f*

vulture vult·ur -uris *m*

wasp vesp·a -ae *f* (*see bee*)

weasel mustél·a -ae *f*

whale balaén·a -ae *f*

wolf lup·us -ī *m*, lup·a -ae *f*

cub lupae cátul·us -ī *m*

howl *intr* ululáre

howl *s* ululát·us -ūs *m*

whelp gánn·iō -íre

woodpecker pīc·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)

worm verm·is -is *m*

earth worm lumbríc·us -ī *m*

zoo vīvári·um -ī *n*

Chapter XVII: Emotions and Qualities

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I

Diane and Debbie discuss the new teacher.

- Diána:** Salvē, Debra. Quō pactō tēcum ágitur? Aúdiō tē novam magístram hōc annō habére.
- Debra:** Salvē, Diána. Bene váleō. Rēctē audívistī.
- Diána:** Estne bona magístra?
- Debra:** Sevéra est sed aequa; nam tractat nōs omnēs eōdem modō.
- Diána:** Quámdiū iam docet?
- Debra:** Nēsciō. Sed est perítissima magístra. Nēmō obdormíscit in eius classe.
- Diána:** Quómodo condiscípulī tuī cum eā cóngruunt?
- Debra:** Amant eam quóniam pátiēns hiláraque est.
- Diána:** Maniféstō, magístra ipsa bonum exémplum praebet.
- Debra:** Ita, exémplum admírabile.
- Diane:** Hello, Debbie. How is it going with you? I hear that you have a new teacher this year.
- Debbie:** Hello, Diane. I'm fine. You heard right.
- Is she a good teacher?*
- She is strict but fair. She treats all alike.*
- How long has she been teaching?*
- I don't know. But she's a very experienced teacher. No one falls asleep in her class.*
- How do your classmates get along with her?*
- They love her because she is patient and cheerful.*
- Obviously, the teacher herself sets a good example.*
- Yes, a wonderful example.*

LEVEL II

A new girlfriend is the subject of discussion.

- Valéria:** Salvē, Ricárde. Ut valēs? Rūmor per tōtam vícíniam pervagátur tē novam amículam repperísse.
- Ricárdus:** Salvē. Bene váleō. Fāma est vēra; eam nōn ínfitior.
- Valerie:** Hello, Richard. How are you? There's a rumor going around the whole neighborhood that you have found a new girlfriend.
- Richard:** Hello. I'm fine. The story is true; I'll not deny it.

- Valéria:** Quid nōmen eī est? Égone eam nōvī?
What is her name? Do I know her?
- Ricárdus:** Nōmen eī est Donna. Eam nōn nōvístī.
Her name is Donna. You do not know her.
- Valéria:** Quālis homō est illa?
What sort of person is she?
- Ricárdus:** In prīmīs est bella et venústa. Bréviter, mīrífica est.
First of all, she is pretty and attractive. In a word, she is fantastic.
- Valéria:** Nōn, nōn. Dīcēbam dē eius índole.
No, no. I was talking about her personality.
- Ricárdus:** Iam téneō. Donna est intéllegēns et hílara et hūmána et ténera.
Now I get it. Donna is intelligent, cheerful, kind, and gentle.
- Valéria:** Estne géneris tacitúrnī?
Is she the silent type?
- Ricárdus:** Est magis loquāx et sociábilis quam tacitúrna; hāc dē causā, apud familiárēs grātiósíssima est. Étiam corcílum habet, sed numquam id iactat.
She is talkative and sociable rather than quiet; for that reason she is very popular with her close acquaintances. She also has brains, but she doesn't brag about that.
- Valéria:** Donna mihi vidétur speciósa puella. Spērō tē eam mihi aliquándō tráditúrum esse.
Donna seems to be a very interesting girl. I hope that you will introduce her to me sometime.
- Ricárdus:** Quidnī?
Why not?

LEVEL III Sizing up a political candidate.

- Titus:** Márcia, quid opínáris dē Bíbulō candidátō quī cōsulátum petit?
Titus: Marcia, what is your opinion of the candidate Bibulus, who is running for the consulship?
- Márcia:** Visne illum Bíbulum quī Caésaris competítor est? Praédicat sē rei públicae prófutúrum esse.
Marcia: Do you mean the Bibulus who is Caesar's opponent? He claims that he will be good for the country.
- Titus:** Crēdisne eum esse vērácem sincērúmque?
Do you believe that he is honest and sincere?
- Márcia:** Multa quidem prómíttit, sed mīror num fidem servátúrus sit.
He certainly makes a lot of promises, but I wonder whether he will keep his word.

Titus:	Mihi vidētur astūtus, audāx, ambitiōsus.	<i>He seems to me to be shrewd, bold, and ambitious.</i>
Márcia:	Dē eā rē tēcum fúnditus cōsentiō. Porrō audivistīne eius recētēs orātiōnēs?	<i>I fully agree with you on that point. Besides, have you heard his recent speeches?</i>
Titus:	Audīvī. Ut candidātī solent, iste competītōrēs suōs inpúgnat et idéntidem praedicat eōs omnēs esse arrogántēs et dolósos.	<i>I have. As candidates usually do, he attacks his opponents and again and again claims that they are all arrogant and tricky.</i>
Márcia:	Rūrsus tēcum omnínō cōsentiō. Cēnsétne sē solum esse locuplétem et cándidum et amántem pátriae?	<i>Again I fully agree with you. Does he think that he alone is trustworthy, candid, and patriotic?</i>
Titus:	Immō fácite est áliōs candidátōs reprehéndere; sed quid iste habet quod dē suā ratiōne dícat?	<i>Well, it's easy to criticize other candidates; but what does he have to say about his own policy?</i>
Márcia:	Dē suā ratiōne interrogátus, ambíguus fit. Dícit quidquid in buccam vēnerit. Quandocúmque urgētur, fit indignábundus ac dīcāx.	<i>When asked about his own policy, he becomes evasive. He says whatever comes into his head [lit: has come into his mouth]. Whenever he is hard pressed, he becomes indignant and sarcastic.</i>
Titus:	Ut vēra dícam, nésciō cui candidátō suffragáturus sim.	<i>To tell you the truth, I don't know for which candidate I am going to vote.</i>
Márcia:	Ego ipsa exspectábō diem comitiálem ántequam ego cōnstítuam.	<i>I myself am going to wait till election day before I make up my mind.</i>
Titus:	Tē nōn culpō. Ego idem fáciam.	<i>I don't blame you. I'll do the same.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

- ability** facúlt·ās -átis *f*
absurd absúrd·us -a -um
abusive malédic·us -a -um
accomplished ērudítus -a -um
active ála·cer -cris -cre
admirable admírábil·is -is -e
admiration admírátí·ō -ónis *f*
adult (*mature*) adúlt·us -a -um
affable affábil·is -is -e
affected affectát·us -a -um
affection am·or -óris *m*
affectionate am·āns -ántis
afraid formīdulós·us -a -um; **I am afraid that** vér·eor -éri véritus sum nē; **to be afraid** métu·ō -ere -ī
aged annós·us -a -um
agreeable cómmod·us -a -um, grāt·us -a -um
alert ā·cer -cris -cre
alluring illecebrós·us -a -um
alone sōl·us -a -um
ambition ambíti·ō -ónis *f*
ambitious ambitiós·us -a -um
anger ír·a -ae *f*
angry (at) írát·us -a -um (+ *dat*); **to get angry with** írāsc·or -árī (+ *dat*)
anguish ang·or -óris *m*
annoyance molésti·a -ae *f*
annoyed: to be annoyed at moléstē ferō ferre tulī
antagonistic infést·us -a -um
anxiety (about) cūr·a -ae *f* (+ *gen*)
apathetic dēs·es -idis
appetite cibī appeténti·a -ae *f*, cibī appetíti·ō -ónis *f*
arouse (*feelings*) exagitáre, suscitáre
arrogance arrogánti·a -ae *f*
arrogant árrog·āns -ántis
articulate disért·us -a -um
astute astút·us -a -um
athletic áthlétic·us -a -um
atrocious atr·ōx -ócis
attentive attént·us -a -um, ērécť·us -a -um
attitude gest·us -ūs *m*
attractive amábil·is -is -e; (*in looks*) speciós·us -a -um
austere asp·er -era -erum, austér·us -a -um
awful dír·us -a -um
awkward inconcín·us -a -um
backward (*mentally*) lent·us -a -um
bad mal·us -a -um, ímprob·us -a -um
banish (*worries, cares*) éxim·ō -ere exémī exémpus
beautiful pulch·er -ra -rum, formós·us -a -um
beauty pulchritúd·ō -inis *f*
becoming dec·ēns -éntis
big-hearted magnánim·us -a -um
bitter acérb·us -a -um
bitterly: to complain bitterly gráviter queror querī questus sum
bitterness acérbit·ās -átis *f*
blind caec·us -a -um
blindness caécit·ās -átis *f*
blush ērubésc·ō -ere ērúbuī
boastful iact·āns -ántis
bold aud·āx -ácis
boldness audáci·a -ae *f*
bombastic bullát·us -a -um
boorish agrést·is -is -e

bother (*annoy*) exérc·eō -éře -uī -itus

bothered exercitāt·us -a -um

brag about iactāre

brains: have brains corcīll·um -ī *n*

háb·eō -éře -uī

bright (*person*) argút·us -a -um

callous dūr·us -a -um

callousness dūrítī·a -ae *f*

calm plácid·us -a -um

calmly aequō ánimō

candid cándid·us -a -um, apért·us -a -um

care cūr·a -ae *f*

care díligéntī·a -ae *f*

careful dílig·ēns -éntis

careless incūriōs·us -a -um

carelessness incúri·a -ae *f*

cause (*stir up*) excitāre

caution caúti·ō -ōnis *f*; **to exercise**

caution cáv·eō -éře cāvī

cautious caut·us -a -um

character mōr·ēs -um *mpl*, índol·ēs -is *f*

charm amoénit·ās -átis *f*, dec·or -ōris *m*, gráti·a -ae *f*

charming amoén·us -a -um, lepid·us -a -um

chaste cast·us -a -um

cheer up *tr* hilarāre, laeticāre; **cheer up!** habē ánimum bonum!

cheerful ála·cer -cris -cre, hílar·us -a -um

cheerfulness alácrit·ās -átis *f*, hilarítúd·ō -inīs *f*

choice exquisít·us -a -um

civilized hūmán·us -a -um

clever cállid·us -a -um

cleverness callídít·ās -átis *f*

clumsy incompósit·us -a -um, inconcinn·us -a -um

cold (*dispassionate*) frígíd·us -a -um

comfort *s* leváti·ō -ōnis *f*

comfort *tr* allevāre

common sense: to have common sense cor háb·eō -éře -uī -itus

compassion clēméntī·a -ae *f*, hūmánit·ās -átis *f*

compassionate clēm·ēns -éntis, hūmán·us -a -um

concern cūr·a -ae *f*

concise brev·is -is -e

confide in cōnfíd·ō -ere (+ *dat*)

confidence fidúci·a -ae *f*, cōnfidéntī·a -ae *f*

confident cōnfíd·ēns -éntis; **to be**

confident cōnfíd·ō -ere cōnfísus sum

consternation cōsternáti·ō -ōnis *f*

contempt contépt·us -ūs *m*, dēspicáti·ō -ōnis *f*; **to feel contempt for** contémn·ō -ere -psī; **to hold s.o. in contempt** áliquem dēspicátum háb·eō -éře -uī -itus

contemptuous (of) dēspíci·ēns -éntis (+ *gen*)

content contént·us -a -um; **to your heart's content** arbitrátū tuō

control coérc·eō -éře -uī -itus, contín·eō -éře -uī

control (*restraint*) continéntī·a -ae *f*; (*power*) potést·ās -átis *f*; **out of control** effrēnát·us -a -um

convenience: at your convenience tuō cómmodō

cool (toward) frígíd·us -a -um (in + *acc*); (*great*) (*coll*) miránd·us -a -um; **that's cool!** mirándum est!

coolness (*indifference*) frīg·us -oris *n*

cope with pāre esse (+ *dat*); **unable to cope with** impāre esse (+ *dat*)

- courage** fortitúd·ō -inis *f*
courageous animós·us -a -um, fort·is -is -e
courteous cóm·is -is -e
courtesy cómít·ās -átis *f*
crabbiness morósít·ās -átis *f*
crabby morós·us -a -um
craving for appetíti·ō -ónis *f* (+ *gen*)
crazy dēlír·us -a -um
credible cređfíbil·is -is -e; **to be credible** fidem háb·eō -ére -uī -itus
criminal facinorós·us -a -um
cruel crūdél·is -is -e
cruelty crūdélít·ās -átis *f*
cry fl·eō -ére -éví; **to cry over** flére
culture hūmánít·ās -átis *f*
cunning collubrín·us -a -um
curiosity cūríósít·ās -átis *f*
cute bell·us -a -um, béllul·us -a -um
dainty dēlicát·us -a -um
daring aud·ēns -éntis, aud·āx -ácis
darling ánímul·us -ī *m*, ánímul·a -ae *f*
dear cār·us -a -um
deceitful fall·āx -ácis
decency decénti·a -ae *f*
decent dec·ēns -éntis; **to do the decent thing** frūgem fác·iō -ere fēcī
deep-seated ínsít·us -a -um
dejected dēmíss·us -a -um
delicate dēlicát·us -a -um
demented dēm·ēns -éntis
depressed abíéct·us -a -um; **to be depressed** abíéctō ánimō sum esse fuī
depression contrácti·ō -ónis *f* ánimī
deranged (*mind*) commót·us -a -um
deserving (*of*) dign·us -a -um (+ *abl*)
desire cupídít·ās -átis *f*
despair dēspērátí·ō -ónis *f*
despair dēspēráre
desperate dēspērát·us -a -um
desperation dēspērátí·ō -ónis *f*
despicable dēspicát·us -a -um
despise dēspíc·iō -ere dēspéxī dēspéctus
destructive exitiós·us -a -um
develop (*character, mind*) cōnfírmáre
dignified grav·is -is -e
dignity grávít·ās -átis *f*, dígnít·ās -átis *f*
diligence díligénti·a -ae *f*
diligent dílig·ēns -éntis
disappoint frustr·or -árī -átus sum
disappointment dēstitúti·ō -ónis *f*
disgrace dédec·us -oris *n*, ignōmíni·a -ae *f*; **to be a disgrace to** dēdecorī esse (+ *dat*)
disgraceful dēdecór·us -a -um, ignōmíniós·us -a -um
dishonorable dēdecór·us -a -um
dismay cōnsternátí·ō -ónis *f*
disposition afféct·us -ūs *m* (ánimī)
distinguished illústr·is -is -e
distress dol·or -óris *m*
distrust (*of*) diffídénti·a -ae *f* (+ *gen*)
distrust diffíd·ō -ere diffísus sum (*semi-deponent*) (+ *gen*)
downcast: to be downcast iác·eō -ére -uī
downhearted dēmíss·us -a -um; **to be downhearted** ánimō percúlsō esse
dread formídáre
dreadful dír·us -a -um
drunk ébri·us -a -um
drunkenness ébríet·ās -átis *f*; **habitual drunkenness** ébriósít·ās -átis *f*
dull héb·es -etis

- eager (for)** cupid·us -a -um (+ *gen*)
eagerly cupiēter
eagerness cupidit·ās -ātis *f*
easy-going fácil·is -is -e *f*
educated ērudīt·us -a -um
effeminate effēmināt·us -a -um
efficiency efficiēti·a -ae *f*
efficient effici·ēns -ētis
efficiently efficiēter
elegance ēlegānti·a -ae *f*
elegant ēleg·āns -āntis
eloquence ēloquēti·a -ae *f*
eloquent ēloqu·ēns -ētis
emotion ānimī mōt·us -ūs *m*; **to express emotions** ānimī mōtūs ēxprim·ō -ere exprēssi exprēssus
encourage hort·or -ārī -ātus sum
encouragement hortāt·us -ūs *m*
energetic nāv·us -a -um, ímpig·er -ra -rum
envious ínvid·us -a -um; **to be envious of** ínvid·eō -ēre ínvidī (+ *acc or dat*)
envy ínvidi·a -ae *f*
esteem dīlig·ō -ere dīlēxī dīlētus
estranged: to become estranged from s.o. āliquem ā sē aliēnāre
evasive ambígu·us -a -um
exact accūrāt·us -a -um, exáct·us -a -um
excessive (in) immódic·us -a -um (+ *gen or abl*)
excite excitāre
excited commōt·us -a -um
excitement ānimī commōti·ō -ōnis *f*; **to feel excitement** excit·or -ārī excitātus sum
experience experiēti·a -ae *f*, experimēt·um -ī *n*, ūs·us -ūs *m*
- experienced (in)** perít·us -a -um (+ *gen or abl*)
expert in gnār·us -a -um (+ *gen*)
expressive (eyes) argūt·us -a -um
fair, fair-minded aequ·us -a -um
fairness aéquit·ās -ātis *f*
faith fid·ēs -eī *f*; **in bad faith** dē fidē malā; **in good faith** (ex) bonā fidē
faithful fidél·is -is -e
fall (desperately) in love with (pérditē) amāre coep·ī -ísse
false fals·us -a -um
fantastic mīrífic·us -a -um
faultless ēmendāt·us -a -um
favor benefíci·um -ī *n*; **to accept and return a favor** beneficium accíperē et réddere
fear métu·ō -ere -ī
fear met·us -ūs *m*
fearless impávid·us -a -um
feeble imbēcill·us -a -um
feebleness imbēcillit·ās -ātis *f*
feel (hunger, pain, cold, etc.) sént·iō -tíre -sī -sus; **I don't feel well** mīhi nōn bene hábeō; **to feel annoyed and out** ínfráctum ánimum ger·ō -ere gessī; **to feel good** sē bene háb·eō -ēre -uī; **to feel happy** gaúd·eō -ēre gāvísus sum; **to feel pain** dolóre affíciōr affíci afféctus sum; **to feel sad** maest·us -a -um esse
feeling sēns·us -ūs *m*, afféct·us -ūs *m*
fidelity fidélit·ās -ātis *f*
fierce fer·ōx -ócis
firm firm·us -a -um
flame (sweetheart) flamm·a -ae *f*
flattering bland·us -a -um
flattery blandíti·a -ae *f*

- fluent** próflu·ēns -éntis
fond of cúpid·us -a -um (+ *gen*); **to be fond of** amáre
fondness am·or -óris *m*
foolhardy temerári·us -a -um
foolish dēsípi·ēns -éntis
foolishly: to act foolishly inépt·iō -íre
foolishness dēsipiénti·a -ae *f*
fortunate fortunát·us -a -um
frame: of mind ánim·us -ī *m*; **to be in a good frame of mind** bonō ánimō esse
frank apért·us -a -um
friendly amíc·us -a -um; **in a friendly way** amícē
friendship amícíti·a -ae *f*
frighten térr·eō -éire -uī -itus
frivolous frívol·us -a -um
frustrate frūstr·or -árī -átus *sum*
frustration frūstráti·ō -ónis *f*
funny iocós·us -a -um
generosity liberálit·ās -átis *f*
generous liberál·is -is -e
gentle clēm·ēns -éntis, mīt·is -is -e
get along with concórditer cóngru·ō -ere -uī cum (+ *abl*)
get over (*grief, anger, etc.*) superáre
glad laet·us -a -um; **to be glad** laet·or -árī -átus *sum*
gloat over exsultáre (+ *abl*)
gloom maestíti·a -ae *f*
gloomy, glum maest·us -a -um
glutton héllu·ō -ónis *m*; **to be a glutton** héllu·or -árī
gluttonous ed·āx -ácis
gluttony edácit·ās -átis *f*
good (*also morally*) bon·us -a -um
good-natured fácil·is -is -e
goodness (*integrity, good behavior*) bónit·ās -átis *f*
goodwill benevolénti·a -ae *f*
gossip (*person*) fāmigerát·or -óris *m*, fāmigerátr·ix -ícis *f*
grave grav·is -is -e
greed avāríti·a -ae *f*
greedy avárus -a -um; **greedy for** avárus (+ *gen*)
gregarious (*sociable*) congregábil·is -is -e
grief maer·or -óris *m*; **to feel grief** condolésc·ō -ere condólui
groan gem·ō -ere -uī -itum
groan gémit·us -ūs *m*
gullible crédul·us -a -um
habit cōnsuetúd·ō -inis *f*
handsome formós·us -a -um
happiness beátitúd·ō -inis *f*
happy beát·us -a -um, laet·us -a -um
hard to please difficil·is -is -e
hard-working labōriós·us -a -um
harsh (toward) dūr·us -a -um (in + *acc*)
harshness dūríti·a -ae *f*
hate *tr* ođi ođísse (*defective verb*)
hate *s* ođi·um -ī *n*
hatred (of, toward) ođi·um -ī *n* (in + *acc*)
haughty ēlát·us -a -um
heart: from the heart ex ánimō; **heart and soul** tōtō pēctore
heartache cūr·a -ae *f*, cordóli·um -ī *n*
helpless in·ops -opis
helplessness inópi·a -ae *f*
holiness sánctit·ās -átis *f*
holy sánct·us -a -um
homely inspeciós·us -a -um

homesick: to be homesick ex dēsīdēriō
labōrāre; **I am homesick for** mē
dēsīdērium tenet (+ *gen*)

honest prob·us -a -um; (*speaking the truth*) vēr·āx -ācis

honor hon·or -ōris *m*

honor honōrāre

honorable honōrābil·is -is -e, honést·us
-a -um

honorably honéstē

hope spēs, spē *f*

hope spērāre; **lose hope** dēspērāre

hopeless dēspērāt·us -a -um

horrible horrībil·is -is -e

hot-tempered irācūnd·us -a -um

humane hūmān·us -a -um

humor fēstīvit·ās -ātis *f*

humorous fēstīv·us -a -um

humorously fēstīvē

hunger fam·ēs -is *f*

hypocrite simulāt·or -ōris *m*,
simulātr·ix -īcis *f*

hypocritical coāct·us -a -um

idea cognīti·ō -ōnis *f*

ideal exēmpl·ar -āris *n*

ignorance īnsciēti·a -ae *f*

ignorant īnscīt·us -a -um

ill-mannered male mōrāt·us -a -um

illogical absūrd·us -a -um

immature immātūr·us -a -um

immaturity immātūrit·ās -ātis *f*

immoderate immōdic·us -a -um

immodest impudīc·us -a -um

impartial aequ·us -a -um

impatient: to be impatient with inīquō
ānimō ferō ferre tulī

impatiently inīquō ānimō

impetuous fērvīd·us -a -um

impolite inurbān·us -a -um

important magn·us -a -um

impress commōv·eō -ére commōvī
commōtus

improper īndec·ēns -éntis

improve ēmendāre **|| intr** mēl·ior -ior
-ius fiō fierī factus sum; (*in studies*)
prōfic·iō -ere prōfēcī

imprudent imprūd·ēns -éntis

impulse ānimī īmpet·us -ūs *m*

inappropriate inēpt·us -a -um

indecent īndec·ēns -éntis

indecisive ambígu·us -a -um

indifference frīg·us -oris *n*; **indifferent**
(*towards*) nēgleg·ēns -éntis (*in* +
acc)

indignant indignābūd·us -a -um

inept inēpt·us -a -um

inexperienced (in) inexpért·us -a -um
(*ab* + *abl* or *in* + *acc* or *advērsus* +
acc)

infamous infām·is -is -e

infatuated: to be infatuated with s.o.
āliquem efflīctim amāre

influence grāti·a -ae *f*

influential grātiōs·us -a -um

ingenious artificiōs·us -a -um

injustice iniūstīti·a -ae *f*

innocence innocēti·a -ae *f*

innocent (of) īnnoc·ēns -éntis (+ *gen*)

inquisitive cūrīōs·us -a -um

insane īnsān·us -a -um

insanity īnsānit·ās -ātis *f*

insensitive dūr·us -a -um

insensitivity dūrīti·a -ae *f*

insincere īnsincēr·us -a -um

integrity honést·ās -ātis *f*

- intellect** intellēct·us -ūs *m*
- intelligence** intellegēnti·a -ae *f*
- intelligent** intēllēg·ēns -ētis
- intense** (*emotions*) grand·is -is -e
- interesting** speciōs·us -a -um
- irresponsible** inofficiōs·us -a -um
- irritable** irācūnd·us -a -um
- itching, to be itching to** gést·iō -īre (+ *inf*)
- jealous** ínvid·us -a -um; **to be jealous of** invíd·eō -ēre invídī (+ *acc or dat*)
- jealousy** invídi·a -ae *f*
- jerk** (*coll*) bucc·ō -ōnis *m*
- joy** gaúdi·um -ī *n*; **to feel joy** gaúd·eō -ēre gāvísus *sum*
- jump for joy** exsultāre
- just** iūst·us -a -um
- justice** iūstíti·a -ae *f*
- kind** benévol·us -a -um; **to be kind toward** benévolus esse ergā (+ *acc*)
- kind: what kind of person is ... ?** quī homō est ... ?
- kind-hearted** benévol·us -a -um, benígn·us -a -um
- kindness** benevoléntia -ae *f*; **to show kindness to s.o.** benevoléntiam álicui praest·ō -āre praestítī
- knowledge** cognítí·ō -ōnis *f*, sciénti·a -ae *f*
- laziness** ignávi·a -ae *f*
- lazy** ignáv·us -a -um
- learned** doct·us -a -um, ērudít·us -a -um
- lecherous** sal·āx -ācis, libídínōs·us -a -um
- lie** fals·us -a -um -ī *n*
- listless** dēs·es -idis
- liveliness** alácrit·ās -átis *f*
- lively** ála·cer -cris -cre
- loneliness** sōlitúd·ō -inis *f*
- lonely** sōlitári·us -a -um; **to be lonely for** dēsīderāre
- long for** dēsīderāre
- longing for** dēsīdéri·um -ī *n* (+ *gen*)
- look down on** (*despise*) despectāre
- loudmouth** clamát·or -óris *m*, clamátr·īx -ícis *f*
- lovable** amábil·is -is -e
- love** amāre
- love** am·or -óris *m*
- loving** am·āns -ántis
- low-born** ignóbil·is -is -e
- loyal** fidél·is -is -e, fīd·us -a -um; **to remain loyal** in fidē mán·eō -ēre mānsī
- loyalty** fidélit·ās átis *f*
- luck** fortún·a -ae *f*
- lucky** fortunát·us -a -um
- lust** cupidít·ās -átis *f*, libíd·ō -inis *f*
- lying** falsíloqu·us -a -um
- meticulous** accūrát·us -a -um
- mild** clēm·ēns -ētis
- mind** ánim·us -ī *m*; **I have made up my mind** dēstinátum mihi est; **of sound mind** comp·os -otis mentis; **to be in one's right mind** apud sē esse
- misery** miséri·a -ae *f*
- miserable** mis·er -era -erum
- miss** dēsīderāre
- mistake** err·or -óris *m*; **to make a mistake** errāre
- mistaken** fals·us -a -um
- model** exémpl·ar -áris *n*
- modest** modést·us -a -um
- modesty** modésti·a -ae *f*

mood afféct·us -ūs *m* ánimī, ánim·us -ī
m; **to get over one's mood** ánimum
vinc·ō -ere -vīcī, superáre

motivation for ráti·ō -ónis *f* (+ *gen*)

motive caus·a -ae *f*

mourn *tr* & *intr* lúg·eō -ére lūxī

mourning maer·or -óris *m*

narrow-minded angúst·us -a -um

narrow-mindedness angústī·ae -árum
fpl

natural (*unaffected*) incompósit·us -a
-um

nature nātúr·a -ae *f*

needy in·ops -opis

negligence negligéntī·a -ae *f*, incúri·a
-ae *f*

negligent néglig·ēns -éntis

nervous intént·us -a -um, trépid·us -a
-um

nervousness trepidáti·ō -ónis *f*, ánim·us
-ī *m* trépidus

nice (*courteous*) concínn·us -a -um;
(*pleasant*) lépid·us -a -um; (*cute*)
bell·us -a -um

noble (*sentiments*) grand·is -is -e

object lesson documént·um -ī *n*

obliging cómmod·us -a -um

obscurity ignóbílīt·ās -átis *f*

over-confident cōnfíd·ēns -éntis

outspoken libéri·or -óris

painstaking operós·us -a -um

passion cupídīt·ās -átis *f*; (*lust*) libíd·ō
-inis *f*

passionate ārd·ēns -éntis

passionately efflíctim

pathetic elāmentābil·is -is -e

patient páti·ēns -éntis

patiently aequō ánimō

patriotic am·āns -ántis pátriae

persistence assidúit·ās -átis *f*

persistent assídu·us -a -um

personality índol·ēs -is *f*

pessimistic infél·īx -ícis

phoney affectát·us -a -um

pitiful flébil·is -is -e

pity misericórdī·a -ae *f*; **to feel pity for**
commiserésc·ō -ere (+ *gen*)

pity misér·eō -ére -uī (+ *gen*)

pleasant iūcúnd·us -a -um

pleasantness iūcúndīt·ās -átis *f*

pleasing grāt·us -a -um

polite to cōm·is -is -e (+ *dat or ergā or*
in + acc)

politeness cōmit·ās -átis *f*

pompous glóriós·us -a -um

poor (*pitiful*) mis·er -era -erum

popular grātiós·us -a -um; **to be**
popular with s.o. grātiósus esse
apud áliquem

popularity grāti·a -ae *f*; **to enjoy**
popularity among grátiam háb·eō
-ére -uī -itus apud (+ *acc*)

practice (*patience, etc.*) exérc·eō -ére
-uī

precise exáct·us -a -um

prestige auctórit·ās -átis *f*

presumptuous cōnfíd·ēns -éntis

pretty bell·us -a -um, béllul·us -a -um

pride glóri·a -ae *f*; **source of pride**
glóri·a -ae *f*; **to take pride in**
glóri·or -ári dē *or in* (+ *abl*)

proper dec·ēns -éntis, decór·us -a -um

proud glóriós·us -a -um; **to be proud of**
glóri·or -ári (+ *acc or dē or in + abl*)

quiet tacitúrn·us -a -um

rage fur·or -óris *m*; **to fly into a rage**
írāsc·or -ári

- refined** hūmán·us -a -um
reform ēmendāre
regret paenitēti·a -ae *f*
regret: I regret mē paēnitet (+ *gen*)
relentless dīr·us -a -um
relief: to be a relief levāmētō esse
rely on cōnfīd·ō -ere cōnfīsus sum (+ *dat*); **relying on** frēt·us -a -um (+ *dat* or *abl*)
remember commemorāre
renown fām·a -ae *f*
repress (*emotions*) cohīb·eō -ēre -uī -itus
repression continēti·a -ae *f*
reputation fām·a -ae *f*; **bad reputation** infāmi·a -ae *f*; **good reputation** honést·ās -ātis *f*
resentful irācúnd·us -a -um
resentment irācúndi·a -ae *f*
resolute cōnfirmāt·us -a -um
respect honōrāre, observāre
respectability honést·ās -ātis *f*
respectable honést·us -a -um
respected honōrāt·us -a -um
respectful obsérv·āns -āntis
respectfully honōrficē
responsibility for cūr·a -ae *f* (+ *gen*); **it is my responsibility to** ... est mihi cūrae (+ *inf*)
restless inquiēt·us -a -um
rich dīv·es -itis
riches dīvíti·ae -ārum *fpl*
rid: get rid of (*worries*) dīlu·ō -ere -ī; (*persons*) āmól·ior -īrī āmólītus sum
ridiculous rīdícul·us -a -um
role model exémpl·ar -āris *n*
rough asp·er -era -erum
rude (*character*) asp·er -era -erum
sad trist·is -is -e, maest·us -a -um
sadness tristíti·a -ae *f*
sarcasm dicācit·ās -ātis *f*
sarcastic dicācul·us -a -um, dic·āx -ācis
scandalous flāgitiōs·us -a -um
scholarly ērudīt·us -a -um
scorn contēpti·ō -ōnis *f*
seductive illecebrōs·us -a -um
self-confidence fidūci·a -ae *f*
self-confident cōnfīd·ēns -éntis; **to be self-confident** sibi cōnfīd·ō -ere cōnfīsus sum
self-control abstinēti·a -ae *f*
self-controlled comp·os -otis suī
self-respect dīgnit·ās -ātis *f*
sense of duty, of responsibility pīet·ās -ātis *f*
sensible: to be sensible sáp·iō -ere
serious grav·is -is -e
seriousness grávit·ās -ātis *f*
shake up commóv·eō -ēre commóvī commótus
shabby sórdid·us -a -um
shame ignōmíni·a -ae *f*
shameful ignōminiōs·us -a -um
shameless ímprob·us -a -um
shifty móbil·is -is -e; **shifty like the wind** ventōs·us -a -um
show off sē iactāre
shrewd astút·us -a -um
shy tímīd·us -a -um
sigh gémit·us -ūs *m*
sigh *intr* gem·ō -ere -uī -itum; **to sigh over** gémere
silliness dēlīrātī·ō -ōnis *f*, inépti·a -ae *f*
silly dēsípi·ēns -éntis, inépt·us -a -um; **to be silly** dēsíp·iō -ere
sincere sincēr·us -a -um

- skill** artifici·um -ī *n*
skilled cállid·us -a -um
skillful artificiós·us -a -um
skillfulness callídít·ās -átis *f*
slow (*physically, mentally*) lent·us -a -um
sluggish heb·es -etis; **to be sluggish** héb·eō -ére
sly astút·us -a -um
small-mindedness humílit·ās -átis *f*
smart cállid·us -a -um; (*impertinent*) ínsol·ēns -éntis
smile subríd·eō -ére subrísi
smooth-talking blandíloqu·us -a -um
smug cōnfíd·ēns -éntis
smugness cōnfidénti·a -ae *f*
snobbish fastídiós·us -a -um
sober sôbri·us -a -um
sociable sociábil·is -is -e
sorry: I feel sorry for the others mē míseret aliórum
stability fírmit·ās -átis *f*
stable firm·us -a -um
state of mind affectáti·ō -ónis *f* ánimí
stern asp·er -era -erum
stingy sórdid·us -a -um
strict sevér·us -a -um; (*person in authority*) acérb·us -a -um
stubborn obstinát·us -a -um
surly diffícil·is -is -e
suspicion suspíci·ō -ónis *f*; **to come under suspicion** in suspicióem vén·iō -íre vēni
suspicious súspic·āx -ácis; (*suspected*) suspéct·us -a -um
sweet dulc·is -is -e
sympathy: to show sympathy for commiser·or -ári -átus sum
talent artifici·um -ī *n*, ingéni·um -ī *n*
talented ingeniós·us -a -um
talkative loqu·āx -ácis
tall alt·us -a -um, prōcér·us -a -um
task op·us -eris *n*, cūr·a -ae *f*
taste: lack of good taste dēfórmit·ās -átis *f*
tense intént·us -a -um
tension conténti·ō -ónis *f*
terrify terrificáre
terror terr·or -óris *m*
thrifty frūgál·is -is -e, frūgī (*indecl*)
tireless assídu·us -a -um
touchy (*irritable*) stomachós·us -a -um
tough dūr·us -a -um
tremble trem·ō -ere -uī; **to tremble all over** cóntrem·ō -ere -uī
tricky dolós·us -a -um
trouble exérc·eō -ére -uī -itus
troubled exercitát·us -a -um
trust fid·ō -ere físus sum (+ *dat or abl*)
trust fid·ēs -eī *f*
trusting cōnfíd·ēns -éntis
trustworthiness fidúci·a -ae *f*
trustworthy lócupl·ēs -étis
trusty firm·us -a -um
truthful vērídíc·us -a -um
trying (*tough*) exercitát·us -a -um
two-faced dup·lex -icis, bílngu·is -is -e
ugliness dēfórmit·ās -átis *f*
ugly dēfórm·is -is -e; turp·is -is -e
unattractive invenúst·us -a -um
uncontrolled effrēnát·us -a -um
uncouth hórrid·us -a -um
uneducated inērudít·us -a -um
unfair íniqu·us -a -um

unfairly iníquē**unfaithful** infidél·is -is -e**unfriendly** inimíc·us -a -um**unhappiness** infēlícit·ās -átis *f***unhappy** infél·ix -ícis**unpleasant** iniūcúnd·us -a -um**unrestrained** effrēnát·us -a -um,
effús·us -a -um**unstable** instábil·is -is -e**unsteady** (*tottering*) cādúc·us -a -um**untrustworthy** infíd·us -a -um**upset** *adj* commót·us -a -um**upset** *tr* commóv·eō -éere commóvī
commótus**urge** ánimī ímpet·us -ūs *m***vigorous** álac·er -ris -re**violence** violénti·a -ae *f***violent** violént·us -a -um**weak** inválid·us -a -um**welcome** grāt·us -a -um**well-born** honést·us -a -um**well-mannered** bene mōrát·us -a -um**well-off** bene aerátus -a -um**wicked** ímprob·us -a -um**wickedness** impróbit·ās -átis *f***wild** efferát·us -a -um**wily** dolós·us -a -um, súbdol·us -a -um**wonderful** admīrābil·is -is -e**word: to break one's word** fidem
fall·ō -ere feféllī; **to give one's word**
fidem dō dare dedī datus; **to keep**
one's word fidem serváre**word of honor** fid·ēs -eī *f***worry** cūr·a -ae *f*, sollicitúd·ō -inis *f***worry** *tr* sollicitáre || *intr* sollícit·or -árī
-átus sum**worthless** inán·is -is -e**worthlessness** inánit·ās -átis *f***worthy (of)** dign·us -a -um (+ *abl*)**yearn for** dēsīderáre**yearning (for)** dēsīderáti·ō -ónis *f* (+
gen)

Chapter XVIII: Trades and Professions

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I

Donna gets a new hairdo.

Tōnstrīx	Salvē, Donna. Quid agis?	<i>Hairdresser: Hello, Donna. How are you?</i>
Donna	Váleō. Velim tōnsúram, quaesō.	<i>Donna: I'm fine. I'd like a haircut, please.</i>
Tōnstrīx	Cōnsíde, amábō tē, in hāc sellā tōnsóriā.	<i>Sit down in this chair, please.</i>
Donna	Grátiās! Nōlī nimis dētondére comam.	<i>Thank you. Don't cut my hair too short.</i>
Tōnstrīx	At hódīē puéllae gerunt comam curtam.	<i>But nowadays girls are wearing their hair short.</i>
Donna	Id sciō, sed comam curtam nōn cūrō.	<i>I know, but I don't care for short hair.</i>
Tōnstrīx	Quómodo ergō cupis mē tondére comam?	<i>How then do you want me to cut your hair?</i>
Donna	Frangē comam in gradūs.	<i>Cut my hair in layers.</i>
Tōnstrīx	Vísne ántiās?	<i>Do you want bangs?</i>
Donna	Nōlō. Repécte comam.	<i>No. Comb my hair back.</i>
Tōnstrīx	Vísne étiam cómere comam novíssimō modō?	<i>Do you want me to set your hair in the latest style?</i>
Donna	Ita. Utrum prius lautúra es comam?	<i>Yes. Are you going to wash my hair first?</i>
Tōnstrīx	Scílicet ego semper comam lavō ántequam eam cōmō.	<i>Of course, I always wash the hair before I set it.</i>
Donna	Sī tū vacās, nōn modo crīspā sed étiam tinge comam.	<i>If you have time, don't only curl my hair but also color it.</i>

Tōnstrīx Vacō. Mihi crēde, amābis hunc novum cōmptum. *I have time. Believe me, you will love this new hairdo.*

LEVEL II **Choosing a career.**

Pater Vīsne, mī fili, esse aliquandō ratiōcinātor?
Father: Son, would you like to be an accountant someday?

Fīlius Nullō modō! Meā sententiā, mathēmática est doctrīna difficillima. Porrō, taedet mē tabulārum accēpti et expēnsi.
Son: No way! Math, I think, is a very difficult subject. Besides, accounting books bore me.

Pater Fortāsse velis medicīnam exercēre. Médicī, ut scīs, magnā auctōritāte ūtūntur.
Maybe you'd want to practice medicine. Doctors, as you know, enjoy a lot of prestige.

Fīlius At medicī arcessūntur ómnibus hōris diēi et noctis. Numquam tempus subsicīvum habent.
But doctors are on call at all hours of the day and night. They never have time off.

Pater Velīsne fierī causídicus? Rē vērā, causídici ingéntem pecūniam faciunt.
Would you like to become a lawyer? After all, lawyers make big money.

Fīlius Mihi nōn est ista callíditas quae est causidicórum, sī scīs quid mihi velim.
I don't have that shrewdness that is typical of lawyers, if you know what I mean.

Pater Velīsne repúblicam inīre et aliquandō senātor fierī?
Would you like to enter politics and eventually become a senator?

Fīlius Senātórēs quidem multum valent, sed saepe sibi magis quam pópulō cōnsulunt.
Senators do have a lot of clout, but often they look after themselves rather than the people.

Pater Fortāsse mālīs exercēre ūnum ex artificiis.
Perhaps you would prefer to practice one of the trades.

Fīlius Nōlō fierī neque tōnsor neque pistor neque lánius neque sūtor neque argentárius neque. . . .
I don't want to become a barber or a baker or a butcher or shoemaker or a banker or a

Pater	At ūnusquīsque nostrum debet vīctum quaerītāre quōmodocūmq̄! Quid dē ártibus ēlegantióribus?	<i>But each and every one of us must earn a living some way or other. What about the fine arts?</i>
Fīlius	Pictórēs et sculptórēs et scrīptórēs habent prōpriū ingénium quod mihi omnīnō dēest.	<i>Painters and sculptors and writers have a special talent which I lack completely.</i>
Pater	Quod tibi plānē dēest, mī fili, nōn est ingénium sed ambítiō!	<i>Son, what you obviously lack is not ability but ambition!</i>

 LEVEL III **A man plans to build a home.**

Dóminus	In ánimō hábeō domum novam aedificāre.	<i>Owner: I plan to build a new home.</i>
Condúctor	Quō in locō?	<i>Contractor: Where?</i>
Dóminus	In Viā Novā in Monte Aventínō.	<i>On New Street on the Aventine Hill.</i>
Condúctor	Quandō opus mihi incipiéndum est?	<i>When do I have to begin the work?</i>
Dóminus	Scīlicet quam primum. Quem architēctum commēdās?	<i>Of course, as soon as possible. Whom do you recommend as architect?</i>
Condúctor	Vitrúvius potest architēctāre tibi domum pulchram.	<i>Vitruvius can design you a beautiful home.</i>
Dóminus	Ego eum prōtinus arcēssam.	<i>I'll call him right away.</i>
Condúctor	Et ego prōtinus condūcam caementáriōs, láterum strūctórēs, tēctórēs, fabrōs tignáriōs atque magnum gregem operāriōrum.	<i>And I will immediately hire (some) workers in concrete, bricklayers, plasterers, carpenters and a large crew of laborers.</i>
Dóminus	Quandō póterunt caementárii fundāmētum iácere?	<i>When can the concrete workers pour the foundation?</i>
Condúctor	Trīduō aut quadrīduō summum.	<i>Within three days or four at most.</i>
Dóminus	Quid deinde?	<i>What then?</i>
Condúctor	Post iactum fundāmētum, strūctórēs láterēs strūere póterunt.	<i>After the foundation has been laid, the bricklayers will be able to lay the bricks.</i>

Dóminus	Quid fit deinde?	<i>And what happens then?</i>
Condúctor	Tēctóres tēctórium parietibus indúcent.	<i>The plasterers will plaster the walls.</i>
Dóminus	Nōlī oblīvīscī, iubē pictóres parietēs átrii tabliníque píngere.	<i>Don't forget, have the painters paint the walls of the atrium and the study.</i>
Condúctor	Vísne étiam pictúrās údō tēctóriō?	<i>Do you also want frescoes?</i>
Dóminus	Ita. Volō pictúrās Músárum et nymphárum.	<i>Yes. I want pictures of the Muses and nymphs.</i>
Condúctor	Ubi vīs opus tessellátum in pavíméntis?	<i>Where do you want mosaics on the floor?</i>
Dóminus	In átrio et triclíniō et tablinō et ómnibus cubículis.	<i>In the atrium, the dining room, the study, and all the bedrooms.</i>
Condúctor	Cōnficiam tótam domum intrā sex mēnsēs.	<i>I shall finish the entire home within six months.</i>
Dóminus	Bene sánē. Cūrábō ut contráctus cōnscrībátur.	<i>Very good. I shall see to it that the contract is drawn up.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

accountant ratiōcinát·or -óris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*), ratiōnári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

account balances ráti·ō -ónis *f*; **the account** rátiō cōnstat

account books tábul·ae -árum *fpl* (accépti et expénsi)

accounting cōnfécti·ō -ónis *f* tabulárum

audit accounts ratiónēs dispún·gō -gere -xī -ctus

balance accounts ratiónēs cónferō cōnférre cōntulī collátus

keep books tábulās cōnfíc·iō -ere cōnfécī cōnféctus

acrobat fūnámbul·us -ī *m*

actor hístri·ō -ónis *m*, áct·or -óris *m*

act *tr & intr* ag·ō -ere ēgī áctus

actress scénic·a -ae *f*, áct·rix -ícis *f*

go on the stage in scaenam prōdeō prōdfre prōdiī

movie fábul·a -ae *f* cīnēmatogrāphica

play fábul·a -ae *f*

play the lead role primās partēs ag·ō -ere ēgī áctus

play the role of a general imperátōrem agere

scenery scēn·a -ae *f*

stage scēn·a -ae *f*, proscēni·um -ī *n*

ambassador legát·us -ī *m*

announcer annūntiát·or -óris *m*, annūntiát·rix -ícis *f*

architect architēct·us -ī *m*

architecture architēctúr·a -ae *f*

design (*buildings*) architectāre
artist ártif·ex -icis *mf*
athlete áthlēt·a -ae *mf*
athletics áthlētíc·a -ae *f*
baker pīst·or -óris *m*, pīstr·īx -ícis *f* (*see also Chapter VIII*)
bake cóqu·ō -ere coxī coctus
bakery pīstrīn·a -ae *f*
banker argentári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
account ráti·ō -ónis *f*
bank argentári·a -ae *f*, tabérn·a -ae *f*
 argentária
bank book libéll·us -ī *m*
 compar sórium, argentáriae libéllus
banking business argentári·a -ae *f*;
to run a (big) banking business
 argentárium (máximam) fác·iō -ere
 fēci factus
bill (*paper money*) numm·us -ī *m*
 chartáreus; **ten-dollar bill** nummus
 chartáreus decem dollarórum
borrow money at interest pecúniam
 faénorī accíp·iō -ere accēpī accēptus
check sýngraph·a -ae *f*, mandát·um
 -ī *n* nummárium; **to cash a check**
 arcáriō sýngrapham praéb·eō -ére -uī
 solvéndam; **to write a check**
 sýngrapham perscrīb·ō -ere
 perscrípsī
compound interest anatócism·us
 -ī *m*
deposit money in the bank
 pecúniam in argentáriā depón·ō -ere
 depósuī depósitus
interest faen·us -oris *n*; **at interest**
 faénorī *or* faénore
lend money at interest pecúniam
 faénorī dō dare dedī datus
manage a bank argentárium
 móder·or -áři moderátus sum
passbook argentáriae libéll·us -ī *m*

principal cap·ut -itis *n*
simple interest perpétuum faen·us
 -oris *n*
barber tōns·or -óris *m*
barber chair sell·a -ae *f* tōnsória
barber shop tōnstrīn·a -ae *f*
clippers mächínul·a -ae *f* capíllis
 reseándīs
comb s pect·en -inis *m*
comb tr pect·ō -ere pexī pexus
cut (*hair*) tóndeō tondére totóndī
 tónsus
hair (*of the head*) capíll·us -ī *m*, (*or
 with no distinction*) capíll·ī -órum
mpl, com·a -ae *f*; (*in locks or
 dressed*) crīn·is -is *m*
hairdo cōmpt·us -ūs *m*
haircut tōnsúr·a -ae *f*
hair style tōns·us -ūs *m*
razor novácul·a -ae *f*
scissors forficul·ae -árum *fpl*
shave tr rád·ō -ere rāsī rāsus;
 (*regularly*) rāsítäre; **to shave every
 day** fáciem cōfidīe rāsítäre
shave s rāsúr·a -ae *f*
bartender ministrát·or -óris *m*,
 ministrát·r·īx -ícis *f*
serve (*drinks, food*) to ministráre
 (+ *dat*)
beautician órnátr·īx -ícis *f* (*see
 hairdresser*)
bookkeeper actuári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
 (*see accountant*)
bookseller bibliopól·a -ae *m*
bookcase bibliothéc·a -ae *f*
book li·ber -brī *m*
bookshelf plúte·us -ī *m*
bookstore librári·a -ae *f*
boxer pugil, púgil·is *m* (*see Chapter V*)

bricklayer látērum struct·or -óris *m* (*see mason*)

brick *s* lat·er -eris *m* (coctūlis = baked)

brick *adj* lateríci·us -a -um

lay bricks látērēs stru·ō -ere struxī structus

builder strūct·or -óris *m*, aedificāt·or -óris *m*

build éxstru·ō -ere exstrúxī exstrúctus, aedificāre

building aedifici·um -ī *n*

erect, put up exstrúere

businessman negōtiát·or -óris *m*

a business negóti·um -ī *n*

be engaged in business in negótiō vers·or -ári -átus *sum*

business *adj* negōtiál·is -is -e

business establishment (*with its premises*) negōtiāti·ō -ónis *f*

business letter epístul·a -ae *f* negōtiális

businesswoman negōtiátr·ix -ícis *f*

close a business deal negótiūm (*or rem*) cōnfíc·iō -ere cōnfēcī cōnféctus

do (carry on) business negóti·or -ári -átus *sum*

run a business negótiūm exérc·eō -ére -uī -itus

transact business with s.o. negótiūm cum áliqūō tránsig·ō -ere -égī -áctus

butcher láni·us -ī *m* (*see Chapter VIII*)

butcher shop lanién·a -ae *f*

carpenter fá·ber -brī *m* tignárius

chisel *s* scalpr·um -ī *n*

chisel *tr* scalprō caed·ō -ere cecídī caesus

drill *s* tēbr·a -ae *f*

drill *tr* terebrāre

hammer mállē·us -ī *m*

nail *s* clāv·us -ī *m*

nail *tr* (**to**) clāvīs cōnfīg·ō -ere cōnfīxī cōnfīxus (+ *dat*); **to nail (boards) together** (tábulās) inter sē clāvīs cōnfīgere

plane *s* runcín·a -ae *f*

plane *tr* runcināre

pliers for·ceps -cipis *mf*

ruler régul·a -ae *f*

saw *s* serr·a -ae *f*

saw *tr* serrā sec·ō -áre -uī -tus **||** *intr* serram dūc·ō -ere dūxī ductus

square nōrm·a -ae *f*

cashier arcári·us -ī *m*, arcári·a -ae *f*

chauffeur autoraedári·us -ī *m*

chef archimagír·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

chemist chēmiae perít·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

chemical *adj* chēmic·us -a -um

chemical *s* chēmic·um -ī *n*

chemistry chēmi·a -ae *f*

cook *s* coqu·us -ī *m*, coqu·a -ae *f*

bake tórr·eō -ére -uī tostus; in furnō cóquere

boil *tr* fervéfác·iō -ere fervéfēcī fervéfáctus **||** *intr* fērv·eō -ére fērbuī

boiled ēlīx·us -a -um

cook *tr* cóqu·ō -ere coxī coctus **||** *intr* (*of s.th. cooked in liquid*) īnfervésc·ō -ere

fry frīg·ō -ere frīxī frīctus

kitchen culín·a -ae *f*

oven furn·us -ī *m*

stove foc·us -ī *m*

craftsman fa·ber -brī *m*

craft artífici·um -ī *n*

craftsmanship artífici·um -ī *n*

doctor medic·us -ī *m*, medic·a -ae *f*

cure *tr* sanāre

cure *s* remédi·um -ī *n*

doctor's office medicín·a -ae *f*

heal sanāre

medicine medicín·a -ae *f*

pill pílu·l·a -ae *f*

treat cūrāre

treatment cūr·a -ae *f*

druggist medicāmentāri·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

drug medicām·en -inis *n*

drugstore medicāmentāri·a -ae *f*

dry cleaner full·ō -ōnis *m*

dry cleaner's (*establishment*)

fullōnic·a -ae *f*

electrician ēléctridis ártif·ex -icis *m*

electricity ēléctr·is -idis *f*

electric(al) ēléctric·us -a -um

wire fīl·um -ī *n*

engineer machināt·or -ōris *m* (·rīx -rīcis *f*)

engineering machinālis sciēnti·a -ae *f*

farmer agrícol·a -ae *mf*

barley hórde·um -ī *n*

barn hórre·um -ī *n*

barnyard cóh·ors -órtis *f*

cattle pec·us -oris *n*

chicken pull·us -ī *m* gallināceus, gallín·a -ae *f*

corn maízī·um -ī *n*

corn cob maízīi spīc·a -ae *f*

cow vacc·a -ae *f*

crops (*standing grain*) seg·es -etis *f*;
(*field produce*) frūg·ēs -um *fpl*

farm fund·us -ī *m*

farm house vill·a -ae *f* rústica

feed pásc·ō -ere pāvī pāstus

field a·ger -grī *m*; (*untilled*) camp·us -ī *m*

garden hort·us -ī *m* rústicus

grain frūmént·um -ī *n*

harvest *s* mess·is -is *f* (*m*)

harvest *tr* démetō -ere dēméssuī dēméssus

hay fēn·um -ī *n*; **to make hay** fēnum sec·ō -āre -uī -tus

hayloft fēnīl·ia -ium *npl*

herd grex, gregis *m*

horse equ·us -ī *m*

meadow prāt·um -ī *n*

milk lac, lactis *n*

milk *tr* múl·geō -gēre -sī -sus or -ctus

oats avēn·a -ae *f*

orchard pōmári·um -ī *n*

pasture páscu·um -ī *n*

pig porc·us -ī *m*, porc·a -ae *f*

plant ser·ō -ere sēvī sātus; **to plant a field** agrum cōnsérere

plow *s* arátr·um -ī *n*

plow *tr* arāre

raise (*crops, animals*) ēducāre

reap met·ō -ere méssuī messus

reaper mess·or -ōris *m*; (*machine*) mestr·um -ī *n* ligātóriūm

sheep ov·is -is *f*

stable stábul·um -ī *n*; (*for horses*) equíl·e -is *n*; (*for cows*) bovíl·e -is *n*; (*for sheep*) ovíl·e -is *n*; (*for pigs*) súíl·e -is *n*

straw strámént·um -ī *n*

till col·ō -ere -uī cultus

wheat trític·um -ī *n*

- fireman** vig·il·ilis *m*, sīphōnāri·us -ī *m*
fire incēndi·um -ī *n*; **to put out a fire** incēndium exstingu·ō -ere exstīnxī exstīnctus
fire engine sīph·ō -ōnis *m*
- fisherman** piscāt·or -ōris *m* (*see Chapter V*)
- fortuneteller** haríol·us -ī *m*, haríol·a -ae *f*
tell fortunes haríol·or -ārī -átus sum
- grocer** macellāri·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
grocery store macéll·um -ī *n*
groceries obsóni·um -ī *n*
- guard** cust·ōs -ōdis *m*
- hairdresser** ornātr·īx -ícis *f*, tōnstr·īx -ícis *f* (*see barber*)
bangs ánti·ae -árum *fpl*
blond *adj* flāv·us -a -um
brunette fusc·us -a -um
color colōrāre, ting·ō -ere tīnxī tīnctus
comb *s* pect·en -inis *m*
comb *tr* pec·tō -tere -xī -xus; **to comb back** repéctere; **to comb forward** prōpéctere; **to comb out** expéctere
curl *s* (*natural*) cirr·us -ī *m*; cincīnn·us -ī *m*
curl *tr* crīspāre
curler calamístr·um -ī *n*
curly crīsp·us -a -um
cut tónd·eō -ére totóndī tōnsus
do (*the hair*) cōm·ō -ere cōmpsī cōmptus
dye *tr* ting·ō -ere tīnxī tīnctus
hair com·a -ae *f*, capíll·us -ī *m*, or capíll·ī -órum *mpl*
hairdo cōmpt·us -ūs *m*
hair style tōns·us -ūs *m*
- layer the hair** comam in gradūs frang·ō -ere frēgī frāctus
mirror spécul·um -ī *n*
part *s* discrīm·en -inis *n*
part *tr* (*the hair*) discrīmināre
redhead rútil·a -ae *f*
style mod·us -ī *m*
wavy crīsp·us -a -um
- innkeeper** caup·ō -ónis *m*
inn caupón·a -ae *f*
- journalist** diurnāri·us -ī *m*, (·a -ae *f*)
journalism diurnāria ar·s -tis *f*
- judge** iūd·ex -icis *mf*
- laborer** operári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
- lawyer** causídic·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*); (*for the defense*) advocāt·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
- librarian** bibliothēcāri·us *m*, (·a -ae *f*)
library bibliothēc·a -ae *f*
- machinist** māchināt·or -ōris *m*
- magician** mag·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
do tricks praestīgi·or -ārī
magic mágica ar·s -tis *f*; **practice magic** mágicās artēs exerc·eō -ére -uī -itus
- maid** ancíll·a -ae *f*, fámul·a -ae *f*
- mailman** tabellāri·us -ī *m*
deliver red·dō -dere -didī -ditus
forward déferō dēfērre dētulī dēlátus
mail epístul·ae -árum *fpl*, rēs *fpl* cursuálēs
mail *tr* dō dare dedī datus
mailbox caps·a -ae *f* tabellāria
packet, package fascícul·us -ī *m*
postage vectúr·a -ae *f* litterárum
stack of mail multiúgae lītterrae
stamp pittáci·um -ī *n* cursuále

mason fa·ber -brī *m* lapidārius (*see*
bricklayer)

concrete concrēt·um -ī *n*

cement cal·x -cis *f*

level libr·a -ae *f*

mortar harēnāt·um -ī *n*

plummet perpendicul·um -ī *n*

square norm·a -ae *f*

trowel trull·a -ae *f*

mechanic mechānicus ópif·ex -ícis *m*

repair refic·iō -ere refēcī refēctus

merchant mercāt·or -ōris *m*; (*in a*
market) macellāri·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

merchandise merc·ēs -ium *fpl*

metal worker metallōrum fab·er -rī *m*

midwife obstétr·ix -ícis *f*

miner metallāri·us -ī *m*

mine *s* fodín·a -ae *f*, metáll·um -ī *n*;

coal mine fodín·a -ae *f* carbōnāria;

gold mine aurifodín·a -ae *f*; **silver**

mine argentifodín·a -ae *f*; **iron mine**

ferrifodín·a -ae *f*; **salt mine** fodín·a

-ae *f* salināria; **to operate a mine**

metállum exérc·eō -ēre -uī -itus

mine *tr* effōd·iō -ere effōdī effōssus

mine shaft fodínae púte·us -ī *n*

minister minís·ter -trī *m* (·tra -trae *f*),

pāst·or -ōris *mf*

musician músic·us -ī *m*, músic·a -ae *f*

band symphóni·a -ae *f*

concert concént·us -ūs *m*

drum týmpan·um -ī *n*; **to play the**

drum týmpanum pulsāre

flute tíbi·a -ae *f*

guitar cíthar·a -ae *f* Hispānica

lyre lyr·a -ae *f*

musical instrument órgan·um -ī *n*

orchestra symphóni·a -ae *f*

organ órgan·um -ī *n*

piano clāvicórdi·um -ī *n*

play (*an instrument*) cantāre (+ *abl*),
can·ō -ere cécinī cantus (+ *abl*)

trumpet tub·a -ae *f*

violin fidicul·a -ae *f*

nurse aegrōrum mínistr·a -ae *f*,
nosócom·a -ae *f*; (*male*) aegrōrum
mínist·er -rī *m*, nosócom·us -ī *m*

painter pīct·or -ōris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*)

brush pēnicīll·us -ī *m*

canvas téxtil·e -is *n*

paint *s* pigmēt·um -ī *n*

paint *tr & intr* ping·ō -ere pīnxī
pīctus

painting (*the art; picture*) pīctūr·a
-ae *f*; (*painting on a board*) tábul·a
-ae *f* (pīcta)

pharmacist (*see druggist*)

photographer phōtograph·us -ī *m*,
phōtograph·a -ae *f*

photo shop officín·a -ae *f*
phōtographica

pilot gubernāt·or -ōris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*)
(*see pilot*, Chapter XXIV)

plasterer tēct·or -ōris *m*

plaster *s* tēctóri·um -ī *n*

plaster *tr* (*a wall*) tēctórium (parietī)
indúc·ō -ere indūxī indūctus

playwright fābulārum scrīpt·or -ōris *m*
(·rīx -rícis *f*)

plumber ártif·ex -icis *m* plumbārius

pipe fīstul·a -ae *f*

poet poēt·a -ae *m*

poem poēm·a -atis *n*; **to write a**
poem poéma fác·iō -ere fēcī factus

poetess poétrī·a -ae *f*

poetry poés·is -is *f*

police officer vigil, vígilis *mf*

- porter** báiuł·us -ī *m*
- potter** fíguł·us -ī *m*
- potter's clay** crēt·a -ae *f* figlína
- potter's wheel** rot·a -ae *f* figuláris
- pottery** fictíl·ia -ium *npl*
- priest** sacérd·ōs -ōtis *mf*
- priesthood** sacerdoti·um -ī *n*
- producer** chorág·us -ī *m*
- prostitute** méretr·īx -ícis *f*, prōstitút·a -ae *f*; **to be a prostitute** prōst·ō -áre prōstiti
- psychiatrist** psýchiát·er -rī *m* (·ria -riae *f*)
- psychologist** psýchólog·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
- publisher** édit·or -ōris *m*, éditr·īx -ícis *f*
- retailer** propól·a -ae *m*
- sailor** naut·a -ae *m*, naútri·a -ae *f*
- saleslady** (*in a shop*) tabernári·a -ae *f*
- salesman** (*in a shop*) tabernári·us -ī *m*
- traveling salesman** ínstit·or -ōris *m*
- sculptor** sculpt·or -ōris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*)
- bust** imág·ō -inis *f*
- carve** sculp·ō -ere -sī -tus
- chisel** scalpr·um -ī *n*
- sculpture** sculptúr·a -ae *f*
- statue** státu·a -ae *f*, sign·um -ī *n*
- seamstress** (*making clothes*) vestífic·a -ae *f*; (*altering clothes*) sarcinátr·īx -ícis *f*
- embroider** acū ping·ō -ere pīnxī pīctus
- mend** sárc·iō -íre sarsī sartus
- needle** ac·ū -ūs *f*
- sew** su·ō -ere -ī sūtus
- secretary** āmanuéns·is -is *mf*; ā manū *mf*
- sheriff** geraéf·a -ae *m*
- shipbuilder** naupég·us -ī *m*
- shipyard** nāvál·ia -ium *npl*
- shoemaker** sūt·or -ōris *m*
- shoe** cálce·us -ī *m*
- shoemaker's shop** sūtrín·a -ae *f*
- singer** cantát·or -ōris *m*, cantátr·īx -ícis *f*
- sing** canō canere cécini cantus, cantáre
- song** cant·us -ūs *m*, cántic·um -ī *n*
- soldier** mīl·es -itis *mf* (*see chapter on War and Peace*)
- surgeon** chírúrg·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
- operate on** sec·ō -áre -uī -tus
- operation** sécti·ō -ōnis *f*
- surgery** chírúrgi·a -ae *f*
- tailor** (*making clothes*) vestífic·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*); (*altering clothes*) sarcinát·or -ōris *m* (*see seamstress*)
- tailor shop** officín·a -ae *f* vestium
- tax collector** exáct·or -ōris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*), públicán·us -ī *m*
- collect taxes** vectígália éxig·ō -ere exégī exáctus
- tax** vectíg·al -ális *n*
- teacher** magís·ter -trī *m*, magístr·a -ae *f* (*see the chapter on school*)
- travel agent** itínerum prōcūrát·or -ōris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*)
- typist** dactylógraph·us -ī *m*, (·a -ae *f*)
- type** dactylográphiō scrīb·ō -ere scrīpsī scrīptus
- typewriter** dactylográphi·um -ī *n*, machínul·a -ae *f* scrīptória
- typing** dactylográphica ar·s -tis *f*
- undertaker** pollínc·or -ōris *m*
- coffin** cápul·us -ī *m*
- corpse** cadáv·er -eris *n*

funeral fūn·us -eris *n*; **to attend a funeral** in fūnus vén·iō (*of several* convén·iō) -íre vĕnī

waiter miníst·er -rī *m*

serve (*food*) appŏn·ō -ere appŏsū appŏsitus

wait on ministrāre (+ *dat*)

waitress minístr·a -ae *f*

wholesaler magnári·us -ī *m*

wholesale *adj* magnári·us -a -um

wine merchant vīnári·us -ī *m*,
oenopól·ēs -ae *m*

barrel cūp·a -ae *f*

wine vīn·um -ī *n*

wine shop oenopŏli·um -ī *n*

wrestler luctát·or -ŏris *m*

wrestle luct·or -áři -átus sum

wrestling, wrestling match luctáti·ō -ŏnis *f*

writer scrīpt·or -ŏris *m*, scrīptr·ix -ícis *f*)

Chapter XIX: The City and Public Buildings

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I **Discussing the merits of city life.**

- Anna** Dīc mihi, Guáltere, cūr praefers in urbe habitāre quam rūrī. *Anna: Tell me, Walter, why do you prefer living in the city rather than in the country?*
- Guálterus** Quia commódus est in urbe habitāre. *Walter: Because it is more convenient to live in the city.*
- Anna** Quid ita? *How so?*
- Guálterus** Pédibus īre possum ad scholam et ad váriās tabérnās. *I can go on foot to school and to the different shops.*
- Anna** Vísitāsne umquam bibliothécam públicam an pinacothécam an mūséum? *Do you ever visit the public library or art gallery or museum?*
- Guálterus** Rārō. Sed saepe eō ad stádium aut amphitheátrum aut thermās aut gymnásium. *Rarely. But I often go to the stadium or the amphitheater or the baths or the gymnasium.*
- Anna** Nōnne commeátus vehiculórum et strépitus viárum turbaeque tibi moléstiae sunt? *Aren't the traffic and the noise of the streets and the crowds bothersome to you?*
- Guálterus** Estō! Intérdum istae rēs quidem moléstae sunt, sed ubi est vīta perfécta? *Granted! At times those things are bothersome all right, but where is life perfect?*

LEVEL II **Jennifer wants to go to town.**

Iénnifer	Mártine, potésne mē addūcere in óppidum?	Jennifer: <i>Martin, can you take me into town?</i>
Mártínus	Certē. Quid vīs fácere in óppidō?	Martin: <i>Sure. What do you want to do in town?</i>
Iénnifer	Multa. Primum volō ire in tabérnam chartárium.	<i>Lots. First, I want to go to the stationery store.</i>
Mártínus	Quid ibi émere vīs?	<i>What do you want to buy there?</i>
Iénnifer	Chartam scriptóriam et librum coquinatórium.	<i>Writing paper and a cookbook.</i>
Mártínus	At nōn vénditant librōs coquinatóriōs in tabérnā chartáriā sed in libráriā, ut putā, apud Sóssiōs Frātrēs.	<i>But they don't sell cookbooks in the stationery store but in a bookstore, for example at the Sossii Brothers.</i>
Iénnifer	Ubi terrárum est illa librária?	<i>Where in the world is that bookstore?</i>
Mártínus	Est in locō quod Argilétum appellátur.	<i>It's in a place called the Argiletum.</i>
Iénnifer	Ubi ítaque est Argilétum?	<i>Where then is the Argiletum?</i>
Mártínus	Em, Argilétum est in empóriō ínclutō Rōmae. Est exadvérsum macéllum.	<i>Well, the Argiletum is in Rome's famous business district. It's across the street from [lit: opposite] the market.</i>
Iénnifer	Eu! Sī tibi ótium sit, velim étiam in macéllum ire, nam obsónia mihi comparánda sunt.	<i>Great! If you have the time, I would also like to go to the market, since I have to get some groceries.</i>
Mártínus	Ágedum, cito eámus. Mihi nōn est multum tempus subsicívum.	<i>Come on, let's go quickly. I don't have a lot of spare time.</i>

LEVEL III **Asking for directions in the city.**

Peregrínus	Ignósce mihi, bone vir. Mihi vídeor deérrāvísse. Quō mē vertam nésciō.	Foreigner: <i>Pardon me, sir. I seem to have lost my way. I don't know which way to turn.</i>
Vigil	Quō vīs ire? Viam tibi libénter osténdam.	Policeman: <i>Where do you want to go? I'll gladly show you the way.</i>

Peregrínus	Ubi est stádium, quaesō?	<i>Where is the stadium, please?</i>
Vigil	Rēctā perge per trēs vīcōs ūsque ad theātrum; dein tē verte dextrōrsum et prōcēde ūsque ad secūndum cōmpitum. Stádium erit ab laevā.	<i>Go straight ahead for three blocks as far as the theater; then turn right and go on to the second intersection. The stadium will be on your left.</i>
Peregrínus	Et ubi est gymnásium?	<i>And where is the gymnasium?</i>
Vigil	Haud procul est ā stádiō. Ubi stádium praeterferis, rēctā perge per duōs vīcōs; ibi stat templum in álterō ángulō et thermae in álterō ángulō. Tē verte sinistrōrsum et ámbulā per trēs vīcōs. Cōspiciēs dein gymnásium prope moénia urbis.	<i>It isn't far from the stadium. When you have passed the stadium, go straight ahead for two blocks; there a temple stands on the one corner and the baths on the other corner. Turn left and go three blocks. You will then see the gymnasium near the city walls.</i>
Peregrínus	Estne popína in eā vicinīā?	<i>Is there a restaurant in the vicinity?</i>
Vigil	Est popína in omnī ferē ángulō.	<i>There is a restaurant on practically every corner.</i>
Peregrínus	Grátias multās!	<i>Thanks a lot.</i>
Vigil	Bene ámbulā!	<i>Have a good trip!</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

alley angipórt·um -ī *n*

Argiletum Argīlēt·um -ī *n* (*a district of Rome extending from the base of the Quirinal to the Capitoline and chiefly inhabited by booksellers and mechanics*)

amphitheater amphitheātr·um -ī *n*

apartment building ínsul·a -ae *f*

aqueduct aquaedúct·us -ūs *m*

art gallery pinacothéc·a -ae *f*

bakery pīstrín·a -ae *f*

bank argentári·a -ae *f*

barbershop tōnstrín·a -ae *f*

bath bálne·um -ī *n*; (*large bathing establishment*) therm·ae -árum *fpl*

blind alley fúndul·a -ae *f*

block vīc·us -ī *m*

bookstore librári·a -ae *f*

business district empóri·um -ī *n*

butcher shop lanién·a -ae *f*

church ecclési·a -ae *f*

citadel ar·x -cis *f*

city urb·s -is *f*

city hall cúri·a -ae *f*

clothing store tabérn·a -ae *f* vestiária

- courthouse** basílic·a -ae *f*
dead-end street fúndul·a -ae *f*
department store pantopóli·um -ī *n*
doctor's office medicín·a -ae *f*
drugstore medicāmentári·a -ae *f*
dry cleaner's fullónic·a -ae *f*
fire station státi·ō -ónis *f* vigilum
fish market for·um -ī *n* piscárium
flower shop tabérn·a -ae *f* flōrális
gas station státi·ō -ónis *f* benzínária
grocery store macéll·um -ī *n*
gymnasium gymnási·um -ī *n*
hardware store tabérn·a -ae *f* ferrária
high school schol·a -ae *f* supérior
hospital valētudinári·um -ī *n*
hotel hospíti·um -ī *n*, dēversóri·um -ī *n*
intersection cómpit·um -ī *n*,
quadrívi·um -ī *n*
jewelry store gemmári·a -ae *f*
laundry fullónic·a -ae *f*
library bibliothéc·a -ae *f*
bookshelf plúte·us -ī *m*
mall for·um -ī *n* subtēguláneum
museum mūsé·um -ī *n*
park hort·ī -órum *mpl*
pastry shop cuppedinári·a -ae *f*
perfume store tabérn·a -ae *f*
unguentária
police station státi·ō -ónis *f* vigilum
portico pórtic·us -ūs *f*
post office diribitóri·um -ī *n* cursuále
prison carc·er -eris *m*
race track hippódrom·us -ī *m*
restaurant caupón·a -ae *f*
saloon tabérn·a -ae *f* pōtória
school lūd·us -ī *m*, schol·a -ae *f*
savings bank argentári·a -ae *f* pecúliis
asservándis
senate building cúri·a -ae *f*
shoemaker sūt·or -óris *m*
shoe store tabérn·a -ae *f* calceāmentária
shoemaker's sūtrín·a -ae *f*
shop tabérn·a -ae *f*; (*workshop*)
officín·a -ae *f*
side street dēverticul·um -ī *n*
sidewalk crepíd·ō -inis *f*
square áre·a -ae *f*
stadium stádi·um -ī *n*
stationery store tabérn·a -ae *f* chartária
street vi·a -ae *f*, platé·a -ae *f*; **across the
street from** exadvérsum (+ *acc*)
suburbs continént·ia -ium *npl*
synagogue synagóg·a -ae *f*
temple templ·um -ī *n*, aed·ēs -is *f*
theater theátr·um -ī *n*
tower turr·is -is *f*
town óppid·um -ī *n*
traffic commeát·us -ūs *m* vehiculórum
wall mūr·us -ī *m*; **walls** moén·ia -ium
npl
warehouse apothéc·a -ae *f*
zoo vívári·um -ī *n*

Chapter XX: Government

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I

A father explains to his son his involvement in politics.

Filius	Pater, cūr vīs cōnsul fierī?	<i>Son: Father, why do you want to become a consul?</i>
Pater	Quia ego iam omnēs aliōs honōrēs gessi.	<i>Father: Because I have already held all the other offices.</i>
Filius	Quōs honōrēs gessistī?	<i>What offices have you held?</i>
Pater	Prīmō quaestor eram, deīnde aedīlis, deīnde praetor. Nunc cōsulātum petō.	<i>First I was quaestor, then aedile, then praetor. Now I'm running for the consulship.</i>
Filius	Suntne multī competītōrēs?	<i>Are there many opponents?</i>
Pater	Sunt vērō.	<i>There are indeed.</i>
Filius	Suntne eī omnēs patriciī dīvitēs?	<i>Are they all rich patricians?</i>
Pater	Omnēs sunt virī magnae grātiaē et dīvitiārum.	<i>All are men of great influence and wealth.</i>
Filius	Potestne pauper creārī cōnsul?	<i>Can a poor man be elected consul?</i>
Pater	Fieri potest sed difficīllimum est.	<i>It is possible, but it is very difficult.</i>
Filius	Ubi comītia habēbūntur?	<i>Where will the elections be held?</i>
Pater	In Campō Mārtiō, ut solent.	<i>In the Campus Martius as usual.</i>
Filius	Quandō comītia habēbūntur?	<i>When will the elections be held?</i>
Pater	Hōdiē post merīdiem.	<i>This afternoon.</i>
Filius	Tibi fēlīciter, pater!	<i>Good luck to you, Father.</i>
Pater	Grātiās, mī fili.	<i>Thank you, son.</i>

LEVEL II A senator explains how government works.		
Senátor	Dā mihi togam praetēxtam et mülleōs.	<i>Senator: Give me my purple-bordered toga and senatorial shoes.</i>
Uxor	Quō abīs iterum?	<i>Wife: Where are you off to again?</i>
Senátor	Num ignórās mē hódīē prō rōstrīs orātiōnem habitūrum esse?	<i>Don't you know that I am going to give a speech today from the rostrum?</i>
Uxor	Nōnne senátus hódīē convéniet?	<i>Isn't the senate meeting today?</i>
Senátor	Étiam. Legátī ē Graeciā dē vectīgálibus senátum adloquéntur.	<i>Yes. Ambassadors from Greece will address the senate about the taxes.</i>
Uxor	Querentúrne dē vectīgálibus an dē exáctóribus?	<i>Are they going to complain about the taxes or the tax collectors?</i>
Senátor	Dē utrísque. Ut scīs, Rōma novum vectígal istīs Graéculīs impósuit.	<i>About both. As you know, Rome imposed a new tax on those poor Greeks.</i>
Uxor	Quid praeses provínciae Achaéae dē novō vectīgáli dicit?	<i>What does the governor of the province of Achaëa say about the new tax?</i>
Senátor	Praeses dicit nōn solum vectígal sed étiam exáctóres esse ádmodum iníquoūs.	<i>The governor says that not only the tax but also the tax collectors are very unfair.</i>
Uxor	Cūr rēs públicā vectīgália ex provínciis nostrīs cōstánter éxigit?	<i>Why does the government constantly collect taxes from our provinces?</i>
Senátor	Est simplex. Rōma mercēdem tribuit exáctóribus et conductóribus et ratiócinātóribus et innúmeris contubernálibus scríbísque.	<i>It is simple. Rome pays a salary to tax collectors, their employers, accountants, and innumerable staff members and clerks.</i>
Uxor	At sī vectīgália nōn impōneréntur et exigeréntur, nōn omnínō opus esset hīsce ómnibus mercēdem tribúere.	<i>But if taxes were not imposed and collected, there would be no need at all to pay salaries to all these people.</i>
Senátor	Maniféstō tū rem públicā nōn intéllegis!	<i>Obviously you do not understand politics!</i>

LEVEL III **How the senate conducts business.**

Novus Homō	Nōne senātus hōdiē hābitus est?	<i>Freshman Senator: A senate session was held today, wasn't it?</i>
Cōsul	Hābitus est, sed nihil in senātū cōnféctum est.	<i>Consul: It was, but nothing was accomplished in the senate.</i>
N. Homō	Quidnī? Dē quō disceptātum est?	<i>Why not? What was the debate about?</i>
Cōsul	Crassus réttulit dē impériō Iúlii Caésaris, quī bellum Gallīs inférre vult.	<i>Crassus made a motion about the military command of Julius Caesar, who wants to go to war with the Gauls.</i>
N. Homō	Quíspiam in Crassī senténtiam dicébat?	<i>Did anyone second Crassus' motion?</i>
Cōsul	Pompéius vidébátur assentíri Crassō, sed omnēs ferē optimátēs senténtiae Crassī obsistébant.	<i>Pompey seemed to go along with Crassus, but almost all the conservatives objected to Crassus' motion.</i>
N. Homō	Quid dixérunt Caesariáni?	<i>What did the members of Caesar's party say?</i>
Cōsul	Cúriō, tribúnus plēbis, Caésaris causam magnō cum stúdiō ēgit.	<i>Curio, the tribune of the people, pleaded Caesar's cause with great enthusiasm.</i>
N. Homō	Et quid dē tē?	<i>And what about you?</i>
Cōsul	Ego brévitē senténtiam dixī, sed nōluī própalam assentíri Crassō.	<i>I expressed my opinion briefly, but I did not want to agree with Crassus openly.</i>
N. Homō	Num discéssiō facta est in Crassī senténtiam?	<i>Was a vote taken on Crassus' motion?</i>
Cōsul	Nōn. Catō, homō équidem honéstus sed furiósus, senténtiae intercédere cōnátus est.	<i>No. Cato, a really respectable but mad man, tried to veto the motion.</i>
N. Homō	Praevalébátne Catō? Senátus cōsúltum factum est?	<i>Did Cato win out? Was the senate decree passed?</i>
Cōsul	Nōn factum est; senténtia tamen est perscrípta. Subínde, mē referénte, senātus dīmíssus est.	<i>It did not pass; however, the motion was put on record. After that, on my motion, the senate was dismissed.</i>

N. Homō	Quis in Crassī sententiā īvit?	<i>Who supported Crassus' proposal?</i>
Cōsul	Cūriō, tribūnus plēbis, et paucī amīcī Crassī.	<i>Curio, the tribune of the people, and only a few friends of Crassus.</i>
N. Homō	Aestimāsne Caesarem āliquid cōsectūrum esse?	<i>Do you think that Caesar will get anywhere?</i>
Cōsul	Nullō modō. Hōminēs mox eius oblīviscētur. Numquam exercitū in Gālliā imperābit.	<i>No way. People will soon forget about him. He will never command the army in Gaul.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

according to the law, as the law prescribes secūndum lēgem	city urb·s -is <i>f</i> , cīvit·ās -ātis <i>f</i>
administration administrāti·ō -ōnis <i>f</i>	citizen cīv·is -is <i>mf</i> ; private citizen (who holds no political office) privāt·us -ī <i>m</i> (·a -ae <i>f</i>)
aedile aedīl·is -is <i>m</i>	city council decuriōn·ēs -um <i>mpl</i>
aedileship aedīlit·ās -ātis <i>f</i>	council member decūri·ō -ōnis <i>mf</i>
aristocracy nobīlit·ās -ātis <i>f</i> , optimāt·ēs -ium <i>mpl</i>	citizenship cīvit·ās -ātis <i>f</i>
assembly concīli·um -ī <i>n</i>	civil cīvīl·is -is -e; civil rights iū·s -ris <i>n</i> cīvīle; loss (taking away) of civil rights dēminūti·ō -ōnis <i>f</i> cāpitis; to deprive s.o. of civil rights cāpite alicūius dēmīnu·ō -ere -ī
ballot tabēll·a -ae <i>f</i>	civilian <i>adj</i> togātus -a -um, privāt·us -a -um
ballot box suffragiōrum cist·a -ae <i>f</i>	civilian <i>s</i> togāt·us -ī <i>m</i> ; (opposite of soldier) privāt·us -ī <i>m</i>
bill rogāti·ō -ōnis <i>f</i>	command (a legion, army) praesīd·eō -ēre praesēdī (+ <i>dat</i>), imperāre (+ <i>dat</i>)
bribery (in politics) āmbit·us -ūs <i>m</i>	committee concīli·um -ī <i>n</i>
bring to order in ōrdinem cōg·ō -ere coēgī coāctus	community cīvit·ās -ātis <i>f</i>
bureau ministēri·um -ī <i>n</i>	congress congrēss·us -ūs <i>m</i>
bureaucracy graphēocrāti·a -ae <i>f</i>	conservative <i>adj</i> cōservātv·us -a -um
bureaucrat graphēocrat·es -ae <i>mf</i>	conservative <i>s</i> cōservātv·us -ī <i>m</i> (·a -ae <i>f</i>); conservatives (in ancient Rome) optimāt·ēs -ium <i>mpl</i>
campaign petīti·ō -ōnis <i>f</i> ; illegal campaign practices āmbit·us -ūs <i>m</i>	
campaign <i>intr</i> āmb·iō -īre -īvī or -īi -itum	
candidate candidāt·us -ī <i>m</i> (·a -ae <i>f</i>)	
cast a vote suffrāgium ferō ferre tulī lātus	
censor cēns·or -ōris <i>m</i>	

constitution cōstitūt·a -ōrum *npl*

consul cōsul -is *m*

consulship cōsulāt·us -ūs *m*

debate *s* disceptāti·ō -ōnis *f*

debate *tr* disceptāre (dē + *abl*)

decide (to, not to) (*of the senate, also of supreme magistrates*) cēns·eō -ēre -uī (ut or ne + *subj*)

decree of the senate senātūs cōnsúlt·um -ī *n*; **to pass a decree of the senate** senātūs cōnsúltum fác·iō -ere fēcī factus

defeat repúls·a -ae *f*; **defeat at the polls** comítíūs repúlsa; **defeat in running for the consulship** repúlsa cōsulātūs; **to suffer a defeat** repúlsam ferō ferre tulī lātus

democracy dēmocrāti·a -ae *f*

democrat dēmocrátic·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

democratic dēmocrátic·us -a -um

dictator dictāt·or -ōris *m*

dismiss (*the senate*) dīmítt·ō -ere dīmísī dīmíssus

edict ēdíct·um -ī *n*

elect creāre; (*Roman senators*) cooptāre

elections comítí·a -ōrum *npl*; **to hold elections** comítia háb·eō -ēre -uī -itus

emperor imperát·or -ōris *m*; (*title chosen by Augustus*) prīnc·eps -ipis *m*

faction fácti·ō -ōnis *f*

fellow citizen cīv·is -is *mf* suus (*a*)

get somewhere áliquid cōsequ·or -ī cōnsecútus sum

govern (*a province*) praesíd·eō -ēre praesēdī (+ *acc* or *dat*); **to govern the country** rem públicam gubernāre

government rēs *f* públicā (*gen*: reī públicae) (*also written as one word*)

governor praes·es -idis *mf*, gubernát·or -ōris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*); (*of a minor province*) prōcūrāt·or -ōris *m*

graft ámbit·us -ūs *m*

head of state rēct·or -ōris *m* cīvítátis

hold (*an office*) ger·ō -ere gessī gestus

imperial imperiál·is -is -e

law lēx, lēgis *f*; (*divine law*) fas *n* (*indecl*); **in accordance with the law** lége

leave (*office*) áb·eō -íre -iī (+ *abl*)

legally lēgítimē

legislator lēgislát·or -ōris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*) (*in Roman government, a proposer of a bill*)

lower class ōrd·ō -inis *m* inférior

magistracy magistrát·us -ūs *m*

magistrate magistrát·us -ūs *m*

mayor praeféct·us -ī *m* urbī; mái·or -ōris *mf*

motion senténti·a -ae *f*; **on my motion** mē referénte; **to approve a motion** senténtiam comprobāre; **to make a motion regarding** réferō référre réttulī relátus dē (+ *abl*); **to oppose a motion** senténtiae (*dat*) obsíst·ō -ere óbstītī

middle class ōrd·ō -inis *m* médius; (*in Rome*) équit·ēs -um *mpl*

municipality mūnicípi·um -ī *n*

neutral nullífus partis (*esse*)

office hon·or -ōris *m*, magistrát·us -ūs *m*; **to gain an office** magistrátum (*or* honórem) ádsequ·or -ī adsecútus sum

opponent adversári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*); (*for office*) competīt·or -ōris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*)

party par·s -tis *f*; **to join a party** partī sē adiúng·ō -gere -xī

pass (a law) (rogátíōnem *or* lēgem) pérferō pérferre pértulī perlátus

patrician patrícī·us -a -um

plebeian plēbēī·us -a -um

plebs plēbs, plēbis *f*

political cīvīl·is -is -e; **for political**

reasons reī pūblicaē causā; **political affairs (or matters)** rēs, rērum *fpl* cīvīlēs

political career curs·us -ūs *m* honórum

politician vir, virī *m* cīvīlis, fēmina -ae *f* cīvīlis

politics rēs, reī *f* pūblica; rēs, reī *f* cīvīlis (*also plural*); **to enter politics** rem pūblicam ínēō ínīre ínīvī *or* ínīi; **to take part in politics** in rē pūblicā vers·or -āri -ātus *sum*

polling booth saept·um -ī *n*

polls saept·a -órum *npl*

praetor praet·or -óris *m*

praetorship praetúr·a -ae *f*

preside (over) praesíd·eō -ēre praesēdī (+ *dat*)

president praesíd·ēns -ēntis *m*

propose (a law) (lēgem) ferō ferre tulī lātus

province prōvīnci·a -ae *f*

quaestor quaest·or -óris *m*

quaestorship quaestúr·a -ae *f*

ratify a bill lēgem iúb·eō -ēre iussī iussus

recording secretary (in the Roman senate) librári·us -ī *m*

reject a bill lēgem (*or* rogātiónem) antíquáre

representative vīcári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

republicans repūblicán·ī -órum *mpl* (·ae -árum *fpl*); (*in ancient Rome*) optímát·ēs -ium *mpl*

retire in ótium sē réferō reférre réttulī

rule *tr* reg·ō -ere rēxī rēctus

run for (an office) pet·ō -ere petívī petítus; **to run for office** pétere

senate building cúri·a -ae *f*

senate senát·us -ūs *m*

senate session senát·us -ūs *m*; **to call (hold) a senate session** senátum vocáre (háb·eō -ēre -uī -itus)

senator senát·or -óris *mf*

senatorial senátóri·us -a -um

shake hands (when campaigning) manūs prēnsáre

shun publicity forum ac lūcem fūg·iō -ere fūgī fūgíturus

spirit of the law volúnt·ās -átis *f* lēgis

squeeze the flesh (when campaigning) prēnsáre

state (the state as a community) cívit·ās -átis *f*; (*of the U.S.*) cívitās foederáta

statesman vir, virī *m* cīvīlis

statute lēx, lēgis *f*

tariff portóri·um -ī *n*

tax vectíg·al -ális *n*; **to impose a tax on** vectígal impón·ō -ere impósuī impósitus (+ *dat*)

tax collector exáct·or -óris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*)

term of office spáti·um -ī *n* (témporis) potestátis

town óppid·um -ī *n*

tribune of the people tribún·us -ī *m* plēbis

tribunician power tribūnicía potést·ās -átis *f*

unanimously unā vōce

United States (of America) Ūnítī Statūs (Américaē) (*gen*: Ūnítórum Státuum) *mpl*; Cívítát·ēs -um *fpl* Foederátae Américaē

upper class ōrd·ō -inis *m* supérior

upset (*at the polls*) offēnsi·ō -ōnis *f*; **to suffer an upset** offēnsiōnem ferō ferre tulī lātus

veto *s* intercēssi·ō -ōnis *f*; **to interpose a veto** intercēd·ō -ere intercēssi

veto *tr* intercēd·ō -ere intercēssi (+ *dat*)

vice president vice praesid·ēns -ētis
mf

vote *s* suffrāgi·um -ī *n*; **a vote was taken on his motion** (*in the senate by moving to one side of the chamber*) discēssiō facta est in eius sentēntiam; **to call for a vote** (*in the senate*) discessiōnem fāc·iō -ere fēcī factus

vote *intr* suffrāgium ferō ferre tulī lātus; (*of a senator*) cēns·eō -ēre -uī; **to vote for** suffrāgārī (+ *dat*)

Chapter XXI: War and Peace

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I

Jenna finds that Dennis joined the army.

Ienna	Salvē, Dennis. Ex quō témpore fuísti ornátū militári?	Jenna: Hello, Dennis. Since when have you been in military uniform?
Dennis	Abhinc quíque ferē mēnsēs in milítiam inívi.	Dennis: I went into the service about five months ago.
Ienna	Quandō rudímēta militária cōnfēcísti?	When did you complete basic training?
Dennis	Abhinc duōs mēnsēs. Nōn iam tūrō rudis sum!	Two months ago. I am no longer a raw recruit!
Ienna	Quámdiū rudímēta militária dūrāvērunt?	How long did basic training last?
Dennis	Dūrāvērunt quáttuor mēnsēs. Nunc domī sum in commeátū.	It lasted four months. Now I am home on furlough.
Ienna	Quámdiū iam domī es?	How long have you been home?
Dennis	Commeátum trīgintā diérum impetrávi.	I got a thirty-day furlough.
Ienna	Quandō est commeátūs diēs?	When is your furlough up?
Dennis	Crās proféctō erit commeátūs diēs.	It'll be up tomorrow in fact.
Ienna	Redíbísne crās in castra?	Will you return to camp tomorrow?
Dennis	Rēctē dīcis. Bene valē, Ienna.	That's right. [lit: you speak correctly.] Good bye, Jenna.

LEVEL II

A grandson asks his grandfather about his military service.

Cólinus	Erásne, tata, in milítíā inter Bellum Secúndum Mundánum?	<i>Colin: Granddad, were you in the service during the Second World War?</i>
Avus	Ita, mī nepōs. Ego et amíci omnēs in milítíam ívimus postquam bellum in Európā exársit.	<i>Granddad: Yes, grandson. All my friends and I went into the service after war broke out in Europe.</i>
Cólinus	Erásne voluntárius an ēvocátus es?	<i>Were you a volunteer or were you called up?</i>
Avus	Ēvocátus sum. Dīlécetus habēbátur, et ego dīlécetum nōn subterfūgī.	<i>I was called up. They held a draft, and I did not dodge the draft.</i>
Cólinus	Meruístíne nauta an mīles?	<i>Did you serve as a sailor or a soldier?</i>
Avus	In exércitū méruī. Post rudímēta milítária, in Euróпам ēvéctus sum. Advérsus Germániam pugnāvī.	<i>I served in the army. After basic training, I was shipped out to Europe. I fought against Germany.</i>
Cólinus	Cūr advérsus Germánōs pugnāvísti?	<i>Why did you fight against the Germans?</i>
Avus	Quod Germánia foedus violáverat et cum finítimīs bellum iníverat.	<i>Because Germany had violated the treaty and had started a war with her neighbors.</i>
Cólinus	Cūr Germánia finítimīs bellum íntulit?	<i>Why did Germany go to war with her neighbors?</i>
Avus	Príncípēs enim Germániae tótam Euróпам superáre voluérunt.	<i>You see, the leaders of Germany wanted to conquer the whole of Europe.</i>
Cólinus	Quam diū in Európā milítāvísti?	<i>How long did you serve as a soldier in Europe?</i>
Avus	Triénnum milítíam explévi ántequam nostrī sociíque coēgérunt Germánōs in dēditióne veníre.	<i>I completed a three-year tour of duty before our men and our allies forced the Germans to surrender.</i>

Cólinus	Gaúdeō, mī tata, tē saluum et sānum domum rediisse.	<i>I am glad, granddad, that you returned home safe and sound.</i>
Avus	Ego fēlicíssimus eram. Nōn omnēs cēterī tam fēlicēs erant.	<i>I was very lucky. Not all the others were so lucky.</i>

LEVEL III **Discussing the merits of alliances.**

Studēns	Mihi vidētur pátria nostra semper in bellis extérnis implicári.	Student: <i>It seems to me that our country is always involved in foreign wars.</i>
Docēns	Ex foédere, pátria nostra amícis sociíisque in discrímine succúrrit.	Instructor: <i>According to the terms of the treaty, our country goes to the aid of its friends and allies in a crisis.</i>
Studēns	At América sē tam saepe bellis extérnis interpónit. Quī fit?	<i>But America so often interferes in foreign wars. How come?</i>
Docēns	América enim ubíque terrárum societátēs ad bellum dēfendéndum fēcit.	<i>You see, America formed defensive alliances all over the world.</i>
Studēns	Faciúntne adversárii nostrī societátēs ad bellum inferéndum?	<i>Do our opponents form offensive alliances?</i>
Docēns	Utráque pars, ut opínor, facit societátēs ad bellum dēfendéndum. Sed áltera pars álteri partī nōn fīdit. Inde armórum certámen fit.	<i>Each side, I suppose, forms defensive alliances. But one side does not trust the other, and that's why there's an arms race. [lit: hence an arms race comes about.]</i>
Studēns	Hīs condicióñibus, quemádmōdum pāx inter gentēs cōservári potest?	<i>Under these conditions, how can peace be maintained between nations?</i>
Docēns	Simplex est. Utráque pars tantum apparátum bellī cómparat ut áltera pars álteram partem oppugnáre nōn aúdeat.	<i>It is simple. Each side acquires such armaments of war that one side does not dare to attack the other.</i>

Studēns	At quid sī ūna cīvitās ab utrā parte bellum ultrō ínferat?	<i>But what if one country on either side should become an aggressor in war? [lit: should bring on war unprovoked]</i>
Docēns	Tum sóciī omnēs ab álterā parte dēbent bellum índicere illī cīvitátī.	<i>Then all the allies on the other side have to declare war on that country.</i>
Studēns	At quidnī bellum compónunt?	<i>But why not terminate war by diplomacy?</i>
Docēns	Quod neutra pars vult imbecílla vidērī.	<i>Because neither side wants to seem weak.</i>
Studēns	Quae ígitur est solútiō?	<i>What then is the solution?</i>
Docēns	Suspiciō bonā fidē et mútuā observántiā substituēnda est.	<i>Suspicion must be replaced by mutual trust and respect.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

absent without leave: to be absent

without leave ad commēātūs diem nōn ad·sum -esse -fuī

active service: to be on active service

stīpēndia fác·iō -ere fēcī factus

agreement foed·us -eris *n*; according to the terms of the agreement

ex foédere

alliance foed·us -eris *n*, sociēt·ās -átis *f*;

to conclude an alliance with foedus íc·ō -ere -ī -tus cum (+ *abl*); **to form an alliance with** sociētátem faciō -ere fēcī factus cum (+ *abl*)

airforce cōpi·ae -ārum *fpl* aēriae

arm *tr* armáre

armaments apparát·us -ūs *m* bellī (rarely *pl* of apparátus)

armed armát·us -a -um; to be armed in armīs esse

arms: arm·a -órum *npl*; arms race armórum certám·en -inis *n*; by force of arms ví et armīs; to be under arms in armīs esse; to lay down

arms ab armīs discēd·ō -ere discéssī;

to take up arms arma cáp·iō -ere cēpī captus

army exercit·us -ūs *m*; to raise an

army exercitum comparāre

army buddy contubernāl·is -is *mf*

artillery tormént·a -órum *npl*

barracks mílitum contubérni·um -ī *n*

basic training rudímēta *npl* mílitária (gen rudímentórum *npl* mílitárium)

battle pugna -ae *f*, proéli·um -ī *n* (in a country: in (+ *abl*); at or near a town apud (+ *acc*), circā + *acc*); in

battle proéliō; naval battle off

Tenedos pugna nāvális ante

Tenedum; successful battle

proélium secúndum; to fight a battle

proélium fác·iō -ere fēcī factus

battalion coh·ors -órtis *f*

battalion commander praeféctus -ī *m* cohórtis

battlefield áci·ēs -éī *f*

besiege (blockade) a town oppidum
obsíd·ō -ere obsēdī obsessus

bomb *s* bomb·a -ae *f*; **atomic bomb**
bomba atómica; **nuclear bomb**
bomba nucleáris

bomb *tr* bombīs oppugnāre

bomber aeróplan·um -ī *n* bombíferum

call up the troops ēvocāre cōpiās

camp castr·a -ōrum *npl*

campaign expediti·ō -ōnis *f*;
stīpēdi·um -ī *n*

cavalry equitāt·us -ūs *m*

cease-fire indūti·ae -ārum *fpl*; **the
cease-fire is holding** indūtiaē dūrant;
to call for a cease-fire indūtiās
posc·ō -ere popōscī

cohort coh·ors -ortis *f*

colonel tribún·us -ī *m* mīlitum

combat proéli·um -ī *n*, pugna -ae *f*; **in
hand-to-hand combat** cōminus
(*adv*)

combatant proeliāt·or -ōris *m* (·rīx
-rīcis *f*)

command imperi·um -ī *n*; **to be in
command (of)** prae·sum -esse
-fuī (+ *dat*)

commander in chief imperāt·or -ōris
m; **to be the commander in chief**
impérii summam tén·eō -ēre tēnuī;
impérii summae prae·sum -esse -fuī

commence hostilities bellī inítium
fác·iō -ere fēcī factus

company centúri·a -ae *f*

company commander centúri·ō -ōnis *m*

concentrate all the troops in one place
cōg·ō -ere cōgī coactus omnēs
cōpiās in ūnum locum

conquer vinc·ō -ere vicī victus; **to
conquer a country** terrā pót·ior -īrī
potitus sum

corporal decúri·ō -ōnis *mf*

crack troops róbor·a -um *npl* peditum

critical: the situation is critical rēs est
in summō discrímine

defeat *s* clād·ēs -is *f*; **to suffer a defeat**
clādem accíp·iō -ere accēpī accēptus

defeat *tr* superāre, vinc·ō -ere vicī
victus

defensive and offensive alliance
societ·ās -ātis *f* ad bellum
dēfendendum atque inderendum facta

defensive and offensive weapons tēl·a
-ōrum *npl* ad tegendum et ad
nocendum

disarm s.o. áliquem armīs éxu·ō -ere -ī
-útus

discharge míssi·ō -ōnis *f*; **get an
honorable discharge** missiōnem
honéstam impetrāre; **get a
dishonorable discharge** missiōnem
ignōminiōsam accipere

dodge the draft mīlítiam subter·fúgiō
-fúgere -fúgī

draft diléct·us -ūs *m*; **to hold a draft**
diléctum háb·eō -ēre -uī -itus

draft-dodger quī mīlítiam subtérflugit

drag out a war bellum trah·ō -ere traxī
tractus

end fin·is -is *m*; **to put an end to a war**
bellī finem fác·iō -ere fēcī factus

enemy host·ēs -ium *mpl*

enlist nōmen (*of several: nōmina*) dō
dare dedī

exchange prisoners captívōs permūtāre
or commūtāre

**exempt: to be exempt from military
service** mīlítiae vacātiōnem háb·eō
-ēre -uī

exemption from military service
mīlítiae vacāti·ō -ōnis *f*

force: large force magnaē cōpiaē *fpl*;
small force exíguae cōpiaē

fort castéll·um -ī *n*

furlough commeát·us -ūs *m*; **end of the furlough** commeátūs di·ēs -ēī *m*; **to get a furlough** commeátum impetrāre

garrison praesídi·um -ī *n*

general dux, ducis *mf*

gun tormént·um -ī *n*

headquarters praetóri·um -ī *n*

helmet cass·is -idis *f*

hold out: the town held out for four months oppidum obsidiónem quáttuor mēnsēs sustinuit

home front: on the home front and on the front lines domī et milítiae (*or in milítia*)

hostage obs·es -idis *mf*

infantry peditát·us -ūs *m*

infantryman ped·es -itis *m*

international law iūs, iūris *n* géntium

invade bellum ínferō ínferre íntulī illátus (+ *dat*), cum exércitū ingréd·ior -ī ingréssus sum

leave of absence commeát·us -ūs *m*

legion légi·ō -ónis *f*

lieutenant locumtén·ēns -éntis *mf*

march iter fác·iō -ere fēcī factus

marines classíari·ī -órum *mpl*

military milítar·is -is -e; **military age** aet·ās -átis *f* milítaris; **military service** milíti·a -ae *f*; **the military** milíti·a -ae *f*; **to enter military service** milítiam in·eō -íre -ívī *or* -iī; **to perform military service** milítāre

naval nāvál·is -is -e

navy cōpi·ae -árum *fpl* nāválēs; **to have a powerful navy** nāvibus plúrimum posse

officer praeféct·us -ī *m*; **cavalry officer** praeféctus équitum

operations: to conduct military operations in the Gallic War rēs ger·ō -ere gessī Gállicō bellō

peace pāx, pācis *f*; **in peace and in war** domī et milítiae (*or in milítia*); **peace is concluded on condition that ...** pāx cónvenit in eam condiciónem ut ... ; **to break the peace** pācem frang·ō -ere frēgī frāctus; **to bring about peace** pācem conciliāre; **to have peace negotiations with s.o.** ag·ō -ere ēgī āctus cum áliquō dē pāce; **to make peace with** pācem fác·iō -ere fēcī factus cum (+ *abl*)

prisoner of war captív·us -ī *m*, captív·a -ae *f*; **ransom prisoners** captívōs redím·ō -ere redēmī redēptus

private mil·es -itis *mf* gregárius (-a)

promote prómóv·eō -ére prómóví prómótus; **to promote to higher rank** ad (*or in*) ampliórem gradum prómóvère

promotion prómóti·ō -ónis *f*

raid excúrsi·ō -ónis *f*

raise the siege on the town oppidum obsidióne liberāre

rank grad·us -ūs *m*

raze a town to the ground oppidum solō aequāre

recruit tír·ō -ónis *m*; **raw recruit** tírō rudis

recruit troops diléctum ag·ō -ere ēgī āctus

recruitment diléct·us -ūs *m*

regiment légi·ō -ónis *f*

regimental commander legiónis legát·us -ī *m*

retake a town oppidum recíp·iō -ere recépī recéptus

review the army exércitum recēns·eō -ére -uī, lūstrāre

rifle sclopét·um -ī *n*

sailor naut·a -ae *m* (·ria -riae *f*)
send relief to subsidiū summitt·ō -ere
 summisī summīssus (+ *dat*)
sergeant opti·ō -ōnis *mf*
serve stipēndia fác·iō -ere fēcī factus,
 (stipēndium) mēr·eō -ēre -uī; **to**
serve as a soldier or sailor (ut)
 mīles aut nauta merēre
serviceman milītār·is -is *m*
ship nāv·is -is *f*
shoot (*a person*) sclopētō trānsfīg·ō -ere
 trānsfīxī trānsfīxus
soldier mil·es -itis *mf*
starve a town into surrender oppidum
 fame dom·ō -āre dómuī
storm a town oppidum oppugnāre
submarine nāv·is -is *f* submarīna
success rēs, reī *f* fēlíciter gesta, rēs bene
 gesta
supplies commēat·us -ūs *m* (*used both*
as collective singular and in the
plural); **to cut off the enemy's**
supplies inter·clūdō -clūdere -clūsī
 hostēs commēatibus
supply: to supply s.o. with men and
arms ālicui virōs et arma ministrāre
surrender s dēdītī·ō -ōnis *f*
surrender *intr* sē dē·dō -dere -didī; **to**
force a people to surrender
 pópulum in dēditiōnem venīre cōg·ō
 -ere coēgī coāctus
swear in the soldiers mīlitēs
 sacrāmētō ādig·ō -ere adēgī adāctus
tactics: to change one's tactics
 ratiōnem bellī gerēndī mūtāre
tank autocúrr·us -ūs *m* armātus
terms condiciōn·ēs -um *fpl*; **on these**
terms hīs condiciōnibus; **to be on**
friendly terms with a country in
 amicitīā pópulī esse; **to stick by the**
terms in condiciōnibus mán·eō -ēre
 mānsī

terms of peace pācis condiciōn·ēs -um
fpl; **to accept terms of peace** pācis
 condiciōnēs accipi·ō -ere accēpī
 (*opp*: repudiāre); **to dictate terms of**
peace to pācis condiciōnēs dic·ō -ere
 dīxī (+ *dat*); **to propose terms of**
peace pācis condiciōnēs ferō ferre
 tulī lātus

terrain nātúr·a -ae *f* locī

theater of operations bellī sēd·ēs -is *f*

tour of duty milīti·a -ae *f*; **to complete**
a three-year tour of duty triēnnium
 milītiaē éxpl·eō -ēre -éví -étus

treaty foed·us -eris *n*; **according to the**
terms of the treaty ex pactō, ex
 foedere; **to break a treaty** foedus
 frang·ō -ere frēgī frāctus; **to**
conclude a treaty with foedus ícō
 ícere ícī ictus *or* fēr·iō -íre cum (+
abl); **to violate a treaty** foedus
 violāre

truce indúti·ae -árum *fpl*; **a six-years'**
truce indútiaē annórum sex; **to**
break a truce indútiās violāre; **to**
make a truce indútiās fácere

turn in weapons arma trād·ō -ere
 trádidī tráditus

uniform ornāt·us -ūs *m* militáris

veteran veterán·us ī *m*, émérit·us -ī *m*

victory victōri·a -ae *f*; **to gain** (*or win*)
a victory victóriam adipisc·or -ī
 adéptus sum; **to gain** (*or win*) **a**
victory over the enemy victóriam
 reportāre ab hoste; **to let a sure**
victory slip through one's fingers
 victóriam explōrātam dímitt·ō -ere
 dímisī

volunteer voluntári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

war (*against or with*) bell·um -ī *n*
 (contrā *or* advērsus (+ *acc*) *or* cum
 (+ *abl*); **civil war** bellum cívīle *or*
 domésticum; **in war** bellō, bellī
 témpore; **foreign war** bellum
 extérnum; **guerilla war** bellum
 clandestínium; **in war and in peace**

pāce bellóque, domī bellóque;
offensive war (*of war yet to be begun*) bellum ultrō ínferéndum; (*of war already begun*) bellum ultrō illátum; **to be involved in a war** bellō implicārī; **to bring a war to a successful conclusion** bellum cōnfíc·iō -ere cōnfēcī cōnféctus; **to carry on war with** bellum ger·ō -ere gessī gestus cum (+ *abl*); **to cause a war** bellum móv·eō -ēre mōvī mōtus; **to conduct a war** (*of a general*) bellum administrāre; **to declare war on** bellum indíc·ō -ere indíxī indíctus (+ *dat*); **to drag out a war** bellum trah·ō -ere traxī tractus; **to end a war** bellum perfíc·iō -ere perfēcī perféctus; **to fight a war with** bellum ger·ō -ere gessī gestus cum (+ *abl*); **to fight a war of aggression with** bellum *or* arma ultrō ínferō ínferre íntulī illátus (+

dat); **to go off to war** profícisc·or -ī proféctus sum ad bellum; **to go to war with** bellum ínferō ínferre íntulī illátus (+ *dat*); **to prepare for war** bellum (com)parāre; **to send to war** mitt·ō -ere mīsī missus ad bellum; **to start a war with** bellum ín·eō -íre -ívī *or* -iī cum (+ *abl*); **to stir up a war** bellum concitāre *or* incitāre; **to take part in a war** bellum capéss·ō -ere; **to terminate a war by diplomacy** bellum compón·ō -ere compósuī compósitus; **to wage war with** bellum ger·ō -ere gessī gestus cum (+ *abl*); **war against pirates** bellum pīráticum; **war against slaves** bellum servíle; **war is imminent** bellum ímminet *or* impéndet *or* ínstat; **war of extermination** bellum internecínum; **war breaks out** bellum exárdéscit
warfare bell·um -ī *n*

Chapter XXII: Law and Criminal Justice

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I News of an important trial.

Rebécca	Salvē, Antónī. Unde venīs?	<i>Rebecca: Hello, Anthony. Where are you coming from?</i>
Antónius	Ā basílicā Iúliā ā forō.	<i>Anthony: From the Julian courthouse in the forum.</i>
Rebécca	Quid ibi fiēbat?	<i>What was going on there?</i>
Antónius	Iūdicium nōtum fiēbat.	<i>A notorious trial was taking place.</i>
Rebécca	Quis iūs dīcēbat?	<i>Who presided as judge?</i>
Antónius	Nésciō quis senátor.	<i>Some senator or other.</i>
Rebécca	Quis erat reus?	<i>Who was the defendant?</i>
Antónius	Negōtiátor. Em vērō pátruus meus.	<i>A businessman. Well, in fact, my uncle.</i>
Rebécca	Quis crímina in eum íntulit?	<i>Who brought charges against him?</i>
Antónius	Horténsius, amícus Cicerónis, erat accūsátor.	<i>Hortensius, Cicero's friend, was the prosecutor.</i>
Rebécca	Quis erat eius dēfēnsor?	<i>Who was the defense lawyer?</i>
Antónius	Múcius Scaévola.	<i>Mucius Scaevola.</i>
Rebécca	Quae crímina in pátruum tuum íntulit?	<i>What charges did he bring against your uncle?</i>
Antónius	Horténsius eum míserum peculátūs accūsávit.	<i>Hortensius accused the poor guy of embezzlement.</i>
Rebécca	Prōdiērunť multī testēs?	<i>Did many witnesses step forward?</i>
Antónius	Erant trēs tantúmmodo.	<i>There were only three.</i>

Rebécca	Quī?	<i>Who?</i>
Antónius	Duo sóciī eius et argentárius.	<i>Two associates of his and the banker.</i>
Rebécca	Estne absolútus an condemnátus?	<i>Was he acquitted or found guilty?</i>
Antónius	Absolútus est quidem ómnibus sententiīs.	<i>Of course, he was acquitted unanimously.</i>

LEVEL II **The arrest of two hoodlums draws a crowd.**

Rīta	Quid reī est, praefécete? Cūr tanta turba hūc congregátur?	Rīta: <i>What's up, Chief? Why is such a large crowd gathering here?</i>
Praeféctus vígilum	Modo apprehéndimus duōs nótōs grassatōrēs.	Chief of Police: <i>We just arrested two notorious hoodlums.</i>
Rīta	Quid áccidit?	<i>What happened?</i>
Praeféctus	Latrōcínium modo factum est.	<i>A robbery just took place.</i>
Rīta	Ubi?	<i>Where?</i>
Praeféctus	Istī latrōnēs macéllum intrāvérunt et macellárium omnī argéntō eius spoliāvérunt.	<i>Those robbers entered the grocery store and robbed the grocer of all his money.</i>
Rīta	Latrōnésne macelláriō vim attulérunt?	<i>Did the robbers assault the grocer?</i>
Praeféctus	Étiam. Istī macellárium fústibus concidérunt.	<i>Yes, they beat the grocer up with clubs.</i>
Rīta	Effügéruntne latrōnēs?	<i>Did the robbers get away?</i>
Praeféctus	Nūllō modō! Vígilēs meī apprehendérunt istōs grassatōrēs et mánicās eīs iniēcérunt.	<i>No way! My officers arrested those hoodlums and put handcuffs on them.</i>
Rīta	Ubi sunt istī latrōnēs nunc?	<i>Where are those robbers now?</i>
Praeféctus	Vígilēs rapuérunt eōs in cárcerem.	<i>The police hauled them off to jail.</i>
Rīta	Nōne arguéntur dē latrōcínio?	<i>They'll be charged with robbery, won't they?</i>
Praeféctus	Arguéntur dē vī et manū atque latrōcínio.	<i>They'll be charged with assault and battery as well as with robbery.</i>

Rīta	Viae urbis nostrae nōn diūtius tūtae sunt. Ego véreor nē per mē obsōnem.	<i>The streets of our city are no longer safe. I am afraid to go shopping by myself.</i>
Praefectus	Uxor mea idem dicit.	<i>My wife says the same thing.</i>
Rīta	Spērō iūdicem summō iūre cum istis āctūrum esse.	<i>I hope the judge throws the book at them.</i>
Praefectus	Adulēscētula, ego hābeō mǎximam fidem nostrae ratiōnī iūdicīālī.	<i>Young lady, I have the greatest confidence in our judicial system.</i>

LEVEL III **A client gets himself a lawyer.**

Cliēns	Dēsīderō iūrisconsūltum. Potēsne mihi succūrrere?	Client: <i>I need a lawyer. Can you help me?</i>
Patrōnus	Quid est? Estne causa prīvāta an causa pūblica?	Patron: <i>What is it? Is it a civil or a criminal case?</i>
Cliēns	Est causa pūblica. Āliquis parietem domūs meae perfōdit.	<i>It's a criminal case. Someone broke into my home.</i>
Patrōnus	Quandō effrāctūra facta est?	<i>When did the break-in take place?</i>
Cliēns	Médiā nocte, dum ego et famīlia ābsumus.	<i>At midnight, while I and the family were away.</i>
Patrōnus	Quid perfossōrēs sustulērunt?	<i>What did the robbers steal?</i>
Cliēns	Pecūniam, pictūrās, argētea.	<i>Money, pictures, and silverware.</i>
Patrōnus	Scīsne quis parietēs perfōderit?	<i>Do you know who broke into your home?</i>
Cliēns	Nēsciō.	<i>No, I don't.</i>
Patrōnus	Aderántne oculātī testēs?	<i>Were there any eyewitnesses?</i>
Cliēns	Ūnus ex vicīnīs meis, nōmine Varrō.	<i>One of my neighbors, named Varro.</i>
Patrōnus	Quid vīdit?	<i>What did he see?</i>
Cliēns	Vīdit et perfossōrem et índicem eius.	<i>He saw the robber and his lookout man.</i>
Patrōnus	Volētne testis prōdīre?	<i>Will he be willing to step forward as a witness.</i>

Cliēns	Volet.	<i>Yes, he will.</i>
Patrōnus	Accessīvistīne vīgīlēs?	<i>Did you call the police?</i>
Cliēns	Accessīvī. Vīgīlēs mīsērunt investīgātōrem ad mē. Investīgātō iam coēgit nōnnūllōs suspēctōs.	<i>I did. The police sent an investigator to my home. The investigator has already rounded up several suspects.</i>
Patrōnus	Macte virtūte estō! Ego suspēctōs quam primum in iūdiciū addūcam. Mihi crēde, mox in cārcere sedēbunt.	<i>Good for you! I will take the suspects to court as soon as possible. Believe me, they will soon be sitting in jail.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

accusation accūsāti·ō -ōnis <i>f</i>	assault <i>tr</i> vim faciō -ere feci factus in (+ <i>acc</i>)
accuse accūsāre (<i>with acc of person and gen or dē + abl of the charge</i>); to accuse s.o. of a capital offense āliquem rei capitālis re·um (-am) facere	attack <i>see assault</i>
acquit (of) absolvō -ere -ī absolūtus (dē + <i>abl</i> ; <i>more rarely w. gen</i>); to acquit s.o. of a capital crime āliquem cāpitis absolvere	attorney cōgnit·or -ōris <i>m</i> (·rīx -rīcis <i>f</i>); to appoint an attorney to s.o. cōgnitōrem ālicui adscrīb·ō -ere adscrīpsi adscrīptus
acquittal absolūti·ō -ōnis <i>f</i>	bar: to serve at the bar in iūdiciīs versārī; in forō ag·ō -ere egī
adjourn <i>tr</i> ampliāre	beat (with fists, clubs) (pugnīs, fūstibus) caed·ō -ere cecidī caesus; to beat up concīd·ō -ere -ī concīsus
alimony alimōni·um -ī <i>n</i>	blame <i>s</i> culp·a -ae <i>f</i>
allegation: false allegation falsa īnsimulāti·ō -ōnis <i>f</i>	blame <i>tr</i> culpāre; I am to blame in culpā sum; to blame s.o. for āliquem culpāre ob (+ <i>acc</i>)
allege ārgu·ō -ere -ī -ūtus	bludgeon <i>s</i> fūst·is -is <i>m</i>
appeal <i>s</i> appellāti·ō -ōnis <i>f</i> ; to allow an appeal appellātiōnem admitt·ō -ere admīsī admīssus; to disallow an appeal appellātiōnem improbāre	bludgeon <i>tr</i> fūste (<i>or</i> fūstibus) concīd·ō -ere concīdī concīsus; to bludgeon to death fūstigāre
appeal <i>intr</i> (to) appellāre (ad + <i>acc</i>)	break into a home domūs parietēs perfōd·iō -ere perfōdī perfōssus
arrest apprehēn·dō -dere -dī -sus	breaking and entering, break-in effrāctūr·a -ae <i>f</i>
assault <i>s</i> vīs <i>f</i> (<i>acc</i> : vim; <i>abl</i> : vī); to accuse s.o. of assault (and battery) aliquem dē vī (et manū) accūsāre; to commit assault against vim faciō -ere feci factus in (+ <i>acc</i>)	bribe <i>tr</i> corrūmp·ō -ere corrūpī corrūptus
	bribe <i>s</i> prēti·um -ī <i>n</i>

bribery corruptél·a -ae *f*; **influenced by bribery** corrúpt·us -a -um

burglar effrác·or -óris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*), perfóss·or -óris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*); **to commit a burglary** paríetēs perfód·iō -ere perfódī perfóssus

burglary (domūs) latrōcīni·um -ī *n*

capital punishment supplíci·um -ī *n* cápitis; **to suffer capital punishment** supplício cápitis affíciōr affíci afféctus sum

case caus·a -ae *f*, līs, lītis *f*; **civil case** causa príváta; **criminal case** causa pūblica; **to lose a case** causam per·dō -dere -didī; **to plead a case** causam ag·ō -ere egī *or* dīc·ō -ere dīxī; **to settle a case (out of court)** lītem compōn·ō -ere compósuī compósitus; **to win a case** causā (*or* iūdício) vinc·ō -ere vícī victus

character witness advocát·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

charge *s* crīm·en -inis *n*; **capital charge** capitále crímen; **false charge** calúmni·a -ae *f*; **to bring or file charges against s.o.** crímina álicui ínferō ínferre íntulī illátus

charge *tr* **to charge s.o. with a crime** áliquem crímīne (*or* dē crímīne *or* crímīnis) árgu·ō -ere -ī

chief of police praeféct·us -ī *m* vígilum

civil rights iūr·a -ium *npl* cívília; **to deprive s.o. of civil rights** áliquem cápite dēmín·uō -úere -uī -útus

client cli·ēns -éntis *mf*

commit (a crime) (scelus) commít·ō -ere commísī commíssus

condemn condemnáre

convict convínc·ō -ere convíci convíctus (*w. acc. of the person and w. gen of the charge*); **convicted of** manifést·us -a (+ *gen*); **to convict s.o. on many counts of fraud**

áliquem multīs crímínibus fraudis convíncere

conviction (for) condemnáti·ō -ónis *f* (+ *gen of the charge*)

counselor iūrisperít·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

count crīm·en -inis *n*

court iūdícī·um -ī *n*; **court of appeal** iūdícium appellátórium; **to hold court** iūs dīc·ō -ere dīxī dictus; **to take s.o. to court** áliquem in iūdícium addúc·ō -ere addúxi addúctus *or* vocáre

courthouse basílic·a -ae *f*; **Julian courthouse** basílica Iúlia (*begun by Julius Caesar in 54 B.C.*)

crime fácin·us -oris *n*, scel·us -eris *n*, crīm·en -inis *n* (*more often means merely the charge*)

custody custódi·a -ae *f*; **to be held in custody** in custódiā háb·eor -éři hábitus sum; **to take into custody** in custódiām trá·dō -dere -didī -ditus

death: to condemn s.o. to death áliquem cápitis damnáre; **to put s.o. to death** supplícium cápitis dē áliquo sūm·ō -ere sūmpsī sūmptus

death sentence: to receive the death sentence cápitis damnári

death penalty supplíci·um -ī *n* cápitis

defend s.o. causam álicúius dēfénd·ō -ere -ī

defendant re·us -ī *m*, re·a -ae *f*

defense lawyer dēfēns·or -óris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)

deprive: to deprive s.o. of áliquem príváre (+ *abl*)

detective inquísít·or -óris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*)

divorce *tr* dīvórti·um fácere cum (+ *abl*)

divorce *s* dīvórti·um -ī *n*; **to seek a divorce** dīvórtium pet·ō -ere -ívī -ítus

- embezzlement** peculāt·us -ūs *m*
- enforce the law** lēgem exérc·eō -ére -uī -itus
- evidence** testimōni·um -ī *n*; **on what evidence will you convict me?** quō mē teste convíncēs?; **this evidence is not admissible** hoc testimōnium nōn sūmēndum est; **to give evidence against s.o.** testimōnium dīc·ō -ere dīxī in áliquem; **to turn state's evidence** indícium profit·eor -éri proféssus sum
- extortion** violēta exácti·ō -ónis *f* pecūniárum
- eyewitness** oculāt·us (a) test·is -is *mf*
- fair** aequ·us -a -um
- falsely** falsō
- fault** culp·a -ae *f*; **to be at fault** in culpā esse; **to not be at fault** extrā culpam esse
- fine s.o.** multāre áliquem (+ *abl of the fine*)
- fraud** frau·s -dis *f*
- gang** man·us -ūs *f*
- gangster, gang member** praed·ō -ónis *m* gregális
- guard** *s* custōdiári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
- guard** *tr* custód·iō -íre -ívi or -iū -itus
- guilty** re·us -a -um, sōn·s -tis; **guilty of** nōxi·us -a -um (+ *abl or gen*); **the guilty one** sōn·s -tis *mf*; **to be found guilty** nōxius iūdicári; **to be guilty** in culpā esse; **to punish the guilty** poenam dē sōntibus éxig·ō -ere exégī exáctus
- handcuff** *tr* mánicās iníc·iō -ere iniéci iniéctus (+ *dat*)
- handcuffs** mánic·ae -árum *fpl*
- haul off to prison** ráp·iō -ere -uī -tus in cárcerem
- hearing** cogníti·ō -ónis *f*; **to hold a hearing** cognitiónem háb·eō -ére -uī -itus
- homicide** homicídi·um -ī *n*
- hoodlum** grassát·or -óris *m*
- house arrest** custódi·a -ae *f* líbera
- hung jury: to be acquitted by a hung jury** sentétiīs páribus absólv·or -ī absólútus sum
- impartial** incorrúpt·us -a -um et inte·ger -gra -grum
- indict s.o.** áliquem re·um (-am) fác·iō -ere fēcī factus
- informant** ind·ex -icis *mf*
- innocent** ínnoc·ēns -éntis
- interrogate** interrogáre
- investigate** investigáre
- investigator** investigát·or -óris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*)
- jail** carc·er -eris *m*
- jailer** custōdiári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
- judge** iūd·ex -icis *mf*; **to sit as judge (hold court)** iūs dīc·ō -ere dīxī
- judicial** iūdicíál·is -is -e; **judicial system** ráti·ō -ónis *f* iūdicíális
- juror** iūd·ex -icis *mf*
- jury** cōnsli·um -ī *n*; iúdic·ēs -um *mpl*
- just** iūst·us -a -um
- justice** iūstítí·a -ae *f*
- justly** iūstē
- law** lēx, lēgis *f*; (*denoting the entire body of law*) iūs, iūris *n*; **against the law** contrā iūs; (*against a specific law*) contrā lēgem; **by law** lēge; **in accordance with the law** secūndum lēgem; **to break the law** lēgem violáre
- lawsuit** lí·s -tis *f*; **to bring (or file) a lawsuit against s.o.** litem álicui inténd·ō -ere -ī

lawyer iūriscōnsult·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*);
(*trial lawyer*) causidic·us -ī *m* (·a -ae
f); (*for the defense*) advocāt·us -ī *m*
(·a -ae *f*)

legal lēgítim·us -a -um, secúndum
lēgem *or* lēgēs

legally lēgítimē, lēge

**life imprisonment: give s.o. life
imprisonment** áliquem damnāre
cárceŕi quoad vīvat

lock up (*in prison*) in cárceŕem
compíng·ō -ere -ī compégī
compáctus

look-out ind·ex -icis *mf*

murder *s* nex, necis *f* (*passive in sense
while caedēs is active in sense*); (*by
hacking or striking*) caed·ēs -is *f*,
occísi·ō -ōnis *f*

murder *tr* (*by wicked and cruel means*)
necāre; (*violently and ruthlessly*)
trūcídāre; (*by hacking or striking*)
caed·ō -ere cecídī caesus

murderer necāt·or -ōris *m*, homicíd·a
-ae *mf*; (*of a father, mother, or near
relative*) parricíd·a -ae *mf*

murderess necātr·īx -ícis *f*

notorious nōt·us -a -um, infām·is -is -e

offenses delíct·a -ōrum *npl*

officer vig·il -ilis *mf*

pardon véni·a -ae *f*; **to grant s.o. a
pardon** véniam álicui dō dare dedī;
to obtain pardon véniam impetrāre

penalty poen·a -ae *f*; **to pay the
penalty** poenās persól·v·ō -ere -ī,
poenās dō dare dedī datus

perjure oneself pēierāre

perjury periūri·um -ī *n*; **to commit
perjury** pēierāre

personal injury iniūri·a -āe *f*

plaintiff petít·or -ōris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*)

plead a case before the court causam
prō tribūnālī ag·ō -ere ēgī áctus

police officer vig·il -ilis *mf*

preside at a trial iūdiciō praesum -esse
-fuī, iūs dic·ō -ere dixī dictus

presiding judge quaesít·or -ōris *m* (·rīx
-rícis *f*)

prison carc·er -eris *m*; **to throw s.o.
into prison** áliquem in cárceŕem
coníc·iō -ere conicēci coniectus

prosecute s.o. áliquem iūdiciō
pérsequ·or -ī persecútus sum

prosecutor accūsát·or -ōris *m*,
accūsátr·īx -ícis *f*

punish pún·iō -íre -ívī -ítus; poenā
affíc·iō -ere affécī afféctus

punishment for crimes poen·a -ae *f*
facínorum

rape stupr·um -ī *n* per vim

rape *tr* per vim stuprāre, stuprō violāre

rapist stuprát·or -ōris *m*

rebut dissól·v·ō -ere -ī dissolútus

rebuttal dissolúti·ō -ōnis *f*

refute dissól·v·ō -ere -ī dissolútus

rob rāp·iō -ere -uī -tus; **to rob s.o. of**
áliquem spoliāre (+ *abl*)

robber latr·ō -ōnis *m*; (*house breaker*)
perfóss·or -ōris *m*

robbery latrōcínī·um -ī *n*

safe (from) tūt·us -a -um (ab + *abl*);
safe and sound salv·us -a -um et
sān·us -a -um; **safe from danger**
tūtus ā perículō

scot-free: to get off scot-free
impunít·us (-a) dimítt·or -ī dimíss·us
(-a) sum

serve a summons on diem dare (+ *dat*)

steal fūr·or -ārī -átus sum; clep·ō -ere
-sī -tus; toll·ō -ere sústulī sublátus

stool pigeon ind·ex -icis *mf*

sue s.o. lítem álicui ínferō ínferre íntulī
illátus

suffer punishment poenās ferō ferre
tulī lātus

suit ácti·ō -ōnis *f*; **to bring a suit**
against s.o. áctiōnem álicui intén·dō
-dere -dī

suspect suspéct·us -ī *m*, suspéct·a -ae *f*

theft fūr·um -ī *n*

testify test·or -āri -ātus *sum*

thief fūr, fūris *mf*

throw the book at s.o. summō iūre cum
áliquō agō ágere ēgī áctus [*lit: to*
deal with s.o. with the utmost (rigor
of the) law]

treason prōdíti·ō -ōnis *f*

trial quaésti·ō -ōnis *f*, iūdici·um -ī *n*; **to**
bring to trial in iūdícium addúc·ō
-ere addúxī addúctus; **to conduct a**
trial quaestiōnem exérc·eō -ére -uī
-itus; **to be on trial for** iūdícium dē
(+ *abl*) súb·eō -īre -ívī *or* -īī; **to be**

on trial for one's life iūdícium dē
cápite subíre; **to go on trial** in iūs eō
īre īī *or* īvī

trial lawyer āct·or -ōris *m* (·rīx -rīcis *f*)
causárum, causídic·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

try: to try a case (of) causam
cognósc·ō -ere cognóvī cógnotus (dē
+ *abl*)

verdict sentéti·a -ae *f*; **to give a**
verdict of acquittal absolūtóriam
senténtiam ferō ferre tulī lātus; **to**
give a guilty verdict condem-
nātóriam senténtiam ferre

unanimously ómnibus sentétiīs

witness test·is -is *mf* (**for** prō + *abl*;
against in + *acc*); **to be called as a**
witness contestári; **to come or step**
forward as a witness testis pródeō
prōdíre pródīī; **trustworthy witness**
testis lócupl·ēs -étis

Chapter XXIII: Geography and Topography

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I

Colin wants to migrate to the U.S.

- Cólinus** Salvē, Gregóri. Ego in ánimō hábeō mox ex Hiberniā in Américam ēmigrāre. Potésne nārrāre mihi áliquid dē Américā?
- Colin:** Hello, Gregory. I intend to emigrate from Ireland to America. Can you tell me something about America?
- Gregórius** Libénter. Prīmō, América est multō ámplior quam Hibernia.
- Gregory:** Gladly. First, America is much bigger than Ireland.
- Cólinus** Ítane est? Quae sunt mēnsúrae Cīvitátum Foederátarum Américae?
- Is that so? What are the dimensions of the United States?**
- Gregórius** Ōra marítima orientális tantum abest ab ōrā occidentáli quantum Hibernia abest ā Cīvitátibus Foederátis Américae.
- The east coast is as far distant from the west coast as is Ireland from the United States.**
- Cólinus** Incrédibile est! Estne Novum Eborácum caput Cīvitátum Foederátarum Américae?
- That's incredible. Is New York the capital of the United States?**
- Gregórius** Novum Eborácum est urbs Américae amplíssima, sed, mīrābile dictū, nōn est caput.
- New York is the biggest city in America, but, strange to say, it is not the capital.**
- Cólinus** Quae urbs est caput?
- What city is the capital?**
- Gregórius** Vashintónia est caput Cīvitátum Foederátarum Américae.
- Washington is the capital of the United States.**
- Cólinus** América ex quot cīvitátibus cōnstat?
- Of how many states does America consist?**
- Gregórius** Sunt duodēquīnquāgīntā cīvitátēs in continēnte, praeter Aláscam et Havaíōs.
- There are forty-eight states on the mainland, in addition to Alaska and Hawaii.**

Cólinus	Ubi est Alásca?	<i>Where is Alaska?</i>
Gregórius	Est suprā Cánadam, quae attingit Cīvitátēs Foederátās Américae ā septentríone.	<i>It is north of Canada, which borders the United States on the north.</i>
Cólinus	Ubi sunt Havaíi?	<i>Where is Hawaii?</i>
Gregórius	Havaíi sunt celébritās īnsulárum longíssimē ante oram Califórniae.	<i>Hawaii is a cluster of islands a very long way off the coast of California.</i>
Cólinus	Quae est urbs óptima in quā ego cum famíliā hábitem?	<i>What is the best city for me and family to live in?</i>
Gregórius	Est difficíllimum dictū. Urbs enim quaeque suās virtútēs habet.	<i>That's very hard to say. Every city, you see, has its good points.</i>

LEVEL II Rene wants to learn about the Tiber.

Renáta	Quid flūmen ádluit Rōmam?	Rene: <i>Which river flows by Rome?</i>
Magístra	Tíberis, cui vetus nōmen erat Álbula.	Teacher: <i>The Tiber, whose old name was the Albula.</i>
Renáta	Unde óritur Tíberis flūmen?	<i>Where does the Tiber River rise?</i>
Magístra	Fōns eius est in Apennínō monte inter Etrúriam ab occidēte et Úmbriam ab oriēte.	<i>Its source is in the Apennines between Etruria on the west side and Umbria on the east side.</i>
Renáta	Estne Tíberis flūmen látíssimum?	<i>Is the Tiber a very wide river?</i>
Magístra	Lātítūdō eius scílicet vária est. Ut ex Apenníno monte prófluit, prīmō angústus est. Sed ut flúvii in eum ínfluunt, Tíberis látítúdine augéetur.	<i>Its width varies, of course. As it flows down from the Apennines, it is narrow at first. But as tributaries flow into it, the Tiber increases in width.</i>
Renáta	Fertúrne Tíberis per dírēctum?	<i>Does the Tiber flow in a straight line?</i>
Magístra	Mínimē. Ut scīs, Ítália intus est áspera et montána; ítaque Tíberis cursū meánte Rōmam pérvenit.	<i>No. As you know, Italy is rugged and mountainous in the interior and so the Tiber arrives at Rome along a winding course.</i>

Renáta	Erátne Tíberis flūmen nāvīgábile aetáte Rómánā?	<i>Was the Tiber a navigable river in Roman times?</i>
Magístra	Ita, sed suprā Rómam rátibus tantum nāvīgábilis erat. Inter Rómam autem et óstium ómnibus nāvibus nāvīgábilis erat.	<i>Yes, but north of Rome it was navigable only to rafts. But between Rome and its mouth the Tiber was navigable to all ships.</i>
Renáta	Quā longitúdine est Tíberis?	<i>What is the length of the Tiber?</i>
Magístra	Círciter centum quīnquāgíntā mília pássuum.	<i>Around one hundred fifty miles.</i>
Renáta	Quantum abest Rōma ā Tíberis óstiō?	<i>How far is Rome from the mouth of the Tiber?</i>
Magístra	Círciter quíndecim mília pássuum distat. Ibi in mare Tyrrehnum sē effúndit.	<i>About fifteen miles. There it empties into the Tyrrhenian Sea.</i>
Renáta	Quae gēns suprā Tíberim habitábat?	<i>What nation lived north of the Tiber?</i>
Magístra	Etrúscī, quórum prīnceps urbs erat Vēii.	<i>The Etruscans, whose chief city was Veii.</i>
Renáta	Estne Rōma clīvósa an plāna?	<i>Is Rome hilly or flat?</i>
Magístra	Rōma est quidem clīvósa; compléctitur illōs ínclutōs septem montēs. Urbs appósita est fléxui flúminis.	<i>Rome is indeed hilly; it takes in the famous seven hills. The city is located at the bend in the river.</i>
Renáta	Quis mōns est próximus Tíberī?	<i>Which hill is closest to the Tiber?</i>
Magístra	Mōns Aventínus est próximus; sed mōns Pālātínus est item prope flūmen.	<i>The Aventine is closest; but the Palatine Hill is likewise close to the river.</i>
Renáta	Útinam aliquándō aspíciam Tíberim!	<i>How I wish to see the Tiber someday!</i>
Magístra	Aspícíēs.	<i>You will.</i>

LEVEL III Traveling from Rome to Greece.

Gálfridus	Magíster, quā viā Rōmānī antīquitus in Graéciam iter faciébant?	<i>Jeffrey: Teacher, by what way did the Romans in antiquity travel to Greece?</i>
Magíster	In Ítaliā ipsā, viā Áppia ā portā Capēnā dūcīt rēctā ad montem Albānum, deínde per palúdem Pompťinam ad urbem Cápua.	<i>Teacher: In Italy itself, the Via Appia leads from the Porta Capena in a straight line to the Alban Mount, then through the Pomptine marshes to the city of Capua.</i>
Gálfridus	Estne Cápua in Látio an in Campāniā?	<i>Is Capua in Latium or in Campania?</i>
Magíster	Cápua est proféctō prínceps urbs Campāniae.	<i>Capua is, in fact, the principal city of Campania.</i>
Gálfridus	Quantum Rōma abest Cápua?	<i>How far is Rome from Capua?</i>
Magíster	Abest paulō ámplius quam centum et vīgintī mília pássuum, mēnsūrā cūrrente. Deínde viā dūcīt praeter Benevéntum in mediterráneō trāns montem Apennínium ad portum apud Brundísium.	<i>It's a little more than a hundred and twenty miles, as the crow flies. Then the road leads past Beneventum in the interior across the Apennines to the harbor at Brindisi.</i>
Gálfridus	Tendítne mōns Apennínus ad meridíanās regiōnes Ítaliae?	<i>Does the Apennine Range extend to the southern regions of Italy?</i>
Magíster	Ita. Mōns Apennínus, Ítaliae amplíssimus, tendit perpétuīs iugīs ab Álpibus ad Sículum frētum.	<i>Yes. The Apennines, the largest (mountains) of Italy, extend in an unbroken chain from the Alps to the Strait of Messina.</i>
Gálfridus	Nōne finítur viā Áppia ad portum?	<i>Does the Via Appia end at the harbor?</i>
Magíster	Ita. Etiámnum duae colúmnae altae ante portum índicant finem Viae Áppiae.	<i>Yes. Even today two high columns in front of the harbor mark the end of the Via Appia.</i>
Gálfridus	Nāvigábántne Rōmānī per dírectum ad sinum Corinthíacum?	<i>Did the Romans sail in a direct line to the Gulf of Corinth?</i>
Magíster	Nōn. Nam trānsitus trāns Hadriáticum mare erat brevíssimus inter Brundísium et Apollóniam, quae in Illyricō est.	<i>No. You see, the passage across the Adriatic Sea was shortest between Brindisi and Apollonia in Illyria.</i>

Gálfridus	Viātórēs deinde terrēnō itínere Athénās petébant?	<i>Did the travelers then head overland for Athens?</i>
Magíster	Prīmō nāvīgábant in merídiem versus, secúndum ōram Illýrici; deinde intrábant sinum Corinthíacum. Postrémō vehébántur terrēnō itínere per isthmum in Átticam et Athénās.	<i>First they sailed southward close to the shore of Illyria; then they entered the Gulf of Corinth. Finally, they traveled overland along the isthmus to Attica and Athens.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

about (<i>approximately</i>) cíciter, fermē	Athens Athén·ae -árum <i>fpl</i>
accommodations hospíti·um -ī <i>n</i>	Attica Áttic·a -ae <i>f</i>
across trāns (+ <i>acc</i>); across from ex advérsō (+ <i>gen</i>), exadvérsum (+ <i>acc</i>)	bank rīp·a -ae <i>f</i> ; the Tiber having overflowed its banks Tíberis super rīpās effúsus
adjacent to contérmin·us -a -um (+ <i>dat</i>)	bay sin·us -ūs <i>m</i> , recéss·us -ūs <i>m</i>
adjoin adiúng·or -ī adiúctus sum (+ <i>dat</i>)	before (<i>in front of</i>) ante (+ <i>acc</i>)
adjoining iūct·us -a -um; adjoining nations iūctae nātiōnēs	begin at incíp·iō -ere incépi ab (+ <i>abl</i>)
Adriatic Hadriátic·us -a -um; the Adriatic Hadriáticum mar·e -is <i>n</i>	Beneventum Benevént·um -ī <i>n</i>
Africa Áfric·a -ae <i>f</i>	big ampl·us -a -um
along per (+ <i>acc</i>), secúndum (+ <i>acc</i>)	behind (<i>in the rear of</i>) ā tergō (+ <i>gen</i>)
Alps Alp·ēs -ium <i>fpl</i>	bend <i>s</i> (<i>of a river</i>) flex·us -ūs <i>m</i>
Alpine Alpín·us -a -um; Alpine chain Álpium iug·a -órum <i>npl</i>	bend <i>intr</i> sē flect·ō -ere flexī flexus
America Améric·a -ae <i>f</i> ; North America América Septentriōnális; South America América Merīdiána	beyond ultrā (+ <i>acc</i>)
American Americán·us -a -um	border on attíng·ō -ere (+ <i>acc</i>)
Apennines, Apennine Range Apennínus mōn·s -tis <i>m</i>	border fīn·is -is <i>m</i> , confīni·um -ī <i>n</i>
Appian Way vi·a -ae <i>f</i> Áppia	boundary fīn·is -is <i>m</i> ; (<i>dividing line</i>) discrím·en -inis <i>n</i> ; at the boundary between Italy and Switzerland ad discrímēn Ítáliae et Helvétiae
area tract·us -ūs <i>m</i>	bounded: on the east it is bounded by ... ab oriēte cláuditur (+ <i>abl</i>)
Asia Ási·a -ae <i>f</i>	breadth lātítúd·ō -inis <i>f</i> ; in breadth lātítúdiē, in lātítúdinē
at apud (+ <i>acc</i>)	Brindisi Brundísi·um -ī <i>n</i>
Atlantic Atlántic·us -a -um; Atlantic Ocean Atlánticus ōcéan·us -ī <i>m</i> , Atlánticum mar·e -is <i>n</i>	brook rívul·us -ī <i>m</i>
	business district empóri·um -ī <i>n</i>

called dict·us, appellát·us, vocitát·us,
vocát·us, nuncupát·us -a -um

Campania Campáni·a -ae *f*

canal foss·a -ae *f*

Capua Cápu·a -ae *f*

cape prōmontōri·um -ī *n*

capital cap·ut -itis *n*

cave spec·us -ūs *m*

cavern spēlúnc·a -ae *f*

causeway pedēstris tránsit·us-ūs *m*

**chain: the Apennines extending in an
unbroken chain from the Alps to
... Apenníus mōns perpétuis iugis
ab Álpibus tendēns ad (+ acc)**

circumference circúit·us -ūs *m*; **its
crater measures 500 feet in
circumference** eius crātēr patet
circúitū quīngentōs pedēs

city urb·s -is *f*

climate cael·um -ī *n*

cluster (of islands, etc.) celēbrit·ās
-átis *f*

coast ōr·a -ae *f* (marítima); **on the coast
in** ōrā (marítimā)

confluence cōnflu·ēns -éntis *m*; **at the
confluence of the Tiber and the
Anio** inter cōnfluéntēs Tíberim et
Aniōnem

course curs·us -ūs *m*; **along a winding
course** meánte cursū

continent par·s -tis *f* mundi (or orbis
terrárum)

Corinth Corínth·us -ī *f*; **gulf of Corinth**
sin·us -ūs *m* Corínthíacus (or
Corínthius)

crater crāt·ēr -éris *m*

creek rīv·us -ī *m*

crest (of a hill) iug·um -ī *n*

crossing (passage) tránsit·us -ūs *m*

crow: as the crow flies mēnsúrā
currēnte [*lit: in a running
measurement*]

current flūm·en -inis *n* (in the sense of
“the flow”); **against the current**
advērsō flūmine; **strong current** vīs
f (no gen; acc: vim; abl: vī)
flūminis; **with the current** sēcúndō
flūmine

curve (in a road, coast) ānfráct·us -ūs *m*

Danube river Danúvius amn·is -is *m*

densely populated region régiō
ubérrimae multitúdinis

desert dēsért·a -órum *npl*

dimensions mēnsúr·a -ae *f* or
mēnsúr·ae -árum *fpl*

directly rēctā, per dīrēctum

distance spāti·um -ī *n*; **its distance
from the sea is three miles** abest ā
marī tria mília pássuum

distant longínqu·us -a -um; **to be
distant from** abesse ab (+ *abl*),
distāre ab (+ *abl*)

district tract·us -ūs *m*, ag·er -rī *m*

**dotted: the river is dotted with towns
on the right and left bank** amnis
accólitur (or frequentátur) dextrā
laevāque crebrīs óppidīs

earthquake terrae mot·us -ūs *m*

east óri·ēns -éntis *m*; **on the east (side)**
ab oriēte; **to the east** in oriētem
versus (versus *is an adverb*)

eastern orientál·is -is -e

eastward in oriētem versus (versus *is
an adverb*)

empty (into) sē effúnd·ō -ere effúdi
effúsus

end s fin·is -is *m*

end intr dēsín·ō -ere, fín·ior -íri

estuary aestuári·um -ī *n*

Etruria Etrúri·a -ae *f*

Europe Euróþ·a -ae *f*

European Eurōþaé·us -a -um

extend (*of land, body of water*) tend·ō -ere, prōténd·ō -ere, pá·t·eō -é·re; **the region extends from ... to ...** régiō tendit ab (+ *abl*) ad (+ *acc*); **to extend over** (*to cover*) obtín·eō -é·re

face spectā·re; **to face north** (south, east, west) spectā·re in (*or ad*) septentríónēs (merídiem, oriéntem, occidéntem)

famous for ínclutus, nóbilis (+ *abl*)

far longē; **farthest to the south** longíssimē in merídiem; **(not) far from** (haud) procul ab (+ *abl*)

field ag·er -rī *m*

flat plān·us -a -um

flow flu·ō -ere flūxī flūxus; **to flow by** ádlu·ō, adlúere; **to flow down from** dēflúere dē (+ *abl*); **to flow into** ínflúere in (+ *acc*); **to flow out from** efflúere ab (+ *abl*); **to flow past** praeflúere (+ *acc*), praeterflúere (+ *acc*)

foot of a mountain rād·īx -ícis *m* montis; **at the foot of the mountain** rādíce montis

foothills rādíc·ēs -um *mpl* montis

forest silv·a -ae *f*

formerly ánteā

front: in front of ante (+ *acc*)

frontier fín·is -is *m*, términ·us -ī *m*

geography geōgráphi·a -ae *f*

Gibraltar Calp·ē -ēs *f*; **strait of Gibraltar** Gādítānum frēt·um -ī *n*

Greece Graéci·a -ae *f*

gulf sin·us -ūs *m*

harbor port·us -ūs *m*

head for pet·ō -ere petívī petítus

hill coll·is -is *m*

hilly clívós·us -a -um

how: how far is ... from quantum distat (*or abest*) ... ab (+ *abl*)

Illyria Illýric·um -ī *n*

increase *tr* aúg·eō -é·re auxī auctus **ll** *intr* aúg·eor -é·rī auctus sum

inland *adv* intus; **towns inland from Tarentum** óppida per continéntem ā Taréntō

inland *adj* intéri·or -or -us; **inland seas** már·ia -ium *npl* interióra

interior *s*: **in the interior** in mediterráneō, intus; **toward the interior** intus

interior *adj* intéri·or -or -us

Ireland Híbérni·a -ae *f*

island ínsul·a -ae *f*; **islands off the coast of Greece** ínsulae ante Graéciam

isthmus isthm·us -ī *m* (*f*)

Italy Ítáli·a -ae *f*

jut out *see* project

lagoon stāgn·um -ī *n*

lake lac·us -ūs *m*

land terr·a -ae *f*

lead (*of a road*) dūc·ō -ere dūxī ductus

left siníst·er -ra -rum, laev·us -a -um; **on the left** laevā, ā laevā; **(to the) left** sinistrórsum, laevórsum

length longitúd·ō -inis *f*; **in length** longitúdine, in longitúdinem

lengthwise per longitúdinem

lie iác·eō -é·re -uī; **to lie in the direction of** verg·ō -ere ad (+ *acc*)

line líne·a -ae *f*; **in a straight line** per dīrēctum

live (*dwell*) habitā·re; **to live near, (in the case of a river) to live on the banks of** áccol·ō -ere -uī accúltum

long long·us -a -um; **fifteen miles long** quíndecim mília pássuum (*often written: p.*) in longitúdinem *or*

quīndecim mīlia pāssuum in
longitūdinem patēns

mainland cōntin·ēns -ētis *f*

map of the world orb·is -is *m* terrārum
pīctus

meander meāre

measure pāt·eō -ēre, cōllig·ō -ere;

measuring ten miles in

circumference patēns (*or* cōlligēns)

decem mīlia pāssuum circūitū

Mediterranean Sea Intérnum mar·e -is
n, Tuscum mare, Tyrrhēnum mare

mine metáll·um -ī *n*; **gold (lead, iron,
copper, silver, tin) mine** metállum
aurī (plumbī, ferrī, aeris, argéntī,
plumbī albī)

moderate: of moderate size módic·us
-a -um

mountain mōn·s -tis *m*

mountain chain mont·ēs -ium *mpl*
perpétuī

mountainous montuó·s -a -um,
montān·us -a -um

mouth (of a river) ósti·um -ī *n*

narrow angúst·us -a -um

nation gēn·s -tis *f*

navigable nāvīgābī·lis -is -e

near vicīn·us -a -um (+ *dat*), prope (+
acc)

next *adv* próximē; **next comes, then ...
then ... after that** unde ... dein ...
dein ... inde ...

next to próxim·us -a -um (+ *dat*), iuxtā
(+ *acc*)

north *adj* supér·ior -ior -ius,
septentrionāl·is -is -e

north *adv* ad septentrionēs; **north of**
suprā (+ *acc*), super (+ *acc*)

north *s* septētri·ō -ónis *m* *or*
septentrion·ēs -um *mpl*; **on the**

north ā septentrionē; **on the north
(side)** látere septentrionāli

northern septentrionāl·is -is -e

northward in septentrionēs versus
(versus *is an adverb*)

ocean océan·us -ī *m*; **the Atlantic
Ocean** océanus Atlánticus *or* mare
Atlánticum

off (said of an island) ante (+ *acc*), apud
(+ *acc*); **off (the coast of) Italy** ante
Itáliam

opposite *prep* versus (+ *acc*) (*often
postpositive*), adversum (+ *acc*),
contrā (+ *acc*); **opposite of** ex
advérsō *or* exadvérsō (+ *gen*)

pass (defile) salt·us -ūs *m*

past praeter (+ *acc*)

peninsula paenínsul·a -ae *f*

plain camp·us -ī *m*; **open plains** campī
patētēs

Pomptine Marshes pal·ūs -údis *f*
Pompťína

pond stāgn·um -ī *n*

pool stāgn·um -ī *n*

population multitúd·ō -inis *f*; **the total
number of the population** númer·us
-ī *m* omnis multitúdinis

port port·us -ūs *m*

previously ánteā

principal (chief) prīnc·eps -ipis

productivity (of fields, mines, etc.)
fertilit·ās -átis *f*

project (of a promontory or cape)
excúrr·ō -ere; **to project far out into
the sea** excúrrere longē in mare

race gēn·s -tis *f*

raft rat·is -is *f*

rapids vad·um -ī *n* cāndicāns

reach (arrive at) pervén·iō -īre *ad* *or* in
(+ *acc*)

region régi·ō -ónis *f*

ridge iug·um -ī *n*

right dexter -(e)ra -(e)rum; **on the right** dextrā, ā dexterā; **(to the) right** dextrōrsūm; **to turn right** dextrōrsūm sē vértēre

rise (*of a mountain*) surg·ō -ere; (*of several mountains*) cōnsúrgere; (*of a river, have its source*) (ex)órīor (ex)órīrī; **the Tiber rising in the Apennines** Tíberis monte Apennínō (ex)óriēns

river flūm·en -inis *n*, amn·is -is *m* (*with no distinction as to size*)

river bed álve·us -ī *m*

Roman Rōmān·us -a -um

Rome Rōm·a -ae *f* (*often referred to simply as urbs*)

rugged asp·er -era -erum

sail nāvigāre, (nāve) vehor vehī vectus sum

sea mar·e -is *n*

seacoast ōr·a -ae *f* marítima, līt·us -oris *n*

seashore act·a -ae *f*

separate sēparāre, discérn·ō -ere, dístingu·ō -ere; **it is separated from Gaul by the Rhine River** discérnitur (*or dístinguitur or sēparátur*) ā Gállīā amne Rhēnō

shallow tenu·is -is -e

short brev·is -is -e

side lat·us -eris *n*; **on the other side of** ultrā (+ *acc*); **on the right (side) of** ā lātere dextrō (+ *gen*); **on this side of** cis or citrā (+ *acc*)

site sit·us -ūs *m*, loc·us -ī *m* (*pl*: loc·a -órum *npl*)

situated on, near appósit·us -a -um (+ *dat*); **to be situated on a hill** insíd·ō -ere collem

size magnitúd·ō -inis *f*, amplitúd·ō -inis *f*

slope *s* clīv·us -ī *m*; **steep (gentle) slope** árdūus (lēnis) clīvus

slope *intr* verg·ō -ere; **sloping toward the sea** vergēns ad mare

source fōn·s -tis *m*

south *adj* infér·ior -ior -ius, merīdián·us -a -um; **on the south side** lātere merīdiánō

south *adv* ad merídiem; **south of** infrā (+ *acc*)

south *s* merídi·ēs -ēī *m*, merīdián·um -ī *n*; **in the south** ā merídiē

southern *s* merīdián·us -a -um, infér·ior -ior -ius

southward in merídiem versus (*versus is an adverb*)

spring fōn·s -tis *m*

state stat·us -ūs *m*, cívit·ās -átis *f*

strait frēt·um -ī *n*; **Strait of Messina** frētum Sículum

stream rīv·us -ī *m*

stretch *see extend*

suburb subúrbi·um -ī *n*; **suburbs** continént·ia -ium *npl*

summit cacúm·en -inis *n*

swamp pal·ūs -údis *f*

then (*next*) dein, inde; (*at that time*) tum

Tiber Tíber·is -is *m*; (*acc*: Tíberim)

tide aest·us -ūs *m*

topography locórum dēscrípti·ō -ónis *f*

town oppid·um -ī *n*; **small town** oppídul·um -ī *n*

travel iter fác·iō -ere fēcī factus; (*by sea*) (nāve) veh·or -ī vectus sum

tributary flúvi·us -ī *m*

Tyrrhenian Sea Tyrrhénicum mar·e -is *n*, Tyrr(h)énium mare

Umbria Úmbri·a -ae *f*

United States (of America) Ūnītī
Stat·ūs -uum *mpl* (Américae),
Civitatēs Foederātae Americae *fpl*

universe ūnivērs·um -ī *n*, ūnivērsit·ās
-ātis *f*

valley vall·ēs -is *f*

Veii Vēi·ī -ōrum *mpl*

village vīc·us -ī *m*

west occid·ēns -ētis *m*; **in the west** ab
occidēte; **to the west** in occidētem
versus (versus *is an adverb*)

western occidentāl·is -is -e

westward in occidētem versus (versus
is an adverb)

widen *intr* (of a country) sē pand·ō -ere

width lātītūd·ō -inis *f*; **in width**
lātītūdine, in lātītūdinem

winding flexuōs·us -a -um; **winding**
route ámbit·us -ūs *m*

world mund·us -ī *m*, orb·is -is *m*
terrārum

THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

Ūnītī Statūs Americae/Civitatēs Foederātae Americae

[**Note**—The name of each State is given, followed by the name of its capital (*cap*), sometimes another large city or two, the adjective form and the substantive (s) for the inhabitant of the State.]

Alabama Alabám·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Montgomery Mōn·s -tis *m*
Gomericí; **Mobile** Mōbil·is -is *f*; *adj*
Alabāmēns·is -is -e

Alabaman *s* Alabāmēns·is -is (*gen pl*:
-ium) *mf*

Alaska Alásc·a -ae *f*; (*cap*) **Juneau**
Iunéll·um -ī *n*; **Anchorage**
Ancorári·a -ae *f*; *adj* Alascán·us -a
-um

Alaskan *s* Alascán·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Arizona Arizón·a -ae *f*; (*cap*) **Phoenix**
Phoen·ix -icis *f*; *adj* Arizónēns·is
-is -e

Arizonan *s* Arizónēns·is -is (*gen pl*:
-ium) *mf*

Arkansas Arcānsi·a -ae *f*; (*cap*) **Little**
Rock Petrícul·a -ae *f*; *adj*
Arcānsiēns·is -is -e

Arkansan *s* Arcānsiēns·is -is (*gen pl*:
-ium) *mf*

California Califórni·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Sacramento Sacramént·um -ī *n*; **Los**
Angeles Angelópol·is -is *f*;
Hollywood Ácrifóliórum Silv·a -ae
f; **San Diego** Didacópol·is -is *f*; **San**
Francisco Franciscópol·is -is *f*; *adj*
Californiēns·is -is -e

Californian *s* Californiēns·is -is (*gen*
pl: -ium) *mf*

Colorado Colōrát·um -ī *n*; (*cap*)
Denver Denvéri·um -ī *n*; **Durango**
Dūráng·um -ī *n*; *adj* Colōrātēns·is
-is -e

Coloradan *s* Colōrātēns·is -is (*gen pl*:
-ium) *mf*

Connecticut Connecticút·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)
Hartford Hardifórdi·a -ae *f*; *adj*
Connecticūtēns·is -is -e; *s*
Connecticūtēns·is -is (*gen pl*: -ium)
mf

Delaware Delevári·a -ae *f*; (*cap*) **Dover**
Dubr·is -is *f*; *adj* Delavarián·us -a
-um

Delawarean *s* Delevārián·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Florida Flórid·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Tallahassee Tellahássi·a -ae *f*;

Miami Miámi·a -ae *f*; **Palm Beach**

Ōr·a -ae *f* Palmária; *adj* Flōridián·us -a -um

Floridian *s* Flōridián·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Georgia Geórgi·a -ae *f*; (*cap*) **Atlanta**

Atlánt·a -ae *f*; **Athens** Athén·ae

-árum *fpl*; **Savannah** Savánn·a -ae *f*;

adj Georgián·us -a -um

Georgian *s* Georgián·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Hawaii Havaí·ī -órum *mpl*; (*cap*)

Honolulu Honolúl·um -ī *n*; **Pearl**

Harbor Port·us -ūs *m* Margaritárius

Hawaiian *adj* Havaíán·us -a -um; *s*

Havaíán·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Idaho Ídah·um -ī *n*; (*cap*) **Boise**

Xylópol·is -is *f*; *adj* Idahéns·is -is -e

Idahoan *s* Idahéns·is -is (*gen pl*: -ium) *mf*

Illinois Illinoési·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Springfield Cāmpifōn·s -tis *m*;

Chicago Chicāg·um -ī *n*; *adj*

Illinoesián·us -a -um

Illinois *s* Illinoesián·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Indiana Indián·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Indianapolis Indiānāpól·is -is *f*; *adj*

Indiānéns·is -is -e

Indianian *s* Indiānéns·is -is *mf*

Iowa Íov·a -ae *f*; (*cap*) **Des Moines**

Monachópol·is -is *f*; *adj* Iován·us -a -um

Iowan *s* Iován·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Kansas Cānsi·a -ae *f*; (*cap*) **Topeka**

Topéc·a -ae *f*; **Kansas City**

Cānsiópolis -is -is *f*; *adj* Cānsián·us -a -um

Kansan *s* Cānsián·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Kentucky Kentúki·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Frankfort Francofúrt·um -ī *n*;

Lexington Lexintóni·a -ae *f*; *adj*

Kentukián·us -a -um

Kentuckian *s* Kentukián·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Louisiana Ludovicián·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Baton Rouge Rubrobást·um -ī *n*;

New Orleans Nov·a Auréli·a -ae *f*;

adj Ludoviciánéns·is -is -e

Louisianan *s* Ludoviciánéns·is -is *mf*

Maine Cenománnic·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Augusta Augúst·a -ae *f*; *adj*

Cenománéns·is -is -e

Mainer *s* Cenománnic·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Maryland Terr·a -ae *f* Maríae; (*cap*)

Annapolis Annápol·is -is *f*;

Baltimore Baltimōr·a -ae *f*; *adj* (*use genitive* Terrae Maríae)

Massachusetts Massaciússet·a -ae *f*;

(*cap*) **Boston** Bostóni·a -ae *f*; *adj*

Massaciusetán·us -a -um; *s*

Massaciussetán·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Michigan Michigáni·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Lansing Lánsing·a -ae *f*; **Detroit**

Detroit·um ī *n*; *adj* Michigánéns·is -is -e

Michigander Michigánéns·is -is (*gen pl*: -ium) *mf*

Minnesota Minnesót·a -ae *f*; (*cap*) **St.**

Paul Paulópolis -is -is *f*; **Minneapolis**

Minneápol·is -is -is *f*; *adj*

Minnesótán·us -a -um

Minnesotan *s* Minnesótán·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Mississippi Mississíppi·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Jackson Iacsóni·a -ae *f*; *adj*

Mississippíán·us -a -um

Mississippian *s* Mississippíán·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Missouri Missúri·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Jefferson City Ieffersóni·a -ae *f*; *adj*

Missúrián·us -a -um

Missourian *s* Missúrián·us -ī (·a -ae *f*)

- Montana** Montán·a -ae f; (cap) **Helena** Helenópolis -is f; adj Montānián·us -a -um
- Montanan** s Montānián·us -ī m (·a -ae f)
- Nebraska** Nebrásc·a -ae f; (cap) **Lincoln** Lincólni·a -ae f; adj Nebrascán·us -a -um
- Nebraskan** s Nebrascán·us -ī m (·a -ae f)
- Nevada** Nivát·a -ae f; (cap) **Carson City** Carsóni·a -ae f; **Reno** Rēn·um -ī n; adj Nivātēns·is -is -e
- Nevadan** s Nivātēns·is -is (gen pl: -ium) mf
- New Hampshire** Nova Hantescír·a -ae f; (cap) **Concord** Concórdi·a -ae f; adj Novohantescirán·us -a -um; s Novohantescirán·us -ī m (·a -ae f)
- New Jersey** Nova Caesaré·a -ae f; (cap) **Trenton** Trentóni·a -ae f; **Newark** Nov·a Arc·a -ae f; adj Novocaesariēns·is -is -e
- New Jerseyite** s Novocaesariēns·is -is mf
- New Mexico** Nov·um Méxic·um -ī n; (comp) **Santa Fe** Fidépol·is -is f; adj Novomexicán·us -a -um
- New Mexican** s Novomexicán·us -ī m (·a -ae f)
- New York** (state) Nov·um Eborác·um -ī n; (cap) **Albany** Álbán·um -ī n; **Rochester** Rúcup·ae -ārum fpl; **Buffalo** Búfal·um -ī n; adj Neo-Eborácēns·is -is -e
- New York** (city) Nov·um Eborác·um -ī n; **Bronx** Brónxi·a -ae f; **Brooklyn** Brúclín·um -ī n; **Long Island** Long·a Ínsul·a -ae f; **Manhattan** Manhátan·um -ī n
- New Yorker** s Neo-Eborácēns·is -is mf
- North Carolina** Carolín·a -ae Septentrionál·is -is f; (cap) **Raleigh** Raléi·a -ae f; adj Carolínēns·is Septentrionál·is -is -e
- North Carolinian** s Carolínēns·is -is mf Septentrionális
- North Dakota** Dacót·a -ae Septentrionál·is -is f; (cap) **Bismark** Bismarcópol·is -is f
- North Dakotan** Dacótán·us -ī m (·a -ae f) Septentrionális
- Ohio** Ohí·um -ī n; (cap) **Columbus** Columbópol·is -is f; **Cincinnati** Cincinnatiátópol·is -is f; adj Ohiēns·is -is -e
- Ohioan** s Ohiēns·is -is (gen pl: -ium) mf
- Oklahoma** Oclahóm·a -ae f; (cap) **Oklahoma City** Oclahóm·a -ae Urb·s -is f; adj Oclahómēns·is -is -e
- Oklahoman** s Oclahómēns·is -is (gen pl: -ium) mf
- Oregon** Oregóni·a -ae f; (cap) **Salem** Salem indecl n; adj Oregōniēns·is -is -e
- Oregonian** s Oregōniēns·is -is (gen pl: -ium); mf
- Pennsylvania** Pennsilvāni·a -ae f; (cap) **Harrisburg** Harrisbúrg·um -ī n; **Philadelphia** Philadélphi·a -ae f; **Pittsburgh** Pittsbúrg·um -ī n; adj Pennsilvāniēns·is -is -e
- Pennsylvanian** s Pennsilvāniēns·is -is (gen pl: -ium) mf
- Rhode Island** Rhodēns·is -is Ínsul·a -ae f; (cap) **Providence** Prōvidēnti·a -ae f; adj Rhodēns·is -is
- Rhode Islander** s Rhodēns·is -is (gen pl: -ium) mf
- South Carolina** Carolín·a -ae Meridiōnál·is -is f; (cap) **Columbia** Colúmbi·a -ae f; adj Carolínēns·is -is -e
- South Carolinian** s Carolínēns·is -is (gen pl: -ium) mf Meridiōnális

South Dakota Dacōt·a -ae

Merīdiōnāl·is -is *f*; (*cap*) **Pierre**

Petrópolis -is *f*; *adj* Dacōtān·us -a
-um

South Dakotan *s* Dacōtān·us -ī *m* (·a

-ae *f*) Merīdiōnāl·is -is

Tennessee Tennési·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Nashville Nasbúrg·um -ī *n*; *adj*

Tennesián·us -a -um

Tennessean *s* Tennesián·us -ī *m* (·a

-ae *f*)

Texas Téxi·ā -ae *f*; (*cap*) **Austin**

Austinópolis -is -is *f*; **Dallas**

Dallási·um -ī *n*; **Houston**

Hustópolis -is -is *f*; *adj* Texián·us -a
-um

Texan *s* Tex·ās -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Utah Ūta -ae *f*; (*cap*) **Salt Lake City**

Urb·s -is *f* Lacūs Salsī; *adj* Ūténs·is
-is -e

Utahan *s* Ūténs·is -is *m* (*gen pl*
-ium) *mf*

Vermont Mōn·s -tis *m* Víridis ; (*cap*)

Montpelier Mōn·s -tis *m* Pessulānus

adj (*use genitive* Montis Víridis)

Virginia Virgíni·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Richmond Ricmóndi·a -ae *f*; *adj*

Virginiéns·is -is -e

Virginian *s* Virginiéns·is -is (*gen pl*:
-ium) *mf*

Washington Vashintóni·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Olýmpia Olýmpi·a -ae *f*; *adj*

Vashintóniéns·is -is -e

Washingtonian Vashintóniéns·is -is
(*gen pl*: -ium) *mf*

West Virginia Virgíni·a -ae *f*

Occidentális; (*cap*) **Charleston**

Carolópol·is -is *f*

West Virginian Virginiéns·is -is (*gen*
pl: -ium) *mf* Occidentál·is

Wisconsin Visconsíni·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Madison Madisóni·a -āe *n*; *adj*

Visconsián·us -a -um

Wisconsinite Visconsián·us -ī *m* (·a
-ae *f*)

Wyoming Vyómin·a -ae *f*; **Casper**

Caspéri·a -ae *f*; **Cheyenne**

Cheyenn·a -ae *f*; *adj* Vyominánus -a
-um

Wyomingite Vyominán·us -ī *m* (·a -ae
f)

Chapter XXIV: Travel

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I At the New York train station.

- Diána** Salvē! Velim comparāre tēsseram itinerāriam prīmae classis. *Diane: Hello! I'd like to buy a first-class ticket.*
- Tesserārius** Quō, quaesō? *Ticket agent: Where to, please?*
- Diána** In Califōrniam. *To California.*
- Tesserārius** Vīsne tēsseram unīus cursūs an tēsseram itūs reditūsque? *Do you want a one-way ticket or a round-trip ticket?*
- Diána** Tēsseram itūs reditūsque. Quotā hōrā trāmen meum abscedit? *A round-trip ticket. At what time does the train depart?*
- Tesserārius** Hōrā undécimā. *At eleven o'clock.*
- Diána** Ā quotā crepīdine trāmen abscedit? *From which platform does the train depart?*
- Tesserārius** Ā crepīdine quārtā, in orbitā décimā. *From platform 4, on track 10.*
- Diána** Estne trāmen dirēctum? *Is it a through train?*
- Tesserārius** Mínimē. Mūtābis trāmina in statióne Chicāgēnsī. Quās sárcinās tēcum habēs? *No. You will change trains at the Chicago station. What luggage do you have with you?*
- Diána** Ūnum riscum, ūnam bulgam, ūnam pēram. *One suitcase, a handbag, and a shoulder bag.*
- Tesserārius** Cūratiō sarcinārum est illic, iuxtā oecum praestōlātōrium. *The baggage check is over there near the waiting room.*
- Diána** Suntne báulī in promptū? *Are there porters available?*
- Tesserārius** Ita. Illi illic stant prope scālās móbilēs. *Yes. They are standing there near the escalator.*
- Diána** Suntne currus cēnātōrius et currus dormitōrius in hōc trāmine? *Are there a dining car and a pullman car on this train?*
- Tesserārius** Certē. *Certainly.*

Diána Quam mox mihi licet trāmen
ferriviārium īnscēdere? *How soon may I board the train?*

Tesserārius Vīgīntī aut summum trīgīntā
minūtīs. En, cape hoc hōrārium
trāminum. *In twenty or at most thirty
minutes. Here, take this train
schedule.*

Diána Grātiās. Quantī cōnstat téssera
itinerāria? *Thanks. How much is the ticket?*

Tesserārius Centum octōgīntā quīnque
dóllarīs. *\$185.00.*

Diána Ecce vectūram. *Here's the fare.*

Tesserārius Grātiās. Bene ámbulā!
Thanks. Have a good trip!

LEVEL II **At the airport.**

Rosa Salvē! Velim tésseram itinerāriam
(ad urbem) Vindóbonam in
Aústriam comparāre. *Rose: Hello! I'd like to buy a
ticket to Vienna, Austria.*

Tesserārius Habēsne sēdem reservātam?
*Ticket agent: Did you make a
reservation?*

Rosa Nōn hábeō. *I have not.*

Tesserārius Contíngit tibi ut áliquot sēdēs
vácuac restent. Optāsne sēdem
přimac classis? *Lucky for you, there are still some
empty seats. Do you want a
first-class seat?*

Rosa Sānē. *Of course.*

Tesserārius In quā parte āeróplanī vīs sedēre?
*In what section of the plane do
you want to sit?*

Rosa Meā nīl ínterest. Volō autem
prope éxítum sedēre, sī fferī
potest. *It makes no difference to me; but I
want to sit near an exit if
possible.*

Tesserārius Probē. Hábeō forte vácuam sēdem
in órdine dēcīmō quartō. *Fine. I happen to have an empty
seat in row fourteen.*

Rosa Praéferō sēdem fenestrálem. *I prefer a window seat.*

Tesserārius Bene hoc habet. *That's fine.*

Rosa	Nōnne póterō voláre rēctā in Aústriam?	<i>Can I fly directly to Austria?</i>
Tesserárius	Tibi volándum erit aut per Parísios aut Francofórdiam.	<i>You will have to fly either by way of Paris or Frankfurt.</i>
Rosa	Mihi opus erit aëróplana mūtáre?	<i>Will I have to change planes?</i>
Tesserárius	Ita, apud utrúmque aëropórtum.	<i>Yes, at either airport.</i>
Rosa	Apud quem aëropórtum est coniuñctiō mélior?	<i>At which airport is there the better connection?</i>
Tesserárius	Commorátiō apud aërpórtum Francofordiēnsē est satis brevis: duās hōrās summum.	<i>The layover at the Frankfurt airport is fairly short: two hours at most.</i>
Rosa	Bene. Cápam volátum per Francofórdiam.	<i>Good. I'll take the flight by way of Frankfurt.</i>
Tesserárius	Probē.	<i>Fine.</i>
Rosa	Licétne hanc sarcínulam manuálem mēcum in aëróplanum portáre?	<i>May I take my hand luggage with me on the plane?</i>
Tesserárius	Licet tibi. Modo repóne eam in retináculō sarcináli suprā sēdem tuam.	<i>You may. Just put it in the luggage rack over your seat.</i>
Rosa	Quánti cōnstat téssera?	<i>How much is the ticket?</i>
Tesserárius	Ecce tésseram tuam. Prétium est octingénti trīgíntā dóllari.	<i>Here's your ticket. The price is \$830.00.</i>
Rosa	Praesentáriam pecúniā nōn hábeō. Ecce autem meam tabéllam trībútáriam.	<i>I don't have the cash. But here's my credit card.</i>
Tesserárius	Bene est. Grátias. Bene valē!	<i>That's fine. Thanks. So long.</i>

LEVEL III Getting ready to go by car.

Uxor	Heus, tū, estne autocinétum nostrum adhūc in officiñā reparatóriā? Ut satis scīs, mihi hódie obsōnándum est.	Wife: <i>Hey, you, is our car still at the repair shop? As you well know, I have to go shopping today.</i>
Marítus	Mínimē. Ego id iam ex officiñā reparatóriā petívī.	Husband: <i>No. I've already fetched it from the repair shop.</i>

Uxor	Estne proinde iste currus tandem reparátus?	<i>That car, then, is finally repaired?</i>
Marítus	Ita, motórium rúrsus in bonō statū est.	<i>Yes, the motor is in good shape again.</i>
Uxor	Et quid dē cúmmeīs canthīs?	<i>And what about the tires?</i>
Marítus	Cúmmeī canthī iam ā mechánicō opífice mūtátae sunt.	<i>The mechanic has already changed the tires.</i>
Uxor	Dā óperam eīs rēbus contínuō! Nōn únivérsum diem hábeō quem absúmam.	<i>See to those things immediately! I don't have all day to waste.</i>
Marítus	Dábō profécťō. Sed meméntō, necesse habébimus cōsístere in statiōne benzínáriā ad benzínium comparándum.	<i>I will all right. But remember that we will have to stop at the service station to get gas.</i>
Uxor	Rúrsus?	<i>Again?</i>
Marítus	Rúrsus quidem! Benzínium enim iam déficit.	<i>Yes, again! The gas, you see, is running low.</i>
Uxor	Dī immortálēs! Ecquándō mihi erit locus obsōnándī! Istuc autocínētum est ingēns moléstia!	<i>Good heavens! When will I ever have a chance to shop? That car is a big pain in the neck!</i>
Marítus	(<i>Sēcum</i>) Et sīc tū quoque!	<i>(To himself) And so are you!</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

accelerator accelerátr·um -ī *n*

accident cās·us -ūs *m*; **an accident happened on the way** cāsus fortuítō ēvēnit in itínere

airbag áerius foll·is -is *m*

airline trām·es -itis *m* áerius

airplane áeróplan·um -ī *n*

airport áeropórt·us -ūs *m*

air pressure préssi·ō -ōnis *f* áeria

aisle (*of bus, plane, train*) ambulátiúncul·a -ae *f*

ambulance autoárcer·a -ae *f*

arrival advént·us -ūs *m*

arrival time temp·us -oris *n* adveniéndī

arrive advén·iō -íre advēni adventúrus; **arrive at** pervén·iō -íre pervēni ad *or in* (+ *acc*)

automobile autoraéd·a -ae *f*, autocínēt·um -ī *n* (*used interchangeably*)

baggage cart chíramáxi·um -ī *n* sarcinárum

baggage check cūrátī·ō -ōnis *f* sarcinárum

board íncénd·ō -ere -ī

bicycle bírot·a -ae *f*

brake *s* sufflám·en -inis *n*; **to apply the brake** rotás sufflāmináre

brake lights (autoraédae) lúminár·ia -ium *npl* postíca

bumper cont·us -ī *m* tūtórius

bus autoraéd·a -ae *f* longa, coenautocínēt·um -ī *n*

bypass circúit·us -ūs *m*

can váscul·um -ī *n* stánneum

car curr·us -ūs *m*, autoraéd·a -ae *f*; **to climb into a car** in currum *or* in autoraédam íncénd·ō -ere -ī; **to**

drive a car currum *or* autoraédam gubernáre *or* agō ágere ēgī áctus; **to get (buy) a car** currum *or* autoraédam comparáre; **to get into a car** currum *or* autoraédam intrō·grédior -gredi -gréssus sum; **to get out of the car** dē currū *or* autoraédā ēgrédior ēgredi ēgréssus sum; **to go by (or in a) car** currū *or* autoraédā eō íre ívi *or* ii; **to go to town by car** autoraédā in urbem sē cónferō -ferre -tulī; **to head for someplace in a car** autóraedā áliquem locum pet·ō -ere -ívi -ítus; **to put the car into the garage** autoraédam in receptáculō collocáre; **to rent a car** autoraédam condúc·ō -ere condúxi condúctus; **to ride in a car** autoraédā vehor vehī vectus sum; **to stop the car** autoraédam sistō sistere stíti; **to take a ride in a car** gestatiónem autoraédā facere; **to take s.o. by car** áliquem autoraédā dúc·ō -ere dūxi ductus; **to take s.o. home in a car** áliquem domum autoraédā addúcere; **car door** autoraédae ostíol·um -ī *n*; **car key** clav·is -is accēnsíva -ae *f*

carry (*luggage*) báiluláre

car wash autocínēt·i laváti·ō -ōnis *f*; (*place*) autocínēti lavatóri·um -ī *n*

change (buses, trains, planes) mūtáre (autoraédās longās, trámina, áeróplana)

check into a hotel nōmen in tábulas dēversórii réfer·ō reférre rétuli; **check out of a hotel** ā dēversóriō discēd·ō -ere discéssī (post ratiónem compōnéndam)

check luggage sarcinās mandáre

class: first-class seat sēd·ēs -is *f* prímae classis; **second-class seat** sēd·ēs -is *f* secúndae classis; **tourist-class seat** sēd·ēs -is *f* túrísticae classis

clutch pedál·e -is *n* iūnctiōnis (*or* cōpulātiōnis)

cockpit cēllul·a -ae *f* āērōplanī

collision collīsi·ō -ōnis *f*

concourse oec·us -ī *m* praestōlātōrius

conductor (*of a train*) trāminis
īnspect·or -ōris *m*

connection conīūncti·ō -ōnis *f*

depart abscēd·ō -ere abscēssī
abscēssūrus

departure abscēss·us -ūs *m*

detour flex·us -ūs *m*

diesel engine Dīseliānum mōtr·um -ī *n*

diesel fuel Dīseliānum benzīn·um -ī *n*

dining car curr·us -ūs *m* cēnātōrius

drive (*a car, truck, bus*) gubernāre, ag·ō
-ere ēgī āctus; **to drive s.o. home**
āliquem domum autocīnētō (*or*
autoraédā) addūcere

driver autoraedāri·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*),
autocīnētīst·ēs *mf*

driver's license autoraedāriī diplōm·a
-atis *n*

engine māchināmēt·um -ī *n*, mōtr·um
-ī *n*

escalator scāl·ae -ārum *fpl* mōbilēs

exhaust ēmissāri·um -ī *n*

exhaust pipe tub·us -ī *m* ēmissārius

exit ēxit·us -ūs *m*

express train trām·en -inis *n*
rapidīssimum

fare vectūr·a -ae *f*

ferry nāv·is -is *f* trāiectōria

fill it up, please! immissārium
benzīnārium replē tōtum, quaesō!

flight volāt·us -ūs *m*

fly *tr* **fly a plane** āērōplanum gubernāre
II *intr* volāre; (*of a passenger*)
āērōplanō vehor, vehī, vectus sum

fuel mātēri·a -ae *f* prōpulsōria

gallon gall·on -ōnis *m*

garage autocīnētī (autocīnētōrum)
receptācul·um -ī *n*; (*repair garage*)
officīn·a -ae *f* reparātōria

gas benzīn·um -ī *n*; **to step on the gas**
accelerāre

gas pedal pedál·e -is *n* accelerātiōnis

gas pump āntli·a -ae *f* benzīnāria

gas station stāti·ō -ōnis *f* benzīnāria

gas tank immissāri·um -ī *n* benzīnārium

gate (*at airport*) ādit·us -ūs *m*

gearshift iūncti·ō -ōnis *f* vėlōcītātum

get off (*a bus, plane, ship, train*)
ēgrēdiōr ēgrēdī ēgrēssus sum dē (+
abl)

get on (*a bus, plane, ship, train*)
īnscēnd·ō -ere -ī in (+ *acc*)

grease ūng·ō ūngere ūnxī ūnctus

grease job ūncti·ō -ōnis *f*

handbag bulg·a -ae *f*; (*of leather and*
bigger than a bulga) vídul·us -ī *m*

hand luggage sarcínul·ae -ārum *fpl*
manuālēs

hangar receptācul·um -ī *n*
āērōplanōrum

headlight autoraédae lūminār·e -is *n*; **to**
turn on (turn off) the bright (dim)
lights lūmināria praecandēntia
(candēntia) accēnd·ō -ere -ī
(exstīngu·ō -ere exstīnxī)

helicopter helicōpter·um -ī *n*; **to be**
taken by helicopter **to per**
helicōpterum trāns·vehor -vehī
-vēctus sum; **to fly a helicopter**
helicōpterum gubernāre; **to fly in a**
helicopter helicōpterō vehor vehī
vectus sum

highway vi·a -ae *f* autocīnētica

hood plōxen·um -ī *n*

- horn** búcin·a -ae *f*; **to blow the horn**
búcinā clang·ō -ere
- hostess** hóspit·a -ae *f* aéria
- information** infíci·um -ī *n*
- interchange** coniuncti·ō -ōnis *f* viárum
- intersection** cómpit·um -ī *n*
- jet plane** aëróplan·um -ī *n*
pyraulocínéticum
- kilometer** chíliómetr·um -ī *n*
- land** (*of a plane*) deórsum appéll·ō -ere
áppulī, dēscénd·ō -ere -ī; (*of a ship*)
ad terram appéllere; (*of a passenger*
on a ship) in terram egrédior -ī
egréssus sum
- layover** commoráti·ō -ōnis *f*
- lead: does this road lead to ... ?**
dūcítne haec via ad (+ *acc*)?
- license** (*to drive*) diplóm·a -atis *n*
gubernatiónis
- license plate** notácul·um -ī *n* autocínétī
- liter** litr·a -ae *f*
- locomotive** curr·us -ūs *m* tractórius
- lost: get lost** aberráre
- lubrication** úncti·ō -ōnis *f* autocínétī
- luggage** sárcin·ae -árum *fpl*; **piece of luggage** sárcin·a -ae *f*; (*small*)
sarcínul·a -ae *f*
- luggage rack** retinácul·um -ī *n*
sarcinále; **put up into the luggage rack**
in retináculō repón·ō -ere
repósui
- luggage tag** pittáci·um -ī *n* sarcinále
- mechanic** mechánicus óp·ifex -íficis *m*
- moped** autobirótul·a -ae *f*
- motel** dēversóri·um -ī *n* vehiculárium
- motor** mōtóri·um -ī *n*, mōtr·um -ī *n*
- motor boat** scaph·a -ae *f* automatária
- motorcycle** autobírot·a -ae *f*
- motorcyclist** autobírotári·us -ī *m* (·a
-ae *f*)
- motorist** autoraedári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*),
autocínētíst·ēs -ae *mf*
- motor oil** óle·um -ī *n* mōtórii
- no parking** cavē státuās vehículum!
- no stopping** nē sístitō!
- no passing** cavē praeveháris!
- pack** (*luggage*) cóllig·ō -ere collégī
colléctus
- park** *tr* státu·ō -ere -uī **|| intr**
autocínétum statúere
- parking fee** tax·a -ae *f* statíva
- parking lot** áre·a -ae *f* statíva
- parking-lot attendant** cust·ōs -ōdis *mf*
áreae statívae
- passenger** vect·or -ōris *m*, vectr·ix -ícis
f
- passenger train** trām·en -inis *n*
commúne
- passing: no passing!** cavē praeveháris!
- passport** commeátus diplóm·a -atis *n*
- pilot** *s* gubernát·or -ōris *m*, gubernátr·ix
-ícis *f*
- pilot** *tr* gubernáre
- plane** aëróplan·um -ī *n*
- platform** (*in a train station*) crepíd·ō
-inis *f*
- porter** báíul·us -ī *m*
- pullman car** curr·us -ūs *m* dormitórius
- railroad** ferrívi·a -ae *f*
- railroad car** curr·us -ūs *m* ferriviárius
- railroad station** státi·ō -ōnis *f*
ferriviária
- reach** (*arrive at*) pervén·iō -íre pervēnī
pervéntus ad *or* in (+ *acc*)
- reservation** reserváti·ō -ōnis *f*
- reserve** reserváre
- restaurant** caupón·a -ae *f*

restroom loc·us -ī *m* sēcrētus

return rēd·eō -īre -īī rēditus

ride (*a car, plane, train*) vehor, vehī,
vectus sum (autocinētō, aērōplanō,
trāmīne)

ride vécti·ō -ōnis *f*; **to go for a ride**
gestātiōnem autocinētō fácere

route certus curs·us -ūs *m*

row ōrd·ō -inis *m*

runway aērōdrom·us -ī *m*

sail nāvigāre, nāve veh·or -ī vectus sum

schedule: bus schedule hōrāri·um -ī *n*
autoraedārum longārum; **flight**
schedule hōrāri·um -ī *n*
aērōplanōrum; **train schedule**
hōrāri·um -ī *n* trāminum

seat sēd·ēs -is *f*; **aisle seat** sēdēs
andrōnālis; **back seat** sēdēs
postērior; **front seat** sēdēs antērior;
reserved seat sēdēs reservāta;
window seat sēdēs fenestrālis

seatbelt cinctūr·a -ae *f* sēcūrītātis;
fasten (unfasten, take off) the
seatbelt cinctūram sēcūrītātis
adstrīng·ō -ere adstrīxī adstrīctus
(laxāre, levāre)

service station stāti·ō -ōnis *f* benzīnāria

shoulder bag per·a -ae *f*

side street vi·a -ae *f* laterālis

skycap bāiul·us -ī *m*

sleeping car curr·us -ūs *m* dormitōrius

slow down cursum réprimō reprímere
reprēssī

spark plug candēl·a -ae *f* accēnsīva

speed limit mod·us -ī *m* vélōcitatīs

steer gubernāre

steering wheel rot·a -ae *f* moderātrīx

steward hos·pes -itis *m* aērius

stewardess hōspit·a -ae *f* aēria

stop (*come to a stop*) cōnsist·ō -ere
cōnstītī; **does the bus (train) stop in**
... subsistītne autoraēda longa
(trāmen) in (+ *abl*)?; **make a stop**
(*of a bus, plane, train*) commór·or
-ārī -ātus sum

stop-over commorāti·ō -ōnis *f*

street (*paved*) strāt·a -ae *f*

streetcar curr·us -ūs *m* ēlēcricus

street map tábul·a -ae *f* viāria

subway ferrívi·a -ae *f* subterrānea

suitcase vídul·us -ī *m*, risc·us -ī *m*;
(*small one*) ríscul·us -ī *m*

taillight lūminār·e -is *n* postícum

take off (*of a plane*) sūrsum in aēra
ascēnd·ō -ere -ī

take-off (*of a plane*) āvolāti·ō -ōnis *f*

taxi raed·a -ae *f* meritōria

terminal stāti·ō -ōnis *f* terminālis

ticket tēsser·a -ae *f* (itinerāria); **first-**
class (second-class) ticket tēssera
prīmae (secūndae) classis; **one-way**
ticket tēssera ūnūs cursūs; **punch**
the ticket tēsseram perforāre; **return**
ticket tēssera rēditūs; **round-trip**
ticket tēssera itūs reditūsque

ticket agent tēsserāri·us -ī *m*, (·a -ae *f*)

ticket window ōstíol·um -ī *n* tēsserārum

time table hōrāri·um -ī *n*

tire cúmmēus canth·us -ī *m*; **to put air**
in the tire cúmmēum canthum
īnflāre

toll rotāri·um -ī *n*, vectīg·al -ālis *n*
rotāre

toll booth tabérn·a -ae *f* rotāris

toll road vi·a -ae *f* rotāris

tour peregrīnāti·ō -ōnis *f*

tour bus coenautocinēt·um -ī *n*
perigētīcum

tour guide mystagóg·us -ī *m* (·a
-ae *f*)

- tourist** peregrinātor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trīcis *f*)
- tourist class** class-is -is *f* tūristica
- track** (*rail*) orbita -ae *f*
- traffic** celebratās -ātis *f* viae, vehiculōrum frequentia -ae *f*
- traffic cop** vigil -is *mf* viatōrius (-a)
- traffic jam** affluentiā -ae *f* vehiculāria
- traffic light** sēmáphorūm -ī *n* (**red** rubrum; **yellow** flāvum; **green** víride)
- train** trām·en -inis *n*; **a through train** trāmen dīrēctum
- train schedule** hōrāriūm -ī *n* ferriviāle
- train station** stāti·ō -ōnis *f* ferriviāria
- train ticket** tésser·a -ae *f* ferriviāria
- transfer to** (*another train, etc.*) trāscénd·ō -ere -ī in (+ *acc*)
- transportation** vectūr·a -ae *f*, commēātūs vehicul·a -ōrum *npl*
- travel** iter fác·iō -ere fēcī factus; **travel by car (train, plane, ship)** autocinētō (trāmine, aērōplanō, nāvī) vehor vehī vectus sum
- travel agency** sēd·ēs -is *f* periēgētica
- travel agent** itīnerum prōcūrātor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trīcis *f*)
- traveler** viāt·or -ōris *m*, viātr·īx -īcis *f*; (*abroad*) peregrinātor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trīcis *f*)
- trip** iter, itīneris *n*; **take a trip** iter fácere
- trolley** curr·us -ūs *m* ēléctricus
- truck** autocinēt·um -ī *n* onerārium, autocárr·um -ī *n*
- truck driver, trucker** autocinētī onerāriū gubernāt·or -ōris *m*
- trunk** (*of a car*) receptācul·um -ī *n* sarcinārum; (*for clothes*) cist·a -ae *f*
- tunnel** (*for trains, cars*) spec·us -ūs *m* (ferriviārius, autocinēticus)
- turn** *s* (*in the road*) flex·us -ūs *m* viae; **take a wrong turn** pérperam vert·or -ī versus sum
- turn** *intr* vert·or -ī versus sum; **turn around** convért·or -ī convérsus sum
- turn-off** dēvertícul·um -ī *n*
- turnpike** strāt·a -ae *f* autocinētica quadripertíta
- turn signal** ind·ex -icis *m* dīrēctiōnis
- way** vi·a -ae *f*, it·er -īneris *n*; **what is the quickest (best) way to ... ?** quae est via brevíssima (óptima) ad (+ *acc*)?
- waiting room** oec·us -ī *m* praestōlātōrius
- window** (*of bus, car, etc.*) fenestéll·a -ae *f*
- window seat** sēd·ēs -is *f* fenestrális
- windshield** vitr·um -ī *n* antiāerium
- windshield wiper** vitritérgi·um -ū *n*

Chapter XXV: Teaching Grammar in Latin

CONVERSATIONS

[**Note 1**—In this chapter on teaching and learning Latin grammar in Latin, in place of the usual model conversations, there will be questions by the teacher (**Magistra**, **Magister**) and answers by the student (**Studēns**). Using these exchanges as models, Latin classes can be conducted in Latin. If some of the responses by the student seem overly long, they may easily be reformulated into several shorter questions. The grammatical terms and structures are based on the writings of the Roman grammarians.

Note 2—It is possible to proceed directly to “The Parsing of Words” which follows the section on principal parts, although it is better to at least read carefully the discussion of the principal parts in order to become familiar with the grammatical terminology before beginning to parse.]

┌────────── **Dē Pártibus Ōrātiónis** *The Parts of Speech*

Magist.	Partēs ōrātiónis quot sunt?	<i>How many parts of speech are there?</i>
Studēns	Octō.	<i>Eight.</i>
Magist.	Quae?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Nōmen, prōnōmen, verbum, adiectívum, advérbium, coniúctiō, praepositiō, interiéctiō.	<i>Noun, pronoun, verb, adjective, adverb, conjunction, preposition, interjection.</i>

┌────────── **Dē Nómīne** *The Noun*

[**Note**—When declining nouns, Roman grammarians used “hic, haec, hoc” as definite articles, meaning “the,” and not as demonstrative adjectives; they called them “prōnōmina articulāria praepositīva”, that is, “prepositive pronouns serving as articles.” Therefore, they will be translated as “the” in the declensions.]

Magist.	Dīc [or dā] nōmen próprium.	<i>Give a proper noun.</i>
Studēns	Caesar.	<i>Caesar.</i>
Magist.	Dīc nōmen appellatīvum.	<i>Give a common noun.</i>
Studēns	Puella.	<i>Girl.</i>

Magist.	Dīc nōmen collectīvum.	<i>Give a collective noun.</i>
Studēns	Pópulus.	<i>People.</i>
Magist.	Quārē “pópulus” dīcitur nōmen collectīvum?	<i>Why is “people” called a collective noun?</i>
Studēns	Quia “pópulus” est nūmerī singulāris at multitūdinem significāns.	<i>Because “people” is singular in number, but indicating plural.</i>
Magist.	Génera nōminum quot sunt?	<i>How many genders do nouns have?</i>
Studēns	Tria.	<i>Three.</i>
Magist.	Quae?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Genus masculīnum, ut “hic magīster”; genus fēminīnum, ut “haec mātrōna”; genus neutrum, ut “hoc dōnum.”	<i>Masculine gender, for example, “the teacher”; feminine gender, for example, “the lady”; neuter gender, for example, “the gift.”</i>
Magist.	Nūmerī nōminum quot sunt?	<i>How many numbers are there of nouns?</i>
Studēns	Duo.	<i>Two.</i>
Magist.	Quī?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Singulāris, ut “hic magīster”; plūrālis, ut “hī magīstrī.”	<i>Singular, for example, “the teacher”; plural, for example, “the teachers.”</i>
Magist.	Cāsūs nōminum quot sunt?	<i>How many cases of nouns are there?</i>
Studēns	Sex.	<i>Six.</i>
Magist.	Quī?	<i>What (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Nōminātivus, ut “hic magīster”; genitīvus, ut “hūius magīstrī”; datīvus, ut “huic magīstrō”; accūsātīvus, ut “hunc magīstrum”; vocātīvus, ut “ō magīster”; ablātīvus, ut “ab hōc magīstrō.”	<i>Nominative, for example, “the teacher”; genitive, for example, “of the teacher”; dative, for example, “to the teacher”; accusative, for example, “the teacher”; vocative, for example, “oh teacher”; ablative, for example, “from the teacher.”</i>

Magist.	Dā dēclīnātiōnem nōminis, gēneris fēminīnī, nūmerī singulāris.	<i>Give the declension of a noun of the feminine gender, singular number.</i>
Studēns	Nōminātvō cāsū: “haec puēlla”; genitvō cāsū: “hūius puēllae”; datvō cāsū: “huic puēllae”; accūsātvō cāsū: “hanc puēllam”; vocātvō cāsū: “ō puēlla”; ablātvō cāsū: “ab hāc puēllā.”	<i>In the nominative case: “the girl”; in the genitive case: “of the girl”; in the dative case: “to the girl”; in the accusative case: “the girl”; in the vocative case: “oh girl”; in the ablative case: “from the girl.”</i>
Magist.	Quae partēs ōrātiōnis eōdem modō dēclīnāntur?	<i>What parts of speech are declined in the same way?</i>
Studēns	Nōmina, prōnōmina, adiectīva, participia, gerūndia.	<i>Nouns, pronouns, adjectives, participles, and gerunds.</i>
Magist.	Dēclīnātiōnēs nōminum quot sunt?	<i>How many declensions of nouns are there?</i>
Studēns	Quīnque.	<i>Five.</i>
Magist.	Prīma quae est?	<i>What is the first (declension)?</i>
Studēns	Prīma dēclīnātiō est nōminis, cūius genitvūs singulāris in “ae” diphthōngō terminātur.	<i>The first declension is of a noun whose genitive singular ends in the diphthong “ae.”</i>
Magist.	Dā exēmplum.	<i>Give an example.</i>
Studēns	haec puēlla hūius puēllae	<i>the girl of the girl</i>
Magist.	Secūnda dēclīnātiō quae est?	<i>What is the second declension?</i>
Studēns	Secūnda dēclīnātiō est nōminis, cūius genitvūs singulāris in “ī” longā terminātur.	<i>The second declension is of a noun whose genitive singular ends in a long “i.”</i>
Magist.	Dā exēmplum.	<i>Give an example.</i>
Studēns	hic magīster hūius magīstrī vel hoc dōnum hūius dōnī	<i>the teacher of the teacher or the gift of the gift</i>
Magist.	Tērtia dēclīnātiō quae est?	<i>What is the third declension?</i>
Studēns	Tērtia dēclīnātiō est nōminis, cūius genitvūs singulāris in “is” brevī terminātur, ut “hic pater”, “hūius patris.”	<i>The third declension is of a noun whose genitive singular ends in a short “is,” for example, “the father,” “of the father.”</i>

Magist.	Quārta dēclīnātiō quae est?	<i>What is the fourth declension?</i>
Studēns	Quārta dēclīnātiō est nōminis, cūius genitīvus singulāris in “ūs” longā terminātur, ut “hic exērcitus,” “hūius exērcitūs.”	<i>The fourth declension is of a noun whose genitive singular ends in a long “ūs,” for example, “the army,” “of the army.”</i>
Magist.	Quīnta dēclīnātiō quae est?	<i>What is the fifth declension?</i>
Studēns	Quīnta dēclīnātiō est nōminis, cūius genitīvus singulāris terminātur in “ēī” dīvīsīs, ut “hic diēs,” “hūius diēī.”	<i>The fifth declension is of a noun whose genitive singular ends in “ēī” as separate letters, for example, “the day,” “of the day.”</i>
Magist.	Dēscrībe proprietātēs “magīster” nōminis.	<i>Parse the noun “teacher.”</i>
Studēns	“Magīster” est nōmen appellātīvum, masculīnī gēneris, nūmerī singulāris, cāsū nōminātīvō.	<i>“Teacher” is a common noun, masculine gender, singular number, in the nominative case.</i>

Dē Prōnōmine

The Pronoun

Magist.	Prōnōmen quid est?	<i>What is a pronoun?</i>
Studēns	Pars orātīōnis quae prō nōmine pōnitur.	<i>A part of speech which is used in place of a noun.</i>
Magist.	Nūmerī prōnōminum quot sunt?	<i>How many numbers do pronouns have?</i>
Studēns	Duo.	<i>Two.</i>
Magist.	Quī?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Singulāris, ut “ille”; plurālis, ut “illī.”	<i>Singular, for example, “that one”; plural, for example, “those.”</i>
Magist.	Gēnera prōnōminum quot sunt?	<i>How many genders do pronouns have?</i>
Studēns	Tria.	<i>Three.</i>
Magist.	Quae?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Genus masculīnum, fēminīnum, neutrum.	<i>Masculine, feminine, and neuter gender.</i>

Magist.	Prōnōmina sunt aut finīta aut infīnīta. Dā exēmpla prōnōminis finīti.	<i>Pronouns are either definite or indefinite. Give examples of a definite pronoun.</i>
Studēns	Ego, tū, ille.	<i>I, you, he.</i>
Magist.	Dā exēmpla prōnōminis infīnīti.	<i>Give examples of an indefinite pronoun.</i>
Studēns	Quī, āliquis.	<i>Who, someone.</i>
Magist.	Dā exēmpla prōnōminis dēmōnstrātivī.	<i>Give examples of a demonstrative pronoun.</i>
Studēns	Hic, ille.	<i>This one, that one.</i>
Magist.	Dā exēmpla prōnōminis relātīvī.	<i>Give examples of a relative pronoun.</i>
Studēns	Quī, quae, quod.	<i>Who, who, which.</i>
Magist.	Dā exēmpla prōnōminis interrōgātīvī.	<i>Give examples of an interrogative pronoun.</i>
Studēns	Quis, quid.	<i>Who, what.</i>
Magist.	Dā exēmpla prōnōminis intentiōnis.	<i>Give examples of an intensive pronoun.</i>
Studēns	Ipse, ipsa, ipsum.	<i>Himself, herself, itself.</i>
Magist.	Dā exēmpla prōnōminis recíprocī.	<i>Give examples of a reflexive pronoun.</i>
Studēns	Sē, sibi.	<i>Himself (herself, itself), to himself (herself, itself).</i>
Magist.	Dā exēmpla prōnōminis persōnālis.	<i>Give examples of a personal pronoun.</i>
Studēns	Ego, nōs, tū.	<i>I, we, you.</i>
Magist.	Prōnōmen est aut simplex aut compōsitum. Dā exēmplum prōnōminis simplicis.	<i>A pronoun is either simple or compound. Give an example of a simple pronoun.</i>
Studēns	Quis.	<i>Who.</i>
Magist.	Dā exēmplum prōnōminis compōsitī.	<i>Give an example of a compound pronoun.</i>
Studēns	Quisnam.	<i>Just who.</i>

Magist.	Ex quibus “quisnam” compónitur?	<i>Of what is “just who” composed?</i>
Studēns	Ex “quis” prōnōmine et ex “nam” partículā.	<i>Of the pronoun “who” and the particle “just.”</i>
Magist.	Estne figūra “quisquis” prōnōminis simplex an compósita?	<i>Is the form of the pronoun “whoever” simple or compound?</i>
Studēns	Est compósita.	<i>It is compound.</i>
Magist.	Dēscríbe proprietátēs “ego” prōnōminis.	<i>Parse the pronoun “I.”</i>
Studēns	“Ego” est prōnōmen finítum, géneris masculínī et fēminínī, persónae primae, númerī singuláris, cāsū nōminatívo.	<i>“I” is a definite pronoun, masculine and feminine, first person, singular, in the nominative case.</i>
Magist.	Dēscríbe proprietátēs “quōrum” prōnōminis.	<i>Parse the pronoun “of whom.”</i>
Studēns	“Quōrum” est prōnōmen relatívum aut interrōgatívum, persónae tertiae, númerī plūrális, géneris masculínī et neutríus, cāsū genitívo.	<i>“Of whom” or “whose” is a relative or interrogative pronoun, third person, plural, masculine and neuter, in the genitive case.</i>

Dē Verbō

The Verb

[Note—Roman grammarians recognized five moods; modern Latin grammars recognize three: indicative, subjunctive, and imperative.]

Magist.	Verbum quid est?	<i>What is a verb?</i>
Studēns	Pars orātiónis cum tēpore et persónā sine cāsū.	<i>A part of speech with tense and person, without case.</i>
Magist.	Modi quot sunt?	<i>How many moods are there?</i>
Studēns	Quínque.	<i>Five.</i>
Magist.	Quí?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Indicatívus, ut “legō”; subiūctívus, ut “cum legam”; imperatívus, ut “lege”; infínitívus, ut “légere”; impersónális, ut “légitur.”	<i>Indicative, for example, “I read, am reading”; subjunctive, for example, “although I read”; imperative, for example, “read!”; infinitive, for example, “to read”; impersonal, for example, “people read.”</i>

Magist.	Númerī verbōrum quot sunt?	<i>How many numbers do verbs have?</i>
Studēns	Duo.	<i>Two.</i>
Magist.	Quī?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Singulāris et plūrālis.	<i>Singular and plural.</i>
Magist.	Persónae verbōrum quot sunt?	<i>How many persons of verbs are there?</i>
Studēns	Trēs.	<i>Three.</i>
Magist.	Quae?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Prīma, ut “legō”; secūnda, ut “legis”; tertia, ut “legit.”	<i>First, for example, “I read, am reading”; second, for example, “you read, are reading”; third, for example, “he, she reads, is reading.”</i>
Magist.	Tēpora in dēclīnātiōne verbōrum quot sunt?	<i>How many tenses are there in the conjugation of verbs?</i>
Studēns	Sex.	<i>Six.</i>
Magist.	Quae?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Praesēns, ut “legō”; praetēritum imperfēctum, ut “legēbam”; futūrum, ut “legam”; praetēritum perfēctum, ut “lēgī”; praetēritum plūsquamperfēctum, ut “lēgeram”; futūrum perfēctum, ut “lēgerō.”	<i>Present, for example, “I read, am reading”; imperfect, for example, “I was reading, used to read”; future, for example, “I shall read”; perfect, for example, “I read, have read”; pluperfect, for example, “I had read”; future perfect, for example, “I shall have read.”</i>
Magist.	Coniugātiōnēs verbōrum quot sunt?	<i>How many conjugations are there?</i>
Studēns	Quattuor.	<i>Four.</i>
Magist.	Quae?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Prīma, secūnda, tertia, quārta.	<i>First, second, third, fourth.</i>

Magist.	Dēclīnā verbum āctīvum p̄rimae coniugātiōnis, indicātīvō modō, tēmpore praesentī, nūmerō singulārī.	<i>Conjugate an active verb of the first conjugation, in the indicative mood, present tense, singular.</i>
Studēns	amō amās amat	<i>I love you love he or she loves</i>
Magist.	Dēclīnā verbum āctīvum secūndae coniugātiōnis, indicātīvō modō, tēmpore praetēritō imperfēctō, plūrālīter.	<i>Conjugate an active verb of the second conjugation, indicative mood, in the imperfect tense, in the plural.</i>
Studēns	docēbāmus docēbātis docēbant	<i>we were teaching you were teaching they were teaching</i>
Magist.	Dēclīnā verbum āctīvum tērtiae coniugātiōnis, indicātīvō modō, tēmpore futūrō, nūmerō singulārī.	<i>Conjugate an active verb of the third conjugation, indicative mood, future, singular.</i>
Studēns	regam regēs reget	<i>I shall rule you will rule he or she will rule</i>
Magist.	Dēclīnā verbum āctīvum quārtae coniugātiōnis, indicātīvō modō, tēmpore praetēritō plūsquamperfēctō, plūrālīter.	<i>Conjugate an active verb of the fourth conjugation, indicative mood, pluperfect tense, plural.</i>
Studēns	audīverāmus audīverātis audīverant	<i>we had heard you had heard they had heard</i>
[Note — <i>genus</i> in connection with nouns means “gender”; in connection with verbs it means “voice.”]		
Magist.	Gēnera verbōrum quot sunt?	<i>How many voices of verbs are there?</i>
Studēns	Quāttuor.	<i>Four.</i>
Magist.	Quae?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Āctīva, passīva, neutra vel neutrālīa, dēpōnēntīa.	<i>Active, passive, intransitive, deponent (verbs).</i>

Magist.	Dā exēmpla verbī neutrālis.	<i>Give (me some) examples of an intransitive verb.</i>
Studēns	Sēdeō, stō, cubō.	<i>I sit, am sitting; I stand, am standing; I lie down, I am lying down.</i>
Magist.	Dā exēmpla verbī dēpōnētis.	<i>Give (me some) examples of a deponent verb.</i>
Studēns	Loquor, sequor, fruor.	<i>I speak, am speaking; I follow, am following; I enjoy, am enjoying.</i>
Magist.	Dā dēclīnātiōnem verbī āctīvī “legō” indicātivō modō, tēmpore praesētī, singulārīter.	<i>Give the conjugation of the active verb “legō” in the indicative mood, present tense, in the singular.</i>
Studēns	Dēclīnātur: legō legis legit	<i>It is conjugated: I read, am reading you read, are reading he or she reads, is reading</i>
Magist.	Dēclīnā idem verbum āctīvum, tēmpore praetēritō imperfēctō, plūrālīter.	<i>Conjugate the same verb in the imperfect tense, in the plural.</i>
Studēns	Dēclīnātur: legēbāmus legēbātis legēbant	<i>It is conjugated: we were reading you were reading they were reading</i>
Magist.	Dā dēclīnātiōnem eiusdem verbī āctīvī, tēmpore praesētī, modō subiūctīvō, singulārīter.	<i>Give the conjugation of the same active verb in the present tense, subjunctive, singular.</i>
Studēns	Dēclīnātur: legam legās legat	<i>It is conjugated: I may read you may read he or she may read</i>
Magist.	Dēclīnā idem verbum āctīvum tēmpore praetēritō plūsquamperfēctō, modō subiūctīvō, plūrālīter.	<i>Conjugate the same active verb in the pluperfect subjunctive plural.</i>
Studēns	Dēclīnātur: lēgissēmus lēgissētis lēgissent	<i>It is conjugated: we would have read you would have read they would have read</i>

Magist.	Dīc imperātīvum eiúsdem verbī, tēmpore praesentī, singulārīter et plūrālīter.	<i>Give the present imperative of the same verb in the singular and the plural.</i>
Studēns	“Lege!,” “légite!”	<i>Read! (singular), read! (plural)</i>
Magist.	Dīc imperātīvum eiúsdem verbī, tēmpore futūrō, secúndā et tertiā persónā, singulārīter et plūrālīter.	<i>Give the future imperative of the same verb in the second and third person singular and plural.</i>
Studēns	Persónā secúndā: “légitō!,” “legitote!”; persónā tertiā: “légitō!,” “legúntō!”	<i>Second person: you will read! (singular); you will read! (plural); third person: let him or her read!; let them read!</i>
Magist.	Dīc participium hūius verbī, praesentī tēmpore.	<i>Give the present participle of this verb.</i>
Studēns	Legēns.	<i>Reading.</i>
Magist.	Dīc participium hūius verbī, futūrō tēmpore.	<i>Give the future participle of this verb.</i>
Studēns	Lēctūrus.	<i>About to read.</i>
Magist.	Dīc participium hūius verbī, praetēritō perfēctō tēmpore.	<i>Give the perfect participle of this verb.</i>
Studēns	Lēctus.	<i>Having been read.</i>
Magist.	Dīc īfīnītīvum āctīvum hūius verbī, praesentī tēmpore.	<i>Give the present active infinitive of this verb.</i>
Studēns	Légere.	<i>To read.</i>
Magist.	Dīc īfīnītīvum passīvum hūius verbī, praesentī tēmpore.	<i>Give the present passive infinitive of this verb.</i>
Studēns	Legī.	<i>To be read.</i>
Magist.	Dīc īfīnītīvum āctīvum hūius verbī, praetēritō perfēctō tēmpore.	<i>Give the perfect active infinitive of this verb.</i>
Studēns	Lēgisse.	<i>To have read.</i>
Magist.	Dīc īfīnītīvum passīvum hūius verbī, praetēritō perfēctō tēmpore.	<i>Give the perfect passive infinitive of this verb.</i>
Studēns	Lēctus esse.	<i>To have been read.</i>

Magist.	Dēscrībe proprietātēs “legō” verbī.	<i>Parse the verb “legō.”</i>
Studēns	“Legō” est verbum āctīvum indicātīvī modī, p̄rīmae persónae, númerī singuláris, témporis praeséntis, tértiae coniugātiónis.	<i>“Legō” is an active verb, used in the indicative mood, first person, singular, present tense, third conjugation.</i>
Magist.	Dā exémpła verbī inaequális.	<i>Give (me some) examples of an irregular verb.</i>
Studēns	Fiō, sóleō, ferō, gaúdeō, nōlō.	<i>I become, I am wont, I bear, I am glad, I do not want.</i>
Magist.	Quārē inaequália dīcuntur?	<i>Why are they called irregular?</i>
Studēns	Quia dēclīnātiónes extrā régulam sunt.	<i>Because they are conjugated outside the (normal) pattern.</i>
Magist.	Dā exémpła verbī dēfectívī.	<i>Give (some) examples of a defective verb.</i>
Studēns	Pudet, ōdī.	<i>It shames, I hate.</i>
Magist.	Quārē dēfectíva dīcuntur?	<i>Why are they called defective?</i>
Studēns	Quia haec verba quibúsdam figúrīs eget.	<i>Because these verbs lack certain forms.</i>
Magist.	Quibus figúrīs “pudet” eget?	<i>What forms does “pudet” (it shames) lack?</i>
Studēns	Eget persónā p̄rīmā et secúndā. Dīcitur étiam verbum impersónále.	<i>It lacks the first and second person. It is also called an impersonal verb.</i>
Magist.	Quibus figúrīs “ōdī” eget?	<i>What forms does “ōdī” (I hate) lack?</i>
Studēns	Habet neque tempus praesēns, neque praetérítum imperfécum neque futúrum.	<i>It doesn't have a present, imperfect, or future tense.</i>
Magist.	Dā partēs p̄ncipálēs “dóceō” verbī.	<i>Give the principal parts of the verb “doceō.”</i>
Studēns	Dóceō, docére, dócuī, doctus.	<i>I teach, am teaching; to teach; I taught, have taught; taught, having been taught.</i>

Dē Advérbiō		<i>The Adverb</i>
Magist.	Advérbiū quid est?	<i>What is an adverb?</i>
Studēns	Pars ōrātiōnis quae verbō adīcitur et verbum explānat atque implet.	<i>The part of speech which modifies the verb and explains and completes it.</i>
Magist.	Cui dictiōnī advérbiū adīcitur?	<i>What word does an adverb modify?</i>
Studēns	Vel verbō vel advérbiō vel adiectívō adīcitur.	<i>It modifies a verb, an adverb, or an adjective.</i>
Magist.	Dā advérbia locī.	<i>Give (some) adverbs of place.</i>
Studēns	Hīc, ibi, intus, forīs, illīc, inde.	<i>Here, there, inside, outside, there, from there.</i>
Magist.	Dā advérbia témporis.	<i>Give (some) adverbs of time.</i>
Studēns	Hódiē, nūper, aliquándō, mox.	<i>Today, recently, sometime, soon.</i>
Magist.	Dā advérbia númerī.	<i>Give (some) adverbs of number.</i>
Studēns	Semel, bis, ter, déciēs.	<i>Once, twice, three times, ten times.</i>
Magist.	Dā advérbiū affirmándī.	<i>Give an adverb of affirmation.</i>
Studēns	Étiam.	<i>Yes.</i>
Magist.	Dā advérbiū negándī.	<i>Give an adverb of negation.</i>
Studēns	Nōn.	<i>No.</i>
Magist.	Dā advérbia interrógándī.	<i>Give (some) interrogative adverbs.</i>
Studēns	Cūr, quārē, quámobrem.	<i>Why, why, why.</i>
Magist.	Dā advérbia órdis.	<i>Give (some) adverbs of a series.</i>
Studēns	Prīmum, deінде, postrémō.	<i>First, then, finally.</i>
Magist.	Dā advérbia quantitátis.	<i>Give (some) adverbs of quantity.</i>
Studēns	Multum, parum.	<i>Much, little.</i>
Magist.	Dā advérbia qualitátis.	<i>Give (some) adverbs of quality.</i>
Studēns	Pulchrē, bene, male.	<i>Beautifully, well, badly.</i>

Magist.	Quot gradūs comparātiōnis sunt adverbīis?	<i>How many degrees of comparison do adverbs have?</i>
Studēns	Trēs.	<i>Three.</i>
Magist.	Quī?	<i>What (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Positīvus, ut “saepe”; comparātīvus, ut “saepius”; superlatīvus, ut “saepīssimē.”	<i>The positive, for example, “often”; the comparative, for example, “more often”; the superlative, for example, “very often.”</i>
Magist.	Suntne advérbia declinābília an indēclinābília?	<i>Are adverbs declinable or indeclinable?</i>
Studēns	Sunt indēclinābília.	<i>They are indeclinable.</i>

Dē Adjectīvō

The Adjective

Magist.	Adiectīvum quid est?	<i>What is an adjective?</i>
Studēns	Pars orātiōnis est quae nōminī adicitur.	<i>It is a part of speech that modifies a noun.</i>
Magist.	Quot gradūs comparātiōnis sunt adiectīvīs?	<i>How many degrees of comparison do adjectives have?</i>
Studēns	Trēs gradūs comparātiōnis.	<i>Three degrees of comparison.</i>
Magist.	Quī?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Positīvus, ut “doctus”; comparātīvus, ut “dóctior”; superlatīvus, ut “doctīssimus”	<i>The positive, for example, “learned”; the comparative, for example, “more learned”; the superlative, for example, “most learned.”</i>
Magist.	Quot terminātiōnēs sunt adiectīvīs, gradūs positívī?	<i>How many endings do adjectives have in the positive degree?</i>
Studēns	Trēs.	<i>Three.</i>
Magist.	Quae?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Masculína, ut “doctus”; fēminína, ut “docta”; neutra, ut “doctum.”	<i>Masculine, for example, “learned”; feminine, for example, “learned”; neuter, for example, “learned.”</i>

Magist.	Quot terminātiōnēs sunt adiectīvīs, gradūs comparātīvī?	<i>How many endings do adjectives have in the comparative degree?</i>
Studēns	Duae.	<i>Two.</i>
Magist.	Quae?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Masculīna et fēminīna, ut “dóctior”; neutra, ut “dóctius.”	<i>Masculine and feminine, for example, “more learned”; neuter, for example, “more learned.”</i>
Magist.	Quot terminātiōnēs sunt adiectīvīs, gradūs superlatīvī?	<i>How many endings do adjectives in the superlative degree have?</i>
Studēns	Trēs, sicut in gradū positīvō.	<i>Three, just as in the positive degree.</i>
Magist.	Dīc adiectívum possessívum.	<i>Give a possessive adjective.</i>
Studēns	Meus.	<i>My.</i>
Magist.	Dīc adiectívum quālitātis.	<i>Give an adjective of quality.</i>
Studēns	Bonus.	<i>Good.</i>
Magist.	Dīc adiectíva quantitātis.	<i>Give (some) adjectives of quantity.</i>
Studēns	Magnus, parvus.	<i>Big, small.</i>
Magist.	Dīc adiectíva númeri.	<i>Give (some) adjectives of number.</i>
Studēns	Ūnus, duo, trēs.	<i>One, two, three.</i>
Magist.	Dīc adiectíva númeri ordinális.	<i>Give (some) adjectives of ordinal numbers.</i>
Studēns	Prīmus, secūndus, tertiū.	<i>First, second, third.</i>

Dē Particípiō

The Participle

Magist.	Particípium quid est?	<i>What is a participle?</i>
Studēns	Pars orātiōnis partem adiectívī cápiēns, partem verbī.	<i>A part of speech assuming the role of an adjective and the role of a verb.</i>

Magist.	Témpora participiórū quot sunt?	<i>How many tenses do participles have?</i>
Studēns	Praesēns, ut “legēns”; praetérítum, ut “lēctus”; futúrum, ut “lēctúrus.”	<i>The present, for example, “reading”; the perfect, for example, “read, having been read”; the future, for example, “about to read.”</i>
Magist.	Quot participia ab áctívō verbō véniunt?	<i>How many participles come from the active verb?</i>
Studēns	Duo.	<i>Two.</i>
Magist.	Quae?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Praesēns, ut “legēns” et futúrum ut “lēctúrus.”	<i>The present, for example, “reading”, and the future, for example, “about to read.”</i>
Magist.	Quot participia ā passívō verbō véniunt?	<i>How many participles come from the passive verb?</i>
Studēns	Ūnum.	<i>One.</i>
Magist.	Quod?	<i>Which one?</i>
Studēns	Praetérítum perféctum, ut “lēctus.”	<i>The perfect, for example, “read, having been read.”</i>

Dē Gerúndiō

The Gerund

Magist.	Gerúndium quid est?	<i>What is a gerund?</i>
Studēns	Est nōmen verbále.	<i>It is a verbal noun.</i>
Magist.	Quārē sic vocátur?	<i>Why is it called that?</i>
Studēns	Quia partem nōminis capit, partem verbī.	<i>Because it assumes the role of a noun and the role of a verb.</i>
Magist.	Dā exémplum gerúndiī.	<i>Give an example of a gerund.</i>
Studēns	<i>Legéndi</i> librōs causā.	<i>For the sake of reading books.</i>
Magist.	Quómōdo capit partem nōminis?	<i>How does it assume the role of a noun?</i>
Studēns	Eō quod habet cāsūs oblíquōs, périnde ut nōmina.	<i>In that it has oblique cases, just as nouns do.</i>

Magist.	Quómodo capit partem verbī?	<i>How does it assume the role of a verb?</i>
Studēns	Eō quod adiúngitur cásuī accūsātvō, perinde ut verba.	<i>In that it takes the accusative case, just as verbs do.</i>

Dē Gerundívō

The Gerundive

Magist.	Gerundívvum quid est?	<i>What is a gerundive?</i>
Studēns	Est adiectívum verbále.	<i>It is a verbal adjective.</i>
Magist.	Quārē sic vocátur?	<i>Why is it called that?</i>
Studēns	Quia partem adiectívī capit, partem verbī.	<i>Because it assumes the role of an adjective and the role of a verb.</i>
Magist.	Dā exéplum gerundívī.	<i>Give an example of a gerundive.</i>
Studēns	Legendórum librórum causā.	<i>For the sake of reading books.</i>
Magist.	Quómodo partem adiectívī capit?	<i>How does it assume the role of an adjective?</i>
Studēns	Eō quod “librós” nóminī adícitur.	<i>In that it modifies the noun “books.”</i>

Dē Coniūctióne

The Conjunction

Magist.	Coniūctiō quid est?	<i>What is a conjunction?</i>
Studēns	Pars oratiōnis connéctēns ordinánsque senténtiam.	<i>A part of speech connecting and arranging a sentence.</i>
Magist.	Dā coniūctiōnēs copulátívās.	<i>Give (some) coordinate conjunctions.</i>
Studēns	Et, atque, ac.	<i>And, and, and.</i>
Magist.	Dā coniūctiōnēs disiūctívās.	<i>Give (some) disjunctive conjunctions.</i>
Studēns	Aut, -ve, vel.	<i>Or, or, or.</i>
Magist.	Dā coniūctiōnēs adversátívās.	<i>Give (some) adversative conjunctions.</i>
Studēns	Sed, at.	<i>But, but.</i>

Magist.	Dā coniūctiōnēs concessívās.	<i>Give (some) concessive conjunctions.</i>
Studēns	Quamquam, quamvīs.	<i>Although, although.</i>
Magist.	Dā coniūctiōnēs temporálēs.	<i>Give (some) temporal conjunctions.</i>
Studēns	Cum, ántequam, postquam.	<i>When, before, after.</i>
Magist.	Dā coniūctiōnēs condiōnálēs.	<i>Give (some) conditional conjunctions.</i>
Studēns	Sī, nisi.	<i>If, unless.</i>

Dē Praepositíone

The Preposition

Magist.	Praepositiō quid est?	<i>What is a preposition?</i>
Studēns	Pars orātiōnis quae, áliīs pártibus orātiōnis praepósita, significātiōnem eárum implet aut mūtat.	<i>A part of speech which, placed before other parts of speech, completes or changes their meaning.</i>
Magist.	Quibus cásibus praepositíonēs sérviant?	<i>What cases do prepositions take?</i>
Studēns	Accūsátiívō et ablátiívō.	<i>The accusative and the ablative.</i>
Magist.	Dā praepositíonēs cāsūs accūsátiívī.	<i>Give (some) prepositions taking the accusative.</i>
Studēns	Ad, apud, ante, advérsus, ergā.	<i>To, at, before, against, toward.</i>
Magist.	Dā praepositíonēs cāsūs ablátiívī.	<i>Give (some) prepositions taking the ablative case.</i>
Studēns	Ab, cum, cōram, clam, dē, ex, prō.	<i>From, with, in the presence of, without the knowledge of, concerning, out of, for.</i>
Magist.	Dā praepositíonēs utríusque cāsūs.	<i>Give (some) prepositions taking both cases.</i>
Studēns	In, sub, super, subter.	<i>In(to), under, above, below.</i>
Magist.	“In” et “sub” quandō ablátiívō sérviant?	<i>When do “in” and “under” take the ablative case?</i>
Studēns	Quandō significámus quóslibet aut quaelibet in locō esse.	<i>When we mean that someone or something is in a place.</i>

Magist.	“In” et “sub” quāndō accūsātvō sērviant?	<i>When do “in” and “under” take the accusative?</i>
Studēns	Quāndō significāmus quōslibet aut quālibet in locum ire.	<i>When we mean that someone or something is going into a place.</i>
Magist.	“Super” quā vim habet?	<i>What is the sense of “super”?</i>
Studēns	Ubi locum significat, magis accūsātvō cāsūī servit quā ablātvō locī; ubi mentiōnem alicūius faciūmus, ablātvō cāsūī dumtaxat servit, ut “Multa super Prāmō rōgitāns.”	<i>When it indicates place, it takes the accusative rather than the ablative of place; when we make mention of someone or something, it takes only the ablative, for example: “Asking many questions about Priam.”</i>

Dē Interiectiōne

The Interjection

Magist.	Interiectiō quid est?	<i>What is an interjection?</i>
Studēns	Pars orātiōnis significāns mentis affēctum vōce incōnditā.	<i>A part of speech indicating an emotion with inarticulate sound.</i>
Magist.	Interiectiō quid significāre potest?	<i>What can an interjection indicate?</i>
Studēns	Vel laetitiā, ut “evax”; vel dolōrem, ut “heu”; vel admirātiōnem, ut “papaé”; vel metum, ut “attāt.”	<i>Either joy, for example, “hurrah!”; or grief, for example, “oh no!”; or astonishment, for example, “wow!”; or fear, for example, “oh!”</i>

Dē Accētū

The Accent

Magist.	In quā sýllabā accētum pōnimus?	<i>On which syllable do we place the accent?</i>
Studēns	Aut in antepaenúltimā aut in paenúltimā.	<i>On the antepenult or the penult.</i>
Magist.	Quāndō accētum in paenúltimā sýllabā pōnimus?	<i>When do we place the accent on the penult?</i>
Studēns	Quāndō paenúltima sýllaba est longa, ut “amāmus.”	<i>When the penult is long, for example, “amāmus” (we love).</i>

Magist.	In quā sýllabā accéntum pónimus sī paenúltima sýllaba est brevis?	<i>On which syllable do we place the accent if the penult is short?</i>
Studēns	In antepaenúltimā sýllabā.	<i>On the antepenult.</i>
Magist.	Quandō accéntus pónitur in últimā sýllabā?	<i>When is the accent placed on the last syllable?</i>
Studēns	Numquam aut útique rāríssimō.	<i>Never or, in any event, very rarely.</i>

Dē Proprietátibus *The Parsing of Words* Dictiónum Dēscribéndis

[**Note**—The genitive of quality, or better, of description, is generally used in parsing words, for example; “Cūius generis est ‘puella’? (Of) what gender is “girl”?” “Fēminīnī generis” (of the) feminine gender. But when indicating the case of a noun or adjective, the ablative is generally used, e.g., “homine” quō cāsū est? (In) what case is “the man”?” “Ablātīvō.” (In) the ablative case. The Romans also reverse our order of apposition, for example, “sī última syllaba in ‘a’ litterā terminātur” (if the last syllable ends in the letter “a”).]

Magist.	Dēscribāmus nunc proprietātēs dictiónum in hāc sententiā: Ego arma virúmque canō, quī ōlim ā Trōiae ōris longínquīs vēnit. “Ego” quae pars ōrātiōnis est?	<i>Let’s now parse the words of this sentence: I sing of war and a hero who once upon a time came from the distant shores of Troy. What part of speech is “I”?</i>
Studēns	Prōnómen.	<i>A pronoun.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est númerī?	<i>What number is it?</i>
Studēns	Númerī singuláris.	<i>Singular.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est géneris in hōc locō?	<i>What gender is it in this passage?</i>
Studēns	Masculīnī.	<i>Masculine.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est persónae?	<i>What person is it?</i>
Studēns	Prīmae persónae.	<i>First person.</i>
Magist.	Quō est cāsū?	<i>In what case?</i>
Studēns	Cāsū nōminátfvō.	<i>In the nominative case.</i>
Magist.	Estne prōnómen fínítum an ínfínítum?	<i>Is it a definite or indefinite pronoun?</i>
Studēns	Prōnómen fínítum.	<i>A definite pronoun.</i>

Magist.	“ <i>Arma</i> ” quae pars orationis est?	<i>What part of speech is “arms”?</i>
Studēns	Nomen.	<i>A noun.</i>
Magist.	Quāle? Nomen proprium an appellativum?	<i>What kind? Proper or common?</i>
Studēns	Nomen appellativum.	<i>A common noun.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est generis?	<i>What gender is it?</i>
Studēns	Neutrūsus.	<i>Neuter.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est nūmerī?	<i>What number is it?</i>
Studēns	Plūrālis.	<i>Plural.</i>
Magist.	Quō cāsū est in hōc lōcō?	<i>What case is it in this passage?</i>
Studēns	Accūsātīvō.	<i>Accusative.</i>
Magist.	Unde hoc certum est?	<i>How is that certain?</i>
Studēns	Ā syntāxe; “ <i>canō</i> ” enim verbum accūsātīvō adiūngitur.	<i>From the syntax; for the verb “canō” takes the accusative case.</i>
Magist.	Quotae declinationis est “ <i>arma</i> ”?	<i>What declension is “arms”?</i>
Studēns	Secūndae.	<i>Second.</i>
Magist.	Pōnitūrne “ <i>arma</i> ” propriē an figurātē?	<i>Is “arms” used literally or figuratively?</i>
Studēns	Figurātē.	<i>Figuratively.</i>
Magist.	Quārē?	<i>Why?</i>
Studēns	Quia prō “ <i>bellō</i> ” pōnitur.	<i>Because it is used for “war.”</i>
Magist.	“ <i>Virum</i> ” quae pars orationis est?	<i>What part of speech is “hero”?</i>
Studēns	Nomen.	<i>A noun.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est generis?	<i>What gender is it?</i>
Studēns	Masculīnī.	<i>Masculine.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est nūmerī?	<i>What number is it?</i>
Studēns	Singulāris.	<i>Singular.</i>
Magist.	Quō cāsū est?	<i>What case is it?</i>
Studēns	Accūsātīvō.	<i>Accusative.</i>

Magist.	Dīc cāsū nōminātivū.	<i>Give the nominative case.</i>
Studēns	Vir.	<i>Vir (hero).</i>
Magist.	Quotae dēclīnātiōnis est “virum”?	<i>What declension is “the hero”?</i>
Studēns	Secūndae.	<i>Second.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est nūmerī?	<i>What number is it?</i>
Studēns	Singulāris.	<i>Singular.</i>
Magist.	Quāle? Prōpriū an appellātivū?	<i>What kind? Proper or common (noun)?</i>
Studēns	Nōmen appellātivū.	<i>Common (noun).</i>
Magist.	“ <i>Que</i> ” quae pars ōrātiōnis est?	<i>What part of speech is “and”?</i>
Studēns	Cōniūctiō.	<i>A conjunction.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est potestātis? Copulātivae an disiūctivae?	<i>(Of) what function is it? Coordinate or disjunctive?</i>
Studēns	Copulātivae.	<i>Coordinate.</i>
Magist.	Cūius ōrdinis? Praepositivī an postpositivī?	<i>What is its word order? Prepositive or postpositive?</i>
Studēns	Postpositivī; itaque dīcitur encliticum.	<i>It is postpositive; and so it is called an enclitic.</i>
Magist.	Fac compōsitum ab eō quod est “ <i>que</i> .”	<i>Form a compound from “que.”</i>
Studēns	Itaque, neque, quoque.	<i>And so, neither, too.</i>
Magist.	“ <i>Canō</i> ” quae pars ōrātiōnis est?	<i>What part of speech is “sing”?</i>
Studēns	Verbum.	<i>A verb.</i>
Magist.	Cūius modī est?	<i>In what mood is it?</i>
Studēns	Indicātivī.	<i>The indicative.</i>
Magist.	Cūius persōnae est?	<i>What person is it?</i>
Studēns	Prīmae.	<i>First (person).</i>
Magist.	Dīc tertiam persōnam.	<i>Give the third person.</i>
Studēns	Canit.	<i>He or she sings, is singing.</i>

Magist.	Cūius nūmerī est?	<i>What number is it?</i>
Studēns	Singulāris.	<i>Singular.</i>
Magist.	Dīc plūrālem prīmae persōnae.	<i>Give the first person plural.</i>
Studēns	Cānimus.	<i>We sing.</i>
Magist.	Cūius gēneris est? Āctīvī an passīvī?	<i>What voice is it? Active or passive?</i>
Studēns	Āctīvī.	<i>Active.</i>
Magist.	Dīc passīvum.	<i>Give the passive.</i>
Studēns	Canor.	<i>I am sung of.</i>
Magist.	Cūius tēmporis est?	<i>What tense is it?</i>
Studēns	Praesētis.	<i>The present.</i>
Magist.	Dīc praetēritum imperfēctum.	<i>Give the imperfect.</i>
Studēns	Canēbam.	<i>I was singing, used to sing.</i>
Magist.	Dīc praetēritum perfēctum.	<i>Give the perfect.</i>
Studēns	Cēcīnī.	<i>I sang, have sung.</i>
Magist.	Dīc participīum praesēns.	<i>Give the present participle.</i>
Studēns	Canēns.	<i>Singing.</i>
Magist.	Dīc participīum futūrum.	<i>Give the future participle.</i>
Studēns	Cantūrus.	<i>About to sing, going to sing.</i>
Magist.	Dīc infīnītīvum āctīvum.	<i>Give the active infinitive.</i>
Studēns	Cānere.	<i>To sing.</i>
Magist.	Dīc gerūndium.	<i>Give the gerund.</i>
Studēns	Canēndī.	<i>Of singing.</i>
Magist.	Dīc gerūndium cāsū nōminātīvō.	<i>Give the gerund in the nominative case.</i>
Studēns	Gerūndium eget cāsū nōminātīvō.	<i>The gerund lacks a nominative case.</i>
Magist.	“ <i>Qui</i> ” quae pars ōrātiōnis est?	<i>What part of speech is “who”?</i>
Studēns	Prōnōmen.	<i>A pronoun.</i>

Magist.	Quāle prōnōmen?	<i>What kind of pronoun?</i>
Studēns	Relatīvum prōnōmen.	<i>A relative pronoun.</i>
Magist.	Quid est eius nōmen antecēdēns?	<i>What is its antecedent?</i>
Studēns	Virum.	<i>A hero.</i>
Magist.	“Quī” cūius est géneris?	<i>What gender is “who”?</i>
Studēns	Masculīnī.	<i>Masculine.</i>
Magist.	Cūius nūmerī est?	<i>What number is it?</i>
Studēns	Singulāris.	<i>Singular.</i>
Magist.	Quārē nūmerus singulāris pōnitur?	<i>Why is the singular number used?</i>
Studēns	Quia nōmen antecēdēns est nūmerī singulāris.	<i>Because the antecedent is singular.</i>
Magist.	Quō cāsū est “quī”?	<i>In what case is “who”?</i>
Studēns	Cāsū nōminatīvō.	<i>In the nominative case.</i>
Magist.	Cūius potēntiae est?	<i>What is its function?</i>
Studēns	Est subiēctum “vēnit” verbī.	<i>It is the subject of the verb “came”.</i>
Magist.	“Ōlim” quae pars ōratiōnis est?	<i>What part of speech is “once upon a time”?</i>
Studēns	Advērbium.	<i>An adverb.</i>
Magist.	Cui dictiōnī “ōlim” adīcitur?	<i>Which word does “once upon a time” modify?</i>
Studēns	“Vēnit” verbō.	<i>The verb “came”.</i>
Magist.	Estne advērbium locī an tēmporis an qualitātis an quantitātis?	<i>Is it an adverb of place or time or quality or quantity?</i>
Studēns	Tēmporis.	<i>Of time.</i>
Magist.	“Ā” quae pars ōratiōnis est?	<i>What part of speech is “from”?</i>
Studēns	Praepositīō.	<i>A preposition.</i>
Magist.	Cui cāsū servit?	<i>What case does it take [lit: serve]?</i>
Studēns	Cāsū ablātīvō.	<i>The ablative case.</i>

Magist.	Cui nōminī adiungitur?	<i>What noun is its object?</i>
Studēns	“Ōrīs” nōminī.	<i>The noun “shores”.</i>
Magist.	“Trōiae” quae pars orātiōnis est?	<i>What part of speech is “Troy’s”?</i>
Studēns	Nōmen.	<i>A noun.</i>
Magist.	Quāle? Prōpriū an appellātīvū?	<i>What kind? Proper or common?</i>
Studēns	Prōpriū.	<i>Proper.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est gēneris?	<i>What gender is it?</i>
Studēns	Fēminīnī.	<i>Feminine.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est nūmerī?	<i>What number is it?</i>
Studēns	Singulāris.	<i>Singular.</i>
Magist.	Quō est cāsū?	<i>In what case is it?</i>
Studēns	Genitīvō.	<i>The genitive.</i>
Magist.	“Ōrīs” quae pars orātiōnis est?	<i>What part of speech is “shores”?</i>
Studēns	Nōmen.	<i>A noun.</i>
Magist.	Quāle? Prōpriū an appellātīvū?	<i>What kind? Proper or common?</i>
Studēns	Appellātīvū.	<i>Common.</i>
Magist.	Cūius gēneris est?	<i>What gender is it?</i>
Studēns	Fēminīnī.	<i>Feminine.</i>
Magist.	Quō cāsū est?	<i>What case is it?</i>
Studēns	Ablātīvō plūrālī.	<i>Ablative plural.</i>
Magist.	Dīc cāsū nōminātīvū singulārem.	<i>Give the nominative singular.</i>
Studēns	Ōra.	<i>“Shore.”</i>
Magist.	“Longínquīs” quae pars orātiōnis est?	<i>What part of speech is “distant”?</i>
Studēns	Adiectīvū.	<i>Adjective.</i>
Magist.	Quō est cāsū?	<i>In what case is it?</i>
Studēns	Ablātīvō.	<i>The ablative.</i>

Magist.	Cūius est géneris?	<i>What gender is it?</i>
Studēns	Fēminīnī.	<i>Feminine.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est númerī?	<i>What number is it?</i>
Studēns	Plūrālis.	<i>The plural.</i>
Magist.	Cui dictiōnī adīcitur?	<i>What noun does it modify?</i>
Studēns	“Ōrīs.”	<i>“Shores.”</i>
Magist.	Cūius gradūs comparātiōnis est?	<i>What degree of comparison is it?</i>
Studēns	Positīvī.	<i>The positive.</i>
Magist.	Dā gradum superlātfvum.	<i>Give the superlative degree.</i>
Studēns	“Longinquissim·us -a -um.”	<i>“Most distant.”</i>
Magist.	“Vēnit” quae pars ōrātiōnis est?	<i>What part of speech is “came”?</i>
Studēns	Verbū.	<i>A verb.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est tēporis?	<i>What tense is it?</i>
Studēns	Temporis praetēritī perfēctī.	<i>The perfect.</i>
Magist.	Cūius persōnae est?	<i>What person is it?</i>
Studēns	Tērtiae.	<i>Third (person).</i>
Magist.	Dīc persōnam p̄imam.	<i>Give the first person.</i>
Studēns	Vēnī.	<i>“I came, have come”.</i>
Magist.	Cūius númerī est?	<i>What number is it?</i>
Studēns	Singulāris.	<i>The singular.</i>
Magist.	Cūius modī est?	<i>What mood is it?</i>
Studēns	Indicātfvī.	<i>Indicative.</i>
Magist.	Cūius géneris est?	<i>What voice is it?</i>
Studēns	Neutrālis.	<i>Intransitive.</i>
Magist.	Cūius coniugātiōnis est?	<i>What conjugation is it?</i>
Studēns	Quārtae.	<i>The fourth.</i>

Magist.	Dīc partēs prīncipālēs “canō” verbī.	Give the principal parts of the verb “sing”.
Studēs	Canō, cānere, cécinī, cantus.	I sing, am singing; to sing; I sang, have sung; sung, having been sung.

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

abbreviate *tr* brevīāre

abbreviation *s* not·a -ae *f* compendiāria

ablative *adj* ablātīv·us -a -um; **ablative case** cās·us -ūs *m* ablātīvus, ablātīv·us -ī *m*; **in the ablative case** cāsū ablātīvō

abstract noun *s* appellāti·ō -ōnis *f* (ut “bónitās” **goodness**)

accent *s* accént·us -ūs *m*; **to place the accent on a syllable** accéntum in sýllabā pōnere

active *adj* āctív·us -a -um; **active verb** verbum agéndi *or* agēns *or* āctívum; **active voice** gen·us -eris *n* āctívum

adjectival *adj* adiectívál·is -is -e

adjective *s* adiectív·um -ī *n*

adverb *s* advérbi·um -ī *n*

adverbial *adj* adverbiál·is -is -e

alphabet *s* alphabēt·um -ī *n*, prīmae lītter·ae -ārum *fpl*

antecedent *s* nōm·en -inis *n* antecédēns

antepenult *s* antepaenúltima sýllab·a -ae *f*

article *s* artícul·us -ī *m* (hic haec hoc, normally demonstrative, serve as articles only in declensions)

as *adv* sicut, ut; **as for instance** ut putā

capital letter *s* lītter·a -ae *f* grandis (*opp*: līttera minúta)

case *s* cās·us -ūs *m*; **a noun in the genitive case** nōmen genitívō cāsū; *or* more rarely nōmen cāsūs genitívī

clause *s* membr·um -ī *n*; **main clause** ōrāti·ō -ōnis *f* [**Note**—ōrātiō can be a complete sentence or a main clause]

collective *adj* collectív·us -a -um

combination *s* comprehénsi·ō -ōnis *f*; **a syllable is a combination of letters** sýllaba est comprehénsiō lītterārum

combine *tr* compōn·ō -ere compósūi compósitus; **prepositions can be combined with verbs** praepositiónēs cum verbīs compōnī possunt

come *intr* (**from**) vén·iō -īre vērī ventum (ab + *abl*), dērívārī (ab + *abl*)

comma *s* comm·a -atis *n*

common noun *s* nōm·en -inis *n* appellātívum

comparative *adj* comparātív·us -a -um; **comparative degree** grad·us -ūs *m* comparātívus; **in the comparative** comparātívē, in comparatiōne

comparison *s* comparāti·ō -ōnis *f*

compound *adj* compósit·us -a -um (ut “indóctus” **uneducated**) (*opp*: simplex, ut “doctus”)

concrete noun *s* vocábul·um -ī *n* (*opp*: appellātiō)

conjugate *tr* dēclīnāre

conjugation *s* dēclīnāti·ō -ōnis *f* (more commonly used); coniugāti·ō -ōnis *f*

conjunction *s* coniúnci·ō -ōnis *f*

consist of cōnst·ō -āre cōstitī ex (+ *abl*)

consonant *s* cōnson·āns -āntis *f*

construction *s* cōnstrūcti·ō -ōnis *f*

coordinate conjunction *s* coniūcti·ō -ōnis *f* cōpulātīva

correlative *adj* relātīvus -a -um (ut “tālis . . . quālis” **such . . . as**)

correct *adj* rēct·us -a -um, ēmendāt·us -a -um

correct *tr* ēmendāre

correction *s* ēmendāti·ō -ōnis *f*

correctly *adv* rēctē, ēmendātē (*opp*: vitiōsē)

dative *adj* datīv·us -a -um

dative *s* datīv·us -ī *m*, cās·us -ūs *m* datīvus

declension *s* dēclīnāti·ō -ōnis *f*

decline *tr* dēclīnāre

defective *adj* dēfectīv·us -a -um

define *tr* dēfīn·iō -īre -īvī -ītus

definite *adj* finīt·us -a -um (*opp*: infīnītus)

degree *s* grad·us -ūs *m*; **positive degree** gradus positīvus; **comparative degree** gradus comparātīvus; **superlative degree** gradus superlātīvus

demonstrative *adj* dēmōnstrātīv·us -a -um

deponent *s* dēpōn·ēns -ēntis *n*, verb·um -ī *n* dēpōnēns

derive *tr* (**from**) dērivāre (ab + *abl*)

diminutive *s* dēminūtīvum nōm·en -inis *n*, dēminūtīv·um -ī *n*

diphthong *s* diphthóng·us -ī *f*

double *adj* gemināt·us -a -um: **double “i” as in “armārii”** “i” littera gemināta, ut armārii

enclitic *s* enclitic·um -ī *n* (ut “-que,” “-ve” **and**, or)

end *intr* (**in**) términ·or -ārī -ātus sum (in + *acc* or *abl*)

ending *adj* (**in**) termināt·us -a -um (in + *acc*)

ending *s* termināti·ō -ōnis *f*

error *s* víti·um -ī *n*, mend·um -ī *n*

explain *tr* explānāre, explicāre

express *tr* éxprimō exprímere expréssī expréssus

feminine *adj* fēminīnus -a -um

figurative *adj* trānslātīv·us -a -um

figuratively *adv* figūrātē, trānslātívē

final *adj* fināl·is -is -e

form *tr* fác·iō -ere fēcī factus; **form the imperative of the verb “venīre”** fac imperātīvum “venīre” verbī

form *s* figūr·a -ae *f*; **the form is either simple, like “doctus,” or compound, like “indoctus,”** figūra est aut simplex, ut “doctus,” aut compósita, ut “indóctus”

function *s* poténti·a -ae *f*

future *s* temp·us -oris *n* futúrūm

gender *s* gen·us -eris *n*

genitive *s* genitīv·us -ī *m*, cās·us -ūs *m* genitīvus

gerund *s* gerúndi·um -ī *n*

gerundive *s* gerundív·um -ī *n*

give *tr* dō dare dedī datus; dīc·ō -ere dīxī dictus; **give the plural form of gaudium** dā (*or* dīc) figúram plūrālem “gaúdium” nómīnis

grammar *s* grammátic·a -ae *f*, ar·s -tis *f* grammática

imperative *adj* imperātív·us -a -um; **imperative mood** mod·us -ī *m* imperātívus

imperfect tense *s* témp·us -ōris *n* praetérítum imperféctum

impersonal *adj* impersónāl·is -is -e

incorrect *adj* vitiōs·us -a -um

incorrectly *adv* vitiōsē

indeclinable *adj* indēclinābil·is -is -e

indefinite *adj* īnfīnīt·us -a -um (*opp*: fīnītus)

indicate *tr* significāre

indicative *adj* indicātīv·us -a -um ; **in the indicative mood** modō indicātīvō

infinitive *adj* īnfīnītīv·us -a -um; **infinitive mood** mod·us -ī *m* īnfīnītīvus

infinitive *s* īnfīnītīv·um -ī *n*

inflect *tr* dēclināre

inflection *s* dēclināti·ō -ōnis *f*

intensive pronoun *s* prōnōm·en -inis *n* intentiōnis (ut “ipse” **himself**)

interjection *s* interiēcti·ō -ōnis *f* (ut “heus tū!” **hey you!**)

intransitive *adj* intrānsitīv·us -a -um (ut “sēdeō,” “surgō” **I sit, I get up**)

irregular *adj* inaequāl·is -is -e; **an irregular verb** inaequāle verbum (ut “volō,” “nōlō,” “fiō” **I want, I do not want, I become**)

irregularly *adv* inaequāliter; **“duo” is irregularly declined** “duo” inaequāliter dēclinātur

last *adj* ūltim·us -a -um

lengthen *tr* prōdūc·ō -ere prōdūxī prōdūctus (*opp*: corrīpere)

letter *s* lītter·a -ae *f*; **letters form syllables** lītterae faciunt sýllabās

literal *adj* própri·us -a -um (*opp*: trānslātīvus)

literally *adv* própriē, ad verbum (*opp*: figurātē)

long *adj* long·us -a -um, prōdūct·us -a -um (*opp*: brevis, corrēptus); **a vowel is long by nature or by position** vocālis est longa nātūrā aut positiōne

mark *s* not·a -ae *f* (ut “nota longa,” “nota brevis” **long mark, short mark**)

masculine *adj* masculīn·us -a -um

mean *tr* significāre

meaning *s* significāti·ō -ōnis *f*

meter *s* metr·um -ī *n*

mistake *s* víti·um -ī *n*; **to make a mistake** vítium fácere

modify *tr* adícior ádicī adiéctus sum (+ *dat*); **which noun does “bonus” modify?** cui nōminī “bonus” adícitur?

modifying *adj* adiéct·us -a -um (+ *dat*)

monosyllable *s* monosýllab·a -ae *f*

mood *s* mod·us -ī *m*; **imperative mood, e.g., “read!”** modus imperātīvus, ut “lege!”; **indicative mood, e.g., “I read”** modus indicātīvus, ut “legō”; **subjunctive mood, e.g., “although I read”** modus subiūctīvus, ut “cum legam”

neuter *adj* neu·ter -tra -trum, neutrāl·is -is -e; **in the** — neutrālīter

nominative *adj* nōminātīv·us -a -um

noun *s* nōm·en -inis *n*; (*of an inanimate object*) vocābul·um -ī *n*

number *s* númer·us -ī *m*

numeral *s* nōm·en -inis *n* numerāle (ut “ūnus,” “duo,” “trēs” **one, two three**)

object *s* expressed by the verb adiungī, for example, **“the man” is the object of the verb** “hic homō” verbō adiūngitur

[**Note**—Roman grammarians never used the word “obiectum” in connection with a verb or preposition. Whereas we would say, for example, “*man* is the object of the verb” the Romans would say “*man* is joined to the verb.” See also the definition of “modify” above.]

ordinal *adj* ōrdināl·is -is -e (ut “prīmus”, “secūndus” **first, second**)

parse *tr* proprietātēs (+ *gen*) dēscrībere

part of speech *s* par·s -tis *f* ōrātiōnis

participle *s* particīpi·um -ī *n*; **past or perfect participle** praetērītū tēmporis particīpiūm; **present participle** praesētis tēmporis particīpiūm

particle *s* partīcul·a -ae *f* (*namely, the four parts of speech that are indeclinable: adverb, preposition, conjunction, interjection*)

passive *adj* passīv·us -a -um

past *s* praetērīt·um temp·us -ōris *n*

pattern *s* rēgul·a -ae *f*

penult *s* paenúltima sýllab·a -ae *f*

perfect tense *s* temp·us -ōris *n*
praetērītum perfēctum

period *s* pūct·um -ī *n*

person *s* persōn·a -ae *f*

personal *adj* persōnāl·is -is -e

phrase *s* locūti·ō -ōnis *f* (*also used of a single word*)

pluperfect tense *s* temp·us -ōris *n*
plūsqvamperfēctum

plural *adj* plūrāl·is -is -e; **in the plural** plūrālīter

plural *s* multītūd·ō -inis *f*; **signifying a plural** multītūdīnem signīficāns

positive *s* grad·us -ūs *m* positīvus

possessive *adj* possessīv·us -a -um

prefix *s* praeposīti·ō -ōnis *f* per
compositiōnem

preposition *s* praeposīti·ō -ōnis *f* (per
appositiōnem); **prepositions take**
(*lit: serve*) **either the accusative or the ablative case** praepositiōnēs aut
accūsātīvō aut ablātīvō cāsūī sērviunt

present *adj* praes·ēns -ētis; **present tense** praesēns temp·us -ōris *n*

principal parts part·ēs -ium *fpl*
prīncipālēs

pronoun *s* prōnōm·en -inis *n*

pronounce *tr* prōnūntiāre; **to pronounce a vowel short or long**
vocālem corrēptē aut prōdūctē
prōnūntiāre

proper noun *s* prōpriūm nōm·en -inis *n*
(ut “Hector” **Hector**) (*opp:*
appellātīvum nōmen (ut “homō”
man))

punctuation *s* interpūcti·ō -ōnis *f*

punctuation mark *s* interpūct·um -ī *n*,
pūct·um -ī *n*

relative *adj* relātīv·us -a -um

repeat *tr* rēpet·ō -ere -īvī -ītus

rule *s* rēgul·a -ae *f*; **to follow (observe)**
the rule rēgulam servāre

sentence *s* sentēnti·a -ae *f*, ōrāti·ō -ōnis
f

short *adj* brev·is -is -e, corrēpt·us -a
-um

singular *adj* singulār·is -is -e (*opp:*
plūrāl·is -is -e); **in the singular**
singulārīter

sound *s* son·us -ī *m*

speak *tr & intr* loquor loquī locūtus
sum; **to speak Latin, to speak**
correct Latin Latīnē loquī

spell *tr* scrīb·ō -ere scrīpsī scrīptus; **to spell correctly** rēctē scrībēre; **to spell with** scrībēre per (+ *acc*); **some spell “cum” with a “q” if it signifies time** quīdam scrībunt
“cum” per “q” lītteram, sī tempus
signīficat

spelling *s* orthogrāphi·a -ae *f*, scrīptūr·a
-ae *f*

subject *n* (*gram*) subiēct·um -ī *n*; (*topic studied*) gen·us -eris *n* studiōrum,
doctrīn·a -ae *f*

subjunctive *adj* subiūctív·us -a -um;
subjunctive mood subiūctívus
 mod·us -ī *m*

subjunctive *s* subiūctív·us -ī *m*

subordinate conjunction *s* subiūctíva
 coniūcti·ō -ōnis *f*

superlative *adj* superlátív·us -a -um

superlative *s* grad·us -ūs *m*
 superlátívus; **in the superlative**
 superlátívē; **give me “laetus” in the**
superlative dīc “laetus” superlátívē

supine *s* supín·um -ī *n*

syllable *s* sýllab·a -ae *f*; **syllables form**
words sýllabae fáciunt dictiōnēs

syntax *s* (*pure Latin*) ordináti·ō -ōnis *f*;
 syntáx·is -is *f*

take *tr* accíp·iō -ere accépi accéptus,
 recíp·iō -ere recépi recéptus; **names**
of cities don’t take prepositions,
for instance, “I’m going to Rome”
 nómīna civitátum nōn accípiunt
 praepositiónēs, ut “Rōmam vādō”;
the preposition “ad” takes the
accusative case “ad” praeposítio
 cásuī accūsátívō servit; **this verb**
takes the accusative case hoc
 verbum coniúngitur (*or* adiúngitur)
 cásuī accūsátívō

tense *s* temp·us -ōris *n*

transitive trānsitív·us -a -um

translate *tr* convért·ō -ere -ī convérsus,
 trānsferō trānsférerē trānstulī
 trānslátus; **to translate from Latin**
to English ex Latínō in Ánglicum
 convértere

translation *s* trānsláti·ō -ōnis *f*

understood *tr* **it is understood**
 subaudítur; **“ego” is understood if I**

should say, “Sum philósophus.”
 subaudítur “ego” sī dīcam “sum
 philósophus.”

use *tr* pōnō pōnere pōsuī pōsitus; **Use**
“legō” in a sentence. Pōne “legō” in
 sententiā.

utter *tr* prōferō prōférerē prótulī prólátus

verb *s* verb·um -ī *n*

verbal *adj* verbál·is -is -e

vocative *s* vocátívus -ī *m*, cās·us -ūs *m*
 vocátívus

voice *s* vōx, vōcis *f*; (*of a verb*) gen·us
 -eris *n*; **What voice is “audímur”?**
Passive. Cūius géneris est “audítur”?
 Passívī. [Note—“genus,” *in*
connection with nouns and adjectives
means “gender”, and in connection
with verbs means “voice.”]

vowel *s* vocál·is -is *f*

word *s* (*gram*) dicti·ō -ōnis *f*; **syllables**
form words sýllabae fáciunt
 dictiōnēs; **word for word** verbum
 prō verbō [Note—*In Roman*
grammars, “verbum” is used only for
“verb”; Quintilian says: “Verbum,
of course, has two meanings; in one
sense, “verbum” covers all parts of
which language is composed; in
another sense, it is restricted to the
part of speech such as “legō” and
“scrībō”. To avoid this ambiguity,
some have preferred to say “vōcēs,”
“locutiōnēs,” “dictiōnēs.”]

write *tr* scrībō scríberē scrípsi scríptus;
to write Latin Latínē scríberē

wrong *adj* vitíōs·us -a -um; *adv*
 pérperam

Appendix I: Yes and No in Latin

It may strike you as strange, but the Romans did not have a single word for Yes and No. (We, too, can say “yes” or “O.K.” or, informally, “yeah” or “yep” or, even more informally, “uhuh.”) There are single Latin adverbs that mean “yes”: **étiam**, **ita**, **sīc**, **sānē**, **máximē**, **ádmōdum**, **óppidō**, **certē**, **plānē**, **plānissimē**. These are not perfect synonyms. For example, **ita** and **sīc** mean “it is so”; **plānissimē** means “yes, exactly so”; **certē** means “certainly”; **ádmōdum** and **óppidō** both means “yes” or “quite so,” but **óppidō** is slightly more emphatic, carrying the sense of “precisely so.” Cicero indicates the most direct and simple response when he says: **aut “étiam” aut “nōn” respōndē** (answer either “yes” or “no.”)

Probably the most frequent way of saying “yes” in Latin is to repeat the word on which the emphasis rests in the question:

Erus eam véndidit?
Véndidit.

The master sold her?
Yes.

Ad patrémne eam dūcis?
Ad eum ipsum.

Are you taking her to her father?
Yes.

An nōn dīxī hoc esse futúrum?
Dīxistī.

Didn't I say that this was going to happen?
Yes.

Aiō. Nēgās.

I say yes. You say no.

You can safely use any of the adverbs for “yes.” When you get up your confidence, you can try to answer by repeating the emphatic word in the question. But then be sure to provide the correct form, as in the third example above.

As indicated above, the most direct negative particle is **nōn** (more frequently with the verb supplied from the question, or when something is immediately added). **Mínimē** is more emphatic, meaning “no, indeed” or “not in the least,” strengthened by **vērō**: **mínimē vērō** = “no, certainly not” or the informal **mínimē géntium** “absolutely not.” **Immō** or **imō** is used especially where a correction of something in the question is given. These expressions are in turn made more emphatic by appeals to deities such as **ēcástor** “by Castor,” **pol** or **édepol** “by Pollux,” **hércule** or **mehércule** “by Hercules,” **prō Iúppiter** “by Jupiter,” **prō dī immortalēs** “by the immortal gods” and similar expressions. When refusing an offer with “no, thank you,” the Romans simply said: **benígnē** or **rēctē**.

Appendix II: Colors

amber ēléctric·us -a -um

black: **dull black** ā·ter -tra -trum;
glossy black ni·ger -gra -grum;
pitch-black píce·us -a -um

beige flávid·us -a -um

blond flāv·us -a -um

blue: **azure blue** vénet·us -a -um; **dark blue** cýāne·us -a -um; **leaden blue** lífid·us -a -um; **sky-blue** caerúle·us -a -um (*esp. of eyes*)

bluish subcaerúle·us -a -um

bluish gray caési·us -a -um (*often referred by the Romans to blue eyes*)

brown fulv·us -a -um (*ranging from dull yellow to reddish brown; applied to hair, wine, sand, gold, stars, jasper*); **bright brown** spādíce·us -a -um; **dark brown** fusc·us -a -um [**Note:** brúnne·us -a -um *is of Germanic origin.*]

chartreuse chlōrín·us -a -um

chestnut spād·ix -ícis; bádi·us -a -um (*applied to horses only*)

color col·or -óris *m*; **to color** colōráre

cream-colored ebúrne·us -a -um

crimson coccíne·us -a -um

dark colored pull·us -a -um

dun-colored gilv·us -a -um (*ranging from almost neutral brownish gray to dull grayish brown, applied to horses*)

flame-colored flámme·us -a -um

flesh-colored cárne·us -a -um

golden auréol·us -a -um; aúre·us -a -um (*applied to hair*)

gray: **ash-gray** cinére·us -a -um; **dark gray** pull·us -a -um; **light gray** cān·us -a -um (*esp. hair*); **to be gray** cāneō -ére -uī; **to become gray** cānésc·ō -ere; **to be gray-haired** cānō cápite esse

grayish cānésc·ēns -éntis

green vírid·is -is -e (*most common term*; vir·ēns -éntis, virídul·us -a -um, *are shades of this*); **bright grass green** prásin·us -a -um; **emerald green** smarágdin·us -a -um; **grass green** herbáce·us -a -um; **olive green** oleváce·us -a -um; (**deep**) **sea green** vénet·us -a -um; (**light**) **sea green** glauc·us -a -um (*a dull green, passing into graying blue*); **very green** pervírid·is -is -e; **to be green** (*of green foliage*) vír·eō -ére -uī; (*of things growing*) vir·ēns -éntis, vírid·ēns -éntis; **to become green** virésc·ō -ere

greenish subvírid·is -is -e

hazel (*light to strong brown*) fulv·us -a -um; (*strong brown*) spād·ix -ícis

lavander lavanduláce·us -a -um; (*pale blue, with a slight mixture of gray*) caési·us -a -um

mauve violáce·us -a -um

ochre siláce·us -a -im

orange auránti·us -a -um, lúte·us -a -um; **dull orange** armeníac·us -a -um (*apricot-color*)

pink róse·us -a -um, pūnice·us -a -um

pinkish subróse·us -a -um

purple (**dull red with a slight dash of blue**) purpúre·us -a -um [*purpura* was originally the name of the shell fish itself; later the name of the dye.

This varied according to the shellfish used and the processing applied. The epithet purpúreus came to cover various red colors; now it embraces colors between red and violet: purple, scarlet, crimson, rosy red)

red rūf·us -a -um (*all shades*); ru·ber -bra -brum (*common term for any pure red*); **blood red** sanguíne·us -a -um; **bright red** rútil·us -a -um; **cardinal-red** cardinál·is -is -e; **dark red** rúbid·us -a -um; **cherry-red** cerásin·us -a -um; **deep red** coccíne·us -a -um; **pure lively red** phoeníce·us -a -um, pūníce·us -a -um

reddish súbru·ber -bra -brum, rubéll·us -a -um; subrúf·us -a -um, rúful·us -a -um (*of hair*); rubicúnd·us -a -um (*of the skin: flushed*)

rust-colored rubiginós·us -a -um

sandy (hair) fulv·us -a -um

scarlet miniát·us -a -um; **dull scarlet** phoeníce·us -a -um

silvery argénte·us -a -um

snow-white *see white*

strawberry-blond fulv·us -a -um

tan fulv·us -a -um

tawny fulv·us -a -um (*dull yellow, with a mixture of gray and brown*); cervín·us -a -um (*is a darker shade of it*)

turquoise túric·us -a -um

vermilion coccíne·us -a -um, miniát·us -a -um

violet violáce·us -a -um

white: dead white alb·us -a -um; **dull white** crētáce·us -a -um; **shiny white** cándid·us -a -um; **snow-white** níve·us -a -um (*the purest white*)

whitish subálb·us -a -um, álb·us -a -um, subálb·id·us -a -um

yellow flāv·us -a -um (*commonest term, a pale yellow*); **deep yellow** (*like egg yolk*) lúte·us -a -um or vitellín·us -a -um; **golden yellow** aúre·us -a -um; **lemon yellow** cítre·us -a -um (*purest yellow, without any brightness*); **pale yellow** gilv·us or gilb·us -a -um, lútéol·us -a -um

yellowish flávidus -a -um; subflāv·us -a -um (*of hair, approaching blond*)

yellowish gray rāv·us -a -um

yellowish orange gilv·us -a -um

[**Note**—The prefix sub- means “somewhat”, “almost” and can often be rendered by the English suffix “-ish.” Thus, **albus** means “white” and **subálb·us** means “whitish.”

The vagueness of Latin color terms is due to the origin of colors out of dyestuff and pigments. The colors of minerals vary, and dyes produce different effects according to the mode of preparation and the materials dyed. Their applications have to be guessed from literary sources, which for the most part are incidental and vague. Color names used by poets tend to be applied metaphorically or indefinitely.

To get a better idea of how the Romans applied color terms, it is necessary to cite the objects to which colors were attached. For example, when Horace describes Augustus as being transformed into a god, he speaks of the lips of the deified Augustus as **purpúreus**, indicating his health. **Purpúreus**, at least there, is crimson, not purple.]

When asking what color something is, the Romans used either the genitive or ablative of description; e.g.

What color is the house? Quō colóre est domus tua?
or Cuius colóris est domus tua?

Appendix III: Numbers

	CARDINAL	ORDINAL	
1	ūnus, ūna, ūnum	prīmus	I
2	duo, duae, duo	secūndus	II
3	trēs, tria	tertius	III
4	quattuor	quārtus	IV
5	quīnque	quīntus	V
6	sex	sextus	VI
7	septem	séptimus	VII
8	octō	octāvus	VIII
9	novem	nōnus	IX
10	decem	décimus	X
11	ūndecim	ūndécimus	XI
12	duódecim	duodécimus	XII
13	trédecim	tértius décimus	XIII
14	quattuórdecim	quārtus décimus	XIV
15	quīndecim	quīntus décimus	XV
16	sédecim	sextus décimus	XVI
17	septéndecim	sēptimus décimus	XVII
18	duodēvigintī	duodēvīcésimus	XVIII
19	ūndēvigintī	ūndēvīcésimus	XIX
20	vīgintī	vīcésimus	XX
21	vīgintī ūnus	vīcésimus prīmus	XXI
	ūnus et vīgintī		
22	vīgintī duo	vīcésimus secūndus	XXII
	duo et vīgintī		
30	trīgintā	trīcésimus	XXX
40	quadrāgintā	quadrāgésimus	XL
50	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgésimus	L
60	sexāgintā	sexāgésimus	LX
70	septuāgintā	septuāgésimus	LXX
80	octōgintā	octōgésimus	LXXX
90	nōnāgintā	nōnāgésimus	XC
100	centum	centésimus	C
101	centum ūnus	centésimus prīmus	CI
	centum et ūnus		
200	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentésimus	CC
300	trecentī, -ae, -a	trecentésimus	CCC
400	quadringentī, -ae, -a	quadringentésimus	CCCC
500	quīngentī, -ae, -a	quīngentésimus	D
600	sescentī, -ae, -a	sescentésimus	DC
700	septingentī, -ae, -a	septingentésimus	DCC
800	octingentī, -ae, -a	octingentésimus	DCCC
900	nōngentī, -ae, -a	nōngentésimus	DCCCC
1,000	mille	millésimus	M
2,000	duo mīlia	bis millésimus	MM
10,000	decem mīlia	déciēs millésimus	CCI/C/C
100,000	centum mīlia	céntiēs millésimus	CCC/C/C/C

Appendix IV: Proverbs and Sayings

[**Note**—The proverbs are arranged in alphabetical order. If a proverb does not begin with a significant word, a key word from the proverb is placed at the beginning to help you find the proverb that you are looking for.]

advantage: To whose advantage? Cui bonō?

advantage: One advantage in exchange for another. Quid prō quō. [*Something for something.*]

All or nothing. Aut Caesar aut nullus. [*Either Caesar or no one.*]

All's well that ends well. Ōmnia rēctē sunt quae bene finiūntur.

Anger is brief madness. Īra furor brevis est.

apple cart: Don't upset the apple cart. Nōlī plaustrum percēllere. [*Don't knock over the wagon.*]

attack: A personal attack. Argūmētum ad hōminem. [*An argument against a person (instead of against the issue).*]

bigger: The bigger they come, the harder they fall. Cāsus excēlsīs multō facilius nocet. [*The fall from high places more readily causes harm.*]

Birds of a feather flock together. Parēs cum páribus faciillimē congregántur. [*Likes easily flock together with likes.*]

bite off: Don't bite off more than you can chew. Quī maióra cupit saepe minóra capit. [*He who desires bigger things often gets the smaller (ones).*]

bold front: You're just putting on a bold front. Audácia prō murō habétur. [*Boldness serves as a wall.*]

borrowed time: You're living on borrowed time. Dē lucrō vīvis. [*You're living on profits.*]

buyer: Let the buyer beware. Cáveat ēmptor.

castles: You're building castles in the air. In arēnā aedíficās. [*You are building on sand.*]

Caught in the act (or caught red-handed). In flagrantī delíctō. [*In a flagrant crime.*]

changes: After making all necessary adjustments. Mūtātīs mūtándīs. [*Things having been changed that must be changed.*]

Charity begins at home. Prīma cāritās incipit ā sē ipsō. [*Charity first begins with oneself.*]

Cheap gift, cheap thanks. Vile dōnum, vilis grátia.

chickens: Don't count your chickens before they are hatched. Adhūc tua messis in herbā est. [*Your harvest is still on the stalk.*]

childhood: The old are in second childhood. Bis púerī senēs. [*Old men are boys twice.*]

Clothes make the man. Vestis virum facit.

companion: A constant companion. (*e.g., a favorite book*) Vāde mēcum. [*Go with me.*]

Crying brings a certain pleasure. Est quaedam volúptās flēre. [*To cry is a certain pleasure.*]

- damn: People damn what they do not understand.** Damnant quod nōn intēlegunt.
- dead: Say nothing but good about the dead.** Dē mōrtuīs nīl nisi bonum.
- deaf: To preach to deaf ears.** Ad surdās aurēs cantāre [*To sing to deaf ears.*]
- die: The die is cast.** Iacta est ālea.
- Do nothing in excess.** Nē nīmium. [*Not too much.*]
- Do unto others as you would have done unto you.** Ab āliō exspēctēs ālterī quod fēceris. [*You may expect from another what you have done to the other.*]
- dogs: Let sleeping dogs lie.** Nōlī irritāre leōnēs. [*Do not provoke lions.*]
- Don't worry about tomorrow.** Quid sit futūrum crās, fuge quaerere. [*Don't ask what tomorrow will be.*]
- drinking buddy: I hate a drinking buddy with a (good) memory.** Ōdī mémorem compōtōrem.
- drop: A drop hollows out stone.** Gutta cavat lāpidem.
- education: No one can take your education from you.** Homō doctus in sē dīvītiās semper habet. [*An educated person always has wealth within himself.*]
- eggs: Don't put all your eggs in one basket.** Nē committās ómnia ūnī nāvī. [*Don't entrust everything to one ship.*]
- eleventh: At the eleventh hour.** Inter caesa et porrēcta. [*between the slaughtering and the offering*]
- end: Look, the end is in sight!** Fīnis ecce labórum! [*Behold, the end of troubles.*]
- Enjoy the moment.** Carpe diem. [*Pluck the day.*]
- err: To err is human, to forgive, divine.** Errāre hūmānum est, ignóscere divīnum.
- Everyone has his price.** Vēnālis pópulus, vēnālis cúria patrum. [*The people are for sale, for sale is the senate.*]
- Experience is the best teacher.** Ūsus est óptimus magīster.
- faith: In good faith.** Bonā fidē.
- Familiarity breeds contempt.** Conversātiō parit contēptum. [*Close association produces contempt.*]
- fates: Fate leads the willing; it drags the unwilling.** Dūcunt voléntem fāta, nōléntem trahunt.
- favor: To accept a favor is to sell one's freedom.** Benefícium accíperere, libertátem est véndere.
- Fight over nothing.** Dē lānā caprínā rīxārī. [*To quarrel about goat's wool.*]
- fire: Fight fire with fire.** Simília similibus cūrāntur. [*Like things are taken care of by like.*]
- First come, first served.** Prior tēmpore, prior iūre. [*First in time, first by right.*]
- foot: You put your foot in your mouth.** Ō sī tacuísses, philósophus mānsísses. [*Oh, if you had remained silent, you would have remained a philosopher.*]
- forward: Not to go forward is to go backward.** Nōn prógredi est régredi.
- fox: A fox changes its fur, not its nature.** Vulpēs pilum mūtāt, nōn mōrēs.
- friend: A friend in need is a friend indeed.** Is est amícus quī in rē dúbīā

rē iuvat. [*He is a friend who really helps in need.*]

give: He gives twice who gives quickly. Bis dat, quī dat cito.

glory: So passes away the glory of the world. Sic trānsit glōria mundi.

God willing Deō volēte.

God helps those that help themselves.

Fortēs fortūna ādiuvat. [*Fortune helps the brave.*]

God: If God (is) for us, who (can be) against us? Sī Deus prō nōbīs, quis contrā nōs?

golden: The golden mean. Áurea mediócritās.

grain: With a grain of salt. Cum grānō sālīs.

greedy: The greedy man always feels need. Semper avārus eget.

grief: True grief is a private matter. Ille dolet vērē quī sine teste dolet. [*He truly grieves who grieves without a witness.*]

guard: Who will guard the guards? Quis custódēs custódiēt?

hair: Even a single hair casts a shadow. Étiam capíllus ūnus habet umbram suam.

Hard work overcomes all. Labor vincit ómnia.

Harp on the same old theme. Eándem recóquere crambem. [*To recook the same cabbage.*]

Haste makes waste. Festínātiō tarda est. [*Haste is slow.*]

hat: That's old hat. Crambē repetíta est. [*It's cabbage served up again.*]

heart: My heart was in my throat. Ánima mihi in nāsō erat.

heart: One speaks what's in one's heart. Ex abundántiā cordis ōs

lóquitur. [*From the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks.*]

high road: I see the high road but take the low road. Vídeō meliōra probóque; dēteriōra sequor. [*I see and approve of the better; I follow the worse.*]

High offices change one's character. Honórēs mūtant mōrēs.

holy of holies. Sānctum Sānctórum.

horse: A fast-running horse needs no spurs. Equō curréntī nōn opus calcáribus.

hovel: A great man can come from a hovel. Exíre magnus vir ex tugúriō potest.

I am what you will be; I was what you are. (*On a Roman tombstone*) Sum quod eris; fuī quod es.

imitator: Oh imitators, you servile herd. Ō imitátórēs, servum pecus.

impressions: First impressions are deceptive. Frōns p̄rīma multōs dēcipit. [*The first appearance deceives many.*]

indispensable: An indispensable condition. Causa sine quā nōn.

It's not who you are but what you are that counts. Nōn quis sed quid. [*Not who but what.*]

It's a good omen. Ōmen faustum est.

Jack of all trades. Áliquis in ómnibus, nūllus in síngulis. [*A somebody in general, a nobody in particular.*]

Jack of all trades. Homō omnis Minérvae. [*A person of all Minerva = goddess of handicrafts.*]

justice: Let justice be done though the heavens fall. Fiat iústítia, ruat caelum.

Kill two birds with one stone. Duōs parietēs dē eādē fidéliā dealbáre.

[*To whitewash two walls with one bucket.*]

Kindness begets kindness. Grátia grátiam parit.

Knowledge is power. Ipsa sciéntia potéstās est.

law: No one is above the law. Caesar nōn suprā grammáticōs est. [*Caesar is not above grammarians.*]

learn: People learn while they teach. Hóminēs, dum docent, discunt.

Like father, like son. Cólubra restem nōn parit. [*A snake does not give birth to a rope.*]

like: He who says whatever he likes, must hear what he does not like. Quī quae vult dīcit, quae nōn vult aúdiat.

live: Don't live one way in private, another in public. Nōn vīvēs áliter in sōlitúidine, áliter in forō.

logical: That's not logical. Nōn séquitur. [*It doesn't follow.*]

lonely: He is absolutely lonely who is friendless. Sólus omnínō est quī sine amícō est.

Love is blind. Nēmō in amóre videt. [*No one sees when in love.*]

love: A woman loves or hates; there's nothing inbetween. Aut amat aut ódit múlier; nihil est tértium.

love: You can't hide love or a cough. Amor tussísque nōn cēlántur. [*Love and a cough do not hide.*]

lucky: You're lucky to be alive. Dē lucrō vīvis. [*You're living on profits.*]

make mountains out of molehills Ē rīvō flúmina magna fácere

matter: The matter is still undecided. Adhūc sub iúdice līs est. [*The case is still before the judge.*]

mind: A sound mind in a sound body. Mēns sána in córpore sánō.

Moderation in all things. Modus in ómnibus.

moon: To promise the moon. Montēs aurī pollicērī. [*To promise mountains of gold.*]

nail: You've hit the nail on the head. Acū rem tetigístī. [*You've touched the thing with a needle.*]

Necessity is the mother of invention. Ingeniósa rērum egéstās est. [*Need of things is ingenious.*]

Necessity takes no vacation. Necéssitās caret fēriīs.

needle: To look for a needle in a haystack. Nōdum in scirpō quaérere. [*To look for a knot on a bulrush.*]

Nip the thing in the bud. Príncipiīs obstáre. [*To block the beginnings.*]

No sooner said than done. Cítius factō. (*also: Dictum factum.*)

No one is obliged to do more than he can. Ultrā posse nēmō obligátur.

nose: To lead someone by the nose. Lábīis áliquem ductáre. [*To lead somone by the lips.*]

Nothing new under the sun. Nīl dictum quod nōn prius dictum. [*Nothing said that has not been said before.*]

Nothing ventured, nothing gained. Bene est tentáre. [*It is good to try.*]

Now or never. Nunc aut numquam.

office: By virtue of his (her) office. Ex offícō.

One of a kind. Suī géneris.

One quarrel leads to another. Līs litem génerat. [*Strife begets strife.*]

opinion: There are as many opinions as there are people. Quot hóminēs,

tot sententiae. [*As many people, so many opinions.*]

own: To each his own. Suum cuique.

pair: They make a pair. Pār bene comparātum. [*A well matched pair.*]

Patience is a cure for all pain. Cuivis dolōri remēdium est patiētia.

peace/war: He who desires peace should prepare for war. Quī dēsīderat pācem praēparet bellum.

peas: As like as two peas in a pod. Tam sīmilis quam lacte lāctī est. [*As similar as milk is to milk.*]

plans: The best laid plans often go awry. Bene cōgitāta saepe cecidērunt male. [*Well thought-out things have often turned out badly.*]

please: You can't please everybody. Frūstrā labōrat quī omnibus placēre studet. [*He who tries to please everyone labors in vain.*]

point: Carrying a point to extremes. Redūctiō ad absūrdum.

Pour oil on the flame. Óleum áddere camínō. [*To add oil to the stove.*]

Practice makes perfect. Exercitātiō óptima magístra est. [*Practice is the best teacher.*]

public: For the public good. Prō bonō pūblicō.

punishment: Let the punishment fit the crime. Culpae (or nōxiae) poena pār estō.

Quality rather than quantity. Nōn multa sed multum. [*Not many things but much.*]

reap: You reap what you sow. Ut seméntem fēceris, ita metēs. [*As you will have done the sowing, so you shall reap.*]

Repetition is the mother of studies. Repetitīō est māter studiōrum.

right: By what right? Quō iūre?

right: Where there's a right, there's an obligation. Ubi iūs, ibi officium.

road: The road to the stars is through the rough. Per áspera ad astra. [*Through the rough to the stars.*]

rock: Between a rock and a hard place. Inter sacrum saxúmque. [*Between the altar and the sacrificial knife.*]

Rome: When in Rome, do as the Romans do. Cōsuetūdō loci observānda est. [*The custom of the place must be observed.*]

scratch: You scratch my back, and I'll scratch yours. Manus manum lavat. [*A hand washes a hand.*]

scratch: To start over from scratch. Ad cárcerēs ā calce revocārī. [*To be called back from the finish line to the starting gate.*]

secret: If you want another to keep your secret, keep it first yourself. Álium silēre quod volēs, pīmus silē.

Seeing is believing. Vidē et crēde. [*See and believe.*]

Self-love is blind. Caecus est amor suī. [*Love of oneself is blind.*]

Shame on you! Prō pudor! [*For shame.*]

Silence is consent. Quī tacet, cōséntit. [*He who is silent gives his consent.*]

smoke: Where there's smoke, there's fire. Flamma fūmō est prōxima. [*A flame is next to smoke.*]

sore spot: You've hit a sore spot. Tangis ulcus. [*You are touching a sore.*]

sow: As you sow, so shall you reap. Ut sēméntem fēceris, ita metēs.

Speaking of the devil. Lupus in fābulā (or in sermōne). [*Wolf in the story (or conversation).*]

stomach: You can't study well on a full stomach. Plēnus venter nōn studet libēnter. [*A full stomach does not study well.*]

stomach: The stomach doesn't have ears. (i.e., *don't preach to the hungry.*) Venter nōn habet aurēs.

stone: A rolling stone gathers no moss. Lapis volūtus haud mūscō obdūcitur. [*A rolling stone does not get covered with moss.*]

Strike the iron when it is hot. Ferrum, dum in igne candet, cūdendum est. [*Iron must be struck while it glows in the fire.*]

surprised: Be surprised at nothing. Nīl mirāre.

taste: You can't argue about taste. Dē gūstibus nōn disputandum est. [*There should be no dispute about tastes.*]

tears: Nothing dries faster than tears. Lācrimā nihil cītius ārēscit.

tea pot: To stir up a tempest in a tea pot. Excitāre flūctūs in sīmpulō. [*To stir up waves in a ladle.*]

Thank God. Deō grātiās.

tiger: I have a tiger by the tail. Aúribus tēneō lupum. [*I have a wolf by the ears.*]

tiger: A tiger never changes his stripes. Vulpēs pilum mūtāt, nōn mōrēs. [*The fox changes his fur, not his character.*]

Time brings all to light. Tempus ómnia revēlat.

Time flies. Tempus fugit.

Time will tell. Diēs vērītātem áperit. [*Time uncovers the truth.*]

Times change, and we change with them. Témpora mūtāntur, nōs et mūtāmur in illīs.

tip: It's on the tip of my tongue. Versátur mihi in prīmóribus labrīs. [*It's on the edge of my lips.*]

tit: To give tit for tat. Pār parī respondére. [*To render like for like.*]

tongue: To have tongue in cheek. Tācitō ridére nāsō. [*To laugh with a quiet nose.*]

treasure: Where your treasure is there is also your heart. Ubi est thesaurus tuus, ibi est et cor tuum.

Trust begets trust. Fidēs facit fidem.

tune: You're singing the same old tune. Cantilēnam eándem canis. [*You're singing the same refrain.*]

waste: You are wasting your time. Láterem crūdum lavās. [*You are washing an unbaked brick.*]

wealth: Where there are friends, there are riches. Ubi amīcī, ibi opēs.

welfare: The welfare of the people is the supreme law. Salūs pópulī suprēma est lēx.

Well, the last of the Romans! Em, últimus Rōmānórum.

Where there's life there's hope. Dum ánima est, spēs est. [*As long as there is breath, there is hope.*]

Winning is everything. Víncrere aut morī. [*To conquer or to die.*]

wise: A word to the wise is sufficient. Dictum sapiéntī sat est.

world: The world wants to be deceived. Mundus vult dēcipī.

words: They went from words to blows. Á verbīs ad vérbera. [*From words to blows.*]

wrong: One wrong does not excuse another. Iniúria nōn excúsat iniúriam.

You're getting in over your head. Magnum mare ingrēderis. [*You're entering the great sea.*]

Appendix V: Computer Terms

- address** īnscrīpti·ō -ōnis *f* ēlectrōnica
- address book** lib·er -rī *m* īnscrīptiōnum
ēlectrōnicārum
- attachment** appendīcul·a -ae *f*,
document·um -ī *n* annexum
- boot up** īnīti·ō -āre -āvī systēma
- booting-up** īnītiāti·ō -ōnis *f* systēmatis
- browse** (*the Web*) nāvīgāre; (*text documents*) perlūstrāre
- browser** (*Web viewer*) nāvīgātr·um -ī *n*;
(*viewer of text documents*)
perlūstrātr·um -ī *n*
- button** plēctr·um -ī *n*
- byte** octēt·us -ī *m*
- carbon copy** exēmpl·ar -āris *n*
carbōneum
- CD** compāctus disc·us -ī *m*
- CD-ROM** compāctus disc·us -ī *m*
ópticus
- chip** tal·us -ī *m*
- click** *tr* dēprim·ō -ere dēprēssī; pulsāre;
left-click sinistrōrsum dēprīmere;
right-click dextrōrsum dēprīmere;
double-click bis dēprīmere *or* bis
pulsāre
- close** conclūd·ō -ere -ī conclūsus
- command** iuss·um -ī *n*
- compact disk (CD)** compāctus disc·us
-ī *m*
- computer** *s* computātr·um -ī *n*,
ōrdinātr·um -ī *n*
- computer** *adj* computātrāl·is -is -e,
ōrdinātrāl·is -is -e
- computer game** lūs·us -ūs *m*
computātrālis; **to play a computer**
- game** lūsū computātrālem lūd·ō -ere
lūsī
- connect** cōnēct·ō -ere cōnēxuī cōnēxus
- connection** connēx·us -ūs *m*
- copy** *s* exēmpl·ar -āris *n*
- copy** exēmplar fācere
- crash** *intr* cōrru·ō -ere -ī
- cursor** curs·or -ōris *m*
- cut and paste** sec·ō secāre sécuī et
glūtīnāre
- cyberspace** cyberspāti·um -ī *n*
- data** dat·a -ōrum *npl*
- database** datōrum repositōri·um -ī *n*
- DCD** digitālis compāctus disc·us -ī *m*
- delete** dēl·eō dēlēre dēlēvī dēlētus
- desktop** (*on the screen*) in quadrō
- digital** digitāl·is -is -e
- directory** plicārum ind·ex -icis *m*
- disk** disc·us -ī *m*; **floppy disk** discus
flexībilis
- disk drive** discōrum receptācul·um -ī *n*,
īnstrūmēt·um -ī *n* discīs legēndīs
- diskette** díscul·us -ī *m*
- download** ex rēte prehén·dō -dere -dī
-sus (*or* éxprom·ō -ere -psī -tus
- drag** trah·ō -ere traxī
- edit** ēdō ēdere édidī éditus
- electronic** ēlectrōnic·us -a -um
- e-mail** *s* lītter·ae -ārum *fpl* ēlectrōnicae;
(*the system*) curs·us -ūs *m*
ēlectrōnicus
- e-mail** *tr* (ad áliquem) lītterās
ēlectrōnicās mīttere

- e-mail address** ĩnscrĭpti·ō -ōnis *f*
ēlectrōnica
- enter** *tr* ĩn computātrum rēferō refēre
rētulī relātus
- file** documēt·um -ī *n*
- folder** coōpērcul·um -ī *n*
- font** typ·us -ī *m*
- format** *s* form·a -ae *f*
- format** *tr* (discum) cōnformāre
- forward** (*e-mail letter*) dēfer·ō dēfēre
dētulī dēlātus
- garbage in, garbage out** ex quisquĭliis
fiunt quisquĭliae
- hacker** plagiāri·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
ēlectrōnic·us (-a), effrāctāri·us -ī *m*
(·a -ae *f*) ēlectronic·us (-a)
- hard drive** dura stāti·ō -ōnis *f*
- hardware** apparāt·us -ūs *m*
computātrālis
- home page** pāgin·a -ae *f* domēstica
- hypertext** *adj* hypertextuāl·is -is -e
- hypertext** *s* hypertext·us -ūs *m*
- icon** ĩcōn, ĩconis *f*
- input** *s* ĩnit·us -ūs *m*; **input and output**
(datōrum) ĩnitus exitūsque
- install** ĩnstru·ō ĩnstruere ĩnstrūxī
ĩnstrūctus
- internet** *s* ĩnterrēt·e -is *n*
- internet** *adj* ĩnterrētĭāl·is -is -e
- joystick** vect·is -is *m*, véctul·us -ī *m*
- key** mallēol·us -ī *m*, plēctr·um -ī *n*
- keyboard** plēctrolōgi·um -ī *n*, ōrd·ō
-inis *m* plēctrōrum
- laptop** computātrul·um -ī *n* portābile
- link** *tr* cōnēct·ō -ere cōnēxuī cōnēxus
- link** *s* cōnēx·us -ūs *m*
- linker** cōnēctr·um -ī *n*
- linking** *s* cōnēxi·ō -ōnis *f*
- list** (*mailing list*) grex, gregis *m*
(ĩnterrētĭālis)
- list owner** gregis moderā·tor -tōris *m*
(·trĭx -trĭcis *f*)
- log in** *intr* ĩn·eō -ĭre -ĭvī *or* -ī ĩnitūrus
- log out** *intr* ĩx·eō -ĭre -ĭvī *or* -ī exitūrus
- magnetic** magnētĭc·us -a -um
- mail** lĭtter·ae -ārum *fpl* ēlectrōnicae,
epĭstul·a -ae *f* ēlectrōnica
- memory** memōri·a -ae *f*
- menu** ĩussōrum tabēll·a -ae *f*
- message** nūnti·us -ī *m*
- modem** trānsmodulātr·um -ī *n*
- monitor** monitōri·um -ī *n*, caps·a -ae *f*
computātrālis
- mouse** mūscol·us -ī *m*, mūs, mūris *m*
- mouse clicker** mūris pulsābul·um -ī *n*
- net** rēt·e -is *n*
- open** apēr·iō -ĭre -uī -tus
- operating system** systēm·a -atis *n*
ĩntērnūm
- output** ĩxit·us -ūs *m*
- password** tēsser·a -ae *f*
- personal computer** computātr·um -ī *n*
domēstĭcum
- pointer** (mūris) ĩnd·ex -icis *m*
- port** port·us -ūs *m*
- print** typĭs ĩmprim·ō -ere ĩmprēssī
ĩmprēssus
- printer** māchin·a -ae *f* typogrāphica,
ĩmprēssōri·um -ī *n*
- processor** ēditōri·um -ī *n*
- program** *s* progrāmm·a -atis *n*
- program** *tr* progrāmm·ō -āre -āvī -ātus
- programmer** programmā·tor -tōris *m*
(·trĭx -ĭcis *f*)
- prompt** mōnit·us -ūs *m*
- RAM** memōri·a -ae *f* volātĭlis

reboot redinitiáre

reply respónd·eō -ére -ī

ROM memóri·a -ae *f* fíxa

run *tr* **to run a program** prográmma
administráre || *intr* óper·or -ári -átus
sum; **the program is running**
prográmma operátur

save serváre

scan scan·dō -dere -dī -sus

scanner scānsóri·um -ī *n*

screen quadr·um -ī *n* vīsíficum

scroll down dēvól·ō -ere -ī

send mitt·ō -ere mīsī missus

shut down claud·ō -ere clausī clausus

software part·ēs -ium *fpl*
programmātiónis

spam sagīnāti·ō -ónis

speaker megaphóni·um -ī *n*

spread sheet chart·a -ae *f* computátíva

string sér·iēs -ēī *f*

subdirectory plicárum subínd·ex -icis
m

subscribe subscrib·ō -ere subscripsī

terminal terminál·e -is *n*

text text·us -ūs *m*

thread séri·ēs -ēī *f* epistolárum
ēlectronicárum

toolbar ínstrūmentórum tabéll·a -ae *f*

tools ínstrūment·a -órum *npl*

turn off exstín·guō -gere -xī -tus

turn on excitáre

type dactylographáre

unsubscribe cessáre

URL Ūniversále Rērum Locátr·um -ī *n*,
ínscrípti·ō -ónis interrētiális

web site sit·us -ūs *m* interrētiális

window fenestéll·a -ae *f*

word processor prográmm·a -atis *n*
ēditórium

World Wide Web (WWW) Tēl·a -ae *f*
Tóttus Terrae (TTT)

write compón·ō -ere compósuī
compósitus; **to write a program**
prográmma compónere

Appendix VI: Cantūs Latīnī

Latin Songs

Ecce Caesar

(Clementine or Ode to Joy)

1. Ecce Caesar nunc triumphat quī subēgit Galliam
Cīviumque multītūdō celebrat victōriam.

Chorus:

Gāius Iūlius Caesar noster, imperātor, pontifex,
Prīmum praetor, deinde cōsul, nunc dictātor, moxque rēx.

2. En victōrēs prōcēdentēs, laetī flōribus novīs,
Magnā praedā sunt potītī et captīvīs plūrimīs.
3. Exsultantēs magnā vōce ‘iō triumphē’ concinunt,
Dum aurātum ante currum victae urbēs prōcēdunt.
4. Legiōnēs Viam Sacram tōtam complent strepitū,
Capitōlinumque collem scandit Caesar in currū.
5. Ō sōl pulcher, ō laudande, Caesarem recēpimus,
et corōnā triumphālī honōrātum vīdimus.

Gaudeāmus igitur

Gaudeāmus igitur, iuvenēs dum
sumus (2)

Post iūcundam iuventūtem,
Post molestam senectūtem
Nōs habēbit humus,
Nōs habēbit humus.

Ubi sunt quī ante nōs in mundō
fuēre? (2)

Trānseās ad superōs,
abeās ad īnferōs,
quōs sī vīs vidēre,
quōs sī vīs vidēre.

Vīta nostra brevis est, brevī finiētur;
(2)

Venit mors velōciter,
Rapit nōs atrōciter
Nēminī parcētur,
Nēminī parcētur.

Vīvat acadēmia, vīvant prōfessōrēs,
(2)

Vīvat membrum quodlibet,
Vīvant membra quaelibet;
Semper sint in flōre,
Semper sint in flōre.

Vivat et rēs pūblica, et quī illam
regit (2)

Vivat nostra cīvitatās,
Maecēnātum cāritās,
quae nōs hīc prōtegit,
quae nōs hīc prōtegit.

Tē, canō, Patria

(America)

Tē canō, patria, candida libera, tē referet.
Portus et exulum, et tumulus senum
Libera montium vōx resonet.

Battle Hymn of the Republic

Advenientis dominī cōspexī glōriam;
Īrārum ūvās conterēns calcāt vīndēmiam;
Ēvāgīnāvit fulguris fātālis lāminam;
Incēdit vēritās.
Glōria, glōria, allelūia! Glōria, glōria allelūia!
Glōria, glōria allelūia! Incēdit vēritās.

Tū es Sōl meus

(You are my Sunshine)

Tū es sōl meus, sōl sōlus meus,
Laeticās mē cum nūbēs sunt.
Ō numquam sciēs quantum tē
amem,
Nōlī, sīs, auferre sōlem.

Tū es sōl meus, sōl sōlus meus,
Laeticās mē cum nūbēs sunt.
Ō numquam sciēs quantum tē
amem,
Nōlī, sīs, auferre sōlem.

Tē semper amāb(ō) et laeticābō,
Sī modo eris similis.
Sed sī mē linquis et aliam amās,
Paenitēbit tē ōlim.

Dilēcta est trāns Ōceanum

(My Bonnie Lies Over the Ocean)

Dilēcta est trāns ōceanum,
Nōn est iam dilecta domī!
Dilēcta est trāns ōceanum
Refer dilectam ad mē.

Refrain:

Refer, refer,
Ō refer dilēctam ad mē, ad mē
Refer, refer,
Ō refer dilēctam ad me.

Domus in Prātō*(Home on the Range)*

Dā mī domum ubi ūrī errant,
 Ubi cervī et dorcī lūdunt;
 Et rārō audīs verbum incommodum
 Et nūbila caela nōn sunt.

Chorus:
 Domus in prātō
 Ubi cervī et dorcī lūdunt;
 Et rārō audīs verbum incommodum
 Et nūbila caela nōn sunt.

Penitus in Corde Texae*(Deep in the Heart of Texas)*

Noctū stellae
 Magnae, clārae
 Penitus in corde Texae.
 Prātī caelum
 Lātum, altum
 Penitus in corde Texae.

Mē memorant
 Quem eg(o) amō
 Penitus in corde Texae.
 Salvia flōrēns
 Est unguentum,
 Penitus in corde Texae.

Flāva Rosa Texiae*(The Yellow Rose of Texas)*

1. Est flāva Rosa Texae
 Ībō ut videam
 Nūllus cognōscit eam
 Nēmō, sōlum ego.
 Sīc flēvit cum abīvī
 Cor paene frangēbat
 Sī iterum coībimus
 Numquam abībimus.

2. Ubi Flūmen Magnum fluit,
 Stellae lūcent clārae,
 Per flūmen vadēbāmus
 Quiētā noct(e) aestīvā.
 Inquit: “Sī meministī,
 Ut ōlim discessimus,
 Prōmīstī tū redīre
 Nec sīc mē linquere.

Chorus:

Dulcissim(a) est rosella
 Quam Texas alēbat,
 Oclī ut diamantēs
 Micant sicutī ros.
 Dicās dē Clēmentīnā,
 Cantēs Rosaliam,
 Sed Flāva Rosa Texae
 Est ūnica mihi.

Auld Lang Syne

1. Sodālitātis veteris cūr immemor erō?
Cūr temporis praeteritī fiet oblīviō?

Chorus:

Ob aevum iam praeteritum, praeteritum diū,
Nōs pōculum plēnissimum sūmēmus nunc manū.

2. Tum dextra dextrum implicet, ō vōx fīdissimī;
Prōlixē proluāmus nōs flūminibus vīnī.

Happy Birthday to You

Fēlix nātālis tibi,
Fēlix nātālis tibi,
Fēlicissimus diēs
Nātālis tibi!

N.B. For additional Latin songs, see *Latine Cantemus*, Franz Schlosser, Bolchazy-Carducci Publisher, Inc., ISBN 0-86516-315-4

General Vocabulary

N.B.

This General Vocabulary is a compilation of the topical vocabularies in the chapters. For a more complete resource, consult Traupman, *Latin Dictionary*, Amsco, N.Y.

The principal parts of the following commonly occurring verbs are not provided in the vocabulary:

accipiō accipere accēpī accēptus
agō agere egī actus
dō dare dedī datus
dicō dīcere dīxī dictus
ducō dūcere dūxī ductus
faciō facere fecī factus
habeō habere habuī hābitus
lūdō lūdere lūxī lūsus
sum esse fuī futūrus
veniō venire vēnī ventum

A

A: she explained everything to me from A to Z ab āciā et acū mihi omnia expōsuit

abbreviate breviāre, immīnu·ō -ere -ī imminūtus

abbreviation not·a -ae *f* (compendiāria)

ABC's prīm·ae lītter·ae -ārum *fpl*; **know one's ABC's** lītterās sciō scīre scīvī

abdomen ven·ter -tris *m*

ability faciūt·ās -ātis *f*; **ability to read and write** legēndī scribēndīque faciūtās; **natural ability** ingēni·um -ī *n*; **speaking ability** dicēndī faciūtās;

to the best of my ability prō meā parte

ablative *adj* ablātīv·us -a -um; **ablative case** cās·us -ūs *m* ablātīvus, ablātīv·us -ī *m*; **in the ablative case** cāsū ablātīvō

able: be able to possum posse pōtūi (+ *inf*), queō quīre quīvī *or* quīi (+ *inf*)

abounding in abūd·āns -āntis (+ *abl*)

about (*approximately*) círciter, ferē; (*concerning*) dē (+ *abl*)

above suprā (+ *acc*); **be above** (*e.g., bribery*) indígn·or -ārī -ātus sum (+ *acc*)

abroad: from abroad extrínsec·us -a -um; **go abroad, live abroad, travel abroad** peregrín·or -ārī

absence: in my absence mē absēnte

absent abs·ēns -ēntis; **be absent** absum abesse áfuī áfutūrus; **be absent without leave** ad commeātus diem nōn adsum adesse ádfuī

absentee abs·ēns -ēntis *mf*

absolutely omnínō, prōrsus; **absolutely nothing** nihil prōrsus

abstract noun *s* appellāti·ō -ōnis *f* (ut “bónitās” **goodness**)

absurd absúrd·us -a -um

abusive malédic·us -a -um

academy acadēmi·a -ae *f*

accent *s* accént·us -ūs *m*; **place the accent on a syllable** accéntum in sýllabā pōn·ō -ere pōsuī pōsitus

accent mark ap·ex -icis *m*

accident cās·us -ūs *m*; calamit·ās -ātis *f*
(autocinética)

accidentally cāsū, fortuītō

accommodations hospíti·um -ī *n*

accomplish cōnfíc·iō -ere cōnfēcī
cōnféctus

accomplished ērudítus -a -um

according to secúndum (+ *acc*)

accordion harmónic·a -ae *f* didúctilis

account ráti·ō -ōnis *f*; **audit accounts**
ratiōnēs dispún·gō -gere -xī -ctus;
balance accounts ratiōnēs cōnferō
cōnférre cōntulī collátus; **the account**
balances rátiō cōnstat

accountant ratiōcinát·or -ōris *m*,
ratiōcinátr·īx -ícis *f*

account books tábul·ae -árum *fpl*
(accéptī et expénsī)

accounting cōnfécī·ō -ōnis *f* tabulárum;
keep (accounting) books tábulās
cōnfíc·iō -ere cōnfēcī cōnféctus

accusation accūsáti·ō -ōnis *f*

accuse accūsáre (*with acc of person and*
gen or dē + abl of the charge);
árgu·ō -ere -ī (*with acc of the person*
and gen of the charge); **accuse s.o.**
of a capital offense áliquem reī
capitális re·um (-am) fácere

ache *intr* dól·eō -ēre -uī; **I ache all over**
tōtus (-a) dóleō

ache *s* dol·or -ōris *m*; **have a headache**
ā cápite labōráre; **have a toothache** ā
dente labōráre

acquit (of) absól·v·ō -ere -ī absólútus (dē
+ *abl*; *more rarely w. gen*); **acquit**
s.o. of a capital crime áliquem
cápitis absólvere

acquittal absólúti·ō -ōnis *f*

acrobat petauristári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

across trāns (+ *acc*); **across from** ex
advérsō (+ *gen*), exadvérsum (+ *acc*)

act *intr* ag·ō -ere ēgī áctus; **act as a**
friend amícum ágere; (*behave*) **act**
badly sē túrpiter ger·ō -ere gessī

active ála·cer -cris -cre; (*gram*) áctív·us
-a -um; **active service: be on active**
service stípéndia fácere; **active verb**
verbum agéndī *or* agēns *or* áctívum;
active voice gen·us -eris *n* áctívum;
be active in vers·or -ári -átus sum *in*
(+ *abl*)

actor hístri·ō -ōnis *m*, áct·or -ōris *m*

actress áctr·īx -ícis *f*

acute (illness) acút·us -a -um

ad praecóni·um -ī *n*

Adam's apple pōm·um -ī *n* Adámī;
nōd·us -ī *m* gútturis

add (to) adíc·iō -ere adiéci adiéctus (+
dat)

adding machine máchin·a -ae *f*
additiōnális

addition: in addition accēdit quod (+
indic)

address *s* ĩnscrípti·ō -ōnis *f* cursuális;
(*comput*) ĩnscríptiō ēlectrónica

address *tr* ádloqu·or -ī adlocútus sum;
(*a letter*) ĩnscríb·ō -ere ĩnscrípsī
ĩnscríptus; **a letter addressed to you**
epístula tibi ĩnscrípta

address book (comput) lib·er -brī *m*
ĩnscríptiōnum (ēlectrónica·rum)

adhesive glüt·en -inis *n*; **adhesive tape**
taéni·a -ae *f* adhaesíva

adjacent to contérmin·us -a -um (+ *dat*)

adjectival *adj* adiectívál·is -is -e

adjective *s* adiectív·um -ī *n*

adjoin adiúng·or -ī adiúncus sum (+
dat)

- adjoining** iūnct·us -a -um; **adjoining rooms** iūncta cubícula
- adjourn** ampliáre
- administration** administráti·ō -ōnis *f*
- admirable** admírābil·is -is -e
- admiration** admírāti·ō -ōnis *f*
- admission ticket** tésser·a -ae *f* aditiális
- adopt** adoptáre
- adoptive daughter** fīli·a -ae *f* adoptíva
- adoptive son** fīli·us -ī *m* adoptívus
- adore** adōráre
- Adriatic** Hadriáticum mar·e -is *n*
- adult** *adj* adúlt·us -a -um, grand·is -is -e
- adult** *s* adúltus hom·ō -inis *m*; (*not including aged persons*) pūb·ēs -is *mf*
- advantage** bon·um -ī *n*; **be of advantage (to)** prōsum prōdesse prófuī (+ *dat*); **derive great advantage from** multum cómmodum ex áliquā rē cápere; **take advantage of s.o.'s ignorance** alicúius ignorántiam sibi quaestuī habére; **take advantage of the opportunity** occásiōnem nancísc·or -ī nāctus sum; **to whose advantage was it (that ...)?** cui bonō fuit (+ *acc w. inf*)?
- adverb** advérbi·um -ī *n*
- adverbial** adverbiál·is -is -e
- advertise** prōscríb·ō -ere prōscrípī prōscríptus
- advertisement** praecóni·um -ī *n*; (*poster*) prōscrípī·ō -ōnis *f*
- advice** cōnsíli·um -ī *n*; **good advice** rēctum cōnsílium; **I will take your advice on the matter** cōnsílium tuum illíus rē cápiam; **on your advice** tē auctóre; **sound advice** vērum cōnsílium
- advise** suád·eō -ére suāsī (+ *dat*)
- aedile** aedíl·is -is *m*
- aedileship** aedílít·ās -átis *f*
- affable** affābil·is -is -e
- affair** rēs, rēī *f*; **have an affair with s.o.** cōnsuetúdinem cum áliquō habére
- affected** affectát·us -a -um
- affection** am·or -ōris *m*
- affectionate** am·āns -ántis
- afraid** formídulós·us -a -um; **afraid of** tímíd·us -a -um (+ *gen*); **be afraid (of)** tím·eō -ére -uī (+ *acc*), metuō metúere metuī; **I am afraid that ...** vér·eor -éri véritus sum nē ... ; **what are you afraid of?** quid est quod metuís?
- after** *conj* postquam (+ *indic*)
- after** *prep* post (+ *acc*); (*immediately after*) ē or ex (+ *abl*), dē (+ *abl*); **after all** rē vērā; **after this** post hāc; **after that** deínde, subínde; **be after s.o. (romantically)** áliquem pet·ō -ere -ívī; **immediately after** statim ā or ab (+ *abl*)
- afternoon** temp·us -oris *n* postmeridiānum; **in the afternoon** postmerídiē, post merídiem; **this afternoon** hódie post merídiem
- afterwards** pósteā
- again** íterum, rūsus; **again and again** idéntidem, étiam atque étiam
- age** aet·ās -átis *f*; **at age fifteen** décimū quíntum annū ag·ēns -éntis; **he is under twenty years of age** minor vīgínti annórum est; **she was ten years of age** erat decem annōs nāta
- aged** annós·us -a -um, longaév·us -a -um
- agile** ágil·is -is -e
- ago** (*prepositive*) abhinc, e.g., **ten years ago** abhinc decem annōs; **a short**

while ago paulō ante; **how long ago?** quam prīdem?; **long ago** iamdūdum, iamprīdem; **not so long ago** haud ita prīdem; **sometime ago** prīdem dūdum

agree (with) cōnsént·iō -īre cōnsénsī cōnsensus (cum + *abl*)

agreeable cōmmod·us -a -um, grāt·us -a -um

agreement foed·us -eris *n*; **according to the terms of the agreement** ex foedere

aha! attát!

ahead: go ahead, tell me! Ágedum, dīc mihi!; **ahead of time** ante tempus

ail: what ails you? quid tibi est?

ailment mal·um -ī *n*

airbag aērius foll·is -is *m*

air conditioner instrūment·um -ī *n* aēri temperándō

aircraft carrier nāv·is -is *f* aēroplanígera

airline trām·es -itis *m* aērius

airplane aēróplan·um -ī *n*

airport aērópórt·us -ūs *m*

air pressure préssi·ō -ōnis *f* aéria

alarm suscitábul·um -ī *n*; (*terror*) pav·or -ōris *m*; **set the alarm for (six o'clock)** óbicem ad (hōram sextam) infīg·ō -ere infīxī infīxus; **the alarm went off** suscitábulum sónuít

alarm clock hōrológi·um -ī *n* suscitátórium

alcohol álcohol -is *n*

alcoholic alcohólic·us -a -um

alert ā·cer -cris -cre

alibi absēntiae argūmént·um -ī *n*

alimony alimóni·um -ī *n*

all omn·is -is -e; **all along: I knew all along** ūsque ab inítiō scīvī; **all but** propémódum; **I have all but given up hope** propémódum spem dēmísi; **all in all** prōrsus; **in all** omnínō; **all over the world** ubíque terrárum; **all right** quidem, licet; **it's all right** rēctē est; bene habet; **all the same (anyhow)** níhilō sētius; **all's well** salva rēs est; **all the way from** ūsque ab (+ *abl*); **it's all over!** áctum est!; **all there: are you quite all there?** satísne sánus (-a) es?; **all too late** immo iam sērō

allegation insimuláti·ō -ōnis *f*

allege árgu·ō -ere -ī argútus

alley angipórt·um -ī *n*

alliance foed·us -eris *n*, sociét·ās -átis *f*; **conclude an alliance with** foedus íc·ō -ere -ī -tus cum (+ *abl*); **form an alliance with** sociétátem fácere cum (+ *abl*)

alluring illecebrós·us -a -um

almond amýgdal·um -ī *n*

almost paene, ferē (*postpositive*); **almost like** paene quasi

alone sōl·us -a -um

along per (+ *acc*), secúndum (+ *acc*); **along with** ūnā cum (+ *abl*); **I knew all along** iam inde ā prīncípīō scīvī

aloud clārē; **read aloud** clārē leg·ō -ere lēgī lēctus

alphabet *s* alphabēt·um -ī *n*, prīm·ae lítter·ae -árum *fpl*, elemént·a -órum *npl*

Alpine Alpín·us -a -um; **Alpine chain** Alpium iug·a -órum *npl*

Alps Alp·ēs -ium *fpl*

already iam

alright licet

also étiam

alternating current fluént·um -ī *n*
altérnum

although quamquam (+ *indic*); quamvīs
(+ *subj*), cum (+ *subj*)

always semper

ambassador legát·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

ambition ambítí·ō -ónis *f*

ambitious ambitió·s·us -a -um

ambulance árcer·a -ae *f*, autoárcer·a
-ae *f*

America Améric·a -ae *f*; **North**

America América Septentriónális;

South America América Merīdiána

American Americán·us -a -um

amount: it amounts to the same thing
tantúndem est

amphitheater amphitheátr·um -ī *n*

amplifier amplificátr·um -ī *n*

amuse oblectáre; **amuse oneself** sē
oblectáre

amusement: for one's amusement
ánimī causā

amusement park hort·ī -órum *mpl*
públicī oblectárii

anchor (*anchor person*) nūntiá·tor -tóris
m (·trīx -trícis *f*)

and et, atque; **and so** itaque; **and so
forth** et perinde, et cētera

anger ir·a -ae *f*

angry (at) irát·us -a -um (+ *dat*); **be
angry** (at) succēns·eō -ēre -uī (+
dat); **get angry with** irásc·or -ári (+
dat); **he did nothing for you to be
angry at** nihil fēcit quod succēseās

anguish ang·or -óris *m*

animal anim·al -ális *n*; **wild animal**
fer·a -ae *f*

ankle tal·us -ī *m*

ankle-length tālár·is -is -e

anklet períscel·is -idis *f*

anniversary fēstus di·ēs -ēī *m*
anniversárius

announcer annūntiá·tor -tóris *m* (·trīx
-ícis *f*)

annoy male habére; **this annoys me** hoc
mē male habet

annoyance molésti·a -ae *f*

annoyed: be annoyed at moléstē ferō
ferre tulī

answer *s* respóns·um -ī *n*; **give s.o. an
answer** álicui respónsum red·dō
-dere -didī -ditus

answer *tr* (*in both speaking and writing:
with dat of person and ad + acc of
the thing*) respón·deō -dēre -dī -sum;
answer a letter ad lítterās rescríb·ō
-ere rescrípsī; **answer in complete
sentences** tótis senténtiis respondēre;
answer a question ad interrogátum
respondēre; **I'll answer you point by
point** tibi respondébō (*in writing:
rescríbam*) ad síngula; **now I'll
answer your questions** nunc
respondébō ad ea quae rogāvísti;
**that's not an answer to my
question** áliud tē rogō

answering machine respónstr·um -ī *n*
tēlephónicum

ant formíc·a -ae *f*

antagonistic infést·us -a -um

antecedent *s* nōm·en -inis *n* antecédēns

antelope búbul·us -ī *m*, tarándr·us -ī *m*

antepenult *s* antepaenúltima sýllab·a
-ae *f*

anthropologist anthrōpolog·us -ī *m* (·a
-ae *f*)

anthropology anthrōpológi·a -ae *f*

antiquity: in antiquity antíquitus [*adv*]

anxiety anxíet·ās -átis *f*; **anxiety about** cūr·a -ae *f* (+ *gen*)

anxious ánxí·us -a -um

anxiously ánxíē

anyhow (*just the same*) nec eō sētius; (*in any event*) útique

anyone quíspíam (*gen*: cūiúspíam); **if anyone** sī quis

anything else áliquíd ámplius, quicquam áliud

apartment diaét·a -ae *f*, cēnácul·um -ī *n*; **furnished apartment** diaéta omnī supelléctile ínstrúcta

apartment building ínsul·a -ae *f*

apathetic dēs·es -idis

ape sími·us -ī *m*, sími·a -ae *f*

Apennines, Apennine Range
Apennínus mōn·s -tis *m*

apologize (for) sē excūsáre (*dē* + *abl*); **I apologize to you** mē tibi excúsō

apology: please accept my apologies
quaesō, áccipe excūsátiónēs

apparently ut vidétur

appeal *s* (*attractiveness*) suávit·ās -átis *f*; (*legal*) appelláti·ō -ónis *f*; **allow an appeal** appellátiónem admít·ō -ere admísi admíssus; **disallow an appeal** appellátiónem improbáre

appeal *tr* (**to**) appelláre (*ad* + *acc*)

appear appár·eō -ére -uī; (*seem*) víd·eor -éri vísus sum

appendicitis appendicít·is -idis *f*

appendix (*of a book; of the body*)
appénd·ix -icis *f*

appetite (cibī) appeténti·a -ae *f*, (cibī) appetíti·ō -ónis *f*; **lack of appetite** inédi·a -ae *f*; **give s.o. a good appetite** álicuī (cibī) appeténtiam excitáre *or* fácere

appetizer gustáti·ō -ónis *f*

apple māl·um -ī *n*

applecart: upset the applecart
plaustrum percéll·ō -ere pérculī

apple pie mála *npl* in crustō cocta

apple polisher adulát·or -óris *m*, adulátr·ix -ícis *f*

apply (*a remedy*) adhíb·eō -ére -uī -itus; **apply oneself to** sē cōnfer·ō cōnférre cōntulī (+ *dat or ad* + *acc*)

appointment: have an appointment with cōstitútum habére cum (+ *abl*); **keep an appointment** ad cōstitútum veníre

appreciate: I appreciate your kindness
benefícium tuum túeor tuérī túitus sum

apricot armeníac·um -ī *n*

April mēns·is -is *m* Apríl·is; **in April** mēse Apríli

apron súblig·ar -áris *n*

aqueduct aquaedúct·us -ūs *m*

archeologist archaeológ·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*); **the archeologists excavated this site** archaeológī hunc situm excavérunt

archeology archaeológí·a -ae *f*

archery sagittáti·ō -ónis *f* (*see Chapter V*)

architect architéct·us -ī *m*

architecture architectúr·a -ae *f*

Ardea Árde·a -ae *f*

area tract·us -ūs *m*

area code (tēlephónicus) númer·us -ī *m* praeléctórius

arena arén·a -ae *f*

Argiletum Argilét·um -ī *n* (*a district of Rome extending from the base of the Quirinal to the Capitoline and chiefly*

inhabited by booksellers and mechanics)

argue argūmént·or -áři; (*to wrangle*)
altérc·or -áři; **stop arguing!** désine
(*pl.*: dēsínite) altercári!

argument altercáti·ō -ónis *f*; **get into an argument** in litem ambíguam
dēscénd·ō -ere -ī; **put up an argument** recūsáre

aristocracy nōbilit·ās -átis *f*, optimát·ēs
-ium *mpl*

arm *s* bráccchi·um -ī *n*; (*upper*) lacért·us
-ī *m* (*see arms*)

arm *tr* armáre

armaments apparát·us -ūs *m* bellí
(*rarely pl of apparátus*)

armchair sell·a -ae *f* braccchiáta

armed armát·us -a -um; **be armed** in
armīs esse

armpit āl·a -ae *f*, axíll·a -ae *f*

arms: arm·a -órum *npl*; **arms race**
armórum certám·en -inis *n*; **be under arms** in armīs esse; **by force of arms**
vī et armīs; **lay down arms** ab armīs
discéd·ō -ere discēssi; **take up arms**
arma cápere

army exércit·us -ūs *m*; **join the army**
ad mīlítiam íre; **raise an army**
exércitum comparáre

around circā, círciter (+ *acc*), dē (+
abl); **around midnight** dē médiā
nocte; **around noon** círciter
merídiem

arouse (*feelings*) exagitáre, suscitáre;
arouse suspicion suspiciónem
móv·eō -ére móvi mótus; **arouse**
from sleep ē somnō excitáre

arrest *s* prehénsi·ō -ónis *f*

arrest *tr* prehén·dō -dere -dī -sus

arrival advént·us -ūs *m*

arrive advén·iō -íre advéni advéntum;
arrive at pervén·iō -íre pervéni
pervéntum (*ad or in + acc*)

arrogance arrogánti·a -ae *f*

arrogant árrog·āns -ántis

artery artéri·a -ae *f*

art gallery pinacothéc·a -ae *f*

arthritis arthrit·is -idis *f*; articuláris
morb·us -ī *m*

artichoke cínar·a -ae *f*

article *s* (*in newspaper or magazine*)
commentáriol·us -ī *m*, commentáti·ō
-ónis *f*; (*clause in a law, treaty*)
cap·ut -itis *n*; (*gram*) artícul·us -ī *m*
(*hic haec hoc, normally*
demonstrative, serve as articles only
in declensions); **definite (indefinite)**
article finítus (ínfinítus) artículus

articulate *adj* disért·us -a -um

articulate *tr* articuláre

artillery tormént·a -órum *npl*

artist ártif·ex -icis *m*

as *adv* sicut, ut; **as far as** (*up to*) ūsque
ad (+ *acc*); **as far as** (*e.g. I am*
concerned) quoad; **as far as I know**
quod sciō; **as for instance** ut putā; **as**
long as quámdiū; **as often as**
quotiēscúmque; **as soon as** cum
přimum; **as soon as possible** quam
přimum; **as well as** atque; **as yet**
adhūc

ashamed: I'm ashamed of it mē pudet
eius; **I'm ashamed to say** mē pudet
dícere

ask rogáre, pet·ō -ere petívi petítus; (*for*
information) quaerō quaerere
quaesívi quaesítus; **ask about**
(*someone, something*) dē (áliquō)
rogáre; **ask a few questions** pauca
quaerere; **ask further questions**
quaerere ultrā; **ask s.o. s.th.** áliquem

áliquid rogáre; **ask s.o. for s.th.** ab áliquō áliquid rogáre; **ask the teacher (student) a question** docéntem (discéntem) interrogáre; **ask the price of an item** mercis prétium inquír·ō -ere inquísívī inquísítus; **ask this question** hoc quaérere; **he asked me whether** quaesívít ā mē (*or* dē mē *or* ex mē) num; **he asked you a question** ille tē interrogávit; **I want to ask you this** hoc tē rogáre volō; **why do you ask me that?** quid mē istud rogās?

asparagus aspárag·us -ī *m*

assault *s* vīs *f* (*acc*: vim; *abl*: vī); **accuse s.o. of assault (and battery)** áliquem dē vī (et manū) accūsáre; **commit assault against** vim fácere in (+ *acc*)

assault *tr* vim fácere in (+ *acc*)

assembly concíli·um -ī *n*

assign assignáre

assignment pēns·um -ī *n*; (*written*) praescrípt·um -ī *n*; **do the assignment** pēnsūm (*or* praescríptum) pér·igō -ígere -éǵī -áctum

assistant assíst·ēns -éntis *mf*

assistant principal *see* principal

associate sóci·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

asthma asthm·a -atis *n*

astrologer astrólog·us -ī *m*

astrology astrológi·a -ae *f*

astronaut astronáut·a -ae *m*,
astronáutri·a -ae *f*

astronomer astrólog·us -ī *m*

astronomy astronómi·a -ae *f*, astrológi·a -ae *f*

astute astút·us -a -um

at apud (+ *acc*); **at all** prōrsum, omnínō: **you have no common sense at all**

Nōn cor omnínō habēs; **at least** útique; **at most** summum; **at once** contínuō, moméntō; **at the house of** apud (+ *acc*)

Athens Athén·ae -árum *fpl*

athlete áthlēt·a -ae *m*, áthlêtri·a -ae *f*;
like an athlete áthléticē

athletic áthlétic·us -a -um; **athletic competition** áthlétárum certám·en -inis *n*

athletics áthlétic·a -ae *f*

Atlantic Ocean Atlántic·us -a -um; **Atlantic Ocean** Atlánticus ócéan·us -ī *m*,
Atlánticum mar·e -is *n*

atrium átri·um -ī *n*

atrocious atr·ōx -ócis

attack *s* (*of illness*) ímpet·us -ūs *m*,
accéssi·ō -ónis *f*; (*verbal*) petítí·ō -ónis *f*; (*mil*) oppugnáti·ō -ónis *f*

attack *tr* oppugnáre, adórior adoríri
adórtus sum; (*verbally*) impugnáre;
(*of a disease*) occupáre

attend *tr* (*to be present at*) inté·sum -esse -fuī (+ *dat*); (*school*)
frequentáre **|| intr attend to** óperam dare (+ *dat*); **I'll certainly attend to it** dabō équidem óperam

attention (ánimī) atténti·ō -ónis *f*; **pay attention** ánimūm attén·dō -dere -dī -tus; **pay attention!** atténde! (*pl*: atténdite!) *or* ánimūm atténde! (*pl*: ánimōs atténdite!); **pay attention to what I am saying!** dictīs meīs atténde! (*pl*: atténdite!)

attentive attént·us -a -um, ēréc·t·us -a -um

attic subtēguláne·um -ī *n*

attitude gest·us -ūs *m*; **I don't like your attitude** gestus tuus mihi dísplicet

attorney cógnit·or -óris *m*, cógnitr·ix -ícis *f*; **appoint an attorney to s.o.**

cognitōrem álicui adscrīb·ō -ere
adscrīpsī adscrīptus

attract conciliāre, trah·ō -ere traxī
tractus

attractive lépid·us -a -um; (*esp. in
looks*) speciōs·us -a -um, venúst·us
-a -um

audiocassette phōnocasét·a -ae *f*

audiotape phōnotaéni·a -ae *f*

audiovisual aid audīvisíficum
subsīdi·um -ī *n*

August mēns·is -is *m* Augústus; **in
August** mēnse Augústō

aunt (*father's side*) ámit·a -ae *f*;
(*mother's side*) mātérter·a -ae *f*

austere asp·er -era -erum, austér·us -a
-um

author auct·or -óris *m*, auctr·ix -ícis *f*;
(*writer*) scrīp·tor -tóris *m* (-trīx -trícis
f); **classical author** clássicus scrīptor

automobile autoraéd·a -ae *f*, auto-
cīnēt·um -ī *n* [*used interchangeably*]

available: be available praestō [*indecl*]
esse

avalanche lābīn·a -ae *f* nivális

average *adj* módic·us -a -um

average *s on the average* médiā hábitā
ratiōne; peraéquē

aw, keep quiet! au, tacē!

awake: be awake vigilāre; **be awake all
night** pervigilāre

away: away with you! abī abhinc!; **be
far away** longē abesse; **go away**
áb·eō -íre -iī *or* -ívī; **he's away** abest

awesome! mīrābile!

awful dīr·us -a -um

awkward inconcīnn·us -a -um

aye yai yai! heu heu!

B

baby inf·āns -ántis *mf*

baby carriage chīramáxi·um -ī *n*

back *s* terg·um -ī *n*; **back of the
classroom** postérior par·s -tis *f*
conclávis scholáris; **back of the head**
occipíti·um -ī *n*; **get off my back!**
ápáge tē ā dorsō meō!

back *tr* fāv·eō -éire fāvī fautúrus (+ *dat*)

back door postíc·um -ī *n*

backhand (*tennis*) íct·us -ūs *m* invérsus

backpack mántic·a -ae *f*

back seat sēd·ēs -is *f* postérior

backside (*anat*) clūn·ēs -ium *mpl*, nat·ēs
-ium *fpl*; (*facetiously*) postíc·um -ī *n*

backstroke natáti·ō -ónis *f* resupína

backward (*mentally*) lent·us -a -um

backwards retrō

bacon lard·um -ī *n*

bad mal·us -a -um, ímprob·us -a -um,
alién·us -a -um; (*weather*) advérs·us
-a -um, grav·is -is -e; **feel (very) bad
about** (valdē) dól·eō -éire -ui dē (+
abl); **too bad about Eduárd** male
dē Eduárdō; **wine is bad for you**
vīnum est aliénum tibi

badminton lūd·us -ī *m* pilae pinnátae;
play badminton pilā pinnátā lúdere
(*see Chapter V*)

bag sacc·us -ī *m*; (*small bag*) sáccul·us
-ī *m*; (*handbag*) bulg·a -ae *f*

baggage car curr·us -ī *m* sarcinárius

baggage cart chīramáxi·um -ī *n*
sarcinárum

baggage check cūrāti·ō -ónis *f*
sarcinárum

bagpipes ūtriculári·um -ī *n*; **play the
bagpipes** ūtriculáriō lúdere

bait esc·a -ae *f*

bake coqu·ō -ere coxī coctus; tórr·eō
-ére -uī tostus; in furnō cóquere

baker pīst·or -óris *m*, pīstr·īx -ícis *f*,
pānif·ex -icis *m*, pānífic·a -ae *f*

bakery pīstrín·a -ae *f*, furnári·a -ae *f*

balance beam tign·um -ī *n* aequilíbrīi

bald calv·us -a -um

bald head calvíti·um -ī *n*

ball (*dance*) saltáti·ō -ónis *f*

ball pil·a -ae *f*; (*inflated*) foll·is -is *m*;
catch the ball pilam *or* follem
excíp·iō -ere excēpī excéptus; **kick
the ball** follem pede pulsáre; **play
ball** pilā *or* folle lúdere; **throw the
ball** pilam *or* follem concíc·iō -ere
conicēcī

ball field camp·us -ī *m* lūsórius

ball game lūs·us -ūs *m* pilae (*or* follis)

ballot tabéll·a -ae *f*, suffrāgi·um -ī *n*;
cast a ballot suffrāgium ferō ferre
tulī látus

ballot box suffrāgiórum cist·a -ae *f*

ballpoint pen stil·us -ī *m* sphaerátus

baloney fárcim·en -inis *n*; **baloney!**
fábulae!

bamboozle verba dare (+ *dat*); **you
bamboozled me** mihi verba dēdístī

banana arién·a -ae *f*, banán·a -ae *f*; **he
wants to be top banana** vult sē esse
prīmum ómnium rerum

band symphóni·a -ae *f*, concént·us -ūs
m músicus

bandage *s* fásci·a -ae *f*

bandage *tr* (*an arm, etc.*) ligáre,
dēligáre; (*a wound*) adstrín·gō -gere
-xī adstríctus

bang (*noise*) strépit·us -ūs *m*

bangs (*of hair*) ánti·ae -árum *fp*

banish (*worries, cares*) éxim·ō -ere
exémī exéemptus; (*a person*)
extermináre

banister adminícul·um -ī *n*

bank argentári·a -ae *f*, tabérn·a -ae *f*
argentária; (*of a river*) rīp·a -ae *f*;
manage a bank argentárium
móder·or -ári moderátus sum; **the
Tiber overflowed its banks** Tíberis
super rīpās effúsus est

bank account ráti·ō -ónis *f* argentária

bank book libéll·us -ī *m* comparsórum,
argentariae libéll·us -ī *m*

banker argentári·us (·a -ae *f*)

banking business argentári·a -ae *f*; **run
a (big) banking business**
argentárium (máximam) fácere

bank manager argentariae moderá·tor
-tóris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)

bank teller argentári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

bank window óstiól·um -ī *n*
argentárium

bankrupt: go bankrupt dēcóqu·ō -ere
dēcócxi dēcóctum

bankruptcy dēcócxi·ō -ónis *f*; **declare
bankruptcy** bonam cópiam eīuráre

bar oec·us -ī *m* pótórius; (*of chocolate
or soap*) quádrul·a -ae *f*; **barroom**
oec·us -ī *m* pótórius; **bar stool**
sedíl·e -is *n* praeáltum, seliquástr·um
-ī *n*; **bartender** ministrá·tor -tóris *m*
(·trīx -trícis *f*), ínservit·or -óris *m*;
serve at the bar in iúdiciīs versári;
in forō ágere

barbecue *tr* in cráticulā assáre

barbecue grill cráticul·a -ae *f*

barber tōns·or -óris *m*

barber chair sell·a -ae *f* tōnsória

barber shop tōnstrín·a -ae *f*

barely vix

- bargain** prēti·um -ī *n* speciāle; **buy at a good bargain** bene em·ō -ere emī emptus
- baritone** cant·or -ōris *m* vōcis gravis, barytoníst·a -ae *m*
- bark** *intr* latráre; **bark at** allatráre
- bark** *s* latrát·us -ūs *m*
- barley** hórde·um -ī *n*
- barn** hórre·um -ī *n*
- barnyard** coh·ors -órtis *f*
- barometer** barómetr·um -ī *n*
- barracks** mílitum contubérni·um -ī *n*
- barrel** (*of pottery or wood*) dóli·um -ī *n*; (*wooden*) cūp·a -ae *f*
- base** bas·is -is *f*; **first** (**second, third, home**) **base** basis p̄rīma (secúnda, tértia, summa); **play first** (**second, third**) **base** apud p̄rīmam (secúndam, tértiam) basim lúdere (*see Chapter V*)
- baseball** (*the ball itself*) basípil·a -ae *f*; (*the sport*) lūd·us -ī *m* basípilae; **a baseball game** basípilae lūs·us -ūs *m*, basípilae certámen -inis *n*; **play baseball** basípilā lúdere
- baseman** (**first, second, third**) (p̄rīmus, secúndus, tértius) basiári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
- basement** hypogē·um -ī *n*
- basic training** rudīmēnta *npl* militária
- basics** elemēt·a -órum *npl*
- basin** aquál·is -is *m(f)*
- basket** corb·is -is *m*; **make a basket** follem per corbem iác·iō -ere iēcī
- basketball** corbifóll·is -is *m*; **play basketball** corbifólle lúdere (*see Chapter V*)
- bass viol** contrábáss·um -ī *n*
- bat** *tr & intr* clāvō pulsáre
- bat** *s* (*club*) clāv·a -ae *f* (lūsória); (*bird*) vespertíli·ō -ónis *m*
- bath** bálne·um -ī *n*; **public bath** therm·ae -árum *fpl*
- bathe** *tr* (*a sore limb*) fōv·eō -éere fōvī; (*a person*) laváre **||** *intr* lavári
- bathroom** bálne·um -ī *n*; (*small*) balnéol·um -ī *n*; (*toilet*) lātrín·a -ae *f*; (*public toilet*) fóric·a -ae *f*
- bathroom sink** lābéll·um -ī *n*
- bath towel** gausápin·a -ae *f*
- bathtub** sóli·um -ī *n*, lābr·um -ī *n*
- battalion** cohors, cohórtis *f*
- battalion commander** praeféct·us -ī *m* cohórtis
- batter** clavát·or -óris *m*, clavátr·ix -ícis *f*; pulsát·or -óris *m*, pulsátr·ix -ícis *f*
- battery** accumulátr·um -ī *n*
- battle** pug·a -ae *f*; proéli·um -ī *n*; **the battle of** (*at or near a town*) proélium apud *or* ad *or* circā (+ *acc*); **fight a battle** proélium fácere; **in battle** proéliō, áciē; **naval battle off Tenedos** pugna nāvális ante Tenedum; **successful battle** proélium secúndum
- battlefield** aci·ēs -éī *f*
- bay** sin·us -ūs *m*, recéss·us -ūs *m*
- bay window** prōiectúr·a -ae *f*
- be** sum esse fuī futúrus, exst·ō -áre; **be here, be present** ádsum adésse ádfuī; **be off to** ábeō -íre -iī -itum hinc ad (+ *acc*); **be fine** bene sē habére; vál·eō -éere -uī; **be up for sale** vén·eō -íre -iī; **be up in years** aetáte prōvéct·us -a -um esse; **be up to a task** óperī par esse
- beach** lit·us -oris *n*
- beach chair** sell·a -ae *f* litorális (*or* cubitória)

beak rōstr·um -ī *n*

beam trabs, trabis *f*

bean fab·a -ae *f*; (*kidney bean*)
phasél·us -ī *mf*

bear *tr* fer·ō ferre tulī lātus; (*children, young*) pâr·iō -ere péperī partus; (*to tolerate*) toleráre; **bear in mind** recordári

bear urs·us -ī *m*, urs·a -ae *f*; **bears**
grunt ursī grúnniunt

bear cub ursae cátul·us -ī *m*

beard barb·a -ae *f*

beat *tr* (*with fists, clubs*) (pugnīs, fústibus) caed·ō -ere cecídī caesus; (*eggs*) coagítáre; **beat up** concíd·ō -ere -ī concísus; (*in combat, in competition*) vinc·ō -ere vícī victus; **beat the daylight out of** pulchre percopoláre **|| intr beat around the bush** circumitiōne üt·or -ī ūsus sum

beautician ōrnátr·ix -ícis *f*

beautiful pulch·er -ra -rum, formós·us -a -um

beauty pulchritúd·ō -inis *f*

beaver fi·ber -brī *m*

because quod, quia, quóniam

become fiō fierī factus sum

becoming dec·ēns -éntis

bed lect·us -ī *m*; (*small*) léctul·us -ī *m*;
bed of roses rosári·um -ī *n*; **be confined to bed** lectō tén·eor -érī tentus sum; **get out of bed** ē lectō sur·gō -gere -réxī; **go to bed** cúbitum ire; **make the bed** lectum (*or* léctulum) stern·ō -ere strāvī strātus

bedbug scíníph·is -is *m*

bed covers strágul·a -ōrum *npl*

bedding strágul·a -ōrum *npl*

bed frame spond·a -ae *f*

bed-ridden valētūdinári·us -a -um

bedroom dormitórium cubícul·um -ī *n*

bedspread opertóri·um -ī *n*, peristróm·a -atis *n*

bee ap·is -is *f*; **bees buzz** apēs bómbilant

beef búbul·a -ae *f*; **roast beef** búbula assa

beehive álve·us -ī *m*

beer cervísi·a -ae *f*

beer glass hýal·us -ī *m* cervisárius

beer mug úrce·us -ī *m* cervisárius

beet bēt·a -ae *f*

before *adv* ánteā

before *conj* ántequam, priúsqvam (+ *indic*)

before *prep* ante (+ *acc*); (*directly in front of*) prō (+ *abl*); **before daylight** ante lūcem; **before long** propédiem; **before now** ántehāc

begin incíp·iō -ere incépī incéptus;

begin at incípere ab (+ *abl*); **begin to bloom** flōrés·c·ō -ere; **to begin with** p̄rimum enim

beginning p̄rncípi·um -ī *n*; **at the**

beginning of the year p̄rncípiō annī; ineúnte annō; **from the very beginning** iam inde ā p̄rncípiō

behave (*to act*) sē ger·ō -ere gessī;

behave oneself sē probē gérere

behind *prep* post (+ *acc*); (*with verbs of motion*) p̄one (+ *acc*); (*in the rear of*) ā tergō (+ *gen*)

behind *s* (*anat*) postíc·um -ī *n*

believe crēd·ō -ere crēdidī crēditum (+ *dat*); **believe me** mihi crēde

bell campán·a -ae *f*; (*small bell*) tintinnábul·um -ī *n*; **bell tower** campáníl·e -is *n*

- bellow** (*or low*) bōāre; mūg·iō -īre -īvī
or -ī -ītum
- belly** alv·us -ī *f*
- belt** cingul·um -ī *n*; zōn·a -ae *f* (*wide belt, usu. of cloth, used by men and women with a tunic; often used as money belt*)
- bench** scabell·um -ī *n*, scāmn·um -ī *n*
- bend** *intr* sē flect·ō -ere flexī; **bend down** (*or over*) (*stoop*) sē inclināre
- bend** *s* (*of a river*) flex·us -ūs *m*
- berry** bacc·a -ae *f*
- besides** *adv* porrō, praeterea
- besides** *prep* praeter (+ *acc*)
- besiege** (**blockade**) **a town** oppidum obsīd·ō -ere obsēdī obsessus
- best** *adv* máximē; (*especially*) potissimum
- best** *s* **do one's best** prō virīlī parte; **make the best of it** aequō ānimō ferō ferre tulī lātus; **to the best of one's ability** prō vīribus
- best** *adj* optim·us -a -um; (*friend*) summ·us -a -um; **it is best to** optimum est (+ *inf*)
- bet** *s* spōnsi·ō -ōnis *f*; (*the stake*) pign·us -oris *n*
- bet** *tr* **I bet he has taken off** pōnō eum abīvisse; **I bet you he doesn't win** tē spōnsiōne prōvocō illum nōn esse victūrum
- better** *adj* **it's better to** commōdius est (+ *inf*); **there, that's better!** em istuc rēctius!; **where is your better half?** ūbinam est tua āltera?
- better** *adv* mēlius
- better** *s* **it's for the better** in mēlius est
- beyond** ultrā (+ *acc*)
- bicycle** bírot·a -ae *f*; **ride a bicycle** bírotā veh·or -ī vectus sum
- bicycle handlebars** manúbri·um -ī *n*
- bicycle pedal** pedál·e -is *n*
- bicycle seat** sessībul·um -ī *n*
- bicyclist** birotári·us -ī *m*, birotári·a -ae *f*
- big** magn·us -a -um; ampl·us -a -um; **talk big** ampullári
- big-hearted** magnānim·us -a -um
- big-mouth: big-mouth!** ōs dūrum!; **he was always a big-mouth** semper dūrae buccae fuit
- big toe** poll·ex -icis *m*
- bike** *see* **bicycle**
- bile** bil·is -is *f*
- bill** (*parl*) rogāti·ō -ōnis *f*; (*of money owed*) rāti·ō -ōnis *f* débīti; (*paper money*) numm·us -ī *m* chartāreus, schedinūmm·us -ī *m*; **ten-dollar bill** nummm chartāreus decem dollarōrum
- biographer** vītae (alicūius) scrip·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trīcis *f*); biógraph·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
- biographical** biográphic·us -a -um
- biography** vīt·a -ae *f*, biográphi·a -ae *f*
- biological** biológic·us -a -um; **biological warfare** bell·um -ī *n* biológicum
- biologist** biológ·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
- biology** biológī·a -ae *f*
- bird** av·is -is *f*
- egg** ōv·um -ī *n*
- feather** penn·a -ae *f*
- flap the wings** ālis plaud·ō -ere plausī plausum
- flight** volát·us -ūs *m*
- fly** volāre; **fly away** avolāre
- land** (**on**) insīd·ō -ere insēdī (+ *dat*)
- nest** nīd·us -ī *m*; **build a nest** nīdificāre
- sing** can·ō -ere cecinī cantum
- song** cant·us -ūs *m*

- tail** caud·a -ae *f*
wing al·a -ae *f*
- birth** nātívít·ās -átis *f*
- birthday** di·ēs -ēī *m* nātális (or simply nātál·is -is *m*); **Happy Birthday!** Fēlícem Nātálem (tibi exóptō)
- birthday cake** líb·um -ī *n* nātálicium
- birthday party** nātálici·a -ae *f*; **give (throw) a birthday party** nātáliciam dare (agitáre)
- birthday present** nātálici·um -ī *n*
- birth place** nātális loc·us -ī *m*
- bishop** episcop·us -ī *m*
- bit: a bit of advice (food)** áliquid cōnsíliū (cibī)
- bite** mors·us -ūs *m*; (of a snake, insect) ict·us -ūs *m*; **a bite to eat** gústul·us -ī *m*
- bite** *tr* mórd·eō -ére momórdī morsus; (of a snake, insect) íc·ō -ere -ī ictus
- bitter** acérb·us -a -um; (in taste) amár·us -a -um
- bitterly: complain bitterly** gráviter queror querī questus sum; **cry bitterly** gráviter lacrimáre, ūbértim flēō flēre flēvī
- bitterness** acérbit·ās -átis *f*; (esp. of taste) amāritúd·ō -inis *f*
- black** āt·er -ra -rum; (shiny black) nig·er -ra -rum
- black and blue** lívid·us -a -um; **black and blue mark** lív·or -óris *m*
- blackbird** mérul·a -ae *f* (see bird)
- blackboard** tábul·a -ae *f* ātra, tábul·a -ae *f* scríptória
- bladder** vēsíc·a -ae *f*
- blade** lámín·a -ae *f*
- blame** *s* culp·a -ae *f*; **push the blame on** culpam in (+ *acc*) cōnferō cōnférre cōntulī collátus
- blame** *tr* culpáre, incūsáre; **blame s.o. for** áliquem culpáre ob (+ *acc*); **I am to blame** in culpā sum; **I don't blame you** tibi nōn impróperō
- bland** lēn·is -is -e
- blanket** lōd·īx -ícis *f*; **blanket of snow** tégim·en -inis *n* níveum
- blast** flāt·us -ūs *m*
- bleachers** for·ī -órum *mpl*
- bleat** (of sheep, rams) bāláre
- blender** máchin·a -ae *f* concísória
- bles** (eccles.) bene·díc·ō -dícere -dícī;
bles you! dī tē ament!; (after s.o. has sneezed) salvē! or salútem!
- blind** caec·us -a -um
- blind alley** fúndul·a -ae *f*
- blindness** caécit·ās -átis *f*
- blinds** (on window) trānsénn·a -ae *f* volúbilis; **close (open) the blinds** trānsénnam apériō -íre -uī (dēmítt·ō -ere dēmísī dēmíssus)
- block** (of a city) vīc·us -ī *m*; *s* (sports) obstrúcti·ō -ónis *f*
- block** *tr* & *intr* (sports) obstō obstáre óbstītī (+ *dat*), óbstru·ō -ere obstrúxī obstrúctus
- blockhead** (slang) caud·ex -icis *m*
- blond** flāv·us -a -um
- blood** sangu·is -inis *m*; (outside the body) cru·or -óris *m*
- blood pressure** pressúr·a -ae *f* sánguinis; **high blood pressure** hypertóni·a -ae *f*
- bloodshot: he has bloodshot eyes** óculī eius ságuine suffúsī sunt
- blouse** pēlúsi·a -ae *f*, blūs·a -ae *f*

- blow** flāre; **blow hard** perflāre
- bludgeon** *s* fūst·is -is *m*
- bludgeon** *tr* fūste (*or* fūstibus) concíd·ō -ere concídī concísus; **bludgeon to death** fūstigáre
- blueberry** vaccíni·um -ī *n*
- blunt** (*not sharp*) heb·es -etis; (*abrupt*) inurbán·us -a -um
- bluntly** libérius
- blurt out** effút·iō -íre
- blush** ērubésc·ō -ere ērúbui
- bluster** (*boasting*) iactáti·ō -ónis *f*
- blustery** ventós·us -a -um
- boar** ap·er -ī *m*; **boars grunt** apri grúnniunt
- board** (*of wood*) tábul·a -ae *f*; (*food*) vict·us -ūs *m*; (*council*) cōnsíli·um -ī *n*; **room and board** mánsi·ō -ónis *f* et vict·us -ūs *m*
- board** *tr* (*a ship, vehicle, airplane*) inscénd·ō -ere -ī in (+ *acc*)
- boarding school** oecotrophé·um -ī *n*
- boardwalk** ambulácr·um -ī *n* in lítore
- boastful** iact·āns -ántis
- body** corp·us -oris *n*
- bodyguard** satellít·ēs -um *mpl*
- boil** *tr* fervefác·iō -ere fervefēcī fervefáctus; **boil thoroughly** ēlixáre **ll** *intr* bulláre, fėrv·eō -ēre fėrbui; **it makes my blood boil** facit ut sanguis ab irā fervéscit
- boiled** ēlėx·us -a -um
- bold** aud·āx -ácis
- boldness** audáci·a -ae *f*
- bolt** *s* (*on a door*) ser·a -ae *f*, péssul·us -ī *m*; **bolt of lightning** fúlmen *n* fúlminis
- bolt** *tr* **bolt the door** óstium obseráre
- bomb** *s* míssil·e -is *n* dirúmpēns, bomb·a -ae *f*; **atomic bomb** bomba atómica; **nuclear bomb** bomba nucléáris
- bomb** *tr* míssílibus dirumpéntibus concút·iō -ere concússī concússus
- bombastic** bullát·us -a -um
- bomber** āeróplan·um -ī *n* bombíferum
- bond** (*on the stockmarket*) chrēmatógraph·um -ī *n*
- bone** os, ossis *n*
- book** li·ber -brī *m*
- book bag** mántic·a -ae *f* librária
- book binder** glūtínát·or -óris *m*
- bookcase** bibliothéc·a -ae *f*; **built-in bookcase** bibliothéca parfėti insérta
- book cover** tegimént·um -ī *n* librī
- bookkeeper** actuári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
- bookmark** *s* (*comput*) not·a -ae *f*
- bookseller** bibliopól·a -ae *mf*
- bookshelf** plúte·us -ī *m*, pegm·a -atis *n* librárium
- bookstore** librári·a -ae *f*; bibliopól·a -ae *f*
- boorish** agrést·is -is -e
- boot** pėr·ō -ónis *m* (*of rawhide, reaching up to the calf, worn by peasants, shepherds, soldiers*); cálig·a -ae *f* (*worn by soldiers of lower rank*)
- booting up** (*comput*) initiáti·ō -ónis *f* systématis
- boot up** (*comput*) initiáre systéma
- booze** tēmét·um -ī *n*
- border** fin·is -is *m*, cōnřni·um -ī *n*
- border on** atting·ō -ere (+ *acc*)
- bore** *s* molést·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*); **don't be a bore** nē sīs odiósus (-a)
- bore** *tr* obtúnd·ō -ere óbtudī obtúsus

boring taediósus -a -um

born: be born nāsc·or -ī nātus (-a) sum

borrow mūtu·or -ārī -ātus sum; **borrow money at interest** pecūniam faénorī mūtuārī

bosom sin·us -ūs *m*; (*of a female*) mamíll·ae -árūm *fpl*

boss (*owner*) dómīn·us -ī *m*; (*coll*) ípsim·us -ī *m*, ípsim·a -ae *f*

both utérque útraque utrúmque; **both of us** [*lit.*; “*each*” *of us*] utérque nostrum

bother (*annoy*) exérc·eō -ére -uī -itus; **don’t bother** nōlī tē (*pl.* nōlíte vōs) movére; **don’t bother me** nē mihi moléstus (-a) sīs

bothered exercitāt·us -a -um

bothersome molést·us -a -um

boundary fin·is -is *m*; (*dividing line*) discrím·en -inis *n*; **at the boundary between Italy and Switzerland** ad discrímen Itáliae et Helvétiae

bounded: on the east it is bounded by ... ab oriénte claúditur (+ *abl*)

bowels alv·us -ī *f*

bowl *intr* globum volutáre, cōnīs lúdere; **bowl a strike** omnēs cōnōs (simul) prōstérn·ō -ere prōstrávī; **go bowling** ire lūsum cōnórum

bowl *s* crāt·ēr -éris *m*, lanx, lancis *f*; (*large with handles*) catín·us -ī *m*; (*smaller*) catíll·us -ī *m*

bowling cōnórum lūs·us -ūs *m*, cōnīlúdi·um -ī *n* (*see Chapter V*)

bowling alley cōnórum vi·a -ae *f*; (*the room*) oec·us -ī *m* cōnórum lūsūs; (*the building*) aedifici·um -ī *n* cōnórum lūsūs

bowling ball glob·us -ī *m* lūsórius; globus *m* cōnórum

bowling lane vi·a -ae *f* cōnária

bowling pin cōn·us -ī *m* (lūsórius)

box pugi(l)lāre

boxer pugil, púgil·is *m*

boxing pugilāt·us -ūs *m*, pugilāti·ō -ónis *f* (*see Chapter V*)

boxing champion púgilum rēx, rēgis *m*

boxing glove caest·us -ūs *m*

boxing match pugilatórium certám·en -inis *n*

boxing ring suggést·us -ūs *m* pugilatórius

boyfriend (*or girlfriend*) am·āns -ántis *mf*

boyhood pueríti·a -ae *f*, aet·ās -átis *f* puerílis; **from boyhood on** ā puerō

bra stróphi·um -ī *n*, mamillár·e -is *n*

bracelet armíll·a -ae *f* (*worn on the upper arm by the Romans*)

brag sē iactáre; **brag about** iactáre; **he brags too much about his money** pecūniam nimis iactat

brain cérebr·um -ī *n*; **brains** corcíll·um -ī *n*, cor, cordis *n*; **she’s got brains** corcillum habet

brake *s* sufflám·en -inis *n*; **apply the brake** rotās sufflāmináre

brake lights (autoraédae) lúmin·a -um *npl* postíca

brake pedal pedál·e -is *n* sufflāminis

brandy vīnī spírit·us -ūs *m*

brat proc·āx -ácis púsi·ō -ónis *m*, frust·um -ī *n* púerī (*or puéllae*)

bray (*of a mule*) rud·ō -ere -ívī -ítum

bread pān·is -is *m*; **loaf of bread** pānis

breadcrumb mīc·a -ae *f* pānis

breaded salígne·us -a -um

- breadth** lātitūd·ō -inis *f*; **in breadth** in lātitūdinem
- break** *tr* (*arm, dish, law, treaty, one's word*) frang·ō -ere frēgī frāctus; (*a law*) violāre; (*silence, law*) rump·ō -ere rūpī ruptus; **break one's word** fidem frāngere **|| intr break into a home** domūs parētēs perfōd·iō -ere perfōdī perfōssus
- breakfast** ientācul·um -ī *n*; **eat breakfast** ientāre; ientāculum sūm·ō -ere -psī -ptus
- breaking and entering, break-in** effrāctūr·a -ae *f*
- breast** (*of a female*) mamm·a -ae *f*, mammīll·a -ae *f*
- breast stroke** natāti·ō -ōnis *f* prōna
- breath: catch one's breath** respirāre; anhēlitum recipere
- breathe** spīrāre; **breathe in** īnspīrāre; **breathe out** exspīrāre
- breeze** vēntul·us -ī *m*, aur·a -ae *f*
- brew** *tr brew beer* cerevīsiā cōqu·ō -ere coxī coctus **|| intr there is some trouble brewing** nēsciō quid malī concinnātur
- brewery** (*of beer*) bracin·a -ae *f*
- bribe** *s* prēti·um -ī *n*
- bribe** *tr* corrump·ō -ere corrūpī corrūptus
- bribery** corruptēl·a -ae *f*; (*in politics*) āmbit·us -ūs *m*; **influenced by bribery** corrūpt·us -a -um
- brick** *adj* laterīci·us -a -um
- brick** *s* lat·er -eris *m* (coctīlis = **baked**); **lay bricks** lāterēs stru·ō -ere struxī structus
- bricklayer** lāterum strūct·or -ōris *m*
- bride** nūpt·a -ae *f*
- bridegroom** marīt·us -ī *m*
- brief** brev·is -is -e; **make it brief!** in pauca cōnfer!
- briefly** bréviter, summātīm, paucīs (verbīs); **to put it briefly** ut bréviter dīcam
- bright:** (*beaming*) nítid·us -a -um; (*smart*) lūculent·us -a -um; (*eyes*) véget·us -a -um; (*day, sky*) serēn·us -a -um; (*moon, stars, gems*) lúcid·us -a -um;
- brilliant!** sophos!; doctē!; **absolutely brilliant!** immō doctē!
- bring** (*along*) áfferō áfferre áttulī allátus; **bring about** effíc·iō -ere effēcī effēctus, cōnfícīō; **bring oneself to** (*do s.th.*) ánimum indūc·ō -ere indūxī ut (+ *subj*); **bring to order** in ōrdinem cōg·ō -ere coēgī coáctus
- broad** lāt·us -a -um
- broadcast** *s* ēmíssi·ō -ōnis *f*
- broadcast** *tr* ēmítt·ō -ere ēmísi ēmíssus
- broadcast station** ēmístr·um -ī *n*
- brocade** séric·um -ī *n* aurō (*or argéntō*) intéxtum (*or intertéxtum*)
- broil** tórr·eō -ēre -uī tostus
- broke: be broke** solvéndō nōn esse
- brooch** fībul·a -ae *f*
- brook** rīvul·us -ī *m*
- broom** scōp·ae -árum *fpl*
- broth** iūs, iūris *n*, iúscul·um -ī *n*
- brother** frā·ter -tris *m*
- brother-in-law** (*sister's husband*) marīt·us -ī *m* sorōris; (*husband's brother*) lē·vir -virī *m*
- brown** fusc·us -a -um
- browse** (*comput*) (*the Web*) nāvīgāre; (*text documents*) perlūstrāre

browser (*comput*) (*Web viewer*)

nāvīgātr·um -ī *n*; (*viewer of text documents*) perlūstrātr·um -ī *n*

bruise *s* contūsi·ō -ōnis *f*

bruise *tr* contūd·ō -ere cōtudi
contūsus

brunette fusc·us -a -um

brush *s* pēnicul·us -ī *m*

brush *tr* verr·ō -ere -ī; **brush the teeth**
dentēs purgāre

bucket sítul·a -ae *f*; **come down in**
buckets ūrceátim cad·it -ere cécidit
cāsúrus; **rain buckets** ūrceátim
plúere; **kick the bucket** ánimam
ēbúll·iō -íre -ívī

buckle up sē accíng·ō -ere accínxī;
buckle up! tē accíngē (*pl*: vōs
accíngite)

buddy convíct·or -óris *m*; contubernális
-is *mf*

buffalo ūr·us -ī *m*

bug cīm·ex -icis *m*

buggy císī·um -ī *n*; **ride in a buggy**
císīō veh·or -ī vectus sum

build éxstru·ō -ere exstrúxī exstrúctus,
aedificāre

builder struct·or -óris *m*, aedificát·or
-óris *m*

building aedifici·um -ī *n*; **put up a**
building aedificium éxstru·ō -ere
exstrúxī exstrúctus

building material aedificándī matéri·a
-ae *f*

bull taur·us -ī *m*; (*slang*) fābul·āe -ārum
fpl; **bull's eye** scop·us -ī *m* médius;
sling the bull (*slang*) cōnfābul·or
-ārī -átus sum

bullet glāns, glandis *f* plúmbea

bulletin libéll·us -ī *m*; (*message*)
núnti·us -ī *m*

bulletin board tábul·a -ae *f* pública

bully grassát·or -óris *m*

bump: bump against offénd·ō -ere -ī;
bump into s.o. (*meet accidentally*)
álicui occurr·ō -ere -ī

bumper cont·us -ī *m* tūtórius

bun collýr·is -idis *f*

bundle up (*against the cold*) sē bene
opér·iō -íre -uī

bunker (*golf*) obstácul·um -ī *n*; (*mil*)
subterráneum castéll·um -ī *n*

burden on·us -eris *n*; **place the whole**
burden on my shoulders mihi omne
onus impónere

bureau ministéri·um -ī *n*; (*chest*)
armári·um -ī *n*

burglar effrác·or -óris *m*, (parietum)
perfóss·or -óris *m*

burglary (domūs) latrōcínī·um -ī *n*;
commit a burglary parietēs
perfód·iō -ere perfódī perfóssus

burn *tr* ur·ō -ere ūssī ūstus; (*burn to*
ashes) cremāre; **burn down** dēurere
ll intr árd·eō -ére -uī

burner disc·us -ī *m* coctórius

burst out laughing rīsum effúnd·ō -ere
effúdi

bury the hatchet (*fig*) simultátem
dēpón·ō -ere dēpósui

bus raéd·a -ae *f* longa, coenautocínét·um
-ī *n*

bus driver coenautocínétī guberná·tor
-tōris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)

bush: don't beat around the bush nōlī
(*pl*: nōlíte) schēmās loquī; **he didn't**
beat around the bush nīl
circumitióne ūsus est

bushed: be bushed dē·fíciō -fícere -fécī
-fécus

bushel medímn·us -ī *m*

business *adj* negōtiāl·is -is -e

business *s* negōti·um -ī *n*; **be engaged in business** in negōtiō vers·or -ārī -ātus sum; **do** (*or carry on*) **business** negōti·or -ārī -ātus sum; **I always mind my own business** negōtium agō semper meum; **it's my (your, etc.) business to see what's going on** meum (tuum, *etc.*) est vidēre quid agātur; **run a business** negōtium exérc·eō -ēre -uī -itus; **put s.o. out of business** áliquem dē negōtiō dēíc·iō -ere dēiécī dēiécus; **transact business with s.o.** negōtium cum áliquō tráns·igō -ígere -égī -actus; **that's none of your business** nihil ad tē áttinet; **what business is it of yours?** quid id ad tē áttinet?

business card chártul·a -ae *f* negōtiális

business district empóri·um -ī *n*

business establishment (*with its premises*) negōtiáti·ō -ónis *f*

business letter epístul·a -ae *f* negōtiális

businessman negōtiát·or -óris *m*

businesswoman negōtiátr·ix -ícis *f*

bust imág·ō -inis *f*

busy occupát·us -a -um, negōtiós·us -a -um; **be busy** sāt·agō -ágere -égī

busy: busy oneself with vers·or -ārī versátus sum in (+ *abl*)

busybody ardéli·ō -ónis *mf*

but sed, vērūm; (*when objecting to or correcting a previous statement*) at

butcher láni·us -ī *m* (*see chapter on food*)

butcher shop laniéna -ae *f*

butter bŭtýr·um -ī *n*

butter *tr* bŭtýrum adhibére ad (+ *acc*)

butterfly pāpíli·ō -ónis *m*

button *s* glóbul·us -ī *m*; (*comput*) plēctr·um -ī *n*

button *tr* glóbulis string·ō -ere strīnxī strīctus

buttonhole s.o. áliquem prehēnsáre

buy em·ō -ere emī ēmptus; paráre (**from s.o.** dē aliquō); **buy at a bargain** bene émere

buyer ēmpt·or -óris *m*, ēmpt·ix -ícis *f*

buzz (*of a bee, horsefly*) bombiláre

by (*a certain time, not later than*) ad (+ *acc*); **by January** ad mēnsem Iānuáriūm; **by myself** per mē; **by now** iam; **by the way** óbiter

bye bene valē (*pl*: valéte)

bypass circúit·us -ūs *m*

bystander persón·a -ae *f* mŭta; **among the bystanders** in circumstántibus

byte (*comput*) octét·us -ī *m*

C

cabbage brássic·a -ae *f*, cramb·ē -ēs *f*

cabinet (*of advisors*) summum cōnsíli·um -ī *n*; (*furniture*) zothécul·a -ae *f*

cabinet member cōnsiliári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

cackle (*of geese*) gríng·iō -íre; (*of hens*) gracilláre

cafe café·um -ī *n*

cafeteria refectóri·um -ī *n*

cage cáve·a -ae *f*

cahoots: be in cahoots with s.o. cum áliquō collú·dō -dere -sī

cake placént·a -ae *f*; (*esp. for birthdays*) líb·um -ī *n*

calculator mächínul·a -ae *f* calculátória

calendar calendári·um -ī *n*; (*in the Roman period*) fast·ī -órum *mpl*

calf vítul·us -ī *m*, vítul·a -ae *f*; (*anat*) sūr·a -ae *f*

call (*name*) nōmināre, vocāre, appellāre, dīcere, nuncupāre; (*summon*) ad sē vocāre; arcéss·ō -ere -ívī -ítus; **call roll** nōmina citāre; **call up the troops** ēvocāre cōpiās

callous dūr·us -a -um

callousness dūrítī·a -ae *f*

calm *adj* plácíd·us -a -um

calm *s* tranquíllit·ās -átis *f* ventī, maláci·a -ae *f*

calmly aequō ánimō

camel camél·us -ī *m*; **camel's hump** gibb·er -eris *m*

camera phōtomáchin·a -ae *f*, máchínul·a -ae *f* phōtográfica

camp castr·a -órum *npl*; **camp ground** camp·us -ī *m* tentórius

campaign *intr* (*pol*) ámb·iō -íre -ívī *or* -īi -itum

campaign *s* expedíti·ō -ónis *f*; (*pol*) petíti·ō -ónis *f*

can *aux. v.* possum posse potuī, queō quíre quívī *or* quī

can *s* váscul·um -ī *n* stánneum

canal foss·a -ae *f*

canary fringíll·a -ae *f* Canária (*see bird*)

cancer can·cer -crī *m*

candid cándid·us -a -um, apért·us -a -um

candidate candidát·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*), petí·tor -tóris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)

candy cuppédi·ae -árum *fpl*; **piece of candy** dulcíol·um -ī *n*

canvas téxtil·e -is *n*; **a painting on canvas** pictúra in téxtilī

cap pílle·us -ī *m*

cape prōmontóri·um -ī *n*; (*clothing*) humerál·e -is *n*

capital cap·ut -itis *n*

capital letter *s* lítter·a -ae *f* grandis (*opp*: lítterā minúta); lítterā māiúscula (*opp*: minúscula)

capital punishment supplíci·um -ī *n* cápítis; **suffer capital punishment** supplíciō cápítis afficior áfficī afféctus sum

captain (*of a ship*) naúarch·us -ī *m*

car autocínēt·um -ī *n*, (auto) raéd·a -ae *f* (*used interchangeably*); **car door** raedae óstíol·um -ī *n*; **car key** clāvis -is *f* accēnsíva; **car wash** raedae laváti·ō -ónis *f*; (*place*) raedae lavátóri·um -ī *n*; **drive a car** raedam gubernāre *or* ágere; **get (buy) a car** raedam comparāre; **go by (or in a car)** raedā eō íre ívī *or* íi; **put the car into the garage** raedam in receptáculō collocāre; **ride in a car** raedā vehor vehī vectus sum; **stop the car** raedam sistō sístere stítī; **take (or go for) a ride in a car** gestátíōnem raedā fácere; **take s.o. by car** áliquem raedā dúcere

carbon copy exémpl·ar -áris *n* carbóneum

card chártul·a -ae *f*; (*playing card*) chártul·a -ae *f* lūsória; (**ace** bñi·ō -ónis *m*; **jack** pedísequ·us -ī *m*; **joker** chártul·a -ae *f* fortúnāns; **king** rēx, rēgis *m*; **queen** rēgín·a -ae *f*; **club** crux, crucis (*gen pl*: crucum) *f*; **diamond** rūt·a -ae *f*; **heart** cor, cord·is *n*; **spade** pāl·a -ae *f*); **card game** chartulárum (lūsóriárum) lūs·us -ūs *m*; **play cards** chártulis (lūsóriīs) lúdere; **shuffle (cut, deal) the cards** chártulās mísc·eō -ére -uī míxtus (sēpōn·ō -ere sēpōsuī sēpósitus, dístríbu·ō -ere -uī); **suit**

col-or -óris *m*; **trick** vicēs *fpl* (ūnae, bīnae, trīnae, quaternae); **trump** col-or -óris *m* praelátus; *intr* chártulās fér·iō -íre

care cūr·a -ae *f*; (*diligence*) dīligenti·a -ae *f*; **take good care of your health!** cūrā dīligēnter valētúdinem tuam!

care for (*like*) cūrāre; **for all I care** meā causā; **I don't care about such things** ista nōn cūrō; **I don't care for her** ea meō cordī nōn cāra est; **I don't care to say more** nōn libet plūra dīcere; **I don't really care as long as ...** meā nīl rēfert dum (+ *indic*); **take care of** (*treat*) cūrāre; **take care of yourself** cūrā ut váleās (*pl*: cūrāte ut valeátis); **what do I care!** quid meā!

carefree sēcūr·us -a -um

careful dīlig·ēns -éntis

careless incūrīōs·us -a -um

carelessness incūrī·a -ae *f*

carpenter fa·ber -brī *m* tignārius

carpet tapēt·um -ī *n*

carrot carōt·a -ae *f*

carry gerō gérére gessi gestus; (*luggage*) bāiulāre; **don't get carried away with enthusiasm** nōlī (*pl*: nōlíte) stúdiō efferrī.

cartilage cartilág·ō -inis *f*

carve sculp·ō -ere -sī -tus

case (*container*) thēc·a -ae *f*; (*gram*) cās·us -ūs *m*; (*leg*) caus·a -ae *f*, līs, lītis *f*; **a noun in the genitive case** nōmen genitívō cāsū, (*or more rarely*) nōmen cāsūs genitívī; **as is generally the case** ut cōnsuetúdo est; **civil case** causa prīvāta; **criminal case** causa pública; **in that case** eō cāsū; ígitur; **get off my case!** nē mihi moléstus (-a) sis!; **if that's the case**

sī rēs sic habet; **in any case** utcúmque; **in case you have not ...** sī minus ... ; **in no case** haudquáquam; **in that case** ígitur; eō cāsū; **lose a case** causam per·dō -dere -didī; **plead a case** causam ag·ō -ere ēgī; **settle a case (out of court)** litem compón·ō -ere compósuī compósitus; **win a case** causā (*or iudiciō*) vinc·ō -ere vicī victus; **since that's the case** quae cum ita sint; **that's not the case** nōn ita rēs est

cash argént·um -ī *n* presentárium, numerát·um -ī *n*; **I need cold cash** opus mihi est nummīs cálidīs; **pay \$10 in cash for** dēnumerāre decem dóllarōs praesentáriōs prō (+ *abl*)

cashier arcári·us -ī *m*, arcári·a -ae *f*

casino aleatōri·um -ī *n*

casserole coctōri·um -ī *n*

cassette casēt·a -ae *f*; (*for video*) caséta magnētoscópica

cassette recorder casētophón·um -ī *n*

cast a shadow: umbrae respōnd·eō -ére -ī; **the tree cast a ten-foot shadow** arbor umbrae decem pedum respōndit

cast a vote suffrágium ferō ferre tulī lātus

cat fēl·is *or* fēl·ēs -is *f*, catt·a -ae *f*, catt·us -ī *m*; **cats meow** fēlēs fēliunt; **cats purr** fēlēs múrmurant

catch *s* **there's a catch to it** enim istaec cáptiō est; **what's the catch?** quid est cáptiō?

catch *tr* (*fish*) captāre; (*baseball*) excíp·iō -ere excēpī excēptus; (*what one has said*) exaúd·iō -íre -ívī; **catch a cold** gravédine afflíg·or -ī afflīctus sum; **catch hell** convícium habére; **catch red-handed** flagrántī delíctō dēprehén·dō -dere -dī -sus; **catch sight of** cōspíc·iō -ere

cōnspēxī; **catch up with** cōn·sequor
-sequī -secūtus sum; **I didn't quite
catch what you said** nōn satis
exaudiēbam dicta tua; **let me catch
my breath, please** sine respīrem,
quaesō

catcher except·or -ōris *m*, excēptr·īx
-īcis *f*

caterpillar ērūc·a -ae *f*; (*machine*)
vehīcul·um -ī *n* ērūcātum

catsup *see* ketchup

cattle bov·ēs -um *mpl* (*dat & abl pl*:
bōbus *or* būbus); (*collective*) pec·us
-oris *n*; **cattle bellow** (*or low*) bovēs
mūgiunt; **head of cattle** pec·us
-oris *n*

cauliflower brāssic·a -ae *f* Pompēiāna

cause *tr* fāc·iō -ere fēcī factus; (*pain*,
swelling, war) móveō movēre mōvī
mōtus; (*stir up*) excitāre; **what
caused him to leave?** quid fēcit ut
abīret?

causeway agger, ággeris *m* viae

caution cauti·ō -ōnis *f*; **exercise caution**
cāv·eō -ēre cāvī cautum

cautious caut·us -a -um

cavalry equitāt·us -ūs *m*

cave spec·us -ūs *m*

cavern spēlūnc·a -ae *f*

CD compāctus disc·us -ī *m*

CD player discophōn·um -ī *n*

CD-ROM orbīcul·us -ī *m* ópticus

CD-ROM drive īnstrūment·um -ī *n*
orbīculīs legēndīs

cease-fire indūti·ae -ārum *fpl*; **call for a
cease-fire** indūtiās posc·ō -ere
popóscī; **the cease-fire is holding**.
indūtiaē dūrant .

ceiling tēct·um -ī *n*; (*arched or vaulted*)
cámer·a -ae *f*; (*paneled*) lacūn·ar
-áris *n*

celebrate celebrāre

celery helēoselín·um -ī *n*

cellar cellári·um -ī *n* subterrāneum;
hypogē·um -ī *n*

cello violoncēll·um -ī *n*

cell phone tēlephōnul·um -ī *n* portábile

cement caemént·um -ī *n*

cemetery coemētēri·um -ī *n*

censor cēns·or -ōris *m*

census pópulī recēns·us -ūs *m*

cent centésim·a -ae *f*; **I don't owe
anyone a red cent** assem aerárium
némīnī débeō

central médi·us -a -um

central heating calefacti·ō -ōnis *f*
centrális

century saécul·um -ī *n*

cereal cereál·e -is *n*

certain cert·us -a -um; **a certain person**
quīdam, quaedam; **I don't know for
certain** nōn certō (*or certum*) sciō; **I
take it as certain** prō certō hábeō

certainly certē, profēctō; (*in replies to
denote emphatic agreement*) sánē; (*in
answers*) certō

chain catén·a -ae *f*; (*small chain, esp.
used for ornament*) catéll·a -ae *f*; **the
Apennines extending in an
unbroken chain from the Alps to
... Apennínus mōns perpétuīs iugīs
ab Álpibus tendēns ad** (+ *acc*)

chair (*normally without back or arm-
rests*) sell·a -ae *f*; (*w. rounded back*)
arcisélli·um -ī *n*; **arm of a chair**
anc·ō -ōnis *m*; **back of a chair**
arc·us -ūs *m* sellae

chairlift tēlephéric·a -ae *f* selláris

chairman magís·ter -trī *m*

chalk crēt·a -ae *f*

chamber pot lásan·um -ī *n*, matéll·a -ae *f*

chance (*opportunity*) potést·ās -átis *f*; **by chance** forte, cāsū; **he didn't give me a chance to answer** mihi nōn potestátem dedit responéndī

chancellor cancellári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

chandelier lámpadum corýmb·us -ī *m*

change *s* mūtáti·ō -ónis *f*; (*coins*) numm·ī -órum *mpl* minóres, númmulī *mpl*; **change of heart** ánimī mūtátiō; **for a change** varietátis causā

change *tr* mūtáre; (**buses, trains, planes**) mūtáre (autoraédās longās, trámina, aëróplana); **change one's mind** senténtiam mūtáre **||** *intr* mūtári; **the wind changed** ventus sē vertit

changing (*weather*) vári·us -a -um

channel canál·is -is *m*, canálicul·us -ī *m*; (*arm of the sea*) frēt·um -ī *n*

chapter cap·ut -itis *n*

character mōr·ēs -um *mpl*, índol·ēs -is *f*

character witness advocát·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

charge *s* crīm·en -inis *n*; **capital charge** capitále crímen; **false charge** calúmni·a -ae *f*; **bring or file charges against s.o.** crímina álicui ínferō ínferre íntulī illátus

charge *tr* (*rush against*) incúrr·ō -ere -ī; **charge a price for** prétium cōnstítu·ō -ere -ī (+ *dat*); **charge s.o. with a crime** áliquem crímine (*or* de crímine *or* críminis) árgu·ō -ere -ī argútus

charm amoénit·ās -átis *f*, lep·us -óris *m*; (*jewelry*) amulét·um -ī *n*

charming (*esp. to the eye*) amoén·us -a -um; (*cute*) bell·us -a -um; (*beautiful*) venúst·us -a -um; (*in manner*) lépid·us -a -um

chartreuse chlorín·us -a -um

chaste cast·us -a -um, pudíc·us -a -um

chat *intr* fábul·or -ári -átus *sum*

chat s have a chat with cōnfábulári cum (+ *abl*)

chatter balbút·iō -íre; **my teeth are chattering** déntibus crépitō

chauffeur autoraedári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

cheap vil·is -is -e; **be dirt cheap** prō lutō esse

cheaply parvō *or* vilī prétiō; **more cheaply** minóris prétiū

cheat fraudáre; (*in school*) fúrtim exscríb·ō -ere exscrípsī; **cheat someone out of his money** áliquem argéntō fraudáre

check *s* sýngraph·a -ae *f*; (*bill*) ráti·ō -ónis *f* nummária; **cash a check** arcáriō sýngrapham praéb·eō -ére -uī solvéndam; **write a check** sýngrapham perscríb·ō -ere perscrípsī

check *tr* (*investigate*) scrút·or -ári -átus *sum*, investigáre; (*mark with a check mark*) vígulā notáre; (*to indicate an error*) vígulā cēnsóriā notáre; **check luggage** sárcinās mandáre; **check off** (*make a check mark at*) notáre; **check out** (*inquire into*) inquir·ō -ere inquisívi inquisítus in (+ *acc*)

check into a hotel nōmen in tábulās dēversóriū réferō reférre rétuli; **check out of a hotel** ā dēversóriō discēd·ō -ere discéssī (*post ratiónem* compōnéndam)

checker latrúncul·us -ī *m*; *checkers* (*game*) latrunculórum lúd·us -ī *m*; **play checkers** latrúnculis lúdere;

jump (*an opponent's checker*)

trānsfīl·iō -īre -uī; **king** rēx, rēgis *m*

check mark (*indicating error*) vírgul·a
-ae *f* cēnsōria

check gen·a -ae *f*

cheer *intr* acclāmāre

cheer *s* clām·or -ōris *m*; **cheers!** prōsit!

cheer up *tr* (ex)hilarāre, laeticāre **||**

intr **cheer up!** habē (*pl:* habēte)
ánimum bonum!

cheerful hílar·us -a -um

cheerfulness hilaritúd·ō -inis *f*

cheese cāse·us -ī *m*

cheese cake savíll·um -ī *n*

chef archimagír·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

chemical *adj* chémic·us -a -um

chemical *s* chémic·um -ī *n*

chemist chēmīc·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

chemistry chēmi·a -ae *f*; chémīc·ē -ēs *f*

cherry céras·um -ī *n*

cherry pie cérasa *npl* in crústō cocta

chess lūd·us -ī *m* scācōrum,

scācīlūdi·um -ī *n*; **castle** *s* turr·is -is

f; *tr* adroccāre; **checkmate** rēgem

tén·eō -ēre -uī; **checkmate!** cavē

rēgī!; **chessboard** scācāri·um -ī *n*;

play chess scācīs lúdere (*see Chapter V*)

chest (*anat*) pect·us -oris *n*; (*box*)

armāri·um -ī *n*; (*for clothes*)

vestiāri·um -ī *n*

chestnut *adj* (*of horse only*) bádius

chestnut *s* castāne·a -ae *f*

chewing gum cumm·is -is *f* masticābilis

chew out (*scold*) pilāre

chick pull·us -ī *m*

chicken gallín·a -ae *f*; (gallínáceus)

pull·us -ī *m*; (*as food*) gallínáce·a
-ae *f*

chicken coop gallínāri·um -ī *n*

chicken-hearted mūrīcid·us -a -um

chief (*principal*) prínc·eps -ipis

chief of police praeféct·us -ī *m* vígilum

children líber·ī -ōrum *npl*

chilly frīgídul·us -a -um; **it's getting**

chilly aēr frīgēscit

chimney fūmāri·um -ī *n*

chin ment·um -ī *n*

China fictília Sinēnsium vās·a -ōrum
npl

chirp (*birds*) pīpilāre, pīpāre;

(*grasshoppers*) frítinn·iō -īre

chisel *s* scalpr·um -ī *n*

chisel *tr* scalprō caed·ō -ere cecídī

caesus; **chisel s.o. out of** (*cheat*)

áliquem ēmún·gō -gere -xī -ctus (+
abl)

chives porr·um -ī *n* sectívum

chocolate socolát·a -ae *f*; (*drink*) pōt·us
-ūs *m* socolátae

chocolate bar tabell·a -ae *f* socolátae

chocolate pudding érne·um -ī *n*

socoláteum

choice *adj* exquisít·us -a -um, éléct·us -a
-um

choice *s* ópti·ō -ónis *f*; **the choice is**

yours óptiō tua est

choir chor·us -ī *m*

choir director chorī magís·ter -trī *m*

(·tra -ae *f*)

choir loft aps·is -idis *f*

chore pēns·um -ī *n*; **do chores** pēnsa
fācere

Christmas Eve prīdiē nātālem Chrīstī

- Christmas** fēst·um -ī *n* nātivitātis
Chrīstī; **celebrate Christmas**
nātālem Chrīstī diem celebrāre;
Merry Christmas! faustum ac
fēlicem Chrīstī nātālem (tibi
exóptō)!; fausta fēsta nātālícia Chrīstī
(tibi exóptō)!
- Christmas gift** nātālícium mūnúscul·um
-ī *n* (or dōn·um -ī *n*); **give**
(exchange, receive, wrap)
Christmas gifts offérre (inter sē
dare, accípere, invólvere) nātālícia
mūnúscula
- Christmas holidays** fēri·ae -ārum *fpl*
nātālíciae; **spend the Christmas**
holidays (vacation) fēriās nātālícíās
ágere
- Christmas tree** arb·or -oris *f* nātālícia;
decorate the Christmas tree with
lights, balls, and tinsel árborem
nātālíciam ignículis et glóbulis et
lámínis argénteis ornāre
- chronic** long·us -a -um
- chronological order** órd·ō -inis *m*
témporis; **in chronological order**
servátō témporis órdine
- chubby** corpulént·us -a -um
- chum** sodál·is -is *mf*
- church** ecclési·a -ae *f*
- cider** vín·um -ī *n* málŕnum
- cigar** sígar·um -ī *n*
- cigarette** sigaréll·um -ī *n*; **pack of**
cigarettes capséll·a -ae *f*
sigarellórum; **smoke a cigarette**
fūmum sigaréllī sūg·ō -ere sūxī
- cigarette lighter** ignitábul·um -ī *n*
- circulate** circulāre; (of rumor, reports)
percrebréc·ō -ere precrebū
- circulation** (of blood) circuláti·ō -ōnis *f*;
be in circulation (of books) in
mánibus esse
- circumference** circúit·us -ūs *m*; **the**
crater measures 500 feet in
circumference crātēr patet circúitū
quingéntōs pedēs
- cistern** cistérn·a -ae *f*
- citadel** ar·x -cis *f*
- citizen** cīv·is -is *mf*; **my fellow citizens**
cívēs meī; **private citizen** (who holds
no political office) prívát·us -ī *m*
- citizenship** cívit·ās -átis *f*
- city** (physical entity) urb·s -is *f*; cívit·ās
-átis *f*
- city council** decurióñ·ēs -um *mpl*
- civil** cívīl·is -is -e; **civil rights** iū·s -ris *n*
cívīle; **deprive s.o. of civil rights**
áliquem cápite dēminú·ō -ere -ī; **loss**
(taking away) of civil rights
dēminúti·ō -ōnis *f* cápitis
- civilian** *adj* togát·us -a -um, prívát·us -a
-um
- civilian** *s* togát·us -ī *m*, prívát·us -ī *m*
- civilized** hūmán·us -a -um
- claim** (say) praedicāre; (demand)
postulāre; **claim as one's own**
vindicāre
- clam** my·ax -acis *m*
- clam shell** mýacis test·a -ae *f*
- clamp** cōnfībul·a -ae *f*
- clamp down on** (fig) compésc·ō -ere
- clarinet** tíbi·a -ae *f* clárífona; **play the**
clarinet tíbiā clárífonā can·ō -ere
cécini
- clasp** fībul·a -ae *f*
- class** (in school) class·is -is *f*; (social)
órd·ō -inis *m*; **be at the head of the**
class classem dúcere; **first-class seat**
sēd·ēs -is *f* prīmae classis; **lower**
class órdō inférior; **middle class** órdō
médius; **second-class seat** sēdēs
secúndae classis; **tourist-class seat**

sēdēs turística; **upper class** ōrdō supērior; **working class** ōrdō operārius

classical clāssic·us -a -um; **classical author** scrīpt·or -ōris *m* vetus et probus, scrīptor clāssicus

classics auctōr·ēs -um *mpl* utrīusque linguae clārissimī

classroom conclāv·e -is *n* scholāre, schol·a -ae *f*

clause *s* membr·um -ī *n*; **main clause** ōrāti·ō -ōnis *f* [*note: ōrātiō can be a main clause or a complete sentence*]

clean (*the house, etc.*) pūrgāre

cleaning rag drapp·us -ī *m*

clear clār·us -a -um; (*unclouded*) serēn·us -a -um, sūd·us -a -um; (*conscience*) rēct·us -a -um

clear *tr* **clear the table** mundāre mēnsam; **clear out of here!** hinc āpage!; **clear \$1000 in the first year** prīmō annō mille dōllārōs dētērg·eō -ēre dētērsī dētērsus; **clear up** (*difficulties*) expéd·iō -īre -īvī -ītus **|| intr** **clear up** disserēnāre

clerk scrīb·a -ae *mf*; (*in a shop*) tabernāri·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

clever cāllid·us -a -um; **very clever!** (*well said!*) facētē dictum!

cleverness callidit·ās -ātis *f*

click *tr* dēprim·ō -ere dēprēssi; pulsāre; **left-click** sinistrōrsum dēprimere; **right-click** dextrōrsum dēprimere; **double-click** bis dēprimere *or* bis pulsāre

client cli·ēns -ētis *mf*

climate cael·um -ī *n*; **hot** (cold, temperate, warm) **climate** fervēns (frīgidum, temperātum, tépidum) cael·um -ī *n*; **mild climate** tempēri·ēs -ētī *f*

climb ascēnd·ō -ere -ī, ēscēndere; **climb a tree** in árborem ēscēndere; **climb the stairs** per scalās ascēndere

clippers mächínul·a -ae *f* capillīs reseccāndīs

cloak pállī·um -ī *n* (*Greek item*)

clock hōrológi·um -ī *n*; **the clock keeps good time** hōrológium rēctē métitur; **look at the clock** hōrológium īnspíc·iō -ere īnspéxi; **set the clock** hōrológium temperāre; **wall clock** hōrológium parietārium; **wind the clock** hōrológium intén·dō -dere -dī intēnsus

clogs sóle·ae -ārum *fpl* lígnea

close (*comput*) conclūd·ō -ere -ī conclūsus

closet vestiári·um -ī *n* parietī īnsértum

cloth (*as a fabric*) text·um -ī *n*; (*a piece of cloth*) pann·us -ī *m*

cloth-bound book lib·er -rī *m* līnō contēctus

clothe vēst·iō -īre -īvī *or* -iī -ītus

clothes vestīmēt·a -ōrum *npl*; hábit·us -ūs *m* (*outfit of a particular class or occasion*)

clothes closet vestiári·um -ī *n* (parietī īnsértum)

clothes hanger fúlcim·en -inis *n* vestiārium

clothes hook unc·us -ī *m* vestiārius; **hang up** (*s.th.*) **on the clothes hook** in uncō vestiāriō suspend·ō -ere -ī

clothing vestít·us -ūs *m*, vestīmēt·a -ōrum *npl*

clothing store tabérn·a -ae *f* vestiária

cloud nūb·ēs -is *f*

cloudy nūbilōs·us -a -um; **become cloudy** nūbilāre

clown scurr·a -ae *mf*

- club** fūst·is -is *m*; (*social club*)
sodālīci·um -ī *n*
- cluck** glōc·iō -īre
- clumsy** incompōsit·us -a -um
- cluster** (*of islands, etc.*) celēbrit·ās -ātis
f; (*of grapes*) ūv·a -ae *f*
- clutch** pedāl·e -is *n* iūnctiōnis (*or*)
cōpulātiōnis
- coach** *tr* exercitāre; (*a student*)
admón·eō -ēre -uī -itus
- coach** *s* (*sports*) exercitā·tor -tōris *m*
(·trīx -trīcis *f*)
- coal** lap·is gag·as (*gen.*: lapis gágatis) *m*,
carb·ō -ōnis *m*
- coal mine** fodín·a -ae *f* carbōnária
- coast** ōr·a -ae *f* (marítima); **off the coast**
of ante (+ *acc*); **on the coast** in ōrā
(marítimā)
- coat** amícul·a -ae *f*
- coat hook** véstium unc·us -ī *m*
- coat rack** sustentācul·um -ī *n* véstium
- cobweb** aráne·a -ae *f*
- Coca-Cola** Cocacól·a -ae *f*
- cocain** cocaín·um -ī *n*; **snort cocain**
cocaínūm olfactāre
- cockpit** cell·a -ae *f* aērōplanī
- cockroach** blatt·a -ae *f*
- cocktail** própoma, propómatis *n*, cinn·is
-is *m*
- cocoa** cōco·a -ae *f*
- coffee** cáffe·a -ae *f*
- coffee break** caffearía paus·a -ae *f*
- coffee cup** pōcill·um -ī *n* caffearium
- coffee maker** máchin·a -ae *f* caffearía
- coffee pot** hírnul·a -ae *f* cáffea
- coffee set** sýnthes·is -is *f* caffearía
- coffin** cápul·us -ī *m*, arc·a -ae *f*
- cohort** coh·ors -órtis *f*
- coin** *s* numm·us -ī *m*
- coin** *tr* (*new words*) (nova verba) fíng·ō
-ere finxī fictus
- cold** *adj* (*the most general word, applied*
to all degrees from pleasant coolness
to severe cold; also, dispassionate)
frígíd·us -a -um; **ice-cold** gélid·us -a
-um; **be or feel cold** álgeō algére alsī,
fríg·eō -ēre; get cold algésc·ō -ere,
frígésc·ō -ere; **my hands and feet**
are cold manūs pedésque frígent;
turn cold frígésc·ō -ere; **very cold**
perfrígídis
- cold** *s* fríg·us -oris *n*, gel·ū -ūs *n*; (*med*)
gravéd·ō -inis *f*; **catch a cold**
gravédinem cón·trahō -tráhere -tráxī
-tráctus; **have a cold** gravéidine
labōrāre; **liable to catch cold**
alsiós·us -a -um
- coldcuts** concís·a -órum *npl*
- cold spell** frígór·a -um *npl*
- cold weather** gel·u -ūs *n*, tempest·ās
-átis *f* frígída *or* gélída
- collar** collár·e -is *n*
- collective** *adj* collēctív·us -a -um
- college** collégi·um -ī *n*
- collision** collísi·ō -ónis *f*
- colonel** tribún·us -ī *m* mílitum
- color** *s* col·or -óris *m*
- color** *tr* (*the hair, etc.*) colōrāre, ting·ō
-ere tīnxī tīnctus
- colt** ecúle·us -ī *m*
- column** colúm·n·a -ae *f*; (*marching*)
agm·en -inis *n*
- comb** *s* pect·en -inis *m*
- comb** *tr* pect·ō -ere pexī pexus; **comb**
back repéctere; **comb the hair**
capillum (*or* capíllōs *or* crínēs *or*
comam) péctere; **comb out** expéctere

combat proéli·um -ī *n*, pugna -ae *f*; **in hand-to-hand combat** cōminus [*adv*]

combatant proeliāt·or -ōris *m*

combination *s* comprehēnsi·ō -ōnis *f*; **a syllable is a combination of letters** sýllaba est comprehēnsiō litterārum

combine *tr* compōn·ō -ere compōsuī compōsitus; **prepositions can be combined with verbs** praepositionēs cum verbīs compōnī possunt

come vén·iō -īre vēnī ventum; **come about** ēvenīre; **come back soon** redī (*pl*: redīte) cito; **come down with an illness** morbō corrīp·ior -ī corrēptus sum; **come from** venīre ab (+ *abl*), dērīvārī ab (+ *abl*); **come here this minute!** concēde hūc āctūtum!; **come on!** āgedum!; **come what may, we'll take it philosophically** quod fors feret, ferēmus aequō ānimō

comfort *s* levāti·ō -ōnis *f*

comfort *tr* allevāre

comfortable cōmod·us -a -um; **make yourselves comfortable** rogō ut vōbīs suāviter sit

comics libéll·ī -ōrum *mpl* pīctogrāphicī

coming: he's got what's coming to him habet quod sibi dēbētur

comma *s* comm·a -atis *n*

command *s* (*comput*) iūss·um -ī *n*

command *tr* (*a legion, army*) imperāre (+ *dat*)

commander in chief imperāt·or -ōris *m*; **be the commander in chief** impérii summam tén·eō -ēre tēnuī

commence hostilities bellī inītium fácere

commerce commérci·um -ī *n*

commercial (*advertisement*) praecōni·um -ī *n*

commit (a crime) (scelus) committ·ō -ere commīsi commīssus

committee concíli·um -ī *n*

common noun *s* nōm·en -inis *n* appellātívum

common sense: have common sense cor habére

community cívit·ās -ātis *f*

compact disk (CD) compáctus disc·us -ī *m*

company (*mil*) centúri·a -ae *f*; **keep each other company** inter sē col·ō -ere -uī

company commander centúri·ō -ōnis *m*

comparative (degree) grad·us -ūs *m* comparātívus; **in the comparative** comparātívē, in comparatiōne

compare with comparāre cum (+ *abl*)

comparison *s* comparāti·ō -ōnis *f*

compartment (*in a train, plane*) diaét·a -ae *f* (pīmae, secūndae classis)

compass pyx·is -idis *f* magnética

compassion clēmēnti·a -ae *f*

compassionate clēm·ēns -ēntis

compile compōn·ō -ere compōsuī compōsitus

complain about quer·or -ī questus sum dē (+ *abl*)

complete cōnfíc·iō -ere cōnfēcī cōnféctus; (*a year*) expl·eō -ēre -éví -étus

complexion col·or -ōris *m*; **having a healthy complexion** colōrāt·us -a -um

composition scrīptúr·a -ae *f*, composíti·ō -ōnis *f*

compound *adj* compōsit·us -a -um (ut "indóctus" **uneducated**) (*opp*: simplex, ut "doctus")

computer *adj* computātrāl·is -is -e,
ōrdinātrāl·is -is -e

computer *s* computātr·um -ī *n*,
ōrdinātr·um -ī *n*

computer engineer māchinā·tor -tōris *m*
(·trīx -trīcis *f*) computātrālis

computer game lūs·us -ūs *m*
computātrālis; **play a computer
game** lūsum computātrālem lūdere

con *tr* verba dare (+ *dat*)

concentrate all the troops in one place
cōg·ō -ere cōēgī coāctus omnēs
cōpiās in ūnum locum; **concentrate
on something** ānimum in āliquid
dēfīg·ō -ere dēfīxī

concentration intēnti·ō -ōnis *f* ānimī

concern *s* cūr·a -ae *f*

concern *tr* (to worry) sollicitāre; **as far
as I'm concerned** per mē; **how does
that concern you?** quid id ad tē
āttinet?; **it concerns me (you)** meā
(tuā) rēfert; **it does not concern me
(you)** meā (tuā) mínimē rēfert

concerned about (for) sollīcit·us -a -um
dē (prō) (+ *abl*); **I'm not terribly
concerned about ...** labōrō nōn
valdē dē (+ *abl*)

concert concēt·us -ūs *m*; **attend a
concert** concētūī adesse

concise brev·is -is -e

concrete *s* concrēt·um -ī *n*

concrete noun *s* vocābul·um -ī *n* (*opp*:
appellātiō)

condemn condemnāre

condition stat·us -ūs *m*; (*term of an
agreement*) condīci·ō -ōnis *f*; **in
excellent condition** habitīssim·us -a
-um; **in good (bad) condition** bene
(male) hábit·us -a -um; **on condition
that eā lēge** ut (+ *subj*); **physical
condition** cōrporis hábit·us -ūs *m*

conduct business negótium ágere;
conduct oneself (behave) sē ger·ō
-ere gessī

conductor (*of an orchestra*)
symphonicōrum magīs·ter -trī *m*; (*of
a train*) trāminis cūrāt·or -ōris *m*

conference congréss·us -ūs *m*

confide in cōnfīd·ō -ere cōnfīsus sum (+
dat)

confidence fid·ēs -eī *f*, fidūci·a -ae *f*;
(*esp. over-confidence, self-
confidence*) cōnfīdēnti·a -ae *f*; **have
confidence in** fidem habēre (+ *dat*)

confident cōnfīd·ēns -éntis; **be
confident** cōnfīd·ō -ere cōnfīsus sum

confluence cōnflu·ēns -éntis *m*; **at the
confluence of the Tiber and the
Anio** inter cōnfluētēs Tiberim et
Aniōnem

congratulate grātul·or -ārī -ātus sum (+
dat)

congratulations! macte virtūte estō!;
grātulātiōnēs!

congress congréss·us -ūs *m*

conjugate *tr* dēclīnāre

conjugation *s* dēclīnāti·ō -ōnis *f*; (*rarely
occurs*) coniugāti·ō -ōnis *f*

conjunction *s* coniūnti·ō -ōnis *f*

connect *tr* cōnēct·ō -ere cōnēxūī
cōnēxus

connection coniūnti·ō -ōnis *f*; (*comput*)
cōnēx·us -ūs *m*

conquer vinc·ō -ere vīcī victus;
conquer a country terrā pót·ior -īrī
pótītus sum

conscience: bad conscience mala
cōnsciēnti·a -ae *f*; **good conscience**
mēns *f* cōnscīa rēctī

consent: give one's consent permitt·ō
-ere permīsi (ut); **without my consent** mē invītō

conservative *adj* cōservātiv·us -a -um

conservative *s* cōservātiv·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*); **conservatives** (*in ancient Rome*) optimāt·ēs -ium *mpl*

consider: to consider it already done istuc iam prō factō habēre

consist of cōnst·ō -āre cōnstīti (+ *abl* or *ex* or *dē* + *abl*)

consonant *s* cōnson·āns -āntis *f*

constant cōnst·āns -āntis; (*incessant*) perpētu·us -a -um

constantly perpētuō

consternation cōsternāti·ō -ōnis *f*

constipated: be constipated alvum suppressam habēre

constitution cōstitūt·a -ōrum *npl*

construct (*with mechanical skill*) fabricāre; (*buildings*) éxstru·ō -ere exstrúxi exstrúctus

construction *s* cōstrúcti·ō -ōnis *f*

consul cōnsul -is *m*; **elect a consul** cōnsulem creāre

consulship cōnsulāt·us -ūs *m*; **hold the consulship** cōnsulātum ger·ō -ere gessi

contempt contépt·us -ūs *m*, dēspicāti·ō -ōnis *f*; **feel contempt for** contémn·ō -ere -psi; **hold s.o. in contempt** áliquem dēspicātum habēre

contemptuous (of) dēspici·ēns -éntis (+ *gen*)

content (with) contént·us -a -um (+ *abl*); **to your heart's content** arbitrátū tuō

contest *s* certám·en -inis *n*

continent par·s -tis *f* mundi [*not cōtinēns, which means "mainland"*]

continual contínu·us -a -um

continually contínuē

contract cōntrah·ō -ere contráxi contráctus; **contract an illness** morbum or advérsam valētúdinem contráhere

contradict contrādicere (+ *dat*);

contradict oneself pugnántia loqu·or -ī locútus sum

control *s* (*restraint*) continéti·a -ae *f*; (*power*) potést·ās -átis *f*; **out of control** effrenát·us -a -um

control *tr* contín·eō -ēre -uī; **control yourself!** tē cōtinē!

convalesce convalēsc·ō -ere

convenience: at your convenience tuō cómmodō; **write me at your earliest convenience** scríbe ad mē cum cómmodíssimē póteris

convenient: when it will be convenient for you cum erit tuum cómmodum

conversation serm·ō -ōnis *f*, collóqui·um -ī *n*; **engage in conversation with** sermónēs cum (+ *abl*) cōnferō cōnférre cōntulī

convict convínc·ō -ere convícī convíctus (*w. acc. of the person and w. gen of the charge*); **convicted of** manifest·us -a (+ *gen*); **convict s.o. on many counts of fraud** áliquem multīs críminibus fraudis convíncere

conviction (for) condemnāti·ō -ōnis *f* (+ *gen of the charge*)

convince persuád·eō -ēre persuási (+ *dat*); **I am firmly convinced that** plēnus (-a) persuásiónis sum (+ *acc w. inf*)

coo (*of a pigeon*) gem·ō -ere -uī

cook *s* coqu·us -ī *m*, coqu·a -ae *f*

cook *tr* coqu·ō -ere coxi coctus; **cook up** (*fig*) excogítare

- cookie** crústul·um -ī *n*
- cooking pot** ōll·a -ae *f*
- cool** frīgídul·us -a -um
- cool off** *tr* refrīgerāre || *intr* refrīgerārī
- coolness** (*indifference*) frīg·us -oris *n*
- coop up** inclú·dō -dere -sī -sus; **be cooped up in the house** in aédibus coartátus (-a) esse
- coordinate conjunction** *s* coniūcti·ō -ónis *f* cōpulātīva
- cope with** pār esse (+ *dat*); **unable to cope with** impār esse (+ *dat*)
- copier** polýgraph·um -ī *n*
- copy** *s* exémpl·um -ī *n*, exémpl·ar -áris *n*
- copy** *tr* exscrīb·ō -ere exscrípsī (**from** ex + *abl*) (*by cheating*) clandēstínō; (*with printer*) exémplum (+ *gen*) fácere
- Corinth** Corínth·us -ī *f*; **gulf of Corinth** sin·us -ūs *m* Corínthíacus (*or* Corínthius)
- corkscrew** extrácul·um -ī *n*
- corn** maízī·um -ī *n*; **corn on the cob** maízium -ī *n* in spīcā
- corner kick** (*soccer*) ict·us -ūs *m* anguláris
- corporal** dēcúri·ō -ónis *mf*
- corpse** cadáv·er -eris *n*
- correct** *adj* rēct·us -a -um (*opp*: prāvus), ēmendát·us -a -um (*free from faults*), corrēct·us -a -um (*in the sense of "corrected"*)
- correct** *tr* (*esp. mistakes in writing*) ēmendāre; (*a person or mistake*) córrig·ō -ere corréxī corrēctus
- correction** corrēcti·ō -ónis *f*, ēmendāti·ō -ónis *f*
- correctly** rēctē (*opp*: prāvē), ēmendátē (*opp*: vitióse); **speak (spell correctly)** rēctē loquī (*scríbere*)
- correlative** *adj* relātívus -a -um (ut "tālis ... quālis" **such ... as**)
- correspond with** epistulárum commércium habére cum (+ *abl*)
- correspondence** epistulárum commérci·um -ī *n*
- corresponding secretary** ab epístulis
- corridor** ambulácr·um -ī *n*, andr·ōn -ónis *m*
- cost** *intr* cōnst·ō -āre cōnstītī (+ *gen* of *indefinite price or abl* of *definite price*); **cost a lot (little, nothing, more, less)** multī (*parvī, grātis, plūris, minóris*); cōnstāre; **it costs 100 denarii** centum denáriis constat
- cost** *s* impēns·a -ae *f*
- couch** léctul·us -ī *m* tōmētō fartus; (*semicircular*) stibádi·um -ī *n*
- cough** *intr* túss·iō -íre
- cough** *s* tuss·is -is *m*; **have a cough** túss·iō -íre
- councilman** decúri·ō -ónis *m*
- counsel** iūrisperít·us -ī *m* (-a -ae *f*)
- count** (*leg*) crīm·en -inis *n*
- count** *tr* numerāre; **count up or out** ēnumerāre; **you can count on me** potes nīti mē [*abl*]; **you can count on it that ...** erit tibi perspéctum (+ *acc & inf*); **you don't count** extrā númerum es mihi
- country** (*as a political unit*) rēs públīca (*gen*: reī públīcae) *f*; (*as a community*) cívit·ās -átis *f*; (*native land*) pátri·a -ae *f*; (*as a physical entity*) fīn·ēs -ium *mpl*; (*as opposed to city*) rūs, rūrīs *n*; **from the country** rūre; **in the country** rūrī; **to the country** rūs

country road vi·a -ae *f* regiōnālis

courage fortitūd·ō -inis *f*

courageous fort·is -is -e

course curs·us -ūs *m*; (*in school*) curs·us -ūs *m* ācroāsium; (*of a meal*)

fércul·um -ī *n*; **along a winding**

course meānte cursū; **be driven off**

course cursū excūt·ior -ī excūssus

sum; **in due course** mox; **in the course of** inter (+ *acc*); **in the course of time** prōcēdēnte tēmpore; **of**

course profectō, quidem, nempe,

(*also sarcastically*) scīlicet

court iūdīci·um -ī *n*; (*of a king*) aul·a

-ae *f*; **court of appeal** iūdīcium

appellātōrium; **hold court** ius dīcere;

take s.o. to court āliquem in

iūdīcium vocāre (*or addūcere*)

courteous cōm·is -is -e

courteously cōmiter

courtesy cōmit·ās -ātis *f*

courtesy call offīci·um -ī *n*

courthouse basīlic·a -ae *f*

courtroom iūdīci·um -ī *n*

courtyard āre·a -ae *f*; (*in a Roman house*) peristýli·um -ī *n*

cousin (*brother's child*) patruēl·is -is *mf*;

(*sister's daughter*) cōnsōbrīn·a -ae *f*;

(*sister's son*) cōnsōbrīn·us -ī *m*

cover tegimēt·um -ī *n*; (*lid*)

opércul·um -ī *n*; (*shelter*) suffūgi·um

-ī *n*; **take cover** suf·fūgiō -fūgere

-fūgī; **under cover of darkness**

nocte adiuvānte

cover up (*against the cold*) opér·iō -īre -uī -tus

cow vacc·a -ae *f*; **cows moo** (*or low*)

vaccāe mūgiunt

cowboy bubúl·us -ī *m* (Americānus)

cozy cōmmod·us -a -um

crab (*shellfish*) can·cer -crī *m*; (*person*) morōs·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

crabbiness morōsit·ās -ātis *f*

crabby morōs·us -a -um

crack s rīm·a -ae *f*

crack *tr* find·ō -ere fidī fissus; (*nuts*)

perfrīng·ō -ere perfrēgī perfractus **II**
intr rīmās āgere

cracked (*crazy*) cerrīt·us -a -um

crack troops rōbor·a -um *npl* peditum,

cōpi·ae -ārum *fpl* ēlectīssimae

cradle cūn·ae -ārum *fpl*

craft artiffici·um -ī *n*

craftsman fa·ber -brī *m*, ārtifex,
artifficis *m*

craftsmanship artiffici·um -ī *n*

cramp convúlsi·ō -ōnis *f*

crane grūs, gruis *mf* (*see bird*);
(*machine*) tolēnn·ō -ōnis *m*

crash (*comput*) cōrr·uit corrūere cōrruit

crater crāt·ēr -ēris *m*

craving for appetīti·ō -ōnis *f* (+ *gen*)

crawl rēp·ō -ere rēpsī rēptum; (*esp. of snakes*) serp·ō -ere -sī

crazy dēlīr·us -a -um; **he's crazy about**

her eam dēperit; **he's crazy about**

sports morbōsus est in lūdōs

cream crēm·um -ī *n*

credible crēdībil·is -is -e; **be credible**
fidem habēre

credit (*com*) fid·ēs -cī *f*; **academic**

credit insīgn·e -is *n* acadēmicum;

buy on credit fidē suā ēmere;

pecūniā haud praesentāriā ēmere; **get**

academic credit for this course

insīgne acadēmicum merēre prō hōc

cursū (ācroāsium); **have good credit**

bonā fidē esse

credit card tabéll·a -ae *f* trībūtāria

credit hour hōr·a -ae *f* acadēmica

creek rīv·us -ī *m*

creep (*term of contempt*) larv·a -ae *f*;
you give me the creeps facis ut
hórream

creep: it makes my skin creep facit ut
hórream

crest (*of a hill*) iug·um -ī *n*; (*of animals,
helmet*) crist·a -ae *f*

cricket gryll·us -ī *m*; (*game*) lūd·us -ī *m*
báculi et pilae; **crickets chirp** gryllī
strīdent

crime fácin·us -oris *n*, scel·us -eris *n*;
crīm·en -inis *n* (*more often means
merely the charge*)

criminal *adj* facinorós·us -a -um

criminal *s* sōns, sontis *mf*, crīminós·us -ī
m (·a -ae *f*)

crisis discrīm·en -inis *n*

critic crític·us -ī *m*

critical: the situation is critical rēs est
in summō discrīmīne

criticize reprehén·dō -dere -dī -sus

crocodile crocodíl·us -ī *m*

crook (*thief*) fur, furis *m*

crooked curvát·us -a -um; (*morally*)
práv·us -a -um; (*crafty*) dolós·us -a
-um

crop up exsíst·ō -ere éxstitī; **unless
something new crops up** nisi álquid
novī exstīterit

crops (*standing grain*) seg·es -etis *f*;
(*field produce*) frūg·ēs -um *fpl*

cross-eyed strab·us -a -um

cross one's path álicui óbviā venīre

crossing (*passage*) tránsit·us -ūs *m*

crossroads cómpit·um -ī *n*

crow *intr* (*of roosters*) cūcūr·iō -íre;
can·ō -ere cécīnī

crow *s* corn·īx -ícis *f*; **as the crow flies**
mēnsūrā currēnte [*lit: in a running
measurement*]; **crow** **caw** cornícēs
crōcitant (*see* **bird**)

crowd turb·a -ae *f*

cruel crūdél·is -is -e

cruelty crūdélit·ās -átis *f*

cry fleō flēre flēvī; (*of a baby*) vág·iō
-íre; **cry out to** clāmāre (+ *dat*); **cry
over** flēre

cucumber cūcumis, cucúmeris *m*

cue verb·um -ī *n* monitóriūm

culture hūmānit·ās -átis *f*

cunning collubrín·us -a -um

cup pócūl·um -ī *n*, pōcīll·um -ī *n*; **cup
of coffee (of tea)** pocīll·um -ī *n*
cáffeae (theae)

cupboard armári·um -ī *n* parietī
ínsértum

curable sánábil·is -is -e

curb crepíd·ō -inis *f* viária

cure *s* remédi·um -ī *n*

cure *tr* sánāre

curiosity cūriósit·ās -átis *f*

curl cirt·us -ī *m*, cincínnul·us -ī *m*

curl crīspāre

curler calamístr·um -ī *n*

curly crīsp·us -a -um, cirtát·us -a -um,
cincínnul·us -a -um; **have curly hair**
cincínnulō capíllō esse

current *adj* (*in general use*) ūsítāt·us -a
-um; (*opinion*) vulgár·is -is -e

current *s* flūm·en -inis *n* (*in the sense of
“the flow”*); (*electrical*) ēléctricum
fluént·um -ī *n*; **against the current**
advérsō flúmine; **with the current**
sēcúndō flúmine

curriculum studiórūm currícul·um -ī *n*

cursor (*comput*) curs·or -ōris *m*

curtain (*on a window or shower*)
vĕl·um -ī *n*; (*in a theater*) aulaē·a
-ōrum *npl*; **draw the curtains** vĕla
obducere

curve (*in a road, coast*) ānfrāct·us -ūs *m*

custody custōdi·a -ae *f*; **be held in
custody** in custōdiā hāb·eor -ērī
hābitus sum; **take into custody** in
custōdiam trā·dō -dere -didī -ditus

custom mōs, mōris *m*

customer ĕmp·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trīcis
f)

cut (*hair*) tōnd·eō -ĕre totōndī tōnsus;
cut and paste (*comput*) secāre et
glūtīnāre; **cut it out!** dēsīnās! (*pl*:
dēsīnātis!); (*more emphatic*) dēsīste!
(*pl*: dēsīstite!); **cut that out right
now!** supersédē istīs rēbus iam; **cut
the talk!** ségregā sermōnem!

cute bell·us -a -um, béllul·us -a -um

cutlery instrūmēt·a -ōrum *npl* escāria

cyberspace cyberspāti·um -ī *n*

D

dad, daddy tat·a -ae *m*

daily *adj* cōtīdiān·us -a -um

daily *adv* cōtīdiē

dainty dēlicāt·us -a -um

daisy bell·is -idis *f*

dance *intr* saltāre

dance *s* saltāti·ō -ōnis *f*

dance band symphōniac·ī -ōrum *mpl*
saltātiōnis

dancer saltā·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trīcis *f*)

danger perīcul·um -ī *n*; **be in danger
(of)** perīclītārī (+ *abl*)

dangerous perīculōs·us -a -um

Danube river Danūvius amn·is -is *m*

dare aūd·eō -ĕre ausus sum (*semi-
deponent*)

daring aud·ēns -éntis, aud·āx -ācis

dark *adj* obscūr·us -a -um; **as soon as it
got dark** prīmīs tēnebrīs

dark *s* after **dark** dē nocte; **in the dark**
per obscūrū; **I'm in the dark** (*fig*)
mihi tēnebrae sunt

darkness tēnebr·ae -ārum *fpl*; **darkness
fell** tēnebrae factae sunt

darling (*terms of endearment*) dēlīci·ae
-ārum *fpl*, cōrcul·um -ī *n*, anīmul·us
-ī *m* (·a -ae *f*), ocēll·us -ī *m*,
volúpt·ās -ātis *f*; **my darling** (*in
address*) mī ocēlle

**darn: I don't give a darn about that
(him, them)** id (eum, eōs) nōn faciō
floccī

darned: I'll be darned if ... male mī
sit, sī ...; **I'll be darned if I ever ...**
male mī sit sī umquam (+ *fut indic*)

dashboard tábul·a -ae *f* indicātōria

data dat·a -ōrum *npl*

database (*comput*) datōrum
repositōri·um -ī *n*

date di·ēs -ēī *f*; **by what date?** quam ad
diem? **have a date with s.o.**
cōstitūtum cum āliquō habēre; **to
date** adhūc

dative *adj* datīv·us -a -um

dative *s* datīv·us -ī *m*, cās·us -ūs *m*
datívus

daughter fīli·a -ae *f*

daughter-in-law nur·us -ūs *f*

dawn dilúcul·um -ī *n*; **at dawn** prīmā
lūce; **before dawn** antelúculō

day di·ēs -ēī *mf*; **a day**, *e.g.*, **twice a
day** bis (in) diē; **any day now**
propēdiem; **by day** intērdiū; **day**

after day diem dē diē, in sīngulōs diēs; **day and night** et diēs et noctēs; **day off** (from school) (ab scholā) fēriātus di·ēs -ēī *m*; **every day** cōfīdiē, in sīngulōs diēs; **from day to day** in diēs; **from that day on** ex eō diē; **just the other day** nūper quidem; **one day** (on a certain day in the past) quōdam diē; **on the day before he departed** prīdiē quam abīret; **on the day before the Ides** prīdiē Idūs; **(on) the following day** pōsterō diē; **on the third day before the Calends of March** ante diem quārtum Kalēndās Mārtiās; **the day after** postrīdiē; **the day after that** postrīdiē eius diēī; **the day after tomorrow** perēndiē; **the day before** prīdiē; **the day before yesterday** nudīstertius [*adv*]; **till late in the day** ad multum diem; **two days after that** post diem tertium eius diēī; **these days** hīs tempōribus

daybreak dilūcul·um -ī *n*; **at daybreak** prīmā lūce; **till daybreak** in prīmam lūcem

daycare center nēpiagōgi·um -ī *n*

daydream hallūcin·or -ārī -ātus sum

daydreamer hallūcināt·or -tōris *m*, hallūnicā·trix -trīcis *f*

daylight lūx, lūcis *f*, diēs, diēī *m*; **let in the daylight** diem admitt·ō -ere admīsi

DCD digitālis compāctus disc·us -ī *m*

dead *adj*: **I'm dead!** intērii! *or* pērii!

dead-end street fūndul·a -ae *f*

deaf surd·us -a -um; **you're preaching to deaf ears** ad surdās aurēs cantās

deal *s* (pact) pācti·ō -ōnis *f*; **a good deal of** aliquāntum (+ *gen*); **it's a deal** pactam rem habētō (*pl*: habētōte); **let's make a deal** pāctiōnem faciāmus

deal *tr* (cards) distrību·ō -ere -ī **|| intr with** (topic) tractāre, āgere dē (+ *abl*); (a person) āgere cum (+ *abl*); **I will deal with you later** tēcum mihi rēs erit sērius

dealer merc·āns -āntis *mf*, mercā·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trīcis *f*); (of cards) distribū·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trīcis *f*)

dean decān·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

dear cār·us -a -um

dearly (intensely) valdē; (at great expense) magnī

death mor·s -tis *f*; **condemn s.o. to death** āliquem cāpitis damnāre; **put s.o. to death** supplīcium dē āliquo sūm·ō -ere sūmpsi sūmptus

death penalty supplīci·um -ī *n* cāpitis

death sentence: receive the death sentence cāpitis damnārī

debate *s* disceptāti·ō -ōnis *f*

debate *tr* disceptāre dē (+ *abl*)

debt aes, aeris *n* aliēnum; **be in debt** in aere aliēno esse; **this has put me in debt** hoc mihi aes aliēnum āttulit

decathlon decāthl·um -ī *n*

deceitful fall·āx -ācis

December mēns·is -is *m* Decēber; **in December** mēnse Decēbrī

decency decēnti·a -ae *f*

decent dec·ēns -ēntis; **do the decent thing** frūgem fācere

decide cōnstītu·ō -ere -ī cōnstītūtus; **decide to or not to** (of the senate, also of supreme magistrates) cēns·eō -ēre -uī (ut *or* ne + *subj*)

decision (a win in sports) praevālēnti·a -ae *f* pūctōrum; **make a (wise) decision** (sapiēnter) dēcērn·ō -ere dēcērēvī dēcētus

deck chair sell·a -ae *f* cubitōria

decked out exōrnāt·us -a -um; **why are you all decked out?** quam ob rem sīc subōrnāt·us (-a) es?

declaration dēnūntiāti·ō -ōnis

declarative dēclārātv·us -a -um

declension s dēclīnāti·ō -ōnis *f*

decline *tr* dēclīnāre

decree of the senate senātūs cōnsult·um -ī *n*; **pass a decree of the senate** senātūs cōnsultum fācere

deep freezer arc·a -ae *f* gelātōria

deep red coccīne·us -a -um

deep-seated īnsit·us -a -um

deer cerv·us -ī *m*, cerv·a -ae *f*

defeat *s* (*mil*) clād·ēs -is *f*; (*pol*) repūls·a -ae *f*; **a defeat at the polls** comitiis repūlsa; **defeat in running for the consulship** repūlsa cōnsulātūs; **suffer a defeat** (*pol*) repūlsam ferō ferre tulī lātus; (*mil*) clādem accīpere

defeat *tr* superāre, vinc·ō -ere vicī victus

defective *adj* vitiōs·us -a -um; (*gram*) dēfectīv·us -a -um

defend dēfēnd·ō -ere -ī dēfēnsus

defendant re·us -ī *m*, re·a -ae *f*

defender (*sports*) dēfēns·or -ōris *m*, dēfēnstr·ix -īcis *f*

defense lawyer dēfēns·or -ōris *m*, dēfēnstr·ix -īcis *f*

defensive and offensive alliance sociēt·ās -ātis *f* ad bellum dēfendēndum atque īnferēndum facta

defensive and offensive weapons tēl·a -ōrum *npl* ad tēgēndum et ad nocēndum

define *tr* dēfīn·iō -īre -īvī -ītus

definite *adj* finīt·us -a -um (*opp*: īnfinītus)

degree *s* grad·us -ūs *m*; (*diploma*) studiōrum diplōm·a -atis *n*; **positive degree** gradus positīvus; **comparative degree** gradus comparātvus; **superlative degree** gradus superlātvus

dejected dēmīss·us -a -um

delete (*comput*) dēl·eō -ēre -ēvī -ētus

delicate dēlicāt·us -a -um

delight dēlectāre

deliver (*a speech*) habēre; (*mail*) red·dō -dere -didī -itus; **the mailman delivered the letter yesterday** tabellārius lītterās herī réddidit

demanding; be demanding multa éxigō éxigere éxēgī

demented dēm·ēns -éntis

democracy dēmocrāti·a -ae *f*

democrat dēmocrat·a -ae *m*, dēmocrātri·a -ae *f*

democratic dēmocrātic·us -a -um

demonstration prōtestāti·ō -ōnis *f* populāris

demonstrative *adj* dēmōnstrātv·us -a -um

denarius dēnāri·us -ī *m* (*worth about one dollar*)

dense dēns·us -a -um

densely populated region régi·ō -ōnis *f* uberrimae multitudinis

dentist medic·us -ī *m* dentārius, medic·a -ae *f* dentāria

denture prósthes·is -is *f* dentālis

deny īnfīti·or -ārī -ātus sum

depart abs·cēdō -cēdere -cēssī -cēssum

department (*academic*) facūlt·ās -ātis *f*; **department of classics** litterārum classicārum facūltās

department store pantopóli·um -ī *n*

- departure** abscéss·us -ūs *m*
- depend: it (all) depends on you** tōtum in tē pōsitum est; **it depends a lot on whether ...** plūrimum rēfert num ...
- deponent** *s* dēpōn·ēns -ētis *n*, verb·um -ī *n* dēpōnēns
- deposit money in a bank** pecūniam in argentāriā dēpōn·ō -ere dēpōsuī dēpōsitus
- depressed** abiect·us -a -um; **be depressed** abiectō ánimō esse
- depression** abiecti·ō -ōnis *f* ánimī
- deprive: deprive s.o. of** áliquem prīvāre (+ *abl*)
- deranged (mind)** commōt·us -a -um; (*person*) mente capt·us -a
- derive** *tr* (**from**) dērivāre (ab + *abl*)
- desert** dēsért·a -ōrum *npl*
- deserving (of)** dign·us -a -um (+ *abl*)
- desire** cupidit·ās -átis *f*
- desk** mēns·a -ae *f* scrīptōria; (*teacher's desk*) pūlpit·um -ī *n*
- desktop (comput) (on the screen)** in quadrō
- despair** *intr* (**of**) dēspērāre (dē + *abl*)
- despair** *s* dēspērāti·ō -ōnis *f*
- desperate** dēspērāt·us -a -um
- desperation** dēspērāti·ō -ōnis *f*
- despicable** dēspicāt·us -a -um
- despise** dēspíc·iō -ere dēspéxī dēspéctus
- dessert** bellári·a -ōrum *npl*, secūnda mēns·a -ae *f*
- destination** loc·us -ī *m* dēstinātus
- destructive** exitiōs·us -a -um
- detail: go into a matter in detail** rem per síngula ín·eō -íre -īī *or* -ívī; **in detail** per síngula, síngulátim; **details** síngul·a -ōrum *npl*
- detective** inquīsí·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*), indāgá·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)
- detergent** lómént·um -ī *n*
- detour** circúit·us -ūs *m*; **take a detour** viam flect·ō -ere flexī
- develop (character, mind)** cōfirmāre; (*improve*) éxcol·ō -ere excólui excúltus
- devote oneself to** sē dare (+ *dat*)
- dew** rōs, rōris *m*
- dial** *s* (*of a clock*) tábul·a -ae *f* hōrāria; (*of a telephone*) tábul·a -ae *f* sēlectōria
- dial** *tr* sélíg·ō -ere sēlégī sēlectus **II** *intr* númerum sēlígere
- diaphragm** praecórdi·a -ōrum *npl*
- diarrhea** alv·us -ī *f* fūsa (*or cita*)
- dictaphone** dictaphón·um -ī *n*
- dictate** dictāre
- dictation** dictāti·ō -ōnis *f*; **take dictation** dictāta exscrīb·ō -ere exscrīpsī
- dictator** dictát·or -ōris *m*
- dictionary** dictiōnár·ium -ī *n*, léxic·on -ī *n*
- die** mór·ior -ī mórtuus *sum*
- diesel** Dīselián·us -a -um
- diet** *intr* victūs ratiōnem observāre
- diet** *s* victūs rāti·ō -ōnis *f*; **be on a diet** victūs ratiōnem observāre
- difference** differénti·a -ae *f*; **difference of opinion** dissēnsi·ō -ōnis *f*; **how much difference does it make?** quantum ínterest?; **it makes no (a lot of) difference to me (you, etc.) whether ... or** nīl (multum) meā (tuā, etc.) ínterest (*or* rēfert) utrum ... an (+ *subj*); **what's the difference anyhow!** quid útique ínterest! *or* quid útique rēfert?

difficult difficil·is -is -e

dig (*a garden, well*) fód·iō -ere fōdī
fōssus; **dig a hole through** perfódere
(+ *acc*); **dig up s.th. about** quicquam
ēru·ō -ere -ī dē (+ *abl*)

digest cón·coquō -cóquere -cóxī -cóctus

digestion concócti·ō -ónis *f*

digital digitál·is -is -e

digital clock hōrológi·um -ī *n* digitále

dignified grav·is -is -e

dignity grávit·ās -átis *f*, dígnit·ās -átis *f*

diligence díligenti·a -ae *f*

diligent dílig·ēns -éntis

dimensions mēnsúr·a -ae *f* or mēnsúr·ae
-árum *fpl*

diminutive *s* dēminútív·um -ī *n*

dine cēnāre; **dine out** foris cēnāre

dining car curr·us -ūs *m* cēnātórius

dining couch lect·us -ī *m*

dining room trīclīni·um -ī *n*; (*informal*)
cēnāti·ō -ónis *f*

dining table mēns·a -ae *f* escária

dinner cēn·a -ae *f*; **eat dinner** cēnāre,
cēnam sūm·ō -ere -psī -ptus; **have a
roast for dinner** assum in cēnā
habēre; **over dinner** per cēnam;
what are you having for dinner?
quid in cēnā habébis?

dinner clothes cēnātóri·a -órum *npl*,
sýnthes·is -is *f*

dinnertime hōr·a -ae *f* cēnándī

dinosaur dinosaúr·us -ī *m*

diocese dioecēs·is -is *f*

diphthong *s* diphthóng·us -ī *f*

diploma studiórum diplóm·a -atis *n*; **get
a diploma** studiórum diplóma
mér·eō -ére -uī

directly rēctā, per diréctum

directory (*comput*) plicárum ind·ex
-icis *m*

dirt cheap prō lutō

dirty (*clothes, shoes*) immúnd·us -a
-um; **give s.o. a dirty look** respíc·iō
-ere respéxī áliquem minus familiári
vultū; **dirty talk** serm·ō -ónis *m*
obscēnus

disagree: I strongly disagree with you
vehemēnter ā tē dissentiō

disappear ēvanēsc·ō -ere ēvánuī;
disappear from sight ē cōnspectū
aúferor aúferrī ablátus sum

disappoint frustr·or -árī -átus sum; **I'll
not disappoint you** nōn fallam
opiniónem tuam

disappointment (*act*) dēstitúti·ō -ónis *f*;
(*result*) incómod·um -ī *n*

disapprove of improbrāre

disarm s.o. áliquem armīs éxu·ō -ere -ī
-útus

discharge (*mil*) míssi·ō -ónis *f*; **get an
honorable discharge** honéstam
missiōnem impetrāre; **get a
dishonorable discharge** missiōnem
ignōminiósam accíperere

disciplinarian: a strict disciplinarian
exác·tor -tóris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)
gravíssimus (-a) disciplínae

discipline disciplín·a -ae *f*

discotheque discothéc·a -ae *f*

discount remíssi·ō -ónis *f*; **five- (ten-
twenty-) percent discount** quinárum
(dēnárūm, vicēsímárūm)
centēsímárūm remíssiō

discuss disputāre dē (+ *abl*)

discussion disputāti·ō -ónis *f*

disease morb·us -ī *m*

disgrace dēdec·us -oris *n*, ignōmíni·a
-ae *f*; **be a disgrace to** dēdecóri esse

(+ *dat*); **that's a darn disgrace!**
 édepol fácinus ímprobum est!

disgraceful dēdecór·us -a -um,
 ignōminiós·us -a -um

dish catíll·us -ī *m*; (*open and flat*)
 pátin·a -ae *f*; (*large*) lān·x -cis *f*;
dishes (*including pots and pans*)
 vās·a -órum *npl*; **wash the dishes**
 vāsa (coquinātória) élū·ō -ere -ī
 ēlútus

dishonorable dēdecór·us -a -um

dishwasher máchin·a -ae *f* ēlútória

disk (*comput*) disc·us -ī *m*; **floppy disk**
 discus flexíbilis

disk drive (*comput*) ínstrúmēt·um -ī *n*
 dísculis legéndis

diskette (*comput*) díscul·us -ī *m*

dismay cōnstrnāti·ō -ónis *f*

dismiss dīmítt·ō -ere dīmísī dīmíssus

disposition afféct·us -ūs *m* (ánimī)

diss (*slang*) néglég·ō -ere negléxī
 negléctus

distance spáti·um -ī *n*; **its distance**
from the sea is three miles abest ā
 marī tria mília pássuum

distant longínqu·us -a -um; **be distant**
from abesse ab (+ *abl*), distáre ab (+
abl)

distinguished illústr·is -is -e

distress dol·or -óris *m*; (*difficulty*)
 angústi·ae -árum *fpl*

district tract·us -ūs *m*, ag·er -rī *m*

distrust *s* (**of**) diffidénti·a -ae *f* (+ *gen*)

distrust *tr* diffíd·ō -ere diffísus sum
 (*semi-deponent*) (+ *dat*)

dive (*of a swimmer*) praiceps dēsíl·iō
 -íre -uī; (*to submerge*) ūrín·or -áři
 -átus sum

diver ūríná·tor -tóris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)

diving board tábul·a -ae *f* dēsultória

divorce *s* dīvórti·um -ī *n*

divorce *tr* dīvórti·um fácere cum (+ *abl*)

dizziness vertíg·ō -inis *f*

dizzy vertiginós·us -a -um

do fácere, ágere; (*the hair*) cōm·ō -ere
 cōmpsí cōmptus; **do in: he has done**
me in pérdidit mē; **do one's best**
 óperam dō dare dedī; **do good: it will**
do you (a lot of, no) good próderit
 (multum, nihil) tibi; **do right well**
 rēctē valére; **do s.o. in** (*ruin s.o.*)
 áliquem pessum dare; **I don't know**
what to do quid fáciam nésciō; **it**
won't do to (+ *inf*) nōn satis est (+
inf); **what else can I do?** quid áliud
 fáciam?; **what more can I do?** quid
 fáciam ámplius?; **will this do?**
 sátin(e) est?

doctor medic·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*); (*as an*
academic title) doct·or -óris *m*,
 doct·īx -ícis *f*

doctorate doctōrāt·us -ūs *m*

doctor's degree doctóris grad·us -ūs *m*

documentary documentári·um -ī *n*

dodge the draft mīlítiam subter·fúgiō
 -fúgere -fúgī

dog can·is -is *m*; **go to the dogs** pessum
 eō íre -īī *or* -ivī

doing: what's doing? quid ágitur?

doll pūp·a -ae *f*

dollar dóllar·us -ī *m*, dollári·um -ī *n*

dolphin delphín·us -ī *m*

done for: I'm done for! nūllus sum! *or*
 périi!

donkey ásin·us -ī *m*

door iānu·a -ae *f*, ósti·um -ī *n*; **double**
doors for·ēs -ium *fpl*; **folding doors**
 valv·ae -árum *fpl*; **out of doors** forís

doorbell óstīi tintinābul·um -ī *n*; **ring the doorbell** pulsābulum cōprim·ō -ere compréssī; **the doorbell is ringing** óstīi tintinābulum tinnit

doorknob iānuae manūbri·um -ī *n*

door lock claustr·um -ī *n*

doorpost post·is -is *m*

doorstep lim·en -inis *n*

doorway ósti·um -ī *n*

dormitory hospíti·um -ī *n* (discipulórum or discipulárum)

dorsal fin pinn·a -ae *f* dorsális

dose pórti·ō -ónis *f*; **small dose** portiúncul·a -ae *f*

double *adj* geminát·us -a -um: **double “i” as in “armárii”** “i” líttera gemináta, ut armárii

double s on the double currículō; **doubles** (in tennis) lūd·us -ī *m* bis binórum

double home dom·us -ūs *f* duplex

double room concláve -is *n* duórum lectórum

doubt s I have no doubt that ... nōn mihi dúbium est quīn (+ *subj*)

doubt *tr & intr* dubitáre

dove palúmb·ēs -is *f* (see **bird**)

downcast deíect·us -a -um; demíss·us -a -um; **be downcast** iác·eō -ére -uī; **with downcast eyes** deíectus óculōs

downhearted demíss·us -a -um; **be downhearted** ánimō percúlsō esse

downhill *adj* dēclív·is -is -e, prōclív·is -is -e; **it was all downhill after that** prōclívia ómnia erant postílla

downhill *adv* per dēclíve; **things are going downhill** inclínáta rēs est

downhill racing dēcúrsi·ō -ónis *f* simplex

download (*comput*) ex rēte prehén·dō -dere -dī -sus, ex rēte éxprom·ō -ere -psī -ptus

down pat: you have the whole thing
down pat órdine omnem rem tenēs

down payment árrab·ō -ónis *f*; **make a down payment of \$20** (or **pay \$20 down**) vígintī dóllarōs arrabóni dare

downstairs (*direction*) deórsum; (*position*) in ímō tabulátō; **go downstairs** per scālās dēscend·ō -ere -ī; **he is downstairs** in ímō tabulátō est

doze off in somnum deláb·or -ī delápsus sum

draft cōnscríb·ō -ere cōnscrípsi cōnscríptus

draft s (mil) diléct·us -ūs *m*; **hold a draft** diléctum habére

draft-dodger quī milítiam subtérfugit

drag *tr* (*comput*) trah·ō -ere tráxi tractus; **drag out** (a war) (bellum) tráhere or prōdúc·ō -ere **|| intr drag on** trah·or -ī

draw (water) (aquam) haúr·iō -íre hausi haustus; (**lines**) (líneās) dúcere; (**a picture**) (imáginem) delineáre; (**geometrical figures**) formās (geométricās) dēscríb·ō -ere dēscrípsi

drawbridge pōns, pontis *m* sublevábilis

drawer lócul·us -ī *m*, fórul·us -ī *m* recíprocus

dread formidáre

dreadful dīr·us -a -um

dress *s* vest·is -is *f* muliebris; (*ankle-length*) vestis taláris; (*Roman*) stol·a -ae *f*

dress *tr* índuō índuere índuī indútus, vést·iō -íre -ívi or -ī -ítus; **dress oneself, get dressed** sē índuere, sē vestíre **|| intr dress up** sē exornáre

- dress shoes** *socc·ī -ōrum mpl, sóccul·ī -ōrum mpl (for women, of different colors and often decorated with gems)*
- dress** (*on a salad*) *embámm·a -atis n; Caesar (Blue Cheese, French, Italian, Russian, Thousand Island)* *embámma Caesariánum (Cáseī Caerúleī, Gállicum, Itálicum, Rússicum, Mille Īnsulárum)*
- dress** (*on a table*) *mēns·a -ae f cōmātória*
- dressmaker** *vestífic·a -ae f*
- dribble** *tr (a basketball) repercutitāre*
- dribbling** *repercúti·ō -ōnis f*
- drifter** *larífug·a -ae m*
- drill** *s (tool) térebr·a -ae f; (in school) exercíti·um -ī n; (mil) exercitāti·ō -ōnis f*
- drill** *tr terebrāre; (students) ĩnstítu·ō -ere -ī ĩnstítútus; (mil) exérc·eō -ēre -uī -itus*
- drink** *s pōti·ō -ōnis f; drinks pōtiōn·ēs -um fpl, pōtulént·a -ōrum npl*
- drink** *tr pōtāre*
- drive** *s (enthusiasm) stúdi·um -ī n; (in a vehicle) gestāti·ō -ōnis f*
- drive** *tr (a car, truck, bus) gubernāre, ágere; drive s.o. home áliquem domum autocĭnētō (or autoraédā) addúcere; drive s.o. mad áliquem dēméntem fácere*
- driver** *autoraedári·us -ī m (·a -ae f), autocĭnētíst·ēs -is mf*
- driver's license** *autoraedáriī diplóm·a -atis n*
- drizzle** *intr it is drizzling lēniter pluit*
- drizzle** *s plúvi·a -ae f rāra et minúta*
- drop** *s (e.g., of rain) gutt·a -ae f*
- drop in on** (*to visit*) *invís·ō -ere -ī; drop it! (no more of that!) missa istaec fac!; drop it, please! mittē, amábō!; drop off to sleep obdormísc·ō -ere; let's drop the subject missa haec faciámus*
- drug** *medicám·en -inis n; (narcotic) medicāmént·um -ī n psychotrópicum*
- druggist** *medicāmentári·us -ī m (·a -ae f), pharmacopól·a -ae m (·ria -riae f)*
- drugstore** *medicāmentári·a -ae f*
- drum** *týmpan·um -ī n; play the drum týmpanum pulsāre*
- drummer** *tympaníst·a -ae m (·ria -riae f)*
- drunk** *ēbri·us -a -um*
- drunkenness** *ēbrĭet·ās -átis f; (habitual drunkenness) ēbrĭósit·ās -átis f*
- dry cleaner** *full·ō -ōnis m*
- dry cleaner's** (*establishment*) *fullónic·a -ae f*
- dryer** (*for hair; for clothes*) *ĭnstrúmēt·um -ī n siccātórium (capillórum; véstium)*
- duck** *s an·as -atis f; (as food) anatĭn·a -ae f; ducks quack ánatēs tetrĭnnium*
- duck** *tr (in the water) dēprim·ō -ere dēpréssĭ dēpréssus; duck the issue rem evĭtāre || intr caput inclināre*
- dull** *heb·es -etis*
- dummy** (*slang*) *frut·ex -icis m, bār·ō -ōnis m*
- dumpling** *off·a -ae f, glóbul·us -ī m*
- dunce** *bār·ō -ōnis m*
- duped: you've been duped good and proper** *tibi ōs est súblĭtum plānē et probē*
- during** *inter (+ acc)*
- dust** *tr dust the furniture supelléctilem dētér·geō -gēre -sĭ -sus*
- dustpan** *vatíll·um -ī n*

DVD digitális díscul·us -ī *m* magnē-
toscópicus

dye ting·ō -ere tīnxī tīnctus

**dying to know: I am dying to know
how you are doing** valdē áveō scīre,
quid agās

E

each quisque quaeque quodque

eager (for) cúpid·us -a -um (+ *gen*)

eagle áquil·a -ae *f*; **eagles screech**
áquilae strīdent

ear aur·is -is *f*; (*outer*) aurícul·a -ae *f*;

earlobe lann·a -ae *f*

early (at an early period) mātúrē; (*too
soon*) praemātúrē; **early in the
morning** bene māne

earrings inaúr·ēs -ium *fpl*

earthquake terrae mōt·us -ūs *m*

earthworm lumbríc·us -ī *m*

east óri·ēns -ēntis *m*; **on the east (side)**
ab oriēte; **to the east** in oriēntem
versus [*versus is an adverb*]

Easter *adj* Paschál·is -is -e

Easter *s* Pasch·a -ae *f*; Pasch·a -átis *n*

eastern orientál·is -is -e

eastward in oriēntem versus [*versus is
an adverb*]

easy chair arciséli·um -ī *n* tōméntō
fartum

easy-going fácil·is -is -e

eat edō ēsse *or* édere ēdī ēsus;
(*breakfast, lunch, dinner*) sūm·ō -ere
sūmpsī sūmptus; **eat out** foris cēnāre

edict edíct·um -ī *n*

edit edō édere édidī éditus

edition edíti·ō -ónis *f*

editor redáct·or -óris *m*, redáctr·īx -ícis
f; (*of a newspaper, magazine*) édit·or
tóris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*); **editor in chief**
redáctor p̄ncēps *m*, redáctrix
p̄ncēps *f*

educate instít·uō -úere -uī -útus, ērúd·iō
-íre -ī -ítus

educated ērudít·us -a -um

education instítúti·ō -ónis *f*; ērudíti·ō
-ónis *f* (*Note that ēducātiō refers to
“raising, bringing up” and can apply
to the raising of children as well as
livestock and crops, the training of
the body, etc.*)

eel anguīll·a -ae *f*

effeminate effēminát·us -a -um

efficiency hábilit·ās -átis *f*

efficient hábil·is -is -e

effort: it’s (not) worth the effort

p̄t̄ium óperae (nōn) est; **make an**

effort to be on time dā óperam ut

tempestívē adsīs; **you’ve wasted all**

your effort omnem óperam perdidísti

egg ōv·um -ī *n* (**fried** frīctum; **hard-
boiled** dūrum; **soft-boiled** ápalum;
scrambled permíxtum)

egg on concitāre

eggplant melongén·a -ae *f*

egg white albúm·en -inis *n*

either ... or aut ... aut

elbow cúbit·um -ī *n*

elect creāre; (*Roman senators*) coöptāre

elections comíti·a -órum *npl*; **hold**

elections comítia habēre

electric(al) eléctric·us -a -um

electrical appliances eléctrica

instrūmént·a -órum *npl*

electrical outlet cápsul·a -ae *f* contáctūs
eléctrici

- electric bulb** glóbul·us -ī *m* ēléctricus
electric cord fūnicul·us -ī *m* ēléctricus
electric current fluént·um -ī *n*
 ēléctricum
electric fan máchin·a -ae *f* ventígena
electric light lūm·en -inis *n* ēléctricum;
turn off (turn off) the light lūmen
 accénd·ō -ere -ī accēnsus (exstíngu·ō
 -ere extínxī extíñctus)
electric shaver rāsóri·um -ī *n* ēléctricum
electric stove fócul·us -ī *m* ēléctricus
electric wire fil·um -ī *n* ēléctricum
electrician ēléctridis ártif·ex -icis *m*
electricity ēléctr·is -idis *f*
electronic ēlectrónic·us -a -um
elegance ēlegánti·a -ae *f*
elegant éleg·āns -ántis
elementary school litterárius lūd·us -ī *m*
elephant elephánt·us -ī *m*; **elephants**
trumpet elephántī bárriunt
elevator célula·a -ae *f* scānsória
eloquent éloqu·ēns -éntis
else: anyone else quīvis álius; **anything**
else? áliiquid ámplius? **no one else**
 nēmō álius; **nothing else** nihil áliud;
who else is more deserving? quis
 alter est dígnior homō?
elsewhere álibī
e-mail *s* lítter·ae -árum *fpl* ēlectrónicae;
 (the system) curs·us -ūs *m*
 ēlectrónicus
e-mail *tr* lítterās ēlectrónicās míttēre ad
 (+ *acc*)
e-mail address ínscripción·ō -ónis *f*
 ēlectrónica
embarrass perturbáre
embarrassed: I am embarrassed by
 sum perturbátus cum (+ *abl*)
- embezzle** evért·ō -ere -ī evérsus
embezzlement peculát·us -ūs *m*
embroider acū ping·ō -ere pīnxī pictus
embroidered (with colors) pict·us -a
 -um
emerald *adj* smarágdin·us -a -um
emerald *s* smarágd·us -ī *m*
emigrate emigráre
emotion ánimī mōt·us -ūs *m*; **express**
emotions ánimī mōtūs éxprim·ō -ere
 expréssī expréssus
emperor imperát·or -óris *m*; (title
 chosen by Augustus) prínc·eps -ipis
m
employ (to use) ūt·or -ī ūsus sum (+
abl); (to hire) condúcere
employee condúct·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*),
 mercenári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
employer (ópera) condúc·tor -tóris *m*
 (·trix -trícis *f*)
employment (act) ūs·us -ūs *m*;
 (occupation) quaest·us -ūs *m*
empty (into) sē effúnd·ō -ere effúdi
 effúsus (in + *acc*)
enclitic *s* enclític·um -ī *n* (ut “-que,”
 “-ve” **and, or**)
encourage adhórt·or -áři -átus sum
encouragement hortát·us -ūs *m*,
 hortám·en -inis *n*
end *s* fin·is -is *m*; **in the end** ab
 extrémō; **put an end to a war** bellī
 finem fácere; **toward the end of his**
life témpore extrémō; **that’s the end**
of me áctum est dē mē
end fín·iō -íre -ívī -ítus **|| intr** désin·ō
 -ere, fín·ior -írī fínítus sum; (*gram*)
 (**in**) términ·or -ári -átus sum (in +
acc or *abl*)
ending *s* (*gram*) termináti·ō -ónis *f*

ending *adj* (*gram*) (**in**) terminát·us -a -um (*in* + *acc*)

enemy host·ēs -ium *mpl*; (*personal enemy*) inimíc·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

energetic nāv·us -a -um

enforce the law lēgem exérc·eō -ēre -uī -itus

engine mächinámént·um -ī *n*, mōtr·um -ī *n*

engineer mächinā·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)

engineering mächinális sciénti·a -ae *f*

enjoy (*good health, company, etc.*) ūtor ūtī ūsus sum (+ *abl*)

enlist *mil* nōmen (*of several*: nōmina) dare

enough satis; **enough and more than enough** satis supérque; **enough of this!** haec háctenus!; **enough time** satis témporis

enter intráre; (*comput*) in ōrdinátrum réferō reférre rétulī relátus

enthusiasm stúdi·um -ī *n*

enthusiastic (*about*) studiós·us -a -um (+ *gen*)

entrance (*entering*) intróit·us -ūs *m*; (*approach*) ádit·us -ūs *m*; (*doorway*) ósti·um -ī *n*

envelope involúcr·um -ī *n* epistuláre

envious ínvid·us -a -um; **be envious of** ínvid·eō -ēre ínvidī (+ *dat*)

environment circumiéc·ta -ōrum *npl*

envy *s* invídi·a -ae *f*

envy *tr* invíd·eō -ēre invídī invísium (+ *dat*)

epilepsy morb·us -ī *m* comitiális

equally aequē

erase érád·ō -ere -ī érásus

eraser (*for a blackboard*) dētersóri·um -ī *n*; (*on a pencil*) cumm·is -is *f* dēlétilis

erasure litúr·a -ae *f*

error err·or -óris *m*; (*in writing*) mend·um -ī *n*, mend·a -ae *f*, víti·um -ī *n*; **commit (make) an error** mendum admítt·ō -ere admísi admíssus

escalator scál·ae -árum *fpl* móbilēs (*or* volúbilēs)

escape *s* effúgi·um -ī *n*

escape *tr* **escape the notice of** fall·ō -ere fefélli || *intr* effúg·iō -ere effúgī

esophagus gul·a -ae *f*

especially potíssimum, praecipuē

espresso cáffe·a -ae *f* expréssa

essay tractát·us -ūs *m*

esteem *s* aestimáti·ō -ónis *f*; **hold s.o. in high (highest) esteem** áliquem magnī (máximī) fácere

esteem *tr* aestimáre

estranged: become estranged from s.o. áliquem ā sē aliēnāre

estuary aestuári·um -ī *n*

Etruria Etrúri·a -ae *f*

Europe Európa·a -ae *f*

European Európaé·us -a -um

evasive ambígu·us -a -um

even étiam; **even today** etiámnum; **not even** ne ... quidem; **get even with s.o.** áliquem ulcísc·or -ī ultus sum

evening vesp·er -erī *m*, vésper·a -ae *f*; **all evening** tōtā vésperā; **early in the evening** primō vésperī; **in the evening** vésperī, vésperē; **last evening** herī vésperī; **on Saturday evening** diē Sātúrnī vésperī; **this evening** hódicē vésperī; **toward evening** sub vésperum; **very late in**

- the evening** pervésperī; **yesterday evening** herī vésperī
- evening wear** cēnātōri·a -ōrum *npl*
- ever** umquam
- every** omn·is -is -e; **every day** cōfīdiē; **every month** quot mēnsibus; **every night** per sīngulās noctēs; **every now and then** intērdum; **every year** quotānnīs
- evidence** testimōni·um -ī *n*; **give evidence against s.o.** testimōnium dīcere in āliquem; **on what evidence will you convict me?** quō mē teste convīncēs?; **this evidence is not admissible** hoc testimōnium nōn sūmēndum est; **turn state's evidence** indīcium profit·eor -ērī profēssus sum
- evidently** manifēstē
- exact** accurāt·us -a -um, exāct·us -a -um
- exaggerate: don't exaggerate everything!** nōlī (*pl*: nōlīte) omnia in māius extōllere!
- exam** exām·en -inis *n*, probāti·ō -ōnis *f*; **flunk an exam** cad·ō -ere cēcidī cāsūrus in exāmine; **pass an exam** exāmen sustīn·eō -ēre -uī; **take an exam** exāmen ób·eō -īre -īi; **tough exam** exāmen rigōrōsum
- examine** exāmināre
- example** exēmpl·um -ī *n*; **set a good example** bonum exēmplum praēb·eō -ēre -uī
- excavator** máchin·a -ae *f* fōssōria
- except** praeter (+ *acc*); **except that** nisi quod (+ *indic*)
- excessive (in)** immódic·us -a -um (+ *gen* or *abl*)
- exchange** permūtāre; **exchange greetings** cōnsalūtāre; **exchange prisoners** captīvōs inter sē permūtāre
- excite** excitāre
- excited** commót·us -a -um, excitāt·us -a -um
- excitement** ánimī commóti·ō -ōnis *f*;
feel excitement éxcit·or -āri excitātus sum
- exclamation** exclāmāti·ō -ōnis *f*
- exclamation point** sign·um -ī *n*
exclāmātiōnis
- excuse** *s* excūsāti·ō -ōnis *f*; (*pretext*) praetēxt·um -ī *n*
- excuse** *tr* (*pardon*) ignōsc·ō -ere ignōvī (+ *dat*); **excuse me** ignōsce mihi; **please excuse me** óbsecrō, mihi ignōscās; **excuse oneself** sē excūsāre
- exempt: be exempt from military service** milítiae vacātiōnem habēre
- exemption from military service** milítiae vacāti·ō -ōnis *f*
- exercise** *intr* sē exérc·eō -ēre -uī
- exercise** *s* (*written*) exercít·um -ī *n*; (*practice*) exercitāti·ō -ōnis *f*
- exhale** expīrāre
- exhaust** ēmissári·um -ī *n*
- expect** exspectāre; **what do you expect?** quid vīs fīerī?
- expense** impēns·a -ae *f*, sūmpt·us -ūs *m*;
at my expense meō sūmptū; **at your own expense** prīvátō sūmptū
- expensive** cār·us -a -um, pretiós·us -a -um
- experience** experiēnti·a -ae *f*, ūs·us -ūs *m*
- experienced (in)** perít·us -a -um (+ *gen*)
- expert** *s* perít·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
- expert in** gnār·us -a -um (+ *gen*)
- explain** explānāre, explicāre
- explanation** explānāti·ō -ōnis *f*, explicāti·ō -ōnis *f*

express *éxprim·ō -ere* *expressī*
expressus

expression *vult·us -ūs m*; **change one's expression** *vultum flect·ō -ere* *flexī flexus*

expressive (*eyes*) *argūt·us -a -um*

express train *trām·en -inis n*
rapidíssimum

extend *intr* (*of land, body of water*)
tend·ō -ere, prōtēnd·ō -ere, pát·eō -ēre; **the region extends from ... to ...** *regiō tendit* (*or patet*) *ab* (+ *abl*)
ad (+ *acc*); **extend over** (*to cover*)
obtin·eō -ēre

extortion *violēnta exácti·ō -ónis f*
pecūniárum

extracurricular *extraordinári·us -a -um*

eye *ócul·us -ī m*; **keep an eye on that guy** *adservā* (*pl: adserváte*) *istum*;
keep your eyes open *cavē*
circumspiciās; **look me in the eye**
aspicedum contrā mē; **with eyes wide open** *hiántibus oculīs*

eyeball *orb·is -is m* *oculī*

eyebrow *supercíli·um -ī n*

eye doctor *médic·us -ī m* *oculárius*,
médic·a -ae f *oculária*

eyeglasses *perspicíll·a -órum npl, vitr·a -órum npl* *oculária*; **wear eyeglasses**
perspicíllis üt·or -ī ūsus sum

eyelash *pálpebrae pil·us -ī m*; **eyelashes**
palpebrárum pil·ī -órum mpl

eyelid *pálpebr·a -ae f*

eyewitness *oculátus (-a) test·is -is mf*

F

fabric (*pattern of weaving*) *text·us -ūs m*
(coarse crassus; sheer, thin tenuis; thick pinguis)

face *s* *fáci·ēs -éi f*; **be face to face with you** *praesēns praesénti tibi esse*;
make a face *ōs dúcere*; **on the face of it** *prīmā fáciē*; **we can discuss that face to face** *cōram id ágere*
póssumus

face *tr* *spectāre*; (*to withstand, e.g., danger*) *óbviám ire* (+ *dat*); **face north (south, east, west)** *spectāre in* (*or ad*) *septentriónēs* (*merídiem, oriéntem, occidéntem*)

fact: as a matter of fact *enimvērō*; **in fact** *proféctō, vērō, quidem*; **the fact that ...** *quod* (+ *indic*); **the facts speak for themselves** *rēs ipsa indicat*
or rēs prō sē lóquitur

faction *fáci·ō -ónis f*

factory *fábric·a -ae f*

faculty *ōrd·ō -inis m* *professórum*

fail *tr* **fail an exam (test, quiz)** *in exámine* (*probatióne, probatiúnculā*)
cad·ō -ere cecidi; **words fail me** *quid dīcam nōn invēniō*

fair *aequ·us -a -um*; (*complexion*)
candid·us -a -um; (*weather*) *serēn·us -a -um, sūd·us -a -um*; **fair and square** *sine fūcō ac falláciis*; **I think that's fair** *id aequī fáciō*; **that's not fair of you** *nōn aequum facis*

fairground(s) *prāt·um -ī n* *fēstívum*

fairly (*in a fair way*) *aequē*; (*somewhat*)
aliquántulum; (*moderately*)
mediócritet

fair-minded *aequ·us -a -um*

fairness *aéquit·ās -átis f*

fairy *dīv·a -ae f*

faith *fid·ēs -eī f*; **in bad faith** *dē fidē malā*; **in good faith** (*ex*) *bonā fidē*

faithful *fidél·is -is -e*

fake *simuláre*

faker *simulá·tor -tōris m* (*·trīx -trícis f*)

- falcon** falc·ō -ōnis *m* (*see* **bird**)
- fall** *adj* autumnāl·is -is -e
- fall** *intr* cadō cādere cēcidī cāsūrus; **fall asleep** obdormisc·ō -ere; **fall (desperately) in love with** (pērditē) amāre coep·ī -isse; **fall flat** (*of a speech, etc.*) frīgeō frīgēre; **fall for** (*a trick*) fall·or -ī (+ *abl*); **fall in love at first sight** ūnō aspēctū in amōrem incid·ō -ere -ī; **fall sick** in morbum incidere
- fall** *s* autūmn·us -ī *m*
- false** fals·us -a -um
- falsely** falsō
- family** famīli·a -ae *f*; **come from a good family** honéstō locō nāt·us -a esse
- family name** gentīle nōm·en -inis *n*
- family tree** stirp·s -is *f*, stemm·a -atis *n*
- famous** praeclār·us -a -um; **famous for** inclutus (+ *abl*), nōbilis (+ *abl*)
- fan** *s* flabēll·um -ī *n*; (*admirer*) faut·or -ōris *m*, fautr·īx -īcis *f*; **electric fan** māchínul·a -ae *f* ventígena
- fan** *tr* ventiláre
- fantastic** mīrífic·us -a -um
- far** (*by far*) longē; **as far as I'm concerned** per mē; **by far** longē, multō; **far be it from me to say** équidem dīcere nōlim; **far from** procul ab (+ *abl*); **how far?** quoad, quousque?; **(not) far from here** (haud) procul hinc; **far from it!** mínimē!; **farthest to the south** longíssimē in merídiem; **so far so good** bellē adhūc; **so far, thus far** háctenus
- faraway** (*distant*) longínqu·us -a -um
- fare** vectúr·a -ae *f*
- farewell** valē (*pl.* valéte)
- far-fetched idea** conquisítum cōnsíli·um -ī *n*
- farm** fund·us -ī *m*, rūs, rūris *n*; **on the farm** rūrī
- farm animals** pec·us -oris *n* or pécor·a -um *npl*
- farmer** agrícol·a -ae *m*
- farm house** vīll·a -ae *f* rústica
- farsighted** próvid·us -a -um
- fashion** cultūs mod·us -ī *m*; **be in fashion** more fieri; **come into fashion** in morem vén·iō -īre vēnī; **go out of fashion** obsolēsc·ō -ere obsolévī obsolētum
- fast** cel·er -eris -ere; **be fast asleep** artē dōrm·iō -īre -ívī
- fat** obés·us -a -um (*opp.* grácil·is -is -e)
- fathead** (*slang*) fātu·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
- father** pa·ter -tris *m*; **father of the family** paterfamíliās (*gen.* patrisfamíliās) *m*
- father-in-law** soc·er -erī *m*
- fatigue** fatigáti·ō -ōnis *f*
- fatigued** fess·us -a -um
- faucet** epitóni·um -ī *n*; **turn on (off) the faucet** epitónium versáre (reversáre)
- fault** culp·a -ae *f*; **be at fault** in culpā esse; **not be at fault** extrā culpam esse
- faultless** ēmendát·us -a -um
- favor** benefíci·um -ī *n*, gráti·a -ae *f*, grāt·um -ī *n*; **accept and return a favor** benefícium accípere et réddere; **ask s.o. for a favor** grátiam ab áliqūō pet·ō -ere petívī; **do s.o. a favor** grátum álicui fácere; **do s.o. a big favor** grátíssimum álicui fácere; **return s.o. a favor** grátiam álicui réferō réferre rétulī; **please do me this favor!** amábō tē, fac (*or for a previous favor:* refer) hanc grátiam mihi

favorable (*auspices, circumstances, gods, wind*) *secúnd·us -a -um*

fax *tēlecópi·a -ae f*

fax machine *tēlecópiatr·um -ī n*

fear *s met·us -ūs m; he put the fear of God into them* *cūrāvīt ut illīs Iúppiter irátus esset; out of fear* *prae metū*

fear *tr metu·ō -ere -ī, tīm·eō -ére -uī*

fearful (*terrible*) *dīr·us -a -um; fearful of timid·us -a -um (+ gen)*

fearless *impávid·us -a -um*

feather *penn·a -ae f; (soft, downy) plūm·a -ae f*

February *mēns·is -is m Februárius; in February* *mēnse Februáriō*

feeble *imbēcíll·us -a -um*

feebleness *imbēcíllit·ās -átis f*

feed *pāsc·ō -ere pāvī pāstus*

feel *tr (with the hands) tentāre; (hunger, pain, cold, etc.) sent·iō -īre sēnsī*

sēnsus; feel one's way *viam tentāre; (fig) cautē et cogitātē rem tractāre;*

feel pain *dolóre affícor affíci affectus sum* **|| intr because I felt**

like it *quia mihi líbitum est; I wasn't*

feeling well *ego mē nōn bellē*

habēbam; feel annoyed *grav·or -ārī*

-átus sum; feel bad (good)

(physically) sē male (bene) habēre;

feel better *(physically) mélius sē*

habēre; mélius vál·eō -ére -uī; feel

down and out *infráctum ánimum*

ger·ō -ere gessī; feel fine *sē bene*

habēre; feel glad *laet·or -ārī laetátus*

sum; feel happy *gaúd·eō -ére*

gāvísus sum; How do you feel? ut tē

habēs?; I feel fine *mē bene hábeō;*

bene mihi est; feel really bad about

valdē dól·eō -ére -uī dē (+ abl); feel

sad *maest·us -a -um esse*

feelers: put out feelers to *tentāre*

feeling *sēns·us -ūs m, afféct·us -ūs m; (feelings esp. with reference to*

anger) ánim·us -ī m; his (her)

feelings were hurt *ánimus eius*

saúcius erat; hurt s.o.'s feelings

áliquem offénd·ō -ere -ī

fellow citizen *cīv·is -is mf su·us (-a)*

fellow passenger *convéct·or -óris m, convéct·īx -ícis f*

fellow soldier *conmílīt·ō -ónis m*

fellow student *condiscípul·us -ī m (·a -ae f)*

fellow worker *sóci·us -ī m (·a -ae f) óperis*

felon *scelést·us -ī m (·a -ae f)*

felony *scel·us -eris n*

feminine *fēminín·us -a -um*

fence *saepímént·um -ī n*

fender *lutícípul·um -ī n*

ferry *nāv·is -is f tráiectória (or vectória)*

fetch *petō pétere petívī (or pétīī) petítus*

fever *febr·is -is f; constant fever*

contínua febris; high fever *magna or*

árdēns febris; run a fever *febricitāre;*

slight fever *febrécul·a -ae f*

few: a few *pauc·ī -ae -a*

fiction *fābulósa narráti·ō -ónis f*

fiddle *fidícul·a -ae f; play the fiddle* *fidículā can·ō -ere cécinī*

fiddlesticks! *nūgae!*

fidelity *fidélit·ās -átis f*

field *ag·er -rī m; (untilled) camp·us -ī m; (of study) disciplín·a -ae f*

fierce *fer·ōx -ócis*

figure s: female figure *mulíebris form·a -ae f; figure of speech* *figúr·a -ae f*

ōrātiónis, trop·us -ī m

figurative *trāslát·us -a -um;*

figūrátív·us -a -um

- figuratively** per trānslātiōnem, trānslātīs verbīs, figurāte
- figure on** (*rely on*) nīt·or -ī nīxus sum *or* nīsus sum (+ *abl*)
- figure out** excōgitāre
- figure skating** patināti·ō -ōnis *f* artificiōsa
- file** (*tool*) līm·a -ae *f*; (*for receiving papers*) scap·us -ī *m*; (*comput*) documēt·um -ī *n*; **files** documēt·a -ōrum *npl*, āct·a -ōrum *npl*
- fill** ímpl·eō -ēre -ēvī -ētus; **fill it up, please!** quaeō, immissārium benzīnārium replē tōtum!
- film** taeníol·a -ae *f*, pellícul·a -ae *f*; **documentary film** taeníol·a -ae *f* documētāria; **movie film** taeníola cīnēmatogrāphica; **photographic film** pellícula phōtogrāphica; **show a film** taeníolam (cīnēmatogrāphicam) exhíb·eō -ēre -uī -itus
- filter** filtr·um -ī *n*
- fin** pinn·a -ae *f*
- final** últim·us -a -um, extrém·us -a -um
- finally** tandem; (*at last*) ad extrémum
- find** repér·iō -íre répperī repértus
- fine** *adj* (*outstanding*) prae·stāns -stāntis; (*weather*) serēn·us -a -um; **everything's fine** rēctē est; **fine!** probē!; **fine arts** art·ēs -ium *fpl* ēlegantiōrēs; **fine weather** serēnit·ās -ātis *f*; **that's fine** bene hoc habet; **you did fine** fēcístī probē
- fine** *tr* **fine s.o.** multāre āliquem (+ *abl of the fine*)
- finger** *s* dígit·us -ī *m*; **index finger** ind·ex -icis dígitus *m*; **little finger** dígitus mínimus; **middle finger** dígitus médius; (*as an obscene gesture*) dígitus inpuđficus; **not lift a finger** pressīs mánibus sēd·eō -ēre sēdī; **point the finger at s.o.** dígitum ad āliquem intēnd·ō -ere -ī; **ring finger** dígitus ānulāris; **snap the fingers** dígitis cóncrep·ō -áre -uī
- finger** *tr* (*to handle*) attrēctāre; (*to inform on*) déferō défēre détulī
- finger nail** ungu·is -is *m*
- finger tip** dígitus -ī *m* prīmóris
- finish** cōnfíc·iō -ere cōnfēcī cōnféctus; **finish off** (*to destroy*) per·dō -dere -didī; (*to kill*) occíd·ō -ere -ī occísus; **finish writing** (*a book, etc.*) absól·vō -ere -ī absólūtus; **put the finishing touch to** últimam manum áfferō affēre áttulī (+ *dat*)
- finish line** (*sports*) calx, calcis *f*, crēt·a -ae *f*
- fire** *s* incēndi·um -ī *n*; **be on fire** árd·eō -ēre -uī; **catch fire** ignem concíp·iō -ere concēpī; **put out a fire** incēndium exstíngu·ō -ere exstínxī exstíntus; **set on fire** incēnd·ō -ere -ī incēnsus
- fire** *tr* (*to dismiss*) āmóv·eō -ēre āmóvī āmótus
- fire alarm** sign·um -ī *n* monitórium incēndiī
- fire chief** praeféc·tus -ī *m* vígilum
- fire engine** sīph·ō -ōnis *m*
- firefighter** vig·il -ilis *mf*; sīphōnāri·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
- fireplace** foc·us -ī *m*
- fire station** stāti·ō -ōnis *f* vígilum
- fireworks** spectācul·um -ī *n* pyrotéchnicum
- firm** *adj* firm·us -a -um
- firm** *s* sociēt·ās -ātis *f*
- first** (*in a series, followed by* deinde, postrémō) prīmum; **at first** (ā) prīmō, ínítíō; **first of all** prīmum ómnium, in

p̄m̄is; **for the first time** p̄m̄um; **he was the first to enter** p̄m̄us
introívit

first-class (*masterly*) gráphic·us -a -um;
first-class seat sēd·ēs -is *f* p̄mae
classis

fish *intr* pisc·or -ārī -átus sum; **go fishing** piscátum eō ire ívī *or* īi

fish *s* pisc·is -is *m*; (*as food*) piscát·us
-ūs *m*; **catch fish** piscēs captāre;
teeming with fish piscōs·us -a -um

fisherman piscát·or -ōris *m*

fish food ēsc·a -ae *f* piscária

fish hook hām·us -ī *m*

fishing *s* piscát·us -ūs *m*; **fishing bait**
ēsc·a -ae *f*; **fishing line** lín·um -ī *n*
(piscātórium); **fishing net** rēt·e -is *n*
(piscātórium); **fishing pole** harúnd·ō
-inis *f*; **fishing rod** cálam·us -ī *m*
(piscātórius); **fishing tackle**
instrūmént·um -ī *n* piscātórium

fish market for·um -ī *n* piscárium

fish pond piscín·a -ae *f*

fishy (*smell*) pisculént·us -a -um; (*fig*)
suspiciós·us -a -um

fix *s* **be in a fix** in angústīis vers·or -ārī
-átus sum

fix *tr* (*to repair*) refíc·iō -ere refēcī
refectus; (*time, place, limits*) státu·ō
-ere -uī statútus

flabbergast conturbāre

flabbergasted: we were absolutely flabbergasted nōs omnīnō
conturbábāmur

flag *s* vexíll·um -ī *n*

flag *tr* signō indicāre

flame (*of fire; sweetheart*) flámm·a -ae *f*

flap the wings ālis plaud·ō -ere plausī
plausus

flashlight instrūmént·um -ī *n* micāns

flash of lightning fulg·ur -uris *n*

flashy speciós·us -a -um

flat (*level*) plān·us -a -um; (*dull, stale, e.g., joke*) frígíd·us -a -um; **fall flat**
(*of a speech*) frígēre

flatter blánd·ior -írī -ítus sum (+ *dat*)

flattering blánd·us -a -um

flattery blandíti·a -ae *f*

flatware instrūmént·a -ōrum *npl* escária

flea pūl·ex -icis *m*

flea market for·um -ī *n* rērum vēnālium

flesh car·ō -nis *f*

flight volát·us -ūs *m*

flirt *s* desúlt·or -ōris *m*, vaga puéll·a -ae
f

flirt with subblánd·ior -írī (+ *dat*)

flock (*of birds, sheep, goats*) grex,
gregis *m*

floor (*paved*) pavimént·um -ī *n*, sol·um
-ī *n*; (*story*) tabulát·um -ī *n*,
contignāti·ō -ōnis *f*; **ground floor**
pedeplán·a -ōrum *npl*; **marble floor**
paviméntum (*or solum*) marmóreum;
mosaic floor paviméntum (*or solum*)
tesselátum; **wooden floor** tabulát·um
-ī *n*

floppy disk (*comput*) díscul·us -ī *m*
flexíbilis

fluorescent light túbul·us -ī *m* flōrēscēns

flounder *intr* vólut·or -ārī -átus sum; (*in speech*) haesítāre

flounder *s* (*fish*) pass·er -eris *m*

flour farín·a -ae *f*

flow flu·ō -ere flūxī flūxus; **flow by**
ádlu·ō, adlúere; **flow down from**
dēflúere dē (+ *abl*); **flow into**
inflúere in (+ *acc*); **flow out from**
efflúere ab (+ *abl*); **flow past**
praeterflúere (+ *acc*)

flower (*lit & fig*) flō·s -ris *m*

flower shop tabérn·a -ae *f* flōrális

fluent prōflu·ēns -éntis

flunk: flunk a test cad·ō -ere cécidi
cāsúrus in probātiōne

fluorescent light túbul·us -ī *m* lūcífliuus

flush the toilet lātrínam prōluō prōlúere
prōlūī

flute tíbi·a -ae *f*

fly *s* musc·a -ae *f*; **a fly buzzes** musca
bómbilat

fly *tr* **fly a plane** āēróplanum gubernáre

II *intr* voláre; (*of a passenger*)

āēróplanō vehor, vehī, vectus sum;

fly away āvoláre; **fly off the handle**
cito férv·eō -ére férbuī

fog nébul·a -ae *f*

foggy nebulós·us -a -um

fold plicáre; **fold up** complicáre

folder integūmént·um -ī *n* astrictórium;
(*comput*) coöpércul·um -ī *n*

fond: fond of cúpid·us -a -um (+ *gen*);

be fond of dílig·ō -ere dílĕxī
díléctus, amáre

fondness am·or -óris *m*

font typ·us -ī *m*

food cib·us -ī *m*

food processor máchin·a -ae *f*
coquínária

fool stult·us -ī *m*, stult·a -ae *f*; **make a**

fool of lūdificáre; **make a fool of**
oneself inépt·iō -íre

foolhardy temerári·us -a -um

foolish dēsípi·ēns -éntis

foolishly: act foolishly inépt·iō -íre

foolishness dēsipiénti·a -ae *f*

foot pēs, pedis *m*; **foot of a mountain**
rād·īx -ícis *m* montis; **at the foot of**
the mountain rādíce montis

football (*ball*) pedifóll·is -is *m*; (*game*)

pedifólli·um -ī *n*, pedilúdi·um -ī *n*;

kick the (foot)ball pedifóllem

pulsáre; **pass the (foot)ball to**

pedifóllem trāsmíttere ad (+ *acc*);

play football pedifólle lúdere; **play**

in the first (second) half in parte

príoře (álterā) certáminis lúdere (*see*
Chapter V)

football player pedilús·or -óris *m*

foothills rādíc·ēs -um *mpl* montis

footnote annotáti·ō -ónis *f* īmae páginæ

for (*during a certain period, expressed*

by acc), e.g., **for ten days** decem

diēs; (*to denote the appointment of*

definite time) in (+ *acc*), e.g., **he**

invited her to dinner for the

following day eam ad cēnam vocávit

in pósterum diem; (*because of*) ob (+

acc); (*on behalf of*) prō (+ *abl*);

(*since*) nam; **as for** quod áttinet ad (+

acc); **for all that** nec eō sētius *or*

níhilō sētius; **for nothing** grātis,

grātuítō; (*in vain*) frustrā; **for that**

matter ádeō; **for the last three**

months in ternōs novíssimōs mēnsēs;

for the rest of the year in réliquum

annī tempus; **for these reasons** hīs

dē causīs; **to be for** (*to be in favor*

of) fáv·eō -ére fávī (+ *dat*)

force *s* vīs *f*; **by force** vī; **large force**

magnæ cópiae *fpl*; **small force**

exíguæ cópiae; **be in force** (*of laws*)

vál·eō -ére -uī; **use force** vim

adhíb·eō -ére -uī -itus

force *tr* cōg·ō -ere coéġī coáctus

forearm bracchi·um -ī *n*

forecast praenūntiáti·ō -ónis *f*

(tempestátis)

forefathers átav·ī -órum *mpl*; māiór·ēs
-um *mpl*

forehand (*in tennis*) īct·us -ūs *m*
dirēctus

forehead frōns, frontis *f*

foreign (*of another country*) extérn·us -a
-um; (*coming from abroad*)
peregrín·us -a -um

foreigner peregrín·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

forelady prōcūrātr·īx -ícis *f*

foreman prōcūrāt·or -óris *m*

forest silv·a -ae *f*

forget (about) oblīvīsc·or -ī oblītus sum
(+ *gen*); **forget about it!** éice id ex
ánimō!

fork furcill·a -ae *f*, fuscínul·a -ae *f*

form *s* form·a -ae *f*; (*of a word*) figúr·a
-ae *f*; **the form is either simple, like**
“doctus,” **or compound, like**
“indoctus” figúra est aut simplex, ut
“doctus,” aut compósita, ut
“indoctus”

form *tr* fáciō -ere fēci factus; (*a plan,*
partnership, alliance) ín·eō -íre -īī *or*
-ívī -itus; **form an opinion** iūdícium
fácere; **form the imperative of the**
verb “venire” fac imperātvum
“veníre” verbī

format *s* (*comput*) form·a -ae *f*

format *tr* (*discum*) cōnformāre

formerly ánteā

fort castéll·um -ī *n*

fortunate fortunāt·us -a -um

fortune: tell fortunes haríol·or -ārī -átus
sum

fortuneteller haríol·us -ī *m*, haríol·a
-ae *f*

forum for·um -ī *n*

forward (*mail, e-mail*) déferō défēre
détuli delátus

forward (*sports*) oppugná·tor -tóris *m*
(·trīx -trícis *f*)

foul: commit a foul (*sports*) poenáliter
ag·ō -ere ēgī

fountain pen gráphi·um -ī *n* replébile

fox vulp·ēs -is *f*; **foxes yelp** vulpēs
gánniunt

frame of mind ánim·us -ī *m*; **be in a**
good frame of mind bonō ánimō
esse

frank apért·us -a -um, cándid·us -a -um

frankly apértē, cándidē

frantic phrenétic·us -a -um

fraternity sodálit·ās -átis *f* alumnórum

fraud frau·s -dis *f*

free lib·er -era -erum; **free time** temp·us
-oris *n* líberum, vácuum temp·us
-oris *n*; **have no free time** nihil vacuī
témporis habére; **if you are free** sī
vacábis

free-style swimming natáti·ō -ónis *f*
líbera

freeze *tr* geláre || *intr* gelārī

freezer caps·a -ae *f* frīgorífica

freezing gélid·us -a -um

freezing, freezing mark pūct·um -ī *n*
glaciále; **three degrees above**
freezing trēs gradūs suprā pūctum
glaciále

freight train trām·en -inis *n* onerárium

French Gallofránc·us -a -um

French fries pōm·a -órum *npl*
(terréstria) frīcta

fresh rec·ēns -éntis

freshman tūr·ō -ónis *mf*

Friday di·ēs -ēī *m* Vénēris

- friend** amíc·us -ī *m*, amíc·a -ae *f*; **she's my best friend** amíca summa mea est
- friendly** amíc·us -a -um; **in a friendly way** amícē
- friendship** amícítī·a -ae *f*
- frighten** térr·eō -éře -uī -itus
- fringe** fimbri·a -ae *f*
- frivolous** frívol·us -a -um
- frog** rán·a -ae *f*; **frogs croak** rānæ coáxant
- from** *prep* ab or dē or ex (+ *abl*); **from a to z** ab áciā et acū; **from here** hinc; **from there** illinc; **from where** unde
- front** *adj* prī·or -or -us; (*teeth, feet*) prīmór·is -is -e
- front** *s* frōn·s -tis *f*; **in front** ā fronte; **in front of** (*position*) ante (+ *acc*), prō (+ *abl*); (*in the presence of*) coram (+ *abl*); **front of the classroom** prior par·s -tis *f* conclávis scholáris; **front of the house** frōns aédium
- front door** antíc·um -ī *n*
- front hall** vēstíbul·um -ī *n*, fauc·ēs -ium *tpl*
- front seat** sēd·ēs -is *f* antérieur
- frontier** fīn·is -is *m*, términ·us -ī *m*
- frost** pruín·a -ae *f*
- frosty** pruínós·us -a -um
- frozen** rig·ēns -éntis; (*food*) gelát·us -a -um
- fruit** pōm·a -órum *npl*
- fruit juice** sūc·us -ī *m* pōmáriu
- fruit tree** arb·or -oris *f* pōmífera
- frustrate** frūstr·or -árī -átus *sum*
- frustration** frūstráti·ō -ónis *f*
- fry** frīg·ō -ere frīxī frīctus
- frying pan** sartág·ō -inis *f*
- fuel** mātéri·a -ae *f* prōpulsória
- full (of)** plēn·us -a -um (+ *abl* or *gen*); **full moon** plēnilūni·um -ī *n*, plēna lūn·a -ae *f*
- full-grown** adúlt·us -a -um
- full-length** (*dress*) tálār·is -is -e
- fully** *adv* fúnditus
- fun** ioc·us -ī *m*; **he always makes fun of me** (*or pokes fun at me*) iste mē semper ēlūdít (*or inrīdet*); **she said it for fun** id per iocum dīxit; **it's no fun if you ...** nōn iūcúndum est sī tū ... ; **it was pure fun** hilária mera erat; **have fun** sē oblectáre
- function** *s* (*gram*) poténti·a -ae *f*
- funeral** fūn·us -eris *n*; **attend** (*or go to*) a funeral in fūnus veníre
- funnel** infundíbul·um -ī *n*
- funny** iocós·us -a -um, rīdícul·us -a -um; (*humorous*) fēstív·us -a -um
- fur coat** amícul·um -ī *n* pellícium
- fur jacket** iacc·a -ae *f* pellícia
- furlough** commeát·us -ūs *m*; **be on furlough** in commeátu esse; **end of the furlough** commeátūs di·ēs -éī *m*; **get a furlough** commeátum impetráre
- furnish a home (an apartment)** domum (*diaétam*) supelléctile ínstru·ō -ere ínstrúxī ínstrúctus
- furniture** supéll·ex -éctilis *f*; **piece of furniture** supelléctilis par·s -tis *f*
- future** futúr·a -órum *npl*, temp·us -oris *n* futúrum; **for the future** in pósterum; **in the future** posthāc

G

gale procéll·a -ae *f*gallon gall·on -ónis *m*

gallop curs·us -ūs *m* citātus

gallop *intr* quadrupedāre

gamble *tr* **gamble away** in āleā per·dō
-dere -didī -ditus **||** *intr* āleā lūdere

gambler lūs·or -ōris *m*, aleā·tor -tōris *m*,
aleātr·īx -īcis *f*

game (*play*) lūd·us -ī *m*, lūs·us -ūs *m*;
(*prey*) praed·a -ae *f*, vēnātī·ō -ōnis *f*;
play a game lūsum lūdere

game show spectācul·um -ī *n* lūsōrium

gang man·us -ūs *f*, grex, gregis *m*

gangster, gang member praed·ō -ōnis
m gregālis

garage autocīnētī (autocīnētōrum)
receptācul·um -ī *n*; (*repair garage*)
officīn·a -ae *f* reparātōria

garbage in, garbage out (*comput*) ex
quisquīlis fiunt quisquīliae

garden hort·us -ī *m* rūsticus; **vegetable**
garden hortus (h)olitōrius

garden hose tūbul·us -ī *m* hōrticus

gardener hortulān·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

garlic āli·um -ī *n*, ālli·um -ī *n*

garrison praesīdi·um -ī *n*

garter periscelis, periscēlidis *f*

gas benzīn·um -ī *n*, gāsi·um -ī *n*; **get**
gas benzīnum comparāre; **step on**
the gas pedāle benzīnārium dēprim·ō
-ere dēprēssi; **step on the gas!** (*fig*)
matūrā (*pl*: matūrāte)

gas pedal pedāl·e -is *n* benzīnārium

gas pump āntli·a -ae *f* benzīnāria

gas station stāti·ō -ōnis *f* benzīnāria

gas stove fōcul·us -ī *m* gāseus

gas tank immissāri·um -ī *n* benzīnārium

gate port·a -ae *f*; (*at airport*) ādit·us -ūs
m

gather *tr* cog·ō -ere coēgī coāctus **||** *intr*
cōngreg·or -ārī -ātus sum, convenīre

gearshift iūcti·ō -ōnis *f* vēlōcītātum

gee! hercle! *or* édepol!

geez! eu édepol! *or* eu hércle!

gender *s* gen·us -eris *n*

general dux, ducis *m*, imperāt·or -ōris *m*

general: in general ferē, vulgō

generally plērūmque

general store pantopōli·um -ī *n*

generosity liberālīt·ās -ātis *f*

generous benēfic·us -a -um, liberāl·is
-is -e

genitals genitāl·ia -ium *npl*; (*female*)
muliēbr·ia -ium *npl*

genitive *s* genitīv·us -ī *m*, cās·us -ūs *m*
genitīvus

gentle clēm·ēns -ēntis, mīt·is -is -e

geography geōgrāphi·a -ae *f*

German *adj* Germānic·us -a -um

German *s* Germān·us -ī *m*, Germān·a
-ae *f*

Germany Germāni·a -ae *f*

gerund *s* gerūndi·um -ī *n*

gerundive *s* gerundīv·um -ī *n*

get *tr* (*to acquire*) nancīsc·or -ī nactus
sum; (*to receive*) accipere; (*by*
asking) impetrāre; (*by purchase*)
parāre, comparāre; (*understand*)
tēn·eō -ēre -uī; **get back** répet·ō -ere
-īvī -ītus; recíp·iō -ere recēpī
recēptus; **get out** (*bring forth*)
prōm·ō -ere -psī -ptus; **get (the**
business) over and done with
(negōtium) absōlv·ō -ere -ī absolūtus;
I can't get him to talk nōn queō
ōrāre ut loquātur; **now get this** nunc
cognōsce rem **||** *intr* (*become*) fiō
fierī factus sum; **get along with**

concorditer congru·ō -ere -uī cum (+ *abl*); **get along well with each other** (or **one another**) concorditer inter sē congruere; **I get along well with them** bene mihi cōvenit cum illīs; **get away** (*escape*) effūg·iō -ere effūgī effūgītūrus; **get anywhere** (*accomplish s.th.*) āliquid cōsequ·or -ī cōsecūtus sum; **get carried away by or with** ēfferor efferrī ēlātus sum (+ *abl*); **get even with s.o. for** ulcisc·or -ī ultus sum āliquem quod (+ *indic*); **get off** (*a bus, plane, ship, train*) ēgrēdiōr ēgredi ēgrēssus sum dē (+ *abl*); **get on** (*a bus, plane, ship, train*) īncēnd·ō -ere -ī in (+ *acc*); **get out of my way!** dē viā meā dēcēde (*pl*: dēcēdite!); **get over** (*grief, anger, etc.*) superāre; **get rid of: I want to get rid of that pest** istum molēstum āmolrī volō; **get somewhere** āliquid cōsequ·or -ī cōsecūtus sum; **get to** (*a place*) pervēn·iō -īre pervēnī pervēntum ad or in (+ *acc*); **get up** (*rise*) surg·ō -ere surrēxī; (*said of several*) cōsūrgere

ghost umbr·a -ae *f*; **give up the ghost** ānimam ēbull·iō -īre

Gibraltar Calp·ē -ēs *f*; **strait of Gibraltar** Gādītānum frēt·um -ī *n*

gift dōn·um -ī *n*, mūn·us -eris *n*, mūnūscul·um -ī *n*; **natural gift** dōs, dōtis *m* (nātūrae)

gifted ingeniōs·us -a -um

gills brānchi·ae -ārum *mpl*

gin vīn·um -ī *n* iūnīperum

gingerbread līb·um -ī *n* mellītum

giraffe camēlopārdal·is -is *f*

girdle stropp·ī -ōrum *mpl*

girlfriend amīcul·a -ae *f*

gist: the gist of what he said was this: ... hanc in sentēntiam dīxit: ...; **this**

is the gist of my advice haec praecēptī meī summa est

give *tr* dō dare dedī datus; (*as a gift*) dōnāre; **give it here!** cedo (*pl*: cette!) [*an old imperative; can take a direct object*]; **give it to 'em!** ādhibē! (*pl*: adhībete!); **give the plural form of gaudium** dā (*or* dīc) figūram plūrālem “gaūdium” nōminis

glad laet·us -a -um; **be glad** laet·or -ārī -ātus sum; **I am glad to hear that** libēnter aūdīō (*w. acc + inf*)

gladly libēnter

glass (*for drinking*) pōcul·um -ī *n* vītream; hýal·us -ī *m*; **glasses** (*eyeglasses*) perspicīll·a -ōrum *npl*; **wear glasses** perspicīllis ūt·or -ī ūsus sum; **wine glass** hýalus vīnārius

glider anemóplan·um -ī *n*, vélvol·um -ī *n*

glisten nít·eō -ēre -uī

gloat over exsultāre (+ *abl*)

globe glob·us -ī *m* terrārum

gloom maestīti·a -ae *f*

gloomy maest·us -a -um

glove digitābul·um -ī *n*

glue glūt·en -inis *n*

glue glūtīnāre; **glue together** congglūtīnāre

glued: I'm glued to my books in librīs haēr·eō -ēre haesī

glum maest·us -a -um, trist·is -is -e; **why so glum?** quid tū es tam tristis?

glutton hēllu·ō -ōnis *m*; **be a glutton** hēllu·or -ārī

gluttonous ed·āx -ācis

gluttony edācit·ās -ātis *f*

gnat cul·ex -icis *m*

go eō ire īvī *or* īi itum, sē āgere; **go and see whether he has come home or not** abī, vīse redierītne an nōndum domum; **go around** (*of a rumor*) pervagārī; **go by** (*to pass*) praeter·eō -īre -īvī; (*the rules*) servāre; **go down** (*fever*) conquiēscit -ere conquiēvit; (*swelling*) sē summīttit -ere summīsit; (*prices*) laxārī; (*sun*) occīdere; (*ship*) merg·or -ī mersus sum; **go for** (*fetch a person*) addūc·ō -ere addūxī addūctus; (*fetch a thing*) ādferō adfēre āttulī; **at what price do these items go for?** quibus prētiis hae mercēs vēneunt?; **I don't go for** (*don't like*) nīl mor·or -ārī -ātus sum (+ *acc*); **I don't go in for sports** lūdīs [*dat*] nōn stūd·eō -ēre -uī; **go into a matter** rem īneō īnīre īnīī *or* īnīvī; **go on** prōcēd·ō -ere prōcēssī; **go on!** perge (*pl: pērgite*) porrō!; **go to bed** dormītum (*or* cūbitum) [*supine*] eō ire īi *or* īvī itum; **go to see** vīs·ō -ere -ī; **go to the aid of** succurr·ō -ere -ī (+ *dat*); **go on: what's going on?** quid negōtī est? *or* quid āgitur?; **what's going on here?** quid reī hīc est?; **go well: things are going fairly well** āgitur satis; **please, let me go!** mitte mē sīs!

goal port·a -ae *f*; **score a goal** (*in soccer*) follem in portam pede pulsāre

goal keeper portāri·us -ī *m*, portāri·a -ae *f*

goal line calx, calcis *f*, crēt·a -ae *f*

goal post pāl·us -ī *m* portae

goat cap·er -rī *m*, capr·a -ae *f*; **goats** bleat caprī bālant

God bless you! tibi dī bene fāciant; (*to s.o. sneezing*) salvē! *or* salūtem!

going: good going! bene factum!

gold, golden aūre·us -a -um

goldfish híppur·us -ī *m*

goldmine aurīfodīn·a -ae *f*

golf pilamālle·us -ī *m*; **play golf** pilamālleō lūdere (*see Chapter V*)

golf club clāv·a -ae *f*; (*driver*) clāva agitātōria; (*iron*) clāva férrea

golf course pilamālleī camp·us -ī *m*

golfer pilamālleī lūs·or -ōris *m*, lūstr·īx -īcis *f*

golf green āre·a -ae *f* víridis

golf hole scrobícūl·us -ī *m*

golf tee grūmul·us -ī *m*

goner: geez, I'm a goner pérīī hercle; hercle, nullus (-a) sum

good adj (*also morally*) bon·us -a -um; (*esp. moral*) prob·us -a -um; (*advice*) rēct·us -a -um; (*weather*) serēn·us -a -um; **be good for** prōsum prōdesse prōfuī prōfutūrus (+ *dat*); **good for you!** (*said in praise*) macte virtūte estō!; **good, good!** euge, euge!; **good job!** bene (*or* rēctē) factum!; **good Lord!** O dī bonī!; **good luck to you!** tibi fēlīciter!; **good thinking!** bene putās!; **how long is that good for?** quam diū valēbit?; **you're a good fellow** frūgī [*indecl*] es; **very good!** (*when agreeing with s.o.*) óptimē vērō!

good s: do s.o. good álicui prōsum prōdesse prōfuī prōfutūrus

good and proper plānē et probē

goodbye valē (*pl: valēte*); bene valē (*pl: bene valēte*); **goodbye and good luck** bene valē et bene tibi sit

good-for-nothing adj nēquam [*indecl*]

good-for-nothing s: be a good-for-nothing nihil hómīnis esse

good-hearted benévōl·ēns -éntis, benévōl·us -a -um

- good-natured** fácil·is -is -e
- goodness** (*integrity, good behavior*)
bónit·ās -átis *f*
- goodwill** benevolénti·a -ae *f*
- goose** ans·er -eris *m*; **geese cackle**
ánsērēs gíngriunt (*see bird*)
- gossip** *intr* gárr·iō -íre
- gossip** *s* (*talk*) rŭm·or -óris *m* (*esp. pl.*);
(*person*) fāmigerá·tor -tóris *m* (·trīx
-trícis *f*)
- govern** (*a province*) praesíd·eō -ére
praesédī (+ *acc or dat*); **govern the
country** rem públicam gubernáre
- government** régim·en -inis *n*; rēs *f*
pública (*gen: reī públicae*) [*also
written as one word*]
- governor** praes·es -idis *mf*, guberná·tor
-tóris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*); (*of a minor
Roman province*) prōcūrát·or -óris *m*
- gown** táláris vest·is -is *f*; (*Roman*) stol·a
-ae *f*
- grade** *s* grad·us -ūs *m*, class·is -is *f*;
(*mark or letter for performance*)
not·a -ae *f*
- grade** *tr* (*papers*) notáre; (*evaluate
student's work*) aestimáre
- graduate** *intr* diplóma adípisc·or -ī
adéptus sum, gradūs suscíp·iō -ere
suscépī
- graduate** *s* graduát·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
- graft** ámbit·us -ūs *m*
- grain** frŭmént·um -ī *n*; (*a grain*)
grān·um -ī *n*; **with a grain of salt**
cum grānō salis
- grammar** *s* grammátic·a -ae *f*, ar·s -tis *f*
grammática; (*book*) ars, artis *f*
- grandchild** nep·ōs -ótis *m*, nept·is -is *f*
- granddaughter** nept·is -is *f*
- grandfather** av·us -ī *m*
- grandmother** ávi·a -ae *f*
- grand piano** clāvícórdi·um -ī *n* ālífórme
- grandson** nep·ōs -ótis *m*
- granted** estō; **granted, he himself is
nothing** estō, ipse nihil est
- grape** ūv·a -ae *f*; **a bunch of grapes** ūva
- grapevine** vīt·is -is *f*
- grasshopper** grill·us -ī *m*; **grasshoppers
chirp** grillī fritínniunt
- grateful: I am deeply grateful to you**
tibi grátiam hábeō maxímam
- gratis** grātis
- grave** *adj* grav·is -is -e
- grave** *s* sepúlcr·um -ī *n*
- gravy** iūs, iūris *n*
- gravy bowl** váscul·um -ī *n* iūris
- grease** ung·ō (unguō) úngere ūnxī
ūnctus
- grease job** ūncti·ō -ónis *f* autocínēti
- great** magn·us -a -um; **that's great!**
bene hercle factum!
- great!** Eu!; papae! (*expression of
surprise and delight*)
- greater** mǎi·or -or -us
- greatest** máxim·us -a -um
- great-grandfather** próav·us -ī *m*
- great-grandmother** proávi·a -ae *f*
- great-grandson** prónep·ōs -ótis *m*
- great-uncle** (*mother's side*) avúncul·us
-ī *m* mǎior; (*father's side*) pátru·us -ī
m mǎior
- Greece** Graéci·a -ae *f*
- greed** avāríti·a -ae *f*
- greedy** avárus -a -um; **greedy for** avárus
(+ *gen*)
- Greek** *adj* Graec·us -a -um

Greek *s* Graec·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*); **know**
(**speak, write**) **Greek** Graecē scīre
(loquī, scrībere)

green vírid·is -is -e; (*unripe*) crūd·us -a
-um

green pepper piperít·is -idis *f*

gregarious (*sociable*) congregábil·is -is
-e

grief maer·or -óris *m*; **feel grief**
condolēsc·ō -ere condólui

grill *s* crátícul·a -ae *f*

grill *tr* super crátículam assáre

groan *s* gémit·us -ūs *m*

groan *intr* gem·ō -ere -uī -itum

grocer macellári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

groceries obsóni·a -órum *npl*, (*or*)
obsóni·um -ī *n*

grocery store macéll·um -ī *n*, tabérn·a
-ae *f* alimentária

groin ingu·en -inis *n*

ground beef búbul·a -ae *f* concísa

ground floor pedeplán·a -órum *npl*

grow *intr* **grow old** senēsc·ō -ere sénuī;
grow up iuvenēsc·ō -ere iúveni

growl (*of a dog*) ring·or -ī rictus sum

grown-up *adj* adúlt·us -a -um

grumble increpáre

grumbling increpáti·ō -ónis *f*

grunt *intr* (*of a pig, bear*) grúnn·iō -íre
-ívi *or* -iī -ítum

grunt *s* (*of a pig, bear*) grunnít·us -ūs *m*

guard *s* cust·ōs -ódis *mf*

guard *tr* custód·iō -íre -ívi *or* -iī -ítus

guest hosp·ēs -ítis *mf*

guest room hospíti·um -ī *n*

guidance counselor cōnsiliát·or -óris *m*
académicus, cōnsiliátr·ix -ícis *f*
académica

guide *s* dux, ducis *mf*

guide *tr* dūc·ō -ere dūxī ductus

guidebook lib·er -rī *m* periēgéticus

guilty re·us -a -um, sōn·s -tis; **be found**
guilty nóxius dñiudicārī; **be guilty** in
culpā esse; **guilty of** nóxi·us -a -um
(+ *abl or gen*); **punish the guilty**
poenam dē sóntibus éxig·ō -ere exégi
exáctus; **the guilty one** sōn·s -tis *mf*

guitar cíthar·a -ae *f* Hispánica

gulf sin·us -ūs *m*

gullible crédul·us -a -um

gum (*of the mouth*) gingí·v·a -ae *f*;
(*chewing gum*) cumm·is -is *f*
masticábilis

gun sclopét·um -ī *n*; **fire a gun**
sclopētáre

gym gymnási·um -ī *n* (*see Chapter V*)

gym instructor exercitát·or -óris *m*,
exercitátr·ix -ícis *f*

gymnasium gymnási·um -ī *n*

gymnastic gymnástic·us -a -um

gym shoes cálce·ī -órum *mpl* gýmnici

H

ha-ha-ha! hahaha!

habit cōnsuetúd·ō -inis *f*

hacker plagiári·us -ī (*or* effrāctári·us -ī)
m electrónicus

haddock gad·us -ī *m*

hail *impers v* grándin·at -áre

hail *s* grand·ō -inis *f*

hailstorm grándin·ēs -um *fpl*

hair (*a single hair or hair collectively*)
capíll·us -ī *m*; (*hair in locks*) crīn·is

- is *m*; com·a *ae f*; (*long, flowing hair*) caesári·ēs -ēī *f*; **layer the hair** comam in gradūs frang·ō -ere frēgī frāctus; **long hair** (*left uncut*) capíllī prōmíssī; **split hairs** cavillári
- hairbrush** pēnícūl·us -ī *m* comātórius
- haircut** tōns·us -ūs *m*, tōnsúr·a -ae *f*; **get a haircut** fácere ut capillus tondeátur
- hairdo** cōmpt·us -ūs *m*
- hairdresser** ōrnátr·īx -ícis *f*, tónstr·īx -ícis *f*
- hair drier** favōni·us -ī *m*
- hairpin** ac·us -ūs *f* comātória
- hair style** cōmpt·us -ūs *m*
- hale and hearty** salv·us et válid·us -a -um
- half-time** (*sports*) dīmídium temp·us -oris *n*
- hall** (*large room*) oec·us -ī *m*
- hallway** ambulácr·um -ī *n*
- halter** capístr·um -ī *n*
- ham** pern·a -ae *f*; **smoked ham** perna fūmósa
- hamburger** búbul·a -ae *f* concísa
- hammer** málle·us -ī *m*
- ham sandwich** pastíll·um -ī *n* perná fartum
- hamstring** popl·es -itis *m*
- hand** *s* man·us -ūs *f*; (*of a clock*) ind·ex -icis *m*; **have one's hands full** sátag·ō -ere satégī; **hands off!** aufer manūs!; **on the other hand** contrā; **sit on one's hands** (*doing nothing*) compréssīs mánibus séd·eō -ére sēdī
- hand** *tr* **hand in** trā·dō -dere -didī -ditus; **hand me that food** pórrige mihi illum cibum; **hand it over!** cedo (*pl: cete*)! [*an old imperative; can take a direct object*]; **hand out** distríbu·ō -ere -ī distribútus; **hand out the papers** chartās distribúere
- handbag** bulg·a -ae *f*; (*of leather*) pérul·a -ae *f* coriácea
- hand brake** sufflám·en -inis *n* manuále
- handcuff** *tr* mánicās iníc·iō -ere iniécī iniéctus (+ *dat*)
- handcuffs** *spl* mánic·ae -árūm *fpl*
- handkerchief** mūcínni·um -ī *n*, sūdári·um -ī *n*
- handle** *s* manúbri·um -ī *n*
- handle** *tr* tractáre
- handlebars** manúbri·um -ī *n*
- hand luggage** sarcínul·ae -árūm *fpl* manuálēs
- handsome** pulch·er -ra -rum, speciós·us -a -um
- handwriting** chírógraph·um -ī *n*
- hang; hang around with** frequēns adesse únā cum (+ *abl*); **hang down** dépénd·eō -ére -ī; **hang out with** mor·or -árī -átus sum cum (+ *abl*); **you can just go and hang yourself!** ī dírecte in máximam malam crúcem!
- hangar** receptácul·um -ī *n* aēróplanī
- happen** fīō fīerī factus sum, áccid·ō -ere -ī; **happen to** contíng·ō -ere cóntigī (+ *dat*); **I just happened to spot him** forte eum cōspéxī; **what happened?** quid factum est?
- happiness** beātítūd·ō -inis *f*
- happy** beát·us -a -um, laet·us -a -um
- harbor** port·us -ūs *m*
- hard** (*to the touch*) dūr·us -a -um; (*difficult*) diffícil·is -is -e (*with abl of the supine*); **hard on** inimíc·us -a -um (+ *dat*), dūr·us -a -um in (+ *acc*); **hard work** op·us -eris *n* árduum; **hard to please** diffícil·is -is -e; **he was hard on me** in mē dūrus erat;

it's hard to do, but I'll try just the same difficile factū est, sed conābor nīhīlō sētius; **take this hard** hoc dūrum accīpere, hoc aegrē ferō ferre tulī

hardback or hardcover book lib·er -rī
m linō contēctus

hard drive (*comput*) dūra stāti·ō -ōnis *f*

hardware ferrāmēt·a -ōrum *npl*;
(*comput*) apparāt·us -ūs *m*
computātrālis

hardware store tabérn·a -ae *f* ferrāria

hard-working labōriōs·us -a -um

harmonica harmōnic·a -ae *f* inflātīl·is

harp harp·a -ae *f*; **play the harp** harpā
lūdere

harp on the same theme cantilēnam
eāndem can·ō -ere cēcinī

harsh sevēr·us -a -um; **harsh toward**
dūr·us -a -um in (+ *acc*)

harshness dūrīti·a -ae *f*

harvest *s* (*reaping*) mess·is -is *f*; (*the
crops themselves*) prōvēnt·us -ūs *m*

harvest *tr* met·ō -ere messuī mēssus

hat pétas·us -ī *m* (*with broad brim*)

hate *s* ódi·um -ī *n*

hate *tr* odī odísse (*defect v*)

hateful odíōs·us -a -um

hatred (of, toward) ódi·um -ī *n* (in +
acc)

haughty ēlāt·us -a -um, supérb·us -a
-um

haul off to prison rāp·iō -ere -uī -tus in
cárcerem

have (*possess*) háb·eō -ēre -uī -itus;
(*e.g., dinner*) sūm·ō -ere -psī -ptus;
(*a sickness*) labōrāre (+ *abl*); **have a
tough time of it** valdē labōrāre; **have
it in for s.o.** álicui perículum

dēnuntiāre; **have it your way!** estō ut
lubet!; **have to do: what do you
have to do with her?** quid reī tibi est
cum illā?; **have to say: this I have to
say** haec hábeō dīcere.

hawk accípi·ter -tris *m*; **hawks caw**
accípitrēs crócitant (*see* **bird**)

hay fēn·um -ī *n*; **make hay** fēnum sec·ō
-āre -uī -tus; **make hay while the
sun shines!** occāsiónem ampléctere!;
carpe diem!

hayloft fēnīl·ia -ium *npl*

hazelnut avellán·a -ae *f*

head *s* cap·ut -itis *n*; **back of the head**
occípiti·um -ī *n*; **be a head taller
than** tōtō vértice suprā (+ *acc*) esse;
come into one's head in buccam
venīre [*lit: come into one's cheek*];
from head to foot ā cápíte ūsque ad
calcem; **head of state** rēct·or -ōris *m*
cívitatís; **put heads together** cápita
cónferō cōnférre cóntulī; **top of the
head** vert·ex -icis *m*

head *tr* (*a committee, etc.*) prae·sum
-esse -fuī (+ *dat*) || *intr* **head east** ad
oriéntem tend·ō -ere tetēndī; **head
for** pet·ō -ere -fvī -ítus

head-first prae·ceps -cípitis

heading titul·us -ī *m*

headlight (autocīnētī) luminár·e -is *n*;
**turn on (turn off) the bright (dim)
lights** lūminária praecandéntia
(candéntia) accēnd·ō -ere -ī
(exstingu·ō -ere exstínxī)

headmaster scholae rēct·or -ōris *m*

headmistress scholae rēctr·ix -ícis *f*

headquarters (*mil*) praetóri·um -ī *n*; (*of
a business*) sēd·ēs -is *f*

headway: make headway prōfíc·iō -ere
prōfēcī; **make no headway** nihil
prōficere; **we are making some
headway, I hope** ut spērō,

prōfīcimus aliquántum

heal *tr* sánāre || *intr* sánēsc·ō -ere

health (*good or bad*) valētūd·ō -inis *f*;

bad health advērsa (*or mala, gravis, infirma*) valētūdō; **bad health**

suddenly hit me mala valētūdō mē repēntē invāsīt; **for reasons of bad**

health valētūdinis causā; **good**

health bona (*or firma, cōmmoda, prōspera*) valētūdō; **here's to your**

health! tibi salūtem propīnō!; bene

tibi!; **in sound health** vālid·us -a

-um

healthy sán·us -a -um, salv·us -a -um

hear aúd·iō -īre -īvi *or* -īi -ītus; (*to find*

out about) cognōsc·ō -ere cognōvī cōgnitus

hearing (*sense*) audīt·us -ūs *m*; (*legal*)

cognīti·ō -ōnis *f*; **hold a hearing**

cognitiōnem habēre

heart cor, cordis *n*; **from the heart** ex

ánimō; **heart and soul** tōtō pēctore;

my heart was in my throat ánima

mihi in nāsō erat [*lit: my breath was in my nose*]; **take to heart** cordī

habēre

heartache cūr·a -ae *f*, cordóli·um -ī *n*

heaven: for heaven's sake óbsecrō [*lit:*

I pray]; **heavens!** édepol! **heavens**

above! O dī immortālēs!; **heaven**

forbid! dī mélius faxint!; **I'm in**

seventh heaven dígitō caelum

attíngō; **in heaven's name!** per

fortúnās!

heck: give s.o. heck áliquem verbīs

malīs obiürgáre; **heck no!** mínimē

vērō hercle!; **who the heck are**

they? quī, malum, istī sunt?

heehaw *intr* rud·ō -ere -īvi -ītum

heehaw *s* rudīt·us -ūs *m*

heel cal·x -cis *f*; (*of a shoe*) fulmēt·um

-ī *n*; (*slang*) nequam hom·ō -inis *mf*;

take to one's heels sē conícere in

pedēs

heifer iuvēnc·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

height: to be of average height statūrā

prope iūstā esse

helicopter helicópter·um -ī *n*; **be taken**

by helicopter to per helicópterum

tráns·vehor -vehī -véctus sum; **fly a**

helicopter helicópterum gubernáre;

fly in a helicopter helicópterō vehor

vehī vectus sum

hell: go to hell! ī (*pl: ite*) in malam

crucem!; **I'm going to catch hell**

habébō convícius; **where the hell**

are you? úbinam, malum, es?

hello! salvē! (*pl: salvēte!*); salvus (-a)

sīs! (*pl: salvī (-ae) sītis!*); **hello**

there! eho istic!; **Terentia says hello**

to you Terentia tibi salūtem dicit

helmet (*of leather*) gále·a -ae *f*; (*of*

metal) cass·is -idis *f*

help *s* auxili·um -ī *n*

help *tr* iuv·ō -āre iūvī iūtus, succurr·ō

-ere -ī succúrsum (+ *dat*)

helpless in·ops -opis

helplessness inópi·a -ae *f*

hem limb·us -ī *m*

hem *interj* ehem!

hen gallín·a -ae *f* (*see* **bird**)

henpecked uxórius

herd (*of cattle, swine*) grex, gregis *m*;

(*of oxen and large animals*)

armēt·um -ī *n*

here hīc; **here and now** dēpraesentiárum

[*adv*]; **here I am!** Ecce mē! **here**

with it! cedo! (*pl: cete!*) (*can take*

an accusative object, e.g.: Here with

that book! cedo istum librum!)

heroin heroín·um -ī *n*; **use heroin**

heroínō ūtor ūtī ūsus sum

hey heus!; **hey you, I'm talking to you!**
heus tū, tibi ego dīcō!

hi! salvē (*pl.*: salvēte)

hide *s* cōri·um -ī *n*; **be after s.o.'s hide**
cōrium alicūius pet·ō -ere petīvī; **risk**
one's own hide cōriō suō lūdere;
save one's own hide cōrium servāre

high *adj* alt·us -a -um; (*rank*) ampl·us -a
-um; (*opinion, price*) magn·us -a
-um; (*fever*) ārd·ēns -ēntis; (*note*)
acūt·us -a -um; (*on alcohol, drugs*)
ēbri·us -a -um; **be high on drugs** ā
medicāmētīs psychotrōpicīs
inebriāre; **high blood pressure**
hypertōni·a -ae *f*

high *adv* to aim **high** magnās rēs
āppet·ō -ere -īvī

high jump salt·us -ūs *m* in altum

highrise (building) multizōni·um -ī *n*

high school schol·a -ae *f* superior

highway strāt·a -ae *f* autocinētica

hijack *tr* vī abdūcere

hijacking abdūcti·ō -ōnis *f* āeria

hike *intr* ambulāre

hike *s* ambulāti·ō -ōnis *f*

hill coll·is -is *m*

hilly clīvōs·us -a -um

hip cox·a -ae *f*, coxēnd·ix -icis *f*

hippie anticōnformīst·a -ae *m* (·ria
-riae *f*)

hippopotamus hippopotam·us -ī *m*

hiss *intr* sībilāre

hiss *s* sībil·us -ī *m*

historian histōric·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

history histōri·a -ae *f*

hit *s* (*in baseball*) puls·us -ūs *m*

hit *tr* (*to strike*) īc·ō -ere -ī ictus; (*a*
baseball) pulsāre; **did you hit it off**

with them? concordābāsne cum
illis?; **hit s.o. for a loan** ferīre
āliquem mūtuō argētō

hmmm *interj* hem

hoarse rauc·us -a -um

hockey lūd·us -ī *m* hoccēius, alsūlēgi·a
-ae *f*; **field hockey** lūdus hoccēius
campēstris; **ice hockey** lūdus
hoccēius glaciālis; **play hockey**
hoccēiō (*or* alsūlēgiā) lūdere (*see*
Chapter V)

hockey player alsūlēgāri·us -ī *m* (·a
-ae *f*)

hockey puck disc·us -ī *m*

hockey stick ped·um -ī *n*, fērul·a -ae *f*
repānda

hog sūs, suis *mf*; **hogs oink** sūēs
grūnniunt

hogwash: that's hogwash! quisquīlia!

hold *tr* tēn·eō -ēre -uī -tus; (*contain*)
cāp·iō -ere cēpī; (*an office*) ger·ō -ere
gessī gestus; (*a meeting*) habēre;
hold it! (*stop!*) astā!; **hold it please!**
manē obsēcrō!; **hold s.o. in high**
(highest) esteem āliquem magnī
(māximī) fācere; **hold up** (*detain*)
dētīn·eō -ēre -uī, impēd·iō -īre -īvī
-ītus; **what held you up?** quid tē
impedīvit? **||** *intr* **hold out** dūrāre

hole in the wall (*shabby lodgings*)
stābul·um -ī *n*

holiday fēri·ae -ārum *fpl*; (*from school*)
di·ēs -ēī *m* fēriātus; **today is a**
holiday hōdiē fēriās āgimus

holiness sānctit·ās -ātis *f*

holy sānct·us -a -um

home dom·us -ūs *f*; (*direction*) domum;
at home domī; **at your home** domī
tuae, apud tē; **from home** domō; **to**
my home ad mē

- home appliance** īnstrūmēt·um -ī *n*
domesticum ēlēctricum; **home appliances** ēlēctrica domūs ūtēnsīl·ia -ium *npl*
- home front: on the home front and on the war front** domī et milītiaē
- homely** īnspēcīōs·us -a -um
- home page** (*comput*) pāgin·a -ae *f*
domēstica
- home plate** bas·is -is *f* summa (*or* domēstica)
- home run** circūit·us -ūs *m* básium; **hit a home run** circūitum básium fácere
- homesick: be homesick** ex dēsīdēriō labōrāre; **I am homesick for** mē dēsīdērium tenet (+ *gen*)
- homework** pēns·um -ī *n* domēsticum; (*written*) praescrīpt·um -ī *n* domēsticum
- homicide** homicīdi·um -ī *n*
- honest** prob·us -a -um; (*speaking the truth*) vēr·āx -ācis; **honest to God** prō deum fidem
- honestly: tell me honestly** dīc bonā fide
- honey** mel, mellis *n*; (*terms of endearment*) melīll·a -ae *f*, mel *n*, mēlcul·um -ī *n*
- honor** honōrāre
- honorable** honést·us -a -um
- honorably** honéstē
- hood** plóxen·um -ī *n*
- hoodlum** grassát·or -óris *m*
- hoof** úngul·a -ae *f*
- hooky: play hooky** ĩnsciīs paréntibus ā scholā abesse
- hoot** *intr* (*of owls*) būbulāre
- hoot** *s* **I don't give a hoot about him** eum floccī nōn faciō
- hope** *intr* spērāre; **hope that** spērāre (+ *acc & inf*)
- hope** *s* spēs, speī *f*; **give up hope** dēspērāre
- hopefully** ut spērō [*as I hope*]
- hopeless** dēspērāt·us -a -um
- hopper** lābéll·um -ī *n* íntimum, sell·a -ae *f* familiárica
- horizontal bar** ferr·um -ī *n* trānsvērsum
- hormone** hormón·um -ī *n*
- horn** búcin·a -ae *f*; **blow the horn** búcinā clang·ō -ere
- hornet** crābr·ō -ónis *m*
- horrible** horríbil·is -is -e
- hors d'euveres** prōmúls·is -idis *f*
- horse** equ·us -ī *m*
- horsefly** tabán·us -ī *m*; **horseflies buzz** tabānī bómbilant
- hose** (*for watering*) túbul·us -ī *m*; **rubber hose** túbulus cúmmeus
- hospital** valētūdínāri·um -ī *n*
- hostage** obs·es -idis *mf*
- hostess** hóspt·a -ae *f*
- hot** (*of a person, sun, water, bath, day*) cálid·us -a -um (*opp*: frígíd·us -a -um); (*boiling hot*) fērvíd·us -a -um; (*sultry*) aestuós·us -a -um; (*spicey*) acer, acris, acre; **be hot** cáleō -éere -uī; **become hot** calésc·ō -ere; **be uncomfortably hot** aestuāre; **hot weather** aest·us -ūs *m*; **it is hot today** hódīē calétur
- hot dog** hill·a -ae calēns (*gen*: hillae caléntis) *f*
- hot pants** brevíssimae brā·cae -árum *fpl* fēminínae
- hot-tempered** irācúnd·us -a -um
- hotel** dēversóri·um -ī *n*; **stay at a hotel** in dēversóriō mor·or -áři -átus sum

hotel manager dēversórii dīrēc·tor -tórius
m (·trīx -trícis f)

hotplate disc·us -ī m coctórius

hound s.o. (coll) áliquem cōnséct·or -ári
-átus sum

hour hōr·a -ae f; **a half hour** sēmihōr·a
-ae f; **an hour and a half**
sēsquihōr·a -ae f; **a quarter of an**
hour quadr·āns -ántis m hōrae; **every**
hour síngulis hōrīs; **from hour to**
hour in hōrās; **three quarters of an**
hour dōdr·āns -ántis m hōrae

hourly in hōrās

house dom·us -ūs f, aed·ēs -ium fpl

house arrest custódi·a -ae f líbera

how (in what way) quómodo, quō pactō;
(chiefly after verbs of hearing,
telling, etc.) ut (+ subj); (to what
degree) quam; **how are you? (how**
are you doing?) quid agis? (pl: quid
ágitis?); ut valēs? (pl: ut valétis?);
how come? quī fit? or quī istuc?
how far quóusque; **how far is ...**
from quantum distat (or abest) ... ab
(+ abl); **how goes it?** quid fit?; **how**
long quámdiū, quóusque; **how long**
ago? quam prīdem? or quam
dūdum?; **how many** quot [indecl];
how many times quótiēns, quótiēs;
how much quant·us -a -um; **how**
much did you sell it for? quantī hoc
vēnit?; **how much is this?** quantī hoc
cōnstat?; **how much does it cost?** id
quantī cōnstat?; **how often** quótiēns;
how old are you? quot annōs nāt·us
(-a) es?; **how so?** quid ita?;
(whatever made you say that?)
quīdum?; **how soon?** quam mox?;
how's that? (What did you say?)
quīdum? or quid iam?

however autem

hug compléct·or -ī compléxus sum; **hug**
each other inter sē compléctī

hum intr murmuráre; (of bees)
bombiláre

hum s murm·ur -uris m; (of bees)
bomb·us -ī m

human being hom·ō -inīs mf

humane hūmán·us -a -um

humid úmid·us -a -um

humor s festívít·ās -átis f

humor tr humor s.o. álicui mōrem gerō
gérere gessī

humorous festív·us -a -um

humorously festívē

hump gibb·er -eris m

hunger fam·ēs -is f

hung jury: be acquitted by a hung
jury senténtiīs páribus absól·or -ī
absolútus sum

hungry adj ēsúri·ēns -entis

hunt (also go hunting) vĕn·or -ári -átus
sum (see Chapter V)

hunting vĕnát·us -ūs m

hunting dog can·is -is m vĕnáticus

hunting gear ínstrúmēt·um -ī n
vĕnátórium

hurray! euax!

hurricane ingĕns procell·a -ae f

hurry intr properáre; **hurry up!** mātúrá!
(pl: mātúráte!)

hurry s: be in a hurry properáre,
festínáre; **but I'm in a hurry** at
próperō; **what's your hurry?** quid
festínās?

hurt tr nóc·eō -ĕre -uī (+ dat) || intr
dól·eō -ĕre -uī; **hurt a lot**
veheménter dolĕre

husband marít·us -ī m

hygiene *hygién·ē -ēs f*; **practice**

hygiene *hygiénēn exerc·eō -ēre -uī -itus*

hygienic *hygiénic·us -a -um*

hypertext *adj* *hypertextuál·is -is -e*

hypertext *s* *hypertéxt·us -ūs m*

hypocrite *simulát·or -óris m, simulátr·ix -ícis f*

hypocritical *coáct·us -a -um, simulát·us -a -um*

I

ice *gláci·ēs -ēī f*; **turn to ice** *glaciári*

ice cream *gélidum crēm·um -ī n*

ice hockey (*see* **hockey**)

ice rink *stádi·ōn -ī n glaciále*

ice-skate *intr* *patináre*

iceskate *s* *pátin·us -ī m*

ice-skater *patinát·or -óris m, patinátr·ix -ícis f*

ice-skating *patináti·ō -ónis f* (*see* *Chapter V*)

icicle *sfíri·a -ae f*

icon (*comput*) *ícōn, íconis f*

icy *glaciál·is -is -e*

idea *cōnsíli·um -ī n, cogníti·ō -ónis f*;
you're full of ideas *plēnus (-a)*
cōnsíliū es

ideal *exémpl·ar -áris n*

identical *idéntic·us -a -um, ídem et pār*

identification *identificáti·ō -ónis f*

identify *identificáre*

identity *idéntit·ās -átis f*

idiom *figúr·a -ae f, própriét·ās -átis f*
linguae (Latínae or Ánglicae)

idiomatic expressions *quae linguae*
Latínae (or Ánglicae) própria sunt

idiot *fátu·us -ī m (·a -ae f)*

if *sī*; **if only** *útinam (+ subj)*

iffy (*slang*) *dúbi·us -a -um*

ignoramus *nesápi·us -ī m, nesápi·a -ae f*

ignorance *ĩnsciéti·a -ae f*

ignorant *ĩnscít·us -a -um; (unlearned)*
indóct·us -a -um

ill (*used of body and mind*) *ae·ger -gra -rum; (used of body only) aegrót·us -a -um; be ill* *aegrótáre; fall ill* *in morbum íncid·ō incídere íncidī*

ill health (*advérsa*) *valētúd·ō -inis f; for reasons of ill health* *valētúdinis causā*

illiterate *illitterát·us -a -um*

ill-mannered *male mōrát·us -a -um*

illness *morb·us -ī m, (mala) valētúd·ō -inis f; serious illness* *gravis valētúdō*

illogical *absúrd·us -a -um*

ills *mal·a -órum npl*

imagine *imágin·or -ári -átus sum*

immature *immátúr·us -a -um*

immaturity *immátúrit·ās -átis f*

immediately *statim, contínuō, extéplō*

immoderate *immódic·us -a -um*

immodest *impudíc·us -a -um*

impartial *aequ·us -a -um, incorrúpt·us -a -um et ínte·ger -gra -grum*

impatient: be impatient with *iníquō ánimō ferō ferre tulī (+ acc)*

impatiently *iníquō ánimō*

imperative *adj* *imperátív·us -a -um; imperative mood* *mod·us -ī m imperátívus*

imperfect tense *s* *temp·us -oris n praetérítum imperféctum*

imperial *imperiál·is -is -e*

impersonal *adj* impersōnāl·is -is -e

impetuous fērvīd·us -a -um

impolite inurbān·us -a -um

importance: it is of the greatest importance to me that ... permāgnī meā ínterest (+ *acc & inf*);

important magn·us -a -um; **consider it important** id magnī aēstimāre; **it is (very) important to me (you) that** magnī (máximē) meā (tuā) ínterest (+ *acc & inf*); **it's not all that important** tantī nōn est

impress commóv·eō -ēre commóvī commótus

impression: make a deep impression on máximē commóv·eō -ēre commóvī (+ *acc*)

improper índec·ēns -éntis

improve *tr* emendāre || *intr* mel·ior -ior -ius fiō fierī factus sum; (*in studies*) prōfic·iō -ere prōfēcī

improvement prōféc·tus -ūs *m*

imprudent imprūd·ēns -éntis

impulse ánimī ímpet·us -ūs *m*

in *prep* in (+ *abl*); (*in the writings of*) apud (+ *acc*); **in all** ex tōtō

in *adv* (*motion*) intrō; (*rest or motion*) íntus; **is your father in?** estne pater íntus?

inappropriate inépt·us -a -um

incisors dentēs *mpl* primórēs

include contín·eō -ēre -uī

incorrect vitiós·us -a -um

incorrectly vitiósē

increase *tr* aúg·eō -ēre auxī auctus || *intr* crēsc·ō -ere crēvī

incredible incrdíbil·is -is -e

indecent índec·ēns -éntis

indecisive ambígu·us -a -um

indeclinable indēclínábil·is -is -e

indeed proféc·tō, quidem, vērō

indefinite ínfínít·us -a -um (*opp*: finítus)

indicate *tr* significāre

indicative indicātv·us -a -um; **in the indicative mood** modō indicātvō

indict s.o. áliquem re·um (-am) fácere

indifference frīg·us -oris *n*

indigestion crúdit·ās -átis *f*

indignant indignābúnd·us -a -um

inept inépt·us -a -um

inexpensive vīl·is -is -e

inexperienced (in) inexpért·us -a -um (ab + *abl* or in + *acc* or advérsus + *acc*)

infamous infām·is -is -e

infancy infánti·a -ae *f*

infant infāns, infántis *mf*

infantry peditát·us -ūs *m*

infantryman ped·es -itis *m*

infatuated: be infatuated with s.o. áliquem efflíctim amāre

infer: I infer from what you say that ... ex verbīs tuīs cólligō (+ *acc & inf*)

infinitive s infínítív·um -ī *n*

infirmary valētudinári·um -ī *n*

inflame ínflammāre

inflammation ínflammáti·ō -ónis *f*

inflect *tr* dēclínāre

inflection s dēclínáti·ō -ónis *f*

influence grāti·a -ae *f*; **have a lot of (more, little, no) influence on** multum (plus, paulum, nihil) posse apud (+ *acc*)

influential grātiós·us -a -um

inform: inform s.o. about áliquem certiórem fácere dē (+ *abl*)

informant ind·ex -icis *mf*

information indíci·um -ī *n*

ingenious artificiós·us -a -um

initiative: on my own initiative meā sponte

injustice iniūstí·a -ae *f*

ink ātrāmént·um -ī *n*

inland *adj* intéri·or -or -us; **inland seas** már·ia -ium *npl* interiōra

inland *adv* intus; **towns inland from Tarentum** óppida per continéntem ā Taréntō

in-law affīn·is -is *mf*

inn caupón·a -ae *f*

inning (*of baseball*) miss·us -ūs *m*

innkeeper caup·ō -ōnis *m*

innocence innocénti·a -ae *f*

innocent (of) ínnoc·ēns -éntis (+ *gen*)

innumerable innúmer·us -a -um

input (*comput*) (datórum) ínit·us -ūs *m*;
input and output (datórum) ínitus exitúsque

inquisitive cūriós·us -a -um

insane insán·us -a -um

insanity insánit·ās -átis *f*

insect inséct·um -ī *n*

insensitive dūr·us -a -um

insensitivity dūrítí·a -ae *f*

inside: go inside! ī (*pl*: ite) intus!

insincere insincēr·us -a -um

install (*comput*) ínstru·ō -ere ínstrúxī ínstrúctus

installment pēnsi·ō -ōnis *f*; **pay in five installments** quínque pēnsiōnibus solv·ō -ere -ī solútus

instead of prō (+ *abl*)

instruct ínstitú·ō -ere -ī ínstitútus;

instruct s.o. in s.th. ínstruere áliquem áliquō

instruction (*teaching*) ínstitúti·ō -ōnis *f*;
instructions praecépt·a -órum *npl*;
(*orders to do something*) mandát·a -órum *npl*

instructor praecépt·or -óris *m*,
praecéptr·ix -ícis *f*

insurance caúti·ō -ōnis *f*, assēcūrāti·ō -ōnis *f*; **car insurance** assēcūrātiō vehiculária; **casualty insurance** assēcūrātiō indemnitátis; **health insurance** assēcūrātiō valētudinária; **insurance company** sociét·ās -átis *f* vítae cautiōnī exercendae; **life insurance** prō vítā caútiō, vítae assēcūrātiō

integrity intégrit·ās -átis *f*

intellect intelléct·us -ūs *m*

intelligence intellegénti·a -ae *f*

intelligent intéllég·ēns -éntis

intend dēstináre; in ánimō esse (+ *dat of the subject*); **I intended to set out straight for home** erat mihi in ánimō rēctā proficǐscī domum

intense (*emotions*) grand·is -is -e

intensive pronoun s prōnóm·en -inis *n* intentiōnis (ut “ipse” **himself**)

intentions: with the best intentions óptimō ánimō ütēns

interchange coniúnci·ō -ōnis *f* viárum

interest s interest (in) stúdi·um -ī *n* (+ *gen*); (*fin*) faen·us -oris *n*, úsúr·a -ae *f*; **compound interest** anatocǐsm·us -ī *m*; **have an interest in painting** stúdium pinguéndī habére; **increase (lower) interest** úsúram aúg·eō -ēre auxī (mínu·ō -ere -ī); **lend money at interest** pecúniam faénorī dare; **rate**

of interest ūsūr·ae -ārum *fpl*; **3 percent (4 percent, 5 percent, 6 percent, 12 percent) interest per annum** quadrántēs (triéntēs, quīncūncēs, sēmíssēs centésimae) ūsūrae; **pay interest on** ūsūram pend·o -ere pepéndī (+ *dat*); **simple interest** perpétuum faen·us; **take an interest in something** stúdiō alicúius tenērī

interest *tr* tén·eō -ére -uī; **sports don't interest me** lūdī mē nōn tenent

interested: children are interested in games líberī lūdīs tenéntur; **I am interested in music** músicae [*dat*] stúdeō; **I am interested in that** id mihi cūrae est; **I am not the least bit interested in the races** circēnsibus nē levíssimē quidem téneor

interesting (in appearance) speciōs·us -a -um; **that book is interesting** ille liber mē tenet

interfere in sē interpón·ō -ere interpósuī (+ *dat*)

interior *adj* intéri·or -or -us

interior *s*: **in the interior** in mediterráneō, intus; **toward the interior** intus

interjection *s* interiécti·ō -ónis *f* (ut “heus tū!” **hey you!**)

international law iūs, iūris *n* géntium

internet *adj* interrētiál·is -is -e

internet *s* interrēt·e -is *n*

interrogate interrogáre

interrupt interpelláre; **don't interrupt me!** nōlī (*pl*: nōlíte) mē interpelláre! (*or* mihi óbloquī!)

intersection cómpit·um -ī *n*, quadrívi·um -ī *n*

interview collóqui·um -ī *n*
interrogátórium

interviewer interrogá·tor -tóris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)

intestines intestín·a -órum *npl*

intransitive *adj* intrānsitív·us -a -um

introduce (*e.g.*, a custom) introdúcere; (*a person*) **(to)** trād·ō -ere -idī -itus (+ *dat*)

introductory intrōductóri·us -a -um

invade invád·ō -ere invásī invásus *in* (+ *acc*), cum exércitū ingréd·ior -ī ingrēssus *sum*

invest collocáre

investigate investigáre

investigator investigá·tor -tóris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)

investment pecúniae collocáti·ō -ónis *f*

invite invitáre; (*esp. to dinner*) vocáre

involve implicáre; **be involved in** vers·or -ārī -átus *sum in* (+ *abl*)

Ireland Hibérni·a -ae *f*

Irish *adj* Hibérmic·us -a -um

iron *tr* prem·ō -ere pressī pressus, (ferrō) lēvigáre

irregular *adj* inaequál·is -is -e; **an irregular verb** inaequále verbum (ut “volō,” **I want**)

irregularly *adv* inaequáliter; **“duo” is irregularly declined** “duo” inaequáliter dēclīnátur

irresponsible inofficiós·us -a -um

irritable irácúnd·us -a -um

irritate exasperáre

is est; is that so? ítane est?

island ínsul·a -ae *f*

isthmus ísthm·us -ī *m* (*f*)

it id, eius

Italy Itáli·a -ae *f*

itch *intr* prúr·iō -íre; (*fig*) gést·iō -íre;
I'm just itching to géstiō quidem (+
inf)

item of merchandise merx, mercis *f*
its eius

J

jacket iacc·a -ae *f*; (*of leather*) iacc·a
 -ae *f* scórtea

jail carc·er -eris *m*

jailer custodiári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

jam baccárum condítur·a -ae *f*; **be in a
 jam** in angústis vers·or -ári -átus
 sum

January mēns·is -is *m* Iānuárius; **in
 January** mēse Iānuáriō

jaw mal·ae -árum *fpl*

jawbone maxíll·a -ae *f*

jealous ínvid·us -a -um; **be jealous of**
 invíd·eō -ére invídī (+ *dat*)

jealousy invídi·a -ae *f*

jeans brāc·ae -árum *fpl* Genuénsēs

jello sorbíll·um -ī *n* concrétum

jelly cil·on (*also* quil·on) -ī *n*

jerk (*slang*) larv·a -ae *f*

jet plane aēróplan·um -ī *n*
 pyraulocínéticum

jewel gemm·a -ae *f*

jeweler aúrif·ex -icis *m*

jewelry store gemmári·a -ae *f*

jitters scrúpul·us -ī *m*; **give s.o. the
 jitters** álicui scrúpulum íníc·iō -ere
 iníécī

job (*piece of work*) op·us -eris *n*; (*as a
 means of livelihood*) quaest·us -ūs *m*;
good job! rēctē factum!; **it's a big
 job but ...** magnum opus est sed
 tamen ...

jog tolútim cursitáre

joint artícul·us -ī *m*

joke *intr* ioc·or -ári -átus sum; **all
 joking aside** iocō remóto; **now
 you're joking** iocáris nunc tū

joke *s* ioc·us -ī *m*; **as a joke** per iocum

jokingly per iocum *or* inter iocum

jot down annotáre, dēnotáre

journal commentári·ī -órum *mpl*
 periódicī

journalism diurnária ar·s -tis *f*

journalist diurnári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

joy gaúdi·um -ī *n*; **feel joy** gaúd·eō -ére
 gāvísus sum

joystick (*comput*) véctul·us -ī *m*

judge iūd·ex -icis *m*; **sit as judge (hold
 court)** iūs dícere

judgment iūdící·um -ī *n*; **against my
 better judgment** adversum ingénium
 meum; **in my judgment** meō iūdícíō

judicial iūdicíal·is -is -e; **judicial
 system** ráti·ō -ónis *f* iūdicíális

judo luct·a -ae *f* iūdóica

juice succ·us -ī *m*

July mēns·is -is *m* Iúlius; **in July** mēse
 Iúliō

jump sál·iō -íre -uī *or* -īi; **jump down**
 dēsílíre; **jump for joy** exsultáre;
jump rope ad fūnem salíre

June mēns·is -is *m* Iúnius; **in June**
 mēse Iúniō

junior iúni·or -óris *m*

junk scrūt·a -órum *npl*

juror iūd·ex -icis *m*

jury cōnsíli·um -ī *n*; iúdic·ēs -um *mpl*

just *adj* iúst·us -a -um

just *adv* modo; **just about** (*pretty well,
 virtually*) propémódum; **just a**

moment ago modo; **just as** cum máximē: **just as I was writing that** cum haec máximē scrīberem; **just before** (*an event*) sub (+ *acc*); **just in time** témporī; **just now** modo; **just then** tunc máxime; **just the other day** modo; **just the same** (*anyhow*) tamen *or* níhilō sētius; **just when** cum máximē; **just what?** quidnam?; **just who?** quisnam?

justice iūstítī·a -ae *f*

justly iūstē

jut out *see* **project**

K

kangaroo halmatúr·us -ī *m*

karate luct·a -ae *f* carática

keen-scented sagācíssim·us -a -um

keep (*retain*) tén·eō -ēre -uī -tus; (*confine*) contín·eō -ēre -uī conténtus; **am I keeping you?** num dētíneō tē?; **keep a stiff upper lip!** fac ut ánimō fortī sīs!; **keep this to yourself** haec tū tēcum habētō; **keep your cool!** compēsce mentem!; **keep one's eyes on** óculōs intentāre in (+ *acc*); **what kept you?** quid ténuit quō minus venírēs?

ketchup kétsup·um -ī *n*

key clāv·is -is *m*; (*of a typewriter or computer*) plēctr·um -ī *n*, malléol·us -ī *m*; (*on the keyboard*) malléol·us -ī *m*; **hit the key** malléolum pulsáre; **room key** clāv·is -is *f* conclávis

keyboard (*of a typewriter or computer*) plēctrológi·um -ī *n*, órd·ō -inīs *m* plēctrórum; (*of a piano or organ*) clāviatúr·a -ae *f*

kick *tr* (*a ball*) pede pulsáre; **kick the bucket** ánimam ebúll·iō -írē -īī

kid *s* (*coll*) frust·um -ī *n* púerī *or* puéllae

kid *tr* lúdere, lūdificáre, ioc·or -áři -átus sum; **don't kid me** nē mē lūdās; **you're kidding!** lūdis mē!

kidney rēn, rēnis *m*

kidney bean phasél·us -ī *m*(*f*)

kill occíd·ō -ere -ī occísus, necáre; **kill time** tempus fall·ō -ere feféllī; **you're killing me!** mē énicās!

kilometer chilíometr·um -ī *n*

kind *adj* (**to, toward**) benévól·us -a -um (ergā + *acc*)

kind *s* (*type*) gen·us -erīs *n*; **what kind of person is ... ?** quális homō est ...?

kindergarten paedotrophé·um -ī *n*

kind-hearted benévól·us -a -um, benígñ·us -a -um

kindness benevoléntia -ae *f*; (*kind deed*) benefíci·um -ī *n*; **show kindness to s.o.** benevoléntiam álicui praest·ō -áre praestítī

kiss *s* óscul·um -ī *n*, suávi·um -ī *n*; (*passionate*) bási·um -ī *n*

kiss *tr* ósculáři, suáviári, suávium dare (+ *dat*), básiáre

kitchen culín·a -ae *f*

kitchen knife cul·ter -trī *m* coquínáris

kitchen utensils ínstrúment·a -órum *npl* coquínatória

knapsack saccipéri·um -ī *n* dorsuále

knee gen·ū -ūs *n*

kneecap patéll·a -ae *f*

knife cult·er -rī *m*; (*small knife*) cultéll·us -ī *m*

knock down dēic·iō -ere dēicēi dēiēctus; (*in boxing*) stern·ō -ere strāvī strátus; **knock out** cōstérnere, prōfligáre

knock it off! parce! (*pl*: párcite!)

know sciō scīre scīvī scītus; (*to be familiar with a person or place*) nōv·ī -isse (*defective verb*); **get to know** nōsc·ō -ere nōvī nōtus; **he thinks he knows better than I do** cēnsēt sē plūs sápere quam mē; **I'm dying to know how you are doing** quid agās, valdē áveō scīre; **know for sure** certum (*or certō*) scīre; **know how to** scīre (+ *inf*); **let me know what you are doing** mē velim certiōrem fáciās, quid agās; **let me know where you are** fáciťō ut sciam ubi sīs; **not know** nésc·iō -íre

knowledge sciēnti·a -ae f; (*acquisition of knowledge*) cogníti·ō -ónis f; **without the knowledge of** clam (+ *abl*); **without your knowledge** clam vōbīs

known nōt·us -a -um; **make known** palam fácere; **well known** nōtíssim·us -a -um

knuckle artícul·us -ī m dígitī

knucklehead bār·ō -ónis m

L

label pittáci·um -ī n

laborer operári·us -ī m, operári·a -ae f

lacrosse lūd·us -ī m lacrossénsis; **play lacrosse** lūdō lacrossénsī lúdere

lacrosse stick (*or crosse*) cróci·a -ae f; **cradle the stick** cróciam agitāre

ladle trüll·a -ae f

lagoon stāgn·um -ī n

lake lac·us -ūs m

lamb agn·us -ī m, agn·a -ae f; (*as food*) agnín·a -ae f; **lambs bleat** agnī bālant

lamp lucérn·a -ae f

land *intr* (*of a ship*) (ad terram) appéll·ō -ere áppulī; (*of a passenger on a*

ship) in terram ēgrédior -ī ēgréssus sum; (*of a plane*) deórsum appéllere; (*of a bird*) (on) insíd·ō -ere insédī (+ *dat*)

land s terr·a -ae f; (*a piece of land*) ag·er -rī m

landing (*of a plane*) appúls·us -ūs m; (*on stairs*) scālári·um -ī n

landscape regiónis form·a -ae f

language lingu·a -ae f, serm·ō -ónis m; **the Latin language** lingua Latína, sermō Latínus

language lab officín·a -ae f loquēlárís

lap grémi·um -ī n

laptop (*comput*) computátrul·um -ī n portábile

lark alaúd·a -ae f (*see bird*)

last *adj* últim·us -a -um; (*in line*) novíssim·us -a -um; (*immediately preceding*) próxim·us -a -um; (*adj used where English uses an adv*) novíssim·us -a -um, e.g., **Cicero spoke last** Cícero novíssimus locútus est; **at last** dēmum; **last night** herī vésperī, próximā nocte; **the night before last** superiōre nocte

last *intr* dūrāre, perdūrāre

late *adj* sēr·us -a -um

late *adv* sērō; **all too late** immō iam sērō; **too late** sérius; **very late** séríssimē

lately nūper

later pósteā; **a little later** pósteā aliquántō; **postpone till later** díf·ferō -férre dístulī dílátus in áliud tempus

latest: at latest summum; **perhaps tomorrow, at latest the day after that** fortásse crās, summum peréndiē

Latin (*to know, read, teach, speak, understand, write*) Latínē; **are you learning Latin?** discísne Latínē?;

did you forget Latin? esne oblítus (-a) Latínē?; **do you know Latin?** nōstíne Latínē?; **do you know how to speak Latin?** scísne Latínē lóquī?; **do you read Latin easily?** legísne Latínē fácite?; **do you speak Latin (fluently)?** loquerísne Latínē (prōfluénte)?; **do you teach Latin?** docésne Latínē?; **do you understand Latin?** intellegísne Latínē?; **first-year Latin** prímus Latínitátis ann·us -ī m; **since when have you been learning Latin?** ex quō témpore Latínē didicístī?; **where did you study Latin?** ubi Latíne studuístī?; **who is able to write Latin?** quis Latíne scríbere potest?

Latin teacher Latínitátis magístr·a -ae f
or magíst·er -rī m

Latium Látí·um -ī n (*district in which Rome lies*)

laugh ríd·eō -éere rīsī; **I laughed till I cried** rīsī ūsque ad lácimās; **laugh at** rídére

laundry fullóníc·a -ae f, officín·a -ae f
lavátória; (*dirty clothes*) lavandári·a -órum npl

lavender lavanduláce·us -a -um

law lēx, lēgis f; (*divine law*) fas n (*indecl*); (*denoting the entire body of law*) iūs, iūris n; **against the law** contrā iūs; (*against a specific law*) contrā lēgem; **by law** lēge; **break the law** lēgem violáre; **in accordance with the law** lēge

lawfully lēgítimē

lawn prátul·um -ī n; **mow the lawn** prátulum reseccáre

lawnmower herbiséctr·um -ī n

lawsuit lí·s -tis f; **bring (or file) a lawsuit against s.o.** lítem álicui inténd·ō -ere -ī

lawyer iūrisperít·us -ī m (·a -ae f); **defense lawyer** advocát·us -ī m (·a -ae f); **trial lawyer** causídíc·us -ī m (·a -ae f)

lay (to place) pōn·ō -ere pósuī pósitus; (*bricks*) stru·ō -ere -xī -ctus; (*eggs*) pár·iō -ere péperī; **lay a finger on s.o.** áliquem ūnō dígitō atting·ō -ere áttigi; **lay it on the line** dírectum loquor, loquī locútus sum; **lay off!** désine (*pl: désínite*) tandem!

layer the hair comam in gradūs fráng·ō -ere frēgī fráctus

layover commoráti·ō -ónis f

laziness ignávi·a -ae f

lazy ignáv·us -a -um, pi·ger -gra -grum

lead dūc·ō -ere dūxī ductus; **all roads lead to Rome** omnēs viae Rómam dūcunt

leader prīnc·eps -ipis m

lead pencil stil·us -ī m plumbátus, gráphi·um -ī n

learn disc·ō -ere dídicī; **learn by heart** edíscere; **learn thoroughly** perdíscere

learned doct·us -a -um, ērudít·us -a -um

learner disc·ēns -éntis mf

leash s cingul·um -ī n

leash tr (**a dog**) (canem) cingulō alligáre

least mínimē; **at least** útique, saltem

leather adj ex córiō; (*for weatherproofing*) scórte·us -a -um; **leather raincoat** scórte·a paénul·a -ae f

leather s córi·um -ī n

leave (depart) discéd·ō -ere discéssī discessúrus; (*office*) áb·eō -íre -īi (+ abl); **leave it up to s.o. to ...** álicui mandáre ut (+ subj); **leave me alone!** omítte (*pl: omítíte*) mē!; **leave no**

- stone unturned** nullō locō dēsum
dēesse dēfuī
- leave of absence** commeāt·us -ūs *m*
- lecherous** libīdinōs·us -a -um
- lectern** lēctōri·um -ī *n*
- lecture** ācroās·is -is *f*; (*explicating an author*) praelēcti·ō -ōnis *f*; **give a lecture** ācroāsīn fācere, sermōnem habēre
- lecture hall** audītōri·um -ī *n*
- left** sinīst·er -ra -rum, laev·us -a -um; **on the left** ā sinīstrā; (**to the left**) sinistrōrsum
- leftovers** (*from a meal*) relīqui·ae -ārum *fpl*
- leg** crūs, crūris *n*
- legal** lēgītīm·us -a -um, secūndum lēgem *or* lēgēs
- legally** lēgītīmē, lēge *or* lēgibus
- legislation** lēgislāti·ō -ōnis *f*
- legislator** lēgislāt·or -ōris *m* (*in Roman government, a proposer of a bill*)
- leisure time** ōti·um -ī *n*, temp·us -oris *n*
vacuum
- lemon** cítre·um -ī *n*
- lemonade** līmonāt·a -ae *f*
- length** longitūd·ō -inis *f*; **in length** in longitūdinem
- lengthen** *tr* prōdūc·ō -ere prōdūxī
prōdūctus (*opp*: corrīpere)
- lengthwise** per longitūdinem
- lens** lēns, lentis *f* óptica
- lentil** lēn·s -tis *f*
- leopard** pard·us -ī *m*
- lesson** lēcti·ō -ōnis *f*, praecēpt·um -ī *n*
- let** permitt·ō -ere permīssī permīssus; **let fall** dēmītt·ō -ere dēmīssī dēmīssus; **let fly** ēmītt·ō -ere ēmīssī ēmīssus; **let me go!** mitte (*pl*: mīttite) mē!; **let me know** fac (*pl*: fācite) ut sciam; **let me see** licet (ut) videam; **let s.o. down** álicui dēsum dēesse dēfuī, dēfici·ō -ere dēfēcī (+ *dat*); **let's go** eāmus; **let up** (*of rain, snow*) dētumēscit -ere
- letter** *s* epístul·a -ae *f*, lítter·ae -ārum *fpl*; (*of the alphabet*) lítter·a -ae *f*;
letters form syllables lítterae fāciunt sýllabās
- letter opener** ēnsícul·us -ī *m* epístuláris
- lettuce** lactūc·a -ae *f*
- leukemia** leukaēmi·a -ae *f*
- level** *s* (*instrument*) libr·a -ae *f* (aquária); **be on a level with s.o.** par esse álicuī
- lever** vect·is -is *m*
- librarian** bibliothēcári·us *m* (·a -ae *f*)
- library** bibliothēc·a -ae *f*
- license** (*to drive*) diplóm·a -atis *n*
gubernātiōnis
- license plate** notácul·um -ī *n* autocínētī
- lie** *intr* (*be lying down*) iác·eō -ére -uī; (*in bed*) cub·ō -āre -uī; (*be situated*) sit·us -a -um esse; (*tell a lie*) mént·ior -írī méntítus sum; **lie down** (*to rest*) dēcúmb·ō -ere dēcúbuī; **lie in the direction of** verg·ō -ere ad (+ *acc*)
- lie** *s* fals·um -ī *n*, mendáci·um -ī *n*; **tell a lie** mendácium dīcere
- lieutenant** locumtén·ēns -éntis *mf*
- life** vīt·a -ae *f*; **but such is life** sed vīta fert; **it's not a question of life or death** nōn cápitis rēs ágitur; **lead the life of Riley** vītam Chiam ger·ō -ere gessi; **on my life!** ita vīvam!
- life imprisonment: give s.o. life imprisonment** áliquem damnāre cárcerī quoad vīvat
- lift weights** librāménta toll·ō -ere sústulī sublátus

ligament ligám·en -inis *n*

light *adj* **make light of** in levī habére

light *s* lūm·en -inis (ēléctricum) *n*; **turn on (off) the light** lūmen accénd·ō -ere -ī accénsus (expéd·iō -íre -ívī)

light bulb glóbul·us -ī *m* ēléctricus

lighter ignitábul·um -ī *n*

lightning *intr* **it is lightning** fulget fulgére fulsit, fulguráre

lightning *s* fulm·en -inis *n*; **be struck by lightning** fúlmine (or ē caelō) icor icī ictus sum

lightning bug musc·a -ae *f* ignífera

like *adj* símil·is -is -e (+ *gen or, more rarely, dat*); **he said something like this** haec ferē dīxit; **that's more like it** propémódum est

like *tr* (care for) cūrāre; **I'd like to** velim (+ *inf*); **I'd like you to come** velim (ut) véniās; **I like s.th. (best)** áliquid mihi (potíssimum) placet; **I like summer** aestās mihi placet; **I like the city** urbs mē dēléctat; **I like this** hoc mihi placet; **I like to do this** mē iuvat hoc fácere; **I like to watch the races** libénter circénsēs spectō; **stay if you like** manē sī tibi placébit

likely vērísímil·is -is -e; **it is more likely that ...** vērísímilius est (*acc + inf*); **most likely she will come** próximum est ut véniat (or vērísímíllimē est eam ventúram esse)

line líne·a -ae *f*; (*of prose or poetry*) vers·us -ūs *m*; **draw a line with a ruler** líneam per régulam dúcere; **drop me a line when you have time** scribe áliquid litterárum quandō vacās; **form a long line** longum agmen fácere; **in a straight line** per dírectum, rēctā; **he's feeding you a line** verba tibi iste dat; **lay it on the line** dírectum loquor loquī locútus sum

linen *adj* líne·us -a -um; **linen cloth** sában·um -ī *n*

linen *s* línteum -ī *n*, lín·um -ī *n*

linesman (*sports*) iūd·ex -icis *m* líneárius

link *s* (*comput*) cōnéx·us -ūs *m*

link *tr* (*comput*) cōnéct·ō -ere cōnéxū cōnéxus

linker (*comput*) cōnéctr·um -ī *n*

linking (*comput*) cōnéxi·ō -ónis *f*

lion le·ō -ónis *m*, leaén·a -ae *f*; **lions roar** leónēs rúgiunt

lip labr·um -ī *n*; **lower lip** labrum ínférius; **upper lip** labrum supérius; **keep a stiff upper lip** fac, ut ánimō fortī sīs

list númer·us -ī *m*; (*e-mail list*) grex, gregis *m* (interrētiális)

list owner (*comput*) gregis moderá·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)

listless dēs·es -idis

liter lítr·a -ae *f*

literal *adj* própri·us -a -um (*opp*: tránslátívus)

literally *adv* própriē, ad verbum (*opp*: figūrátē)

litter lectíc·a -ae *f*

little *adv* paulum; **a little** paúlulum; **a little bigger** paulō ámplior

little *adj* parv·us -a -um; **for a little while** paulisper; **little brother** frátércul·us -ī *m*; **little sister** sorórcul·a -ae *f*

live (*be alive*) vív·ō -ere víxī víctum; (*reside*) habitáre; **live it up** pergraéc·or -áři; **live near**, (*in the case of a river*) **live on the banks of** áccol·ō -ere -uī accúltum; **live on** (*e.g., a venison*) vesc·or -ī (+ *abl*);

- you're living on borrowed time** *dē*
lucrō vīvis (*pl.*: vīvitis)
- live** *adj* vīv·us -a -um
- liveliness** alácrit·ās -átis *f*
- lively** ála·cer -cris -cre
- liver** iec·ur -oris *n*
- livestock** pec·us -oris *n*
- living** *s* **make a living** quaestum fácere
or vīctum quaerítáre
- living room** sessóri·um -ī *n*, synoéci·um
-ī *n*
- lizard** lacért·us -ī *m*, lacért·a -ae *f*
- loaded** (*with money*) cōpiós·us -a -um;
(*drunk*) mádid·us -a -um
- loaf** *intr* cessáre
- loaf of bread** pān·is -is *m*
- loan** argént·um ī *n* mútuum; **may I hit
you for a loan?** licetne tē mútuō
feríre?
- lobster** ástac·us -ī *m*
- local number** númer·us -ī *m* locális
- local train** trām·en -inis *n* commúne
- located** sit·us -a -um
- locket** capséll·a -ae *f*; **wear a locket
around the neck** capséllam *dē*
cervíce ger·ō -ere gessī gestus; (*worn
by boys, of leather, silver or gold*)
bull·a -ae *f*; **wearing a locket**
bullát·us -a -um
- lock up** occlú·dō -dere -sī -sus; (*in
prison*) in cárcerem compíng·ō -ere
compéngī compáctus
- locust** lócúst·a -ae *f*; **locusts chirp**
lócústae strídent
- log in** *intr* (*comput*) ín·eō -íre -ívī *or* -ī
- log out** *intr* (*comput*) éx·eō -íre -ívī *or*
-ī
- loneliness** sōlitúd·ō -inis *f*
- lonely** sōl·us -a -um
- long** *adj* long·us -a -um, pródúct·us -a
-um (*opp.*: brevis, corréptus); **a vowel
is long by nature or by position**
vocális est longa nātúrā aut positióne;
fifteen miles long quíndecim mília
pássuum (*often written*: p.) in
longitúdinem *or* quíndecim mília
pássuum in longitúdinem patēns
- long** *adv* diū; (**for a long time now**
iamdúdum; **how long** quam diū; **how
much longer** quámdīū étiam; **it
would take too long to ...** longum
erat (+ *inf*); **long ago** prīdem; **long
after** (**before**) multō post (ante);
longer diútius; **too long** diútius,
nímium diū
- long-distance number** númer·us -ī *m*
longínquus
- long for** dēsīderáre
- longing** (**for**) dēsīdéri·um -ī *n* (+ *gen*)
- long jump** (*sports*) salt·us -ūs *m* in
longum
- long-sleeved** manicát·us -a -um
- long-winded** long·us -a -um
- look** aspíc·iō -ere aspéxī aspéctus;
(*appear, seem*) vídeor vidéri vīsus
sum; **it looks that way to me** ita
mihi vidétur; **look!** ecce!; **look after**
cūráre; **look around** circumspícere;
look at ínspíc·iō -ere ínspéxī
ínspectus; **look down on** (*despise*)
dēspectáre; **look for** quaer·ō -ere
quaesívī quaesítus: **aha, the very
person I was looking for!** attat,
quem quaerébam!; **look forward to**
exspectáre; **look here, you!** eho tū!;
look into ínspícere; (*examine*)
perscrútári; **look like** víd·eor -éri
vīsus sum similis (+ *dat or gen*); **I
don't know what he** (*or she*) **looks
like** quā sit fáciē, nesciō; **look out of
the window** ex fenestrā prospícere;

look over (*someone*) contemplāre; (*a book, essay*) perlég·ō -ere perléggī;

look someone in the eye áliquem rēctīs óculīs intú·eor -éři intúitus sum; **look up** (*a reference*) inquír·ō -ere inquísívī inquísítus in (+ *acc*);

look up at suspícere; **look up to** (*out of respect*) suspícere

look-out: keep a careful look-out ómnia circumspectāre

look-out man ind·ex -icis *m*

loose (*not tight*) lax·us -a -um; (*morally*) dissolút·us -a -um

loose-leaf folder collēctóri·um -ī *n*

loose-leaf tablet cōdicíll·us ī *m*
chartárum

lop-sided inaequál·is -is -e

lose (*mostly unintentionally*) amítt·ō -ere amísī amíssus; (*mostly blamably*) per·dō -dere -didī -dítus

loud *adj* magn·us -a -um, clār·us -a -um

loud *adv* magnā voce, clārē

loudmouth clāmát·or -óris *m*, clāmátr·īx -ícis *f*

loudspeaker megaphón·um -ī *n*

louse pēdícul·us -ī *m*

lousy foed·us -a -um; (*weather*) spurc·us -a -um; **feel lousy** sē male habēre

lovable amábil·is -is -e

love *s* am·or -óris *m* (*followed by erga or in + acc, or by gen, if the object is not a person*); **fall in love at first sight** unō aspéctū in amórem incid·ō -ere -ī

love *tr* amáre

lover amát·or -óris *m*, amátr·īx -ícis *f*

love seat biséllī·um -ī *n* (tóméntō fartum)

loving am·āns -ántis

low *intr* (*of cattle*) múg·iō -íre -ívī or -īi

low *adj* **I am low on** (*e.g., paper*)

(charta) mihi dēest; **in a low voice** summíssā vóce; **run low** dēfíc·iō -ere dēfēcī

low-born ignóbil·is -is -e

lower jaw mandíbul·a -ae *f*

loyal fidél·is -is -e, fid·us -a -um;
remain loyal in fidē mán·eō -ére mānsī

loyalty fidélit·ās -átis *f*

lube job, lubrication úncti·ō -ónis *f*
autocínētī

luck fortún·a -ae *f*; **good luck!** fēlíciter!

luckily fēlíciter

lucky fēl·īx -ícis, fortunát·us -a -um

luggage vās·a -órum *npl*; sárcin·ae -árum *fpl*; **piece of luggage** sárcin·a -ae *f*; (*small*) sarcínul·a -ae *f*

luggage rack retinácul·um -ī *n* sarcinále

luggage tag pittáci·um -ī *n* sarcinále

lump *s* túbércul·um -ī *n*

lump *tr* **lump s.o. together with**
áliquem accúd·ō -ere (+ *dat*)

lunch prándi·um -ī *n*; **eat lunch**

pránd·eō -ére prandī; **have lunch**
prándium sūm·ō -ere sūmpsī sūmptus

lung pulm·ō -ónis *m*

lust cupídít·ās -átis *f*; (*sexual desire*)
libíd·ō -inis *f*

lying falsíloqu·us -a -um

lyre lyr·a -ae *f*

M

macaroni past·a -ae *f* tubuláta

machine máchin·a -ae *f*

machinery mächinále ínstrúmēt·um -ī *n*

- machinist** māchināt·or -ōris *m*
- mackerel** scomb·er -rī *m*
- mad** (*insane*) īnsān·us -a -um; (*angry*) īrāt·us -a -um; **be mad about** (*be madly in love with*) dēpēr·iō -īre -iī (+ *acc*); **go mad** mente aliēnārī; **I'm mad at you** tibi suscēnsēō *or* ego tibi īrātus sum
- madam** dōmin·a -ae *f*
- magazine** commentāri·ī -ōrum *mpl*
periōdicī imāgīnē
- magic** *s* mágica ar·s -tis *f*; **practice magic** mágicās artēs exērc·eō -ēre -uī
- magic, magical** *adj* mágic·us -a -um; **do magic tricks** praestīgī·or -ārī
- magician** mag·us -ī *m*, mag·a -ae *f*
- magistracy** magistrāt·us -ūs *m*
- magistrate** magistrāt·us -ūs *m*
- magnetic** magnētīc·us -a -um
- maid** ancīll·a -ae *f*, fāmul·a -ae *f*
- mail** *s* epīstul·ae -ārum *fpl*, rēs (rērum) *fpl* cursuālēs; (*postal system*) curs·us -ūs *m* públicus; (*comput*) lítter·ae -ārum *fpl* ēlectrōnicāe, epīstul·a -ae *f* ēlectrōnica; **deliver mail** rēs cursuālēs red·dō -dere -didī -ditus; **forward mail** rēs cursuālēs déferō déferre détulī délātus; **stack of mail** multīugae lítterae *fpl*
- mail** *tr* dō dare dedī datus; **I mailed the letter yesterday** lítterās herī dedī
- mailbox** cápsul·a -ae *f* tabellāria
- mailman** tabellāri·us -ī *m*
- mainland** cōntin·ēns -éntis *f*
- main road** vi·a -ae *f* prīncipālis
- major in** óperam prīmāriam (cuidam disciplīnae) dare
- make believe that** adsimulāre quasi (+ *subj*), simulāre (+ *acc w. inf*); **make fun of** lūdificāre, ēlūd·ō -ere ēlūsī;
- make the mouth water** ad salīvam fácere; **make up** (*a story*) excógitāre; **make up with s.o.** in grātiam cum āliquō réd·eō -īre -iī
- malaria** malári·a -ae *f*
- mall** for·um -ī *n* subtēgulāneum
- man** vir, virī *m*
- manage** cūrāre; (*e.g., a bank*) móder·or -ārī -ātus sum; (*esp. on a large scale*) administrāre; **if you can manage it** sī id cōnficere póteris
- manager** moderāt·or -ōris *m*, moderātr·ix -ícis *f*
- mane** iūb·a -ae *f*
- manuscript** manuscrīpt·um -ī *n*
- many** mult·ī -ae -a
- map** chart·a -ae *f* geogrāphica; **map of the world** orb·is -is *m* terrārum pīctus
- march** *intr* iter fácere
- March** *s* mēns·is -is *m* Mártilius; **in March** mēnse Mártilio
- margarine** margarín·um -ī *n*
- marijuana** cánnab·is -is *f*; **smoke marijuana** fūmum cánnabis sūg·ō -ere sūxī
- marine** mīl·es -itis *m* clāssicus; **the marines** classīārī·ī -ōrum *mpl*
- mark** *tr* (*draw or make a mark on anything*) notāre; (*set down mentally*) désignāre; **mark my words** ánimum intēnde (*pl: intēndite*) in dicta mea
- mason** fa·ber -brī *m* lapidārius
- mast** māl·us -ī *m*
- master's degree** grad·us -ūs *m* magistrālis
- match** rāmént·um -ī *n* flammíferum; (*sports*) certām·en -inis *n*
- mathematics** mathemátic·a -ae *f*

matter *intr* it doesn't matter to me nihil ad mē pērtinet; **what does that matter to me (you, us)?** quid id meā (tuā, nōbīs) rēfert?

matter *s* rēs, reī *f*; **for that matter** ádeō; **no matter how...** quamvīs (+ *subj*); **what on earth's the matter?** quidnam est?; **what's the matter with you?** quid est tēcum? *or* quid istuc est reī?

mattress cúlcit·a -ae *f*; **air mattress** cúlcita inflátilis

May mēns·is -is *m* Māius; **in May** mēse Māiō

may: I (you, etc.) may mihi (tibi, etc.) licet; **may I leave?** licétne mihi abíre? *or* licétne mihi (ut) ábeam? (Note: in short phrases the *ut* is often omitted)

maybe fortásse

mayonnaise liquám·en -inis *n* Magónicum

mayor praeféct·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*) urbī

meadow prāt·um -ī *n*

meal cib·us -ī *m*

mean *tr* significáre; (*intend*) volō velle voluī; **do you know whom I mean?** scīsne quem dīcam?; **do you mean me?** mēne vīs? **yes, you tē; do you really mean it?** aisne vērō? **Yes, I do aiō; how do you mean that?** quī istuc vīs?; **now you know what I mean** scīs iam quid loquar; **what does this mean?** quid hoc sibi vult?; **what do you mean?** quid tibi vīs?; **what do you mean by that?** quid istuc est verbī?; **what I mean is** (*in correcting a misunderstanding*) at enim

meaning *s* significáti·ō -ōnis *f*; **basic meaning** prínceps significátiō

means: by all means! máximē!, immo!; **by fair means** rēctē; **by means of** *render by abl or per* (+ *acc*); **by no means** haudquáquam

meanwhile ínterim

measles morbíli·i -ōrum *mpl*

measure *intr* pát·eō -ére -uī, cóllig·ō -ere collégī; **measuring ten miles in circumference** patēns (*or* cólligēns) decem mília pássuum circúitū

meat car·ō -nis *f*

meatball glóbul·us -ī *m* cárneus

meat grinder máchin·a -ae *f* carnárium

meat tray fércul·um -ī carnári·um *m*

mechanic mechánicus ópif·ex -icis *m*

medal nomísm·a -atis *n*; **gold (silver, bronze) medal** nomísmā aúreum (argénteum, aéreum)

medical practice medicín·a -ae *f*

medication medicāmént·um -ī *n*

medicine medicín·a -ae *f*, medicám·en -inis *n*; **practice medicine** medicínā exérc·eō -ére -uī

Mediterranean Sea intérnum mar·e -is *n*, Tuscum mare, Tyrhénūm mare

meet *tr & intr* con·véniō -veníre -vénī -véntus

meeting congréss·us -ūs *m*

megaphone megaphón·um -ī *n*

melt *tr* dissól·vō -vere -vī -útus **||** *intr* liquésc·ō -ere

member (*of the body*) membr·um -ī *n*; (*of an organization*) sodál·is -is *mf*

memorize ēdísc·ō -ere ēdídicī

memory memóri·a -ae *f*; **commit to memory** memóriāe mandáre; **have a good memory** bonā memóriā esse; **if my memory serves me right** sī ego

- satis commémīnī; **in memory of** in memóriam (+ *gen*)
- mend** (*clothes*) sárc·iō -íre sarsī sartus
- mention** *s* ménti·ō -ónis *f*; **since mention has been made of money** quóniam nummórum méntiō facta est
- mention** *tr* **I don't want to mention him by name** eum nōlō nōmināre; **not to mention** ut nōn (*or nihil*) dicam dē (+ *abl*); **not to mention the fact that** ... ut mittam quod (+ *indic*)
- menu** cibórum ind·ex -icis *m*, cibórum tabéll·a -ae *f*; (*comput*) iussórum tabéll·a -ae *f*
- merchandise** vēnālīci·a -órum *npl*, merc·ēs -ium *fpl*
- merchant** mercát·or -óris *m*; (*in a market*) macellári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
- mermaid** nymph·a -ae *f* marína
- merrily** hílarē, fēstívē
- merry** hílar·is -is -e, hílar·us -a -um; **Merry Christmas!** Faustum ac Fēlícem Chrīstī Nātálem (tibi exóptō)! Fausta Fēsta Nātálícia Chrīstī (tibi exóptō)!
- merry-go-round** circumvectábul·um -ī *n*
- mess** (*dirt*) squāl·or -óris *m*; (*confusion*) turb·a -ae *f*; **geez, what a mess!** eu édepol rēs turbuléntās!; **make a mess of it** turbās concí·eō -ére concívī concítus
- message** nūnti·us -ī *m*
- metal** metáll·um -ī *n*
- meter** (*unit of measure, verse*) metr·um -ī *n*
- meticulous** accūrát·us -a -um
- microphone** microphón·um -ī *n*
- microscope** microscópi·um -ī *n*
- microwave oven** furn·us -ī *m* undárum brévium
- middle class** órđ·ō -inis *m* médius; (*in Rome*) équit·ēs -um *mpl*
- middle school** schol·a -ae *f* média
- midget** nān·us -ī *m*, nān·a -ae *f*
- midnight** média no·x, -ctis *f*; **around midnight** médiā círciter nocte; **at midnight** (dē) médiā nocte; **before midnight** ante médiam noctem
- midwife** obstétr·ix -ícis *f*
- migraine** hēmicráni·a -ae *f*; **have a migraine headache** dól·eō -ére -uī ab hēmicrániā
- mild** clém·ēns -éntis, mīt·is -is -e
- mile** mille pass·ūs -uum *mpl*; **two miles** duo mília *npl* pássuum
- military** mīlītár·is -is -e; **military age** aet·ās -ātis *f* mīlītáris; **military service** mīlīti·a -ae *f*; **enter military service** mīlítiam ínīre; **perform military service** mīlītáre; **the military** mīlīti·a -ae *f*
- milk** *s* lac lactis *n*
- milk** *tr* múl·geō -gēre -sī -sus *or* -ctus
- mince: without mincing words** sine fūcō ac falláciis
- mind** *tr* (*look after*) cūrāre, tú·eor -éři túitus sum; (*regard*) respíc·iō -ere respécxi respécus; (*object to*) aegrē (*or moléstē*) ferō ferre tulī látus; **I don't mind if you stay** nōn labóro sī manēs; **if you don't mind** sī tibi moléstum nōn est; sī tibi vidétur; **mind my words** auscúltā (*pl*: auscultáte) dictīs meis!; **mind one's own business** negórium suum agō ágere ēgi; **never mind!** sine! (*pl*: sínite!); **never mind what he says** mitte (*pl*: míttite) quod dicit

mind *s* mēn·s -tis *f*; ánim·us -ī *m*; **be in one's right mind** apud sē esse; **change one's mind** senténtiam mūtáre; **come to mind** in mentem veníre; **enter my mind** mihi in mentem veníre; **have in mind to in** ánimō habére (+ *inf*); **he's out of his mind** aliēnátus est ā sē; **I made up my mind to leave** constítuī hinc abíre *or* certum est mihi hinc abíre; **I was out of my mind when ...** dēsipiēbam mentis cum ... ; **it slipped my mind to write to you** fūgit mē ad tē scríbere; **of sound mind** comp·os -otis mentis; **set your mind at ease** habē ánimum lēnem et tranqúillum; **what's on your mind?** quid tibi in ánimō est?

mine *s* metáll·um -ī *n*, fodín·a -ae *f*;
coal mine fodín·a -ae *f* carbónária;
gold mine aurifodín·a -ae *f*; **gold (lead, iron, copper, silver, tin) mine** metállum aurī (plumbī, ferrī, cuprī, argéntī, plumbī albī); **mine shaft** fodínae púte·us -ī *m*

mine *tr* effód·iō -ere effódi effóssus

miner metallári·us -ī *m*, föss·or -óris *m*

mineral water aqu·a -ae *f* minerális

miniskirt cástul·a -ae *f* brevíssima (*or* dēcurtáta)

minister (*eccl*) mínis·ter -trī *m* (·tra -trae *f*), pást·or -óris *m*

minute minút·a, -ae *f*; **any minute now** iam iamque; **in a minute** móméntō témporis; **the minute I saw you** extéplō ubi ego tē vídī; **this minute (right now)** iam; (*immediately*) áctútum; **wait a minute** manē dum

mirror spécul·um -ī *n*; **look at oneself in the mirror** sē in spéculō intú·eor -éři; **look into the mirror** in spéculum ínspíc·iō -ere ínspéxī ínspéctus

misbehave sē male (*or* indecórē) ger·ō -ere gessi

miserable mis·er -era -erum

misery miséri·a -ae *f*

misquote áliis verbīs pōn·ō -ere pōsuī pósitus

miss (*feel the want of*) dēsīderáre; (*pass by without noticing*) praeter·míttō -mittere -mísi; **miss the mark** dēstinátō aberráre

missile missíl·e -is *n*

mist nébul·a -ae *f*

mistake err·or -óris *m*, errát·um -ī *n*; (*esp. in writing*) mend·um -ī *n*; **by mistake** imprúdēns, pérperam; **make a mistake** erráre; **you're making a big mistake** errās pervérsē *or* veheménter errās

mistaken (*idea*) fáls·us -a -um; **unless I am mistaken** nisi fallor

misty nebulós·us -a -um

mixed salad commíxta acētári·a -órum *npl*

mixer máchin·a -ae *f* míxtória

mobile home domúncul·a -ae *f* subrotáta; (*trailer home*) habitácul·um -ī *n* remulcátum

model exémpl·ar -áris *n*; (*of clothes*) vestimentórum mōnstátr·ix -ícis *f* (*or* mōnstrát·or -óris *m*)

modem (*comput*) tránsmodulátr·um -ī *n*

moderate (*of persons*) moderát·us -a -um; (*of things*) módic·us -a -um; **of moderate size** módic·us -a -um

modest modést·us -a -um

modesty modésti·a -ae *f*

modify *tr* adícior ádicī adíctus sum (+ *dat*); **which noun does "bonus" modify?** cui nómīnī "bonus" adícitur?

modifying *adj* adiéc-tus -a -um (+ *dat*)

molars dentēs *mpl* molárēs

mole talp·a -ae *f*

mom mamm·a -ae *f*

moment momént·um -ī *n* témporis; **at any moment** ómnibus moméntīs; **at the very moment** ipsō témpore; **at the very same moment** pūctō témporis eódem; **for a moment** paulísper; **in a moment** (*i.e.*, *presently*) statim; **just a moment ago** modo

Monday di·ēs -ēī *m* Lūnae

money argént·um -ī *n*, pecúni·a -ae *f*, numm·ī -órum *mpl*; (*of paper*) monét·a -ae *f* chartácea

money belt ventrál·e -is *n*; (*of cloth*) zōn·a -ae *f*

money order (nummárium) mandát·um -ī *n* cursuále

monitor (*comput*) monitóri·um -ī *n*, caps·a -ae *f* computátrális

monkey s̄mī·us -ī *m*, s̄mī·a -ae *f*; (*as term of abuse*) **you monkey!** s̄mia!; **monkeys chatter** s̄mīī strident

monopoly monopóli·um -ī *n*; **play monopoly** monopóliō lūdere

monosyllable *s* monosýllab·a -ae *f*

month mēns·is -is *m*

monument monumént·um -ī *n*

moo múg·iō -íre -ívi *or* -ī

mood afféct·us -ūs *m* ánimī, ánim·us -ī *m*; (*gram*) mod·us -ī *m*; **be in a good mood** bonum ánimum habére; **get over one's mood** ánimum superáre; **imperative mood**, *e.g.*, “**read!**” modus imperátfvus, ut “lege!”; **indicative mood**, *e.g.*, “**I read**” modus indicátfvus, ut “legō”; **subjunctive mood**, *e.g.*, “**although I**

read” modus subiūctívus, ut “cum legam”

moose alc·ēs -is *f*

moped autobirótul·a -ae *f*

more *adj* plūs, plūris *n*; plūr·ēs -ium *mf pl*; (*denoting greater extent of space or time; also number*) ámplius; **more (things)** plūr·a -ium *npl*; **but more of this another time** sed dē hōc áliās plūribus; **more money, strength, power** plūs pecúniae, vírium, poténtiae

more *adv* magis; **more or less** magis minúsve; **more than** magis quam; **more (less) than ... years old** māior (*minor*) ... annōs nāt·us -a -um

moreover praetérea

morning mātūtín·um -ī *n*, temp·us -oris *n* mātūtínum; **early in the morning** bene māne, multō māne; **from morning till evening** ā māne ūsque ad vésperam; **good morning!** salvē!; **in the morning** māne; **sleep all morning** tōtum māne dormíre; **the next morning** māne postrídiē; **this morning** hódíē māne

mortar harénát·um -ī *n*

mortgage *s* hypothéc·a -ae *f*; **pay off a mortgage** hypothécam liberáre; **take out a mortgage** hypothécam obligáre

mortgage *tr* hypothécā obligáre

mosquito cul·ex -icis *m*

most *adj* pleríque, pleraéque, pleraque; **most people** pleríque *or* pleríque hómínēs

most *adv* (*with verbs*) máximē; (*with adjs and advs, expressed by the superlative degree*); (*in the case of an adj in -ius máximē + positive*)

mostly (*for the most part, principally*) máximam partem; (*generally*) plērúmque

motel dēversōri·um -ī *n* vehiculārium

moth blatt·a -ae *f*

mother mā·ter -tris *f*

mother-in-law socr·us -ūs *f*

motherless mātre orb·us -a -um

motherly mātérn·us -a -um

motion mōt·us -ūs *m*; (*parl*) senténti·a -ae *f*; **approve a motion** senténtiam comprobáre; **make a motion regarding** réferō reférre réttulī relátus dē (+ *abl*); **on my motion** mē referénte; **oppose a motion** senténtiae [*dat*] obsíst·ō -ere óbstiī

motivate concitáre

motivation (for) ráti·ō -ónis *f* (+ *gen*); incitámént·um -ī *n*; **motivation to study** incitáméntum studiéndī

motive caus·a -ae *f*, ráti·ō -ónis *f*; **what was his motive in coming?** Cuius rei causā vénerat?; **he had a strong motive** magna rátiō eī erat

motor mōtóri·um -ī *n*, mōtr·um -ī *n*

motor boat scaph·a -ae *f* automatária

motorcycle autobírot·a -ae *f*

motorcyclist autobírotári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

motorist autoraedári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*), autocínētíst·ēs -ae *mf*

motor oil óle·um -ī *n* mōtóriī

mountain mōn·s -tis *m*

mountain chain mont·ēs -ium *mpl* perpétuī

mountain climbing ascénsi·ō -ónis *f* móntium (*see Chapter V*)

mountainous montuós·us -a -um, montán·us -a -um

mourn *tr* & *intr* lúg·eō -éere lūxī lūctus

mourning maer·or -óris *m*; (*outward expression of grief*) lūct·us -ūs *m*

mouse (animal) mūs, mūris *m*; (*comput*) mūs, mūris *m*, múscul·us -ī *m*; **mice squeak** mūrēs míntriunt

mouse clicker (comput) mūris pulsábul·um -ī *n*

mouth ōs, ōris *n*; (*of a river*) ósti·um -ī *n*; **I had better keep my mouth shut** táceam óptimum est; **shut your mouth!** óbserā ōs tuum!

mouthful bucc·a -ae *f*

move *tr* mōv·eō -éere mōvī mōtus **II** *intr* movēri, sē movéere; (*to change residence*) migráre

movie taeníol·a -ae *f* cínēmatográphica, fábul·a -ae *f* cínēmatográphica; **go to see (watch) a movie** taeníolam cínēmatográphicam vís·ō -ere -ī; **show a movie** taeníolam cínēmatográphicam exhíb·eō -éere -uī -itus (*see Chapter V*)

movie camera mächínul·a -ae *f* cínēmatográphica

movie projector prōiectóri·um -ī *n* cínēmatográphicum

movie screen línte·um -ī *n* látē exténtum

movie theater cínēmaté·um -ī *n*; **go the movie theater (or to the movies)** in cínēmatéum eō ire ivī

movies imágin·ēs -um *fpl* movéntēs

mow the lawn grāmen (*or* prátulum) résecō -áre -uī -tus

muffin scriblít·a -ae *f*

mug *s* (cup) pócul·um -ī *n*

mug *tr* mulcáre

mugger percúss·or -óris *m*

muggy aestuós·us -a -um

mulberry mōr·um -ī *n*

mule mūl·us -ī *m*, mūl·a -ae *f*; **mules bray** mūlī rudunt

mull over aestuáre in (+ *abl*)

mumps parōfīt·is -idis *f*

municipality mūnicipi·um -ī *n*

murder *s* nex, necis *f* (*passive in sense while caedēs is active in sense*); (*by hacking or striking*) caed·ēs -is *f*, occīsi·ō -ōnis *f*

murder *tr* (*by wicked and cruel means*) necāre; (*violently and ruthlessly*) trūcīdāre; (*by hacking or striking*) caed·ō -ere cecīdī caesus; **murder a song** cānticum lacerāre

murderer necāt·or -ōris *m*, homicīd·a -ae *mf*; (*of a father, mother, or near relative*) parričīd·a -ae *mf*

murderess necātr·īx -īcis *f*

muscle mūscul·us -ī *m*; **pull a muscle** mūsculum distōrqu·eō -ēre distōrsi distōrtus

muscle-bound mūsculīs cōntrīct·us -a -um

muscular mūsculōs·us -a -um

museum mūsē·um -ī *n*

mushroom fung·us -ī *m*; (*a choice kind*) bōlēt·us -ī *m*

music mūsic·a -ae *f*

musical mūsic·us -a -um; **musical instrument** īnstrūmēt·um -ī *n* mūsicum; **musical note** not·a -ae *f* mūsicālis

musician mūsic·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

must: I (you) must go mihi (tibi) eūndum est

mustache sūbi·um -ī *n*

mustard sināp·is -is *f*

mutter mussāre

mutual mūtu·us -a -um

my me·us -a -um

my oh my! vae miserō (-ae) mihi!

myth mūth·os -ī *m*

mythological mūtholōgic·us -a -um

mythology mūtholōgi·a -ae *f*

N

nag *tr* obiurgitāre

nail clav·us -ī *m*; (*of a finger, toe*) ungu·is -is *m*; **cut the nails** unguēs résec·ō -āre -uī -tus; **drive in a nail** clāvum fig·ō -ere fixī fixus; **you hit the nail on the head** tū rem acū tetigistī

nail *tr* (to) clāvō (*or* clāvīs) cōnffīg·ō -ere cōnffixī cōnffictus (+ *dat of that to which*); **to nail (boards) together** (tábulās) inter sē clāvīs cōnffigere

name *s* nōm·en -inis *n*; **Varrō by name** nōmine Varrō

name *tr* nōmināre; (*enumerate*) nuncupāre

nap brevis somn·us ī *m*; **take a nap** brevem somnum cāpere

napkin mapp·a -ae *f*, máppul·a -ae *f*

narcotic medicāmēt·um -ī *n* psychotrōpium

narrow angúst·us -a -um, ténu·is -is -e

narrow-minded angúst·us -a -um; **be narrow-minded** angústī ánimī esse

narrow-mindedness angústī·ae -ārum *fppl* (péctoris)

nasty (foul) foed·us -a -um; (*mean*) turpis -is -e

nation gēn·s -tis *f*

natural secūndum nātūram; (*unaffected*) incompōsit·us -a -um, simpl·ex -icis

naturally nātūrālīter; (*of course*) nempe, útpote; (*unaffectedly*) simplicit̄er

nature nātūr·a -ae *f*; (*physical world*) nātúra rerum; (*of a person*) ingēni·um -ī *n*

naughty ímprob·us -a -um; (*saucy*)
pétul·āns -ántis

naval nāvál·is -is -e

navel umbílic·us -ī *m*

navigable nāvigábi·lis -is -e

navy cōpi·ae -ārum *fpl* nāvālēs; **have a powerful navy** nāvibus plúrimum posse

near *adj* (not distant in place or time)
propínqu·us -a -um; (*neighboring*)
vícín·us -a -um (+ *dat*), prope (+ *acc*)

near *prep* prope (+ *acc*)

nearby in próximō

nearsighted my·ōps -ōpis

nearsightedness myópi·a -ae *f*

neat (*clean; elegant*) mund·us -a -um;
neat! óptimē!

necessary necessári·us -a -um; **if it is necessary for you to stay on** sī opus est tē commorāri; **if it is necessary for your health** sī opus est ad tuam valētúdinem; **it is necessary** necesse est

neck coll·um -ī *n*, cerv·ix -ícis *f* (*usually used in the plural*)

necklace tórqu·ēs -is *m*, moníl·e -is *n*;
(*of precious stones*) moníle gemmátum

necktie fōcál·e -is *n*

need desīderāre; ég·eō -êre -uī (+ *abl*, *more rarely* + *gen*); **I (you, we) need money** opus est mihi (tibi, nobīs) argéntō [*abl*]

needle ac·us -ūs *f*

needless to say quid quaeris?; quid multa?

needy in·ops -opis

negligence negligéti·a -ae *f*, incúri·a -ae *f*

negligent néglig·ēns -éntis

neigh *intr* hínn·iō -íre -iī; **neigh at** adhinníre

neigh *s* hinnít·us -ūs *m*

neighbor (*on the border*) finítim·us -ī *m* (*·a -ae f*); (*nearby or next door*) próxim·us -ī *m* (*·a -ae f*); (*one in the neighborhood*) vícín·us -ī *m* (*·a -ae f*)

neighborhood vícín·a -ae *f*

neither neu·ter -tra -trum; **that's neither here nor there** (*a matter of indifference*) susque dēque est

nephew fíli·us -ī *m* soróris; fílius frátris

nerd inconcín·us -ī *m* (*·a -ae f*)

nerve nerv·us -ī *m*; **what nerve!** O audáciam!

nervous intént·us -a -um, trépid·us -a -um

nervousness trepidáti·ō -ónis *f*, ánim·us -ī *m* trépidus

nest nīd·us -ī *m*; **build a nest** nīdificāre

net (*also comput*) rēt·e -is *n*

neuter *adj* neu·ter -tra -trum, neutrál·is -is -e; **in the neuter** neutráliter

neutral nullíus partis (esse)

never numquam; **never yet** nōndum

nevertheless tamen, nihilōsétius

new nov·us -a -um

news (*esp. brought by a messenger*) nūnti·us -ī *m*; **I just got news that** modo mihi nūntiátum est (+ *acc w. inf*); **if you happen to have any news about ...** sī quid forte novī habēs dē (+ *abl*); **if you have no news about ...** sī nihil novī habēs dē (+ *abl*); **I'll tell you when I have any news** narrábō, cum áliquid habébō novī; **is there any news?** numquid novī? **no other news** nihil praetereā novī

news broadcast nŭntiī -ōrum *mpl*
(radiophōnicī, tēlevīsicī)

newscast tēlediāri·um -ī *n*

newspaper āct·a -ōrum *npl* diūrna,
diāri·um -ī *n*; **morning (evening)**
newspaper diārium matutīnum
(vespertīnum); **newspaper article**
commentāti·ō -ōnis *f*; **weekly**
newspaper ācta hebdomadālia

newsstand diāriōrum tabērnul·a -ae *f*

next *adj* prōxim·us -a -um; **next to**
prōxim·us -a -um (+ *dat*), iuxtā (+
acc)

next *adv* prōximē; **next comes, then ...**
then ... after that unde ... dein ...
dein ... inde ...

nice (*courteous*) concīnn·us -a; (*in*
personality) lépid·us -a; (*cute*)
bell·us -a -um; **nice weather** caelum
serēnum; **it was nice of you to invite**
me, but no, thank you bene vocās,
sed tam grātia est; **it wasn't nice of**
you to say that nōn bellē fēcīstī quī
id dīxeris; **say s.th. nice** aliquid bellī
dīcere

nick: in the nick of time in ipsō artīculō
tēmporis

nickname agnōm·en -inis *n*

niece fīli·a -ae *f* sorōris; fīli·a -ae *f*
frātris

night nox, noctis *f*; **at night** noctū, dē
nocte; **at this time of night** hōc
noctis; **by night** noctū, dē nocte; **day**
and night (*continually*) per diēs et
noctēs, diem noctēmque; **every night**
per sīngulās noctēs; **from morning**
till night ā māne ad noctem ūsque;
good night (*greeting*) bene vāleās et
quiēscās; **last night** prōximā nocte;
late at night multā dē nocte; **night**
after night per sīngulās noctēs; **night**
and day (*continually*) noctēs et diēs;
one night quādem nocte; **on the**

following night prōximā (*or*
īnsequēte nocte; **(on) the night**
before last superiōre nocte; **spend**
the night pernoctāre; **till late at**
night ad multam noctem

nightclub discothēc·a -ae *f*

nightfall: at nightfall sub noctem; **till**
nightfall ūsque ad noctem

nightgown camīsi·a -ae *f* noctūrna

nightmare sōmni·um -ī *n* turbulētum;
have a nightmare sōmniūm
turbulētum pāt·ior -ī passus sum

night owl (*person*) noctis av·is -is *f*;
(*bird*) nōctu·a -ae *f*

night table mēnsul·a -ae *f* cubiculāris

nipple papīll·a -ae *f*

nitwit bārcal·a -ae *m*

no *adj* nūll·us -a -um; **no one** nēm·ō
-inis *m*; **no parking** cavē stātuās
vehīculum!; **no passing** cavē
praevehāris!; **no stopping** nē sistitō!;
no way! nūllō modō! *or* nēquāquam!

no *adv* nōn, mínimē; **no longer** nōn iam,
nōn diūtius

noble (*sentiments*) grand·is -is -e

nominative *adj* nōminātv·us -a -um

nonsense nūg·ae -ārum *fpl*; **cut out the**
nonsense! omītte (*pl*: omīttite)
nūgās! **no nonsense!** nē nūgāre!
that's a lot of nonsense nūgae sunt
istae magnaē; **you are talking**
nonsense nūgās garris; nūgāris

nonsense! nūgās! (*acc is frequent with*
exclamations)

noodle collýr·a -ae *f*

noodle soup iū·s -is *n* collýricum

noon merídi·ēs -ēī *m*; **at noon** merídiē;
before noon ante merídiēm

north *adj* septentriōnāl·is -is -e

north *adv* ad septentrionēs; **north of** *suprā* (+ *acc*)

north *s* septentrionēs -um *mpl*; **on the north** ā septentrionibus

northern septentrionalis -is -e

northward in septentrionēs versus [versus *is an adverb*]

north wind Aquilō -ōnis *m*

nose nās·us -ī *m*; **have a good nose for these things** haec fēstivē odōrārī; **under his very nose** ante oculōs

nosey cūriōs·us -a -um; **I don't want to be nosey but ...** nōn libet cūriōsus (-a) esse sed ...

nostrils nār·ēs -ium *fpl*

not nōn; *haud* (*more emphatic than nōn, and used chiefly before adjs and advs*); (*softened negative*) parum; **and not** nec, neque; **not at all** nōn omnīnō; **not bad** nōn male; **not even** nē ... quidem; **not only ... but also** nōn solum ... sed etiam; **not that** nōn quod (+ *subj*); **not yet** nōndum

note *s* not·a -ae *f*; (*short letter*) codicill·ī -ōrum *mpl*; **musical note** nota mūsica; **notes** annotatiōn·ēs -um *fpl*; **take notes** ēnotāre, annotāre

note *tr* notāre; **note down** ēnotāre

notebook libell·us -ī *m*, pugillār·ēs -ium *mpl*

note pad pugillār·ēs -ium *mpl*

nothing nihil

notice animad·vértō -vértēre -vértī -vérsus

notorious nōt·us -a -um, infām·is -is -e

noun *s* nōm·en -inis *n*; (*of an inanimate object*) vocābul·um -ī *n*

novel op·us -eris *n* fabulōsum

November mēns·is -is *m* Novēber; **in November** mēnse Novēbrī

now nunc; (*denoting emphasis and urgency*) iam; (*transitional, never in first place*) autem; **even now** etiam nunc; **just now** (*a moment ago*) modo; **now and then** subinde; **now at last** nunc tandem; **now here's the point** nunc cognōsce rem; **now ... now** modo ... modo; **now that** posteaquam (+ *indic*); **now what?** quid nunc?; **right now** (*immediately*) iam iam; **ten years from now** ad decem annōs

nowadays hōdiē, nunc

nowhere nusquam

nuclear nucleār·is -is -e; **nuclear power** vīs *f* nucleāris

nudge fodicāre

number *s* nūmer·us -ī *m*

numeral *s* nōm·en -inis *n* numerāle (ut "ūnus," "duo," "trēs" **one, two, three**)

nurse nosócom·a -ae *f*; (*male*) nosócom·us -ī *m*

nursery conclāv·e -is *n* infāntium

nursing home nosocómi·um -ī *n*

nut nux, nucis *f*; **be nuts about someone** (amōre) dēpér·eō -īre -iī alīquem; **he is a nut** nūga iste est; **he's nuts** aliēnātus est ā sē; **you're nuts** dēlírās

nutty (*coll*) bacēol·us -a -um

nymph nymph·a -ae *f* marína

O

oak *adj* rōbóre·us -a -um

oak rōb·ur -uris *n*, querc·us -ūs *f*

oats avēn·a -ae *f*

obedient (to) oboédiēns -éntis (*dat*)

object *s* (*gram*) expressed by the verb adiungī, for example, "the man" is

- the object of the verb** “hic homō”
verbō adiungitur [Note: Roman
grammarians never used the word
“obiectum” in connection with a
verb or preposition. Whereas we
would say, for example, “man is the
object of the verb” the Romans
would say “man is joined to the
verb.” See also the definition of
“modify” above.]
- object (to)** obsist·ō -ere obstitī (+ dat)
- objection: I have no objection** per mē
licet; **if you have no objection** sī per
tē licet
- object lesson** documēt·um -ī n
- obliged: I’m much obliged to you for
sending me your book** fēcistī mihi
pergrātum quod librum ad mē mīsistī
- obliging** cōmmod·us -a -um
- obscurity** ignōbilit·ās -ātis f
- obviously** manifēstō
- occasion: for the occasion** in tempus; **if
occasion should arise** sī fuerit
occāsiō
- occasionally** per occāsiōnem, subinde
- occupation (means of livelihood)**
quaest·us -ūs m; **what is your
occupation?** quem quaestum facis?
- occupy (take possession of)** occupāre;
(take by force) cāp·iō -ere cēpī
captus; **be occupied with something**
in āliquā rē versārī
- occur (take place)** incid·ō -ere -ī; (come
up) obvén·iō -īre; **that had never
occurred to me** mihi istuc numquam
in mentem vēnerat.
- ocean** ōcéan·us -ī m; **the Atlantic
Ocean** ōcéanus Atlánticus or mare
Atlánticum
- ochre** silāce·us -a -um
- o’clock: at two o’clock** hōrā diēi
secūndā (see p. 81)
- October** mēns·is -is m Octóber; **in
October** mēnse Octóbrī
- odd (strange)** insólit·us -a -um, mīr·us
-a -um; (number) impār, ímparis;
how odd! rīdículum!
- off (said of an island)** ante (+ acc); **off
(the coast of) Italy** ante Itáliam ; **be
far off** procul esse; **be a long way
off** longē abesse; **be off to** hinc áb·eō
-īre -īvi or -iī ad (+ acc); **be well off**
lócuplēs esse; **I’m off to the forum**
ego hinc mē ad forum (agō); **where
are you off to?** quō tē agis?
- offenses** delíct·a -órum npl
- offhand remark** dict·um -ī n
incūriósum
- offhand:** ex tēpore; **say offhand** de
summō pēctore dícere
- office** hon·or -óris m, magistrát·us -ūs
m; (work place) officín·a -ae f;
(teacher’s) studiól·um -ī n; **gain an
office** magistrátum (or honórem)
ádsequ·or -ī adsecútus sum
- officer** praeféct·us -ī m; **cavalry officer**
praeféctus équitum; (police) vig·il
-ilis mf
- offside: be offside** seórsum stō stāre
stetī
- often** saepe, nōnnúmquam
- oh boy!** eu!
- oh my!** vae mihi!
- oho!** eho!
- O.K.** fiat or licet; **if it’s O.K. with you**
sī tibi vidétur; **we’re O.K.** bene
habémus
- old** vet·us -eris (single-ending adj),
vétul·us -a -um; **be ... years old ...**
annōs nāt·us -a -um esse; **older**
māior nātū; **oldest** máxim·us -a nātū

old age senect·ūs -ūtis *f*, senect·a -ae *f*

old-age home gerontocómi·um -ī *n*

old lady an·us -ūs *f*; **little old lady**
anícul·a -ae *f*

old man sen·ex -is *m*

old woman an·us -ūs *f*

oldster sen·ex -is *m*

olive olív·a -ae *f*

olive oil óle·um -ī *n*

omelet lágan·um -ī *n* ex òvīs

once (*on a certain occasion*) quōdam diē; (*one time*) semel; **once I get started, I can't stop** quāndō incipiō, dēsínere nōn queō; **at once** (*immediately*) ílicō, statim; (*simultaneously*) simul; **once and for all** semel in perpétuum; **once or twice** semel atque íterum; **once upon a time** òlim

one ūn·us -a -um; **at one time** (*formerly*) òlim; **one another** inter sē; **they embraced one another** inter sē ampléxī sunt; **one and the same** ūnus et ídem; **one house** ūnae aed·ēs -ium *fpl*; **one ... the other** alter ... alter; **one would think** créderēs; **we can discuss that one on one** dē eō cōram disputāre pōssumus

one-way street vi·a -ae *f* ūnífus cursūs

onion caep·a -ae *f*

only solum, tantúmmodo (*usu. after the word it emphasizes*)

open *adj* (*not shut*) apért·us -a -um; (*candid*) cándid·us -a -um; **in the open (air)** sub dīvō

open *tr* apér·iō -íre apéruī apértus

openly própalam

opera melodrá·m·a -atis *n*; **go to see an opera** melodrá·ma vīs·ō -ere -ī

opera house theátr·um -ī *n*
melodrá·máticum

operate on sec·ō -áre -uī -tus

operating system (*comput*) systém·a -atis *n* intérnium

operation operáti·ō -ónis *f*; (*surgical*) sécti·ō -ónis *f* (*or* operátio) médica;
conduct military operations rēs ger·ō -ere gessī

operetta melodrá·máti·um -ī *n*

opinion sentéti·a -ae *f*; **express an opinion** senténtiam dícere; **in my opinion** meā senténtiā, meō iudíciō; **what is your opinion about ... ?** quid opínáris dē (+ *abl*)?

opinion poll interrogáti·ō -ónis *f*
(política)

opponent adversári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*); (*for office*) competí·tor -tōris *m* (·tríx -trícis *f*)

opposite *prep* versus (+ *acc*) (*often postpositive*), advérsum (+ *acc*), contrā + *acc*; **opposite of** ex advérsō *or* exadvérsō (+ *gen*)

optician fa·ber -brī *m* ópticus

or aut, vel; (*in double questions*) an

orange *adj* (*color*) auránti·us -a -um, lúte·us -a -um

orange māl·um -ī *n* aurántium; (*color*) col·or -óris *m* lúteus

orangeade mālī aurántiī pōti·ō -ónis *f*

orange juice aurántiī succ·us -ī *m*

orbit órbit·a -ae *f*

orchard pómári·um -ī *n*

orchestra symphóni·a -ae *f*, symphóniác·ī -órum *mpl*

ordinal *adj* ór·dinál·is -is -e (ut “prīmus” first)

organ (*anat*) vīsc·us -eris *n*; (*musical instrument*) órgan·um -ī *n* músicum

ostrich strūthiocamél·us -ī *m* (*see* **bird**)

other áli·us -a -ud

ouch! au!; ei!; oeei!

ought déb·eō -ére -uī -itus

ounce ūnci·a -ae *f*

our nost·er -ra -rum

out: out of doors forīs; **out of place: if**

it is not out of place nisi aliénūm

est; **out of fear** propter metum; **out**

of wood dē lignō; **out with it!** (*tell*

me!) cedo! (*pl: cette!*) [*an old*

imperative]; **the book is not yet out**

liber ē prēlō nōndum éxiit

outdo superáre

outdoors forīs

outfielder extérn·us cust·ōs -ōdis *mf*

outfit hábit·us -ūs *m*, sýnthes·is -is *f*

outlet (*electrical*) ēléctrica cápsul·a -ae *f*
contáctūs

outline dēlineáti·ō -ónis *f*

outline *tr* dēlineáre

output (*comput*) éxit·us -ūs *m*

outside (*direction*) forās; (*position*) forīs

outsspoken libéri·or (*gen: -óris*)

outstanding praest·āns -ántis

oven furn·us -ī *m*

over (*above*) (*with motion*) super (+

acc); (*in position*) suprā (+ *acc*); **it's**

all over! āctum est!; **over sixty years**

old māior (quam) annōs sexāgíntā

nāt·us -a; **when the battle was over**

cōnféctō proéliō

overalls encombóm·a -atis *n*

overcast nūbilōs·us -a -um, nūbil·us -a

-um; **become overcast** nūbiláre

overcoat superindūmént·um -ī *n*

over-confident nimis cōnfíd·ēns -éntis

overhead projector prōiectóri·um -ī *n*
superācapitále

overtime (*in a game*) additícium
temp·us -oris *n*

overture exórdi·um -ī *n* (*melodrámatís*)

overwhelmed: be overwhelmed with

work óbru·or -ī óbrutus sum,

tamquam flūctū, sic ópere

owl búb·ō -ónis *m*; **owls hoot** búbónēs

búbilant (*see* **bird**)

ox bōs, bovis *m*; **oxen bellow** bovēs
boant

oyster óstre·a -ae *f*

oyster bed ostreári·um -ī *n*

oyster shell óstreae test·a -ae *f*

P

pack (*e.g., a theater*) stipáre; **pack up**
the luggage sárcinās (*or* sarcínulās
or vāsa) cóllig·ō -ere collégī
colléctus

pack *s* (*of cigarettes*) capséll·a -ae *f*;
(*throng*) turb·a -ae *f*

package, packet fascícul·us -ī *m*

page págin·a -ae *f*; **at the bottom (top)**
of the page in ímā (summā) páginā

pain dol·or -óris *m*; **be a big pain in the**

neck molestíssim·us -a -um esse; **feel**

pain dolóre affíc·ior -ī afféctus sum;

be in pain dól·eō -ére -uī; **severe**

pain ingēns *or* véhemēns dolor; **stop**

being a pain in the neck moléstus

(-a) nē sis; **take pains to** óperam

dare ut (+ *subj*)

painstaking operós·us -a -um

paint *s* pigmént·um -ī *n*

paint *tr* & *intr* ping·ō -ere pīnxī pīctus

paint brush pēnicíll·us -ī *m*

painter pīct·or -óris *m*, pīctr·īx -ícis *f*

- painting** (*the art; picture*) pīctūr·a -ae *f*;
(*painting on a board*) tábul·a -ae *f*
(pīcta) (*see Chapter V*)
- pair** pār paris *n*
- pajamas** sýnthes·is -is *f* dormitória
- palate** palát·um -ī *n*
- pale** pállid·us -a -um
- palm** (*of the hand*) palm·a -ae *f*
- pancake** artolágan·um -ī *n*
- panther** panthér·a -ae *f*
- pantry** cell·a -ae *f* pēnária
- pants** brāc·ae -árum *fpl*; **hot pants**
pérbrevēs brācae fēmíneae
- pantyhose** tibiál·ia -ium *npl* brācária
- paper** chart·a -ae *f*
- paper** *adj* chartáce·us -a -um
- paperback** lib·er -rī *m* chartā contéctus
- paper clip** fibícul·a -ae *f* chartárum
- paperhanger** tapētári·us -ī *m*
- paprika** cápsic·um -ī *n*
- parachute** dēcidícul·um -ī *n*
- paragraph** parágraph·us -ī *m*, cap·ut
-utis *n*
- parakeet** psittácul·us -ī *m*
- parallel bars** hast·ae -árum *fpl*
parallélae
- parcel** fasc·is -is *m* (*or* fascícul·us -ī *m*)
cursuális
- pardon** *s* véni·a -ae *f*; **grant s.o. a**
pardon véniam álicui dare; **obtain**
pardon véniam impetráre
- pardon** *tr* ignósc·ō -ere ignóvī (+ *dat*);
pardon me for what I said ignósce
mihi, quod dīxerō
- parent** parēns -éntis *mf*
- parentage** gen·us -eris *n*
- park** *s* hort·ī -órum *mpl*, viridári·um -ī *n*
- park** *tr* (*the car*) autocinétum státuō,
statúere, státuī
- parking fee** tax·a -ae *f* statíva
- parking lot** áre·a -ae *f* statíva
- parking-lot attendant** cust·ōs -ódis *mf*
áreae statívae
- parking meter** statímetr·um -ī *n*; **put a**
coin into the parking meter
nummum in statímetrum immítt·ō
-ere immísī immíssus
- parking; no parking!** cavē státuās
vehículum
- parliament** parlámént·um -ī *n*; **member**
of parliament parláméntári·us -ī *mf*
(·a -ae *f*)
- parrot** psittac·us -ī *m*
- parse** *tr* proprietátēs (+ *gen*) dēscríb·ō
-ere dēscrípī
- parsley** petroselín·um -ī *n*
- part** *s* par·s -tis *f*; (*in the hair*)
discrím·en -inis *n*
- part** *tr* (*the hair*) discrímínáre
- part of speech** par·s -tis *f* óratiónis
- participle** participi·um -ī *n*; **past** *or*
perfect participle praetérítī témporis
participium; **present participle**
praeséntis témporis participium
- particle** partícul·a -ae *f* (*namely, the*
four parts of speech that are
indeclinable: adverb, preposition,
conjunction, interjection)
- particular** particulár·is -is -e; **in**
particular potíssimum
- partly** partim; **it is partly cloudy**
(**sunny**) **today** (caelum) hódīē est
partim nūbilósum (aprícum)
- partridge** perd·ix -ícis *mf* (*see bird*)
- party** (*side*) par·s -tis *f*, fácti·ō -ónis *f*;
(*celebration*) convívī·um -ī *n*; **give a**
party convívium dare; **throw a**

- party** convívium agitáre; **join a party** partī sē adiún·gō -gere -xī
- pass** *s* (defile) salt·us -ūs *m*; (basketball) corbifóll·is -is *m* trānsmíssus; (football) pedifóll·is -is *m* trānsmíssus
- pass** *tr* (go by) praetér·eō -íre -iī -itus; (ride by) praetér·vehor -vehī -véctus sum; (the time, life) ter·ō -ere trīvī trītus; (basketball, football, lacrosse) trāns·míttō -míttēre -mísī -míssus;
- pass a law** (rogātiónem or lēgem) pérferō pérferre pértulī perlátus; **pass around** circúm·ferō -férre -tulī -látus; **pass a test** probātiónem sustín·eō -ére -uī; **pass out** distríbu·ō -ere -uī -tus; **pass sentence** dēcérn·ō -ere dēcrévī dēcrētus; **pass the bread, please!** pórrige pānem quaesō
- ll** *intr* (of time) trānsíre; **pass away** (die) dēcéd·ō -ere dēcēssī; **it came to pass** factum est; **pass by** (go or ride by) praeteríre, praetérvehī; **pass for** (appear to be) probáre prō (+ *abl*); **pass out** (faint) colláb·or -ī collápsus sum
- passage** (in a text) loc·us -ī *m*; (across water) trānsit·us -ūs *m*
- passbook** (bank book) argentárie libéll·us -ī *m*
- passenger** vect·or -óris *m*, vectr·ix -ícis *f*
- passenger train** trām·en -inis *n* commúne
- passing: no passing!** cavē praeveháris!
- passion** cupídít·ās -átis *f*; (lust) libíd·ō -inis *f*
- passionate** árd·ēns -éntis
- passionately** efflíctim
- passive** *adj* passív·us -a -um
- Passover** Pascha *n* [indecl], Pasch·a -atis *n*
- passport** commeátus diplóm·a -atis *n*
- password** (also comput) tésser·a -ae *f*
- past** *prep* praeter (+ *acc*)
- past** *s* praetérít·a -órum *npl*; (gram) praetérít·um temp·us -oris *n*; **in the past** ántehāc
- pasta** collýr·a -ae *f*
- pastries** cuppédi·a -órum *npl*
- pastry baker** cuppēdinári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
- pastry shop** cuppēdinári·a -ae *f*
- pasture** páscu·um -ī *n*
- pathetic** elāmentábil·is -is -e
- patience** patiénti·a -ae *f*
- patient** *adj* páti·ēns -éntis
- patient** *s* ae·ger -grī *m*, ae·gra -grae *f*
- patiently** aequō ánimō
- patrician** patríci·us -a -um
- patriot** amá·tor -tóris *m* (·trix -trícis) *f* pátriae
- patriotic** am·āns -ántis pátriae
- patriotism** am·or -óris *m* pátriae
- pattern** *s* régul·a -ae *f*; (of weaving) text·us -ūs *m*
- pauper** paup·er -eris *mf*
- pave: pave the way to** viam fácere ad (+ *acc*)
- pavement** pavímént·um -ī *n*
- paw** pēs, pedis *m*
- pay** *s* merc·ēs -édís *f*; (in the military) stípēndi·um -ī *n* (see wages)
- pay** *tr* solv·ō -ere -ī solútus; **pay off** persólvere, exsólvere; **pay off a debt** débitum persólvere; **pay on time** ad tempus or ad diem dictam sólvēre; **pay out (money) to** dēnumeráre (nummōs) (+ *dat*); **pay s.o. \$20 for** dēnumeráre álicui vígintī dóllarōs prō

(+ *abl*); **pay s.o. a visit** *áliquem invís·ō -ere -ī* || **intr it pays to listen** *prétium óperae est auscultáre*

payment *solúti·ō -ónis f (pecúniae)*

pay phone *tēlephón·um -ī n nummárium*

pea *pīs·um -ī n*; **pea soup** *iūs, iūris n ex pīsīs*

peace *pāx, pācis f*; **break the peace** *pācem frang·ō -ere frēgī fractus*; **bring about peace** *pācem conciliáre*; **have peace negotiations with s.o.** *ágere cum áliquō dē pāce*; **in peace and in war** *domī et milítiae (or in milítia)*; **peace was concluded on condition that ...** *pāx convénit in eam condicióem ut ...*; **make peace with** *pācem fácere cum (+ abl)*

peach *pérsic·um -ī n*

peacock *pāv·ō -ónis m, pāv·a -ae f (see bird)*

peanut *aráchis, aráchidis f hypogéa*

peanut butter *būtýr·um -ī n ex arachídibus*; **put peanut butter on bread** *būtýrum ex arachídibus pānī adhibére*

pear *pir·um -ī n*

pearl *margarít·a -ae f*

pearl earrings *margarítae -árum fpl dependéntēs*

pearl necklace *moníl·e -is n baccátum*

peck (little kiss) *basíol·um -ī n*

pedal *pedál·e -is n*

pedestrian *ped·es -itis mf*

pedestrian crossing *tránsit·us -ūs m péditum*

pee *ming·ō -ere mīnxī mīctum; (coll) fácere*

peel *s cut·is -is f; (rind, thick skin) córi·um -ī n, cort·ex -icis m; apple*

peel *māli cut·is -is f; orange peel córium māli aurántii*

peel *tr resecáre cutem (+ gen)*

pelican *onocrótal·us -ī m (see bird)*

pen *penn·a -ae f, cálam·us -ī m scríptórius*

penalty *poen·a -ae f; pay the penalty poenās persól·v·ō -ere -ī, poenās dare*

penalty kick (from 11 meters) *ict·us -ūs m úndecim metrórurum; (from 7 meters) ictus septem metrórurum*

pencil *gráphi·um -ī n, stíl·us -ī m plúmbeus*

pencil sharpener *instrúmént·um -ī n cuspidárium*

pendulum *perpendícul·um -ī n*

peninsula *paenínsul·a -ae f*

pentathlon *pentáthl·um -ī n; win the pentathlon* *pentáthlō vinc·ō -ere vícī*

penult *s paenúltima sýllab·a -ae f*

people *hómin·ēs -um mpl; people who speak Latin* *quī Latínē loquúntur*

pep *aclácrit·ās -átis f*

pepper *pip·er -eris n*

pepper shaker *piperín·um -ī n*

pep rally *convént·us -ūs m hortátórius*

pep talk *allóqui·um -ī n hortátórium; give a pep talk to* *allóquium hortátórium habére apud (+ acc)*

percent *centésim·a -ae f*

perch (fish) *perc·a -ae f; (for birds) pértic·a -ae f*

perch *intr (on) insídō -ere insédī (+ dat)*

perfect *perféc·us -a -um*

perfectly (totally) *plānē*

perfect tense *s temp·us -oris n praetérítum perféc·tum*

- perform** (*duty*) praest·ō -āre praestitī,
fung·or -ī functus sum (+ *abl*)
- perfume** unguént·um -ī *n*
- perfume shop** tabérn·a -ae *f* unguentária
- perhaps** fortásse
- period** (*punctuation mark*) pūct·um -ī
n; (*span of time, class period*)
spāti·um -ī *n*; **in the third period**
tértiō spātiō; **I'll not give in. period!**
nōn concēdam. dīxī!; **period of life**
aet·ās -ātis *f* vītae
- periodical** periódic·um -ī *n*
- peristyle** peristýli·um -ī *n*
- perjure oneself** periūrāre
- perjury** periúri·um -ī *n*; **commit
perjury** periūrāre
- persistence** assidúit·ās -ātis *f*
- persistent** assídu·us -a -um
- person** hom·ō -inis *mf*
- personal** *adj* persōnāl·is -is -e; **personal
computer** computātr·um -ī *n*
domésticum; **personal finances** rēs,
reī *f* familiāris; **personal injury**
iniúri·a -ae *f*
- personality** índol·ēs -is *f*
- personally** *adv* expressed by ipse, per
mē, per tē, etc.
- pessimistic** infél·ix -ícis
- pester** moléstias áf·ferō -fērrē áttulī (+
dat)
- pet** dēlici·ae -ārum *fpl*; **have as a pet in**
dēliciis habēre
- pet** *tr* (*stroke*) permúlc·eō -ére permúlsī;
(*fondle*) subigitāre **|| intr** inter sē
subigitāre
- pharmacist** (*see druggist*)
- pheasant** phāsián·a -ae *f* (*see bird*)
- phew** *interj* (*gratified surprise or relief*)
ehem!; (*at a bad smell*) fu!; fī!;
- phew! what's that stench?** fī!
quidnam est iste fētor?
- phlegm** pītuít·a -ae *f*
- phobia** phóbi·a -ae *f*
- phone** (*see telephone*)
- phony** affectāt·us -a -um
- photo** (*see photograph*)
- photocopier** máchin·a -ae *f* phōtotýpica
- photocopy** *s* exémpl·ar -āris *n*
phōtotýpicum
- photocopy** *tr* phōtotýpicē dēscrībere
- photograph** *s* imág·ō -inis *f*
phōtográfica; **take photographs**
imáginēs lūce exprimere
- photograph** *tr* phōtográficē redd·ō
-ere réddidī rédditus
- photographer** phōtógraph·us -ī *m* (·a
-ae *f*)
- photographic film** taeníol·a -ae *f*
phōtográfica
- photography** phōtográfhi·a -ae *f*
- photo shop** officín·a -ae *f* phōtográfica
- phrase** *s* locúti·ō -ōnis *f*
- physical condition** córporis hábit·us
-ūs *m*
- physical therapist** iātralípt·ēs -ae *m*
- physical therapy** iātralíptic·ē -ēs *f*
- pianist** clávic·en -inis *mf*
- piano** clávicórdi·um -ī *n*; **play the
piano** clávicórdiō cánere
- pick** (*pluck*) carp·ō -ere -sī -tus; (*gather*)
leg·ō -ere lēgī lēctus; **pick (out)**
(*select*) élig·ō -ere élēgī élēctus; **pick
pockets** manticulārī **|| intr** **pick on**
(*someone*) cárpere; **pick up a
language** linguam pērbibō pērbíbere
pērbibī
- pickle** sálgam·um -ī *n*; **be in a pickle** in
angústias vers·or -ārī -átus sum

pickpocket sacculári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*),
levát·or -óris *m*

picnic cēnul·a -ae *f* subdiális; **go on a picnic** excursiōnem ad cēnulam subdiálem sūmēdam fácere

picnic basket pānári·um -ī *n*

picture pictúr·a -ae *f*, imág·ō -inis *f*

picture tube tub·us -ī *m* tēlevísíficus

pie crúst·um -ī *n*; **cherry pie** cérasa *npl*
in crústō cocta

piece frúst·um -ī *n*; (*often not expressed by any separate word, the substantive denoting the piece, e.g., pānis a piece of bread; cáseus a piece of cheese; charta, chártula a piece of paper*); **break in pieces** cōnfríng·ō -ere cōnfrégī cōnfráctus

pig porc·us -ī *m*; **pigs oink** porcī grūnniunt

pigeon colúmb·a -ae *f*, colúmb·us -ī *m*;
pigeons coo colúmbae gemunt (*see bird*)

pigeon coop columbári·um -ī *n*

pigsty suíl·e -is *n*

pill píllul·a -ae *f*

pillow cervíc·al -ális *n*

pillow case cervicális tégim·en -inis *n*

pilot *s* guberná·tor -tóris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)

pilot *tr* gubernáre

pin ac·us -ūs *f*

pinch *s* a **pinch of salt** mēnsúr·a -ae *f* salis duórum (*or* trium) digitórum; **in a pinch** (*fig*) in angústíis; (*in a doubtful situation*) in rē dúbiā

pinch *tr* vellicáre **|| intr if the shoe pinches** sī cálceus ūrit

pineapple māl·um -ī *n* pńeum

Ping-Pong mēnsális pilae lūs·us -ūs *m*;
play Ping-Pong mēnsáli pilā lúdere

pink róse·us -a -um

pipe fístul·a -ae *f* aquária; (*of an organ*)
órganī fístula

pipe organ órgan·um -ī *n* fístulīs
ínstrúctum

pitcher úrce·us -ī *m*; (*in baseball*)
coniéc·tor -tóris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)

pitcher's mound coniectóris
(coniectrícis) grūm·us -ī *m*

pitiful flébil·is -is -e; (*contemptible*)
abiéct·us -a -um

pity *s* misericórdi·a -ae *f*; **feel pity for**
commiserésc·ō -ere (+ *gen*)

pity *tr* misér·eor -éři -itus sum (+ *gen*); **I pity you** miséreor tuī (*pl*: vestrī)

pizza pitt·a -ae *f*

place loc·us -ī *m* (*pl* loc·a -órum *npl*); **at your place** (*at your home*) apud tē; **from that place** illinc; **in place of a parent** in locum paréntis; **in the first place** primum; **in the same place** íbidem; **out of place** alién·us -a -um; **take place** (*occur*) fiō fieri factus sum; **take s.o.'s place** locum alicúius ūsurpáre; **to that place** eō; **this is not the place to ...** nōn est hic locus ut (+ *subj*); **to the same place** eódem

place *tr* pónere, locáre

plain camp·us -ī *m*; **open plains** campī paténtēs

plaintiff petít·or -óris *m*, petít·r·ix -ícis *f*

plan *tr* in ánimō habére, intén·dō -dere -dī -tus

plan *s* cōnslí·um -ī *n*; **form a plan** cōnsílium ín·eō -íre -iī -tus; **make plans for the trip** cōnsílium cápere dē itínere

plane aēróplan·um -ī *n*; (*carpenter's tool*) runcín·a -ae *f*

plane *tr* (e.g., a board) runcīnāre

plant *s* plant·a -ae *f*

plant a field agrum cōnsérere

plaster *s* tēctōri·um -ī *n*

plaster *tr* (a wall) tēctōrium (parietī) indūcere

plasterer tēct·or -ōris *m*

plate pátin·a -ae *f*, catīn·us -ī *m*;
(smaller size) patéll·a -ae *f*, catíll·us -ī *m*

platform suggést·us -ūs *m*; (in a train station) crepíd·ō -inis *f* (ferriviária)

play *s* (fun) lūd·us -ī *m*; (in a theater) fábul·a -ae *f*

play *tr* (radio, television, records, tapes, etc.) ūsurpāre

play *tr* & *intr* lúdere; (an instrument) can·ō -ere cécini cantus (+ *abl* of the instrument); (records, tapes) impell·ō -ere impulī impulsus; **play a game** lūsum lúdere; **play a good game** bene lúdere; **play a trick on** lūdific·or -ārī -átus sum (+ *acc*); **play ball** pilā lúdere; **play checkers** latrúnculis lúdere; **play hide and seek** per lūsum latitāre; **play sports** dispórtibus lúdere; **play the drum** týmpanum pulsāre; **play the flute** tǐbiā cánere; **play the guitar** cítherā Hispānicā cánere; **play the organ** órganō cánere; **play the lead role** prīmās partēs agere; **play the piano** clāvicórdiō cánere; **play the role of a general** imperátōrem ágere; **play the trumpet** túbā cánere; **stop playing games** dēsiste lūdōs fácere **||** *intr* lúdere; **play up to s.o.** áliquem col·ō -ere cóluī; **play around with** (sexually) lúdere cum (+ *abl*)

player lūs·or -ōris *m*, lūs·rīx -ícis *f*

playground áre·a -ae *f* lūsória

playing card chártul·a -ae *f* lūsória

playing field camp·us -ī *m* lūsórius

playwright fábulárum scríp·tor -tóris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)

plead a case before the court causam prō tribūnālī ágere

pleasant amoén·us -a -um, iúcúnd·us -a -um

pleasantness iúcúndit·ās -átis *f*

please (in making an appeal) quaesō, sīs (= sī vīs); (informally) amábō tē; **whenever I please** quotiēscúmque (mihi) libet

pleased to meet you! mihi pergrátum est tē conveníre!

pleasing grát·us -a -um

pleasure volúpt·ās -átis *f*; **at their own pleasure** suō arbítriō; **derive great pleasure from** magnam voluptátem cápere ex (+ *abl*); **with pleasure** libénter

pleated undulát·us -a -um

plebeian plēbēi·us -a -um

plebs plēbs, plēbis *f*

pliers for·ceps -cipis *m*

plight: oh, what a sorry plight! O rem míseram!

plow *s* arátr·um -ī *n*

plow *tr* aráre

plug (electrical) spin·a -ae *f* contáctūs éléctricī

plug in adnēct·ō -ere adnéxuī adnéxus

plum prūn·um -ī *n*

plumber fab·er -rī *m* plumbárius

plummet perpendícul·um -ī *n*

pluperfect tense *s* temp·us -oris *n* plūsquamperfectum

plural *adj* plūrál·is -is -e; **in the plural** plūráliter

plural *s* multitúd·ō -inis *f*; **signifying a plural** multitúdinem significāns

plus sign crucícul·a -ae *f*

plus: consider it a plus id députā esse in lucrō; **2 plus 2 are 4** duo et duo sunt (*or* fiunt) quattuor

pocket lócul·us -ī *m*

pocketbook (*purse*) crumén·a -ae *f*;
(*small book*) lib·er -rī *m* pugilláris

pocketknife cultéll·us -ī *m* plicábilis

podium pódi·um -ī *n*, púlpit·um -ī *n*

poem poém·a -atis *n*; **write a poem** poéma fácere, con·dō -dere -didī -ditus

poet poét·a -ae *m*

poetess poétrī·a -ae *f*

poetry poés·is -is *f*

poinsettia euphórbi·a -ae *f*

point (*sharp end*) acúm·en -inis *n*; (*of a spear*) cusp·is -idis *f*; (*gram, sports*) pūnct·um -ī *n*; **at this point** hīc; hōc locō; **be on the point of ...** in eō esse ut (+ *subj*); **beside the point** nihil ad rem; **but to return to the point ...** sed ad prōpósitum ... ; **get the point?** tenésne (*pl.* tenētísne) rem?; **get to the point!** venī ad rem!; **good point** vírt·ūs -útis *f*; **it got to the point where** eō decúrsum est ut (+ *subj*); **main point** summ·a -ae *f*; **now here's the point** nunc cognósce rem; **on that point** hāc de rē; **score a point** pūnctum ferō ferre tulī látus; **that's the main point** id caput est; **the point is that I no longer care about such things** quod caput est, iam ista nōn cūrō; **up to this point** hāctenus; **what was the point of your writing to me?** quid rétulit tē mittere ad mē lítterās?; **what's the point of that?** quam ad rem istud réfert?; **what's your point?** (*what*

are you driving at?) quō evádis?; **you miss the point** nihil ad rem pértinet

point-blank: turn down point-blank omnínō repudiāre

point out indicāre, mōnstrāre

pointer (*comput*) (mūris) ind·ex -icis *m*

pointless supervácu·us -a -um, inán·is -is -e

poke (*jab*) pung·ō -ere púpugī, fodicāre; **poke fun at s.o.** áliquem élúdere

pole vaulting salt·us -ūs *m* perticárius
(*see Chapter V*)

police officer vig·il -ilis *mf*

policy ráti·ō -ónis *f*

polish *s* (*for shoes*) cērōm·a -atis *n*

polish shoes cálceōs pól·iō -íre -ívī -ítus

polite (to) cōm·is -is -e (+ *dat or ergā or in + acc*)

politeness cōmit·ās -átis *f*

political cívīl·is -is -e; **for political reasons** reī públicae causā; **political affairs** (*or matters*) rēs, rērum *fpl* cívīlēs; **political career** curs·us -ūs *m* honórum; **political science** sciénti·a -ae *f* cívīlis

politician vir -ī *m* cívīlis, fēmina -ae *f* cívīlis

politics rēs pública (*gen.* reī públicae) *f*, res cívīlis (*also plural*); **enter politics** rem públicam íneō ínfre ínívī *or* ínī; **take part in politics** in rē públicā vers·or -ári -átus *sum*

polka saltáti·ō -ónis *f* Bohémica; **dance the polka** Bohémicē saltāre

polling booth saept·um -ī *n*

polls saept·a -órum *npl*

polo alsúlégi·a -ae *f* equestris

polo shirt subúcul·a -ae *f* cum curtīs mánicīs

- pomegranate** māl·um -ī *n* grānātum
- pompous** glōriōs·us -a -um
- pond** stāgn·um -ī *n*
- pony** mann·us -ī *m*
- pool** stāgn·um -ī *n*; (*for swimming*) piscīn·a -ae *f*; (*billiards*) lūd·us -ī *m* tudiculāris; **shoot pool** glóbulōs ebúrneoōs clāvā tudiculārī super mēnsam impéll·ō -ere ímpulī
- poor** (*pitiful*) mis·er -era -erum; (*impoverished*) paup·er -eris [*single-ending adj*]; **poor guy** mis·er -erī *m*
- pop** tat·a -ae *m*
- popcorn** máízi·um -ī *n* ínflátum
- pop music** músic·a -ae *f* populāris
- poppy** papáv·er -eris *n*
- popular** grātiōs·us -a -um; **be popular with s.o.** grātiōsus (-a) esse apud áliquem
- popularity** grāti·a -ae *f*; **enjoy popularity among** grátiam háb·eō -ére -uī -itus apud (+ *acc*)
- population** multítúd·ō -ínis *f*; **the total number of the population** númer·us -ī *m* omnis multítúdinis
- porch** pérgul·a -ae *f*
- porcupine** hystr·ix -icis *f*
- pork** porcīn·a -ae *f*
- pork chop** off·a -ae *f* porcīna
- port** (*also comput*) port·us -ūs *m*
- porter** báiu·us -ī *m*
- portico** pórtic·us -ūs *f*
- position** loc·us -ī *m*; **what position do you play?** quō locō lúdis?
- positive** *s* (*gram*) grad·us -ūs *m* positívus
- possessive adj** (*gram*) possessív·us -a -um
- possible** possíbil·is -is -e; **if (it is) possible** sī fíerī potest; **is it really possible that ... ?** numquid ... ?; **is it really possible that you are telling the truth?** numquid vĕra dīcis?
- post** *tr* (*e.g., on the bulletin board*) prō·pōnō -pōnere -pōsuī -pōsitus
- postage** vectúr·a -ae *f* (litterárum); **pay the postage** prō vectúrā epístulae solv·ō -ere -ī
- postage stamp** pittáci·um -ī *n* cursuále
- postal delivery** perláti·ō -ōnis *f* cursuális
- postcard** chártul·a -ae *f* cursuális; (*with a picture*) phōtochártul·a -ae *f* cursuális
- poster** fóli·um -ī *n* mūrále
- postman** tabellári·us -ī *m*
- post office** diribitóri·um -ī *n* cursuále
- post office window** ostíol·um -ī *n* cursuále
- pot** (*of clay*) oll·a -ae *f*; (*of metal*) a(h)én·um -ī *n*; (*marijuana*) cánnab·is -is *f*; **go to pot** pessum eō íre íi; **pots and pans** vās·a -órum *npl* coquínāria; **smoke pot** fūmum cánnabis sūg·ō -ere sūxī
- pot belly** vent·er -ris *m* obésus; **have a potbelly** ventre obésō (*or* prōiectō) esse
- potato** pōm·um -ī *n* terréstre; **baked potato** pōmum terréstre ín furnō coctum; **fried potatoes** pōma terréstría frīcta; **mashed potatoes** pultícul·a -ae *f* ex pōmīs terréstribus
- potato chips** lámin·ae -árum *fpl* pōmórum terréstrium
- pottery** fictíl·ia -ium *npl*
- potty** matéll·a -ae *f*
- poultry** av·ēs -ium *fpl* cohortálēs
- pound** libr·a -ae *f*; **per pound** ín librās

power drill térebr·a -ae *f* māchinālis

power saw serr·a -ae *f* māchinālis

practically ferē

practice *s* exercitāti·ō -ōnis *f*

practice *tr* (*patience, medicine*) exerc·eō
-ēre -uī || *intr* sē exercēre

praetor praet·or -ōris *m*

praetorship praetūr·a -ae *f*

precise exāct·us -a -um

prefer mālō malle mālūi; praē·ferō
-fēre -tulī -lātus

prefix *s* praeposíti·ō -ōnis *f* per
compositiōnem

prepare (*make ready*) parāre; (*make
ready beforehand*) praeparāre

preposition *s* praeposíti·ō -ōnis *f* (per
appositiōnem); **prepositions take**
(*lit. serve*) **either the accusative or
the ablative case** praepositiōnēs aut
accūsāfívō aut ablāfívō cāsūi sērviant

prescription praecēpt·um -ī *n* mēdicum

present *adj* praes·ēns -ēntis; **at present,**
in praesentiā; **at the present time**
praesentiā tēmpore, in praesentī; **be
present (at)** adsum adēsse ádfuī
adfutūrus (+ *dat*); **for the present
time** in praesēns tempus; **present
tense** praesēns temp·us
-oris *n*

preside (over) praesíd·eō -ēre praesēdī
(+ *dat*); **preside at a trial** iūdiciō
praesēsse, iūs dīcere

president praes·es -idis *mf*

presiding judge quaesīt·or -ōris *m*,
quaesīt·ix -ícis *f*

press *s* (*for printing*) prēl·um -ī *n*;
(*journalists*) diurnāri·ī -ōrum *mpl*;
(*printed matter*) scripta *npl* typīs
ēdita; **come off the press** prēlō ex·eō
-īre -iī; **send (a work) to the press**

(opus) prēlō subic·iō -ere subiēcī
subiēcūsus

press *tr* prem·ō -ere pressī pressus;
(*clothes*) lēvigāre; (*a typewriter key*)
dēprimere || *intr* **press on** instāre;
press on and finish the job! instā,
pérfice!

press conference congrēss·us -ūs *m*
diurnāriūs docēndīs

prestige auctórit·ās -ātis *f*

presumptuous cōnfíd·ēns -ēntis

pretend: I'll pretend I don't know him
dissimulābō mē eum nōvísse; **I'll
pretend I'm leaving** assimulābō
quasi ábeam.

pretext praetēxt·um -ī *n*; **a pretext for
war** praetēxtum bellī; **he left under
the pretext that ...** hinc ábiit quasi
(+ *subj*)

pretty bell·us -a -um, béllul·us -a -um

pretty well (*just about*) propémodum

pretzel pretiōl·a -ae *f*, líxul·a -ae *f*; **soft
pretzel** pretiōla mollis

previously ántea, ántehāc, prius

prey praed·a -ae *f*

price prēti·um -ī *n*; **at a high (low, very
low, exorbitant) price** magnō
(parvō, mínimō, nímiō); **higher price**
prētium ámplius; **set a price** prētium
fācere; **the price for it is 10 denarii
per pound** prētium eī in librās est
decem dēnāriīs

pride glóri·a -ae *f*; **source of pride**
glóri·a -ae *f*; **take pride in** glóri·or
-ārī dē or in (+ *abl*)

priest sacērd·ōs -ōtis *mf*

priesthood sacerdoti·um -ī *n*

prime minister minís·ter -trī *m*
přimāriūs

- principal** (*fin*) cap·ut -itis *n*, sors, sortis *f*; **deduct the interest from the principal** dē cāpite ūsūrās dēdūcere
- principal** (lūdī *or* scholae) rēc·tor -tōris *m*, rēc·trīx -trīcis *f*; **assistant** (*or* **vice**) **principal** rēctor vicārius, rēctrix vicāria; **principal's office** rēctoris (*or* rēctricis) officīn·a -ae *f*
- principal parts** part·ēs -ium *fpl*
prīncipālēs
- print** *s* (*printed dress*) vest·is -is *f*
imāgīnibus imprēssa
- print** *tr* (*with type*) typīs imprimō
imprimere imprēssi imprēssus
- printer** (*person*) typógraph·us -ī *m*;
(*mechanical device*) máchin·a -ae *f*
typogrāphica, impressōri·um -ī *n*
- printer's** typographē·um -ī *n*
- printing** (*abstract*) typogrāphi·a -ae *f*
- printing office** officīn·a -ae *f*
typogrāphica
- printing press** prēl·um -ī *n*
typogrāphicum, typographē·um -ī *n*
- print shop** officīn·a -ae *f* typogrāphica
- prison** carc·er -eris *m*; **throw s.o. into prison** āliquem in cárcerem coníc·iō
-ere coniéci coniéctus
- prisoner of war** captív·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*); **ransom prisoners** captívōs
rédim·ō -ere redēmi redēptus
- private** *adj* prīvát·us -a -um; **in private**
in prīvātō
- private** *s* (*mil*) mīl·es -itis *mf*; gregārius
(·a)
- privately** clam, sēcrētō; **I want to speak with you privately** velim tēcum loquī sēcrētō
- prize** praēmi·um -ī *n*; **first prize**
prīmāri·um -ī *n*; **second prize**
secundāri·um -ī *n*; **win a prize**
praēmium aúferō, aúferre ábstulī
ablātus
- problem** quaēsti·ō -ōnis *f*; (*math*)
problēm·a -atis *n*; **have stomach**
(**heart, back**) **problems** stómachō
(*corde, tergō*) dól·eō -ēre -uī; **the**
problem is ... quaéritur ... ; **what's**
the problem? quid est negōtī?
- processor** (*comput*) ēditōri·um -ī *n*
- producer** chorág·us -ī *m*
- productivity** (*of fields, mines, etc.*)
fertilit·ās -ātis *f*
- profession** (*learned occupation*)
profēssi·ō -ōnis *f*
- professor** profēss·or -ōris *m*, profēstr·ix
-ícis *f*
- profit** lucr·um -ī *n*; **make profit** lucrūm
fācere
- program** *s* (*also comput*) prográmm·a
-atis *n*
- program** *tr* (*comput*) programmāre
- programmer** (*comput*) programmá·tor
-tōris *m*, (·trīx -trīcis *f*)
- progress** prōfēct·us -ūs *m*; **make**
progress prōfíc·iō -ere prōfēci
prōfēctum
- projector** prōiectōri·um -ī *n*; **overhead**
projector prōiectōrium suprācapitāle
- promise** *s* prōmíss·um -ī *n*; **break**
promises prōmissa frang·ō -ere frēgī
frāctus; **I am not making any**
definite promise nihil certī pollíceor;
keep promises prōmissa servāre;
make many promises multa
prōmíttere
- promise** *tr* prōmítt·ō -ere prōmísi
prōmíssus
- promote** prōmóv·eō -ēre prōmóvī
prōmótus; (*the arts, etc.*) fōv·eō -ēre
fōvī fōtus; (*in school*) ad superiōrem
classem prōmovēre; **promote to**

higher rank ad (*or in*) ampliōrem gradum prōmovēre

promotion prōmōti·ō -ōnis *f*

prompt (*comput*) mōnit·us -ūs *m*

pronoun prōnōm·en -inis *n*

pronounce *tr* prōnūntiāre; **pronounce a vowel short or long** vocālem corrēptē aut prōdūctē prōnūntiāre

proof documēt·um -ī *n*; (*esp. of guilt*) indīci·um -ī *n*

proofread légere et ēmendāre

proper dec·ēns -ētis, decōr·us -a -um

proper noun *s* prōpriūm nōm·en -inis *n* (ut “Hector” **Hector**) (*opp*: appellatīvum nōmen (ut “homō” **man**))

property bon·a -ōrum *npl*

propose (a law) (lēgem) ferō ferre tuli lātus

prose prōs·a -ae *f*

prosecute iūdiciō pērsequ·or -ī persecūtus sum

prosecutor accūsā·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trīcis *f*)

prostitute méretr·ix -īcis *f*, prōstitūt·a -ae *f*; **be a prostitute** prōst·ō -āre prōstitū

proud glōriōs·us -a -um; (*haughty*) supérb·us -a -um; **be proud of** glōri·or -ārī (+ *acc or dē or in + abl*)

prove (*by evidence, argument*) probāre; **this proves that ...** documētō est (+ *acc & inf*)

province prōvīnci·a -ae *f*

prune prūn·um -ī *n* condātum

psychiatric psȳchiātric·us -a -um

psychiatrist psȳchiāt·er -rī *m* (·ria -riae *f*)

psychiatry psȳchiātrī·a -ae *f*

psychic psȳchic·us -a -um

psychoanalysis psȳchoanály·is -is *f*

psychoanalyst psȳchoanályst·a -ae *m* (·ria -riae *f*)

psychologist psȳchológ·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

psychopath *s* psychopáthic·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

public públic·us -a -um; **in public** in públicō; (*opp. domī*) forīs; **appear in public** prōd·eō -īre -īī in públicum

publish ēd·ō -ere ēdidī ēditus, publicāre

publisher ēdit·or -ōris *m*; (*publishing house*) dom·us -ūs *f* ēditōria

pudding érne·um -ī *n*

pull *s* **have pull with** grātiam habēre apud (+ *acc*)

pull *tr* trah·ō -ere traxī tractus; **pull a fast one on s.o.** ōs álicui súb·linō -línere -lévī; **pull oneself together** sē cōllig·ō -ere collégī; **pull the wool over s.o.’s eyes** súbdol·us (-a) esse advērsus áliquem

pullman car curr·us -ūs *m* dormitōrius

pulse vērnarum puls·us -ūs *m*; (**fast** vegétior; **weak** languídior); **feel s.o.’s pulse** vērnas *or* pulsum vērnarum álicūius tentāre

pumpkin cucúrbit·a -ae *f*, pep·ō -ōnis *m*

punch *s* pugn·us -ī *m*; **give s.o. a punch** (*or land a punch on s.o.*) pugnum álicui dūcere

punch *tr* pugnō *or* pugnīs caed·ō -ere cecídī

punching bag córyc·us -ī *m*, foll·is -is *m* pugilātōrius

punctual dílig·ēns -ētis, prompt·us -a -um

punctually témporī, ad tempus

punctuate inter·púngō -púngere -púnxī -púnctus

punctuation *s* interpuncti·ō -ōnis *f*
punctuation mark *s* interpunct·um -ī *n*,
 punct·um -ī *n*
punish pūn·iō -īre -īvī *or* -īī -ītus; poenā
 affic·iō -ere affēci affēctus
punishment for crimes poen·a -ae *f*
 facinorum
puny pusill·us -a -um
pup cātul·us -ī *m*; **pups** whimper cātulī
 gānniunt
pupil discipul·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*); (*of the*
eye) pūpill·a -ae *f*
puppet neuropást·um -ī *n*
puppy cātul·us -ī *m*; catéll·us -ī *m*,
 catéll·a -ae *f*
purchase *s* ēmpt·um -ī *n*
purchase *tr* em·ō -ere ēmī ēmptus;
 merc·or -ārī -ātus *sum*; comparāre
purchasing ēmpti·ō -ōnis *f*
purr *intr* (*of a cat*) murmurāre
purr *s* (*of a cat*) murm·ur -uris *n*
purse crumén·a -ae *f*; marsúpi·um -ī *n*
put pōn·ō -ere pōsuī pōsitus; **put an end**
to finem impōnere (+ *dat*); **put away**
 sēpōnere; **put down** dēpōnere; **put**
off: let's put this off to another
time hanc rem in áliud tempus
 differāmus; **put on** (*clothes*) indu·ō
 -ere -ī -ītus (*opp*: exúere); **put s.o. in**
prison áliquem in custōdiam trā·dō
 -dere -didī -ditus; **put up for sale**
 vēnum dare; **put up with with s.o.**
 áliquem perpēt·ior -ī perpēssus *sum*;
put words into s.o.'s mouth verba in
 ore alicúius pōnere; **put yourself in**
my place fac quī ego *sum*, esse tē;
you're putting it on a little thick es
 pūtidiúculus (-a)
puzzle aeníg·m·a -atis *n*
pyjamas sýnthes·is -is *f* dormitória

Q

quaestor quaest·or -ōris *m*
quaestorship quaestúr·a -ae *f*
quail cotúr·n·ix -ícis *f* (*see bird*)
quarrel *intr* (**with s.o. about**) altercārī
or rīxārī (cum + *abl*, dē + *abl*)
quarrel rīx·a -ae *f*
question rogát·um -ī *n*, interrogát·um -ī
n; **ask a question** interrogāre; **ask a**
loaded question captiósē interrogāre;
ask many questions multa
 interrogāre; **answer the question** ad
 rogátum (*or* interrogátum)
 respōnd·eō -ēre -ī; **call into question**
 in dúbium vocāre; **I ask you this**
question tē hoc rogō; **many**
questions are raised multa
 quaerúntur; **no question, he's at**
fault nempe in culpā est; **that's a**
loaded question captiósium
 interrogátum est; **why do you ask**
such questions? cūr ista quaeris?;
without question sine dúbio
question mark sign·um -ī *n* interrogátī
quick cel·er -eris -ere; (*mentally*)
 astút·us -a -um
quickly cito
quiet quiét·us -a -um; (*silent*) tácit·us -a
 -um; (*taciturn*) tacitúr·us -a -um;
quiet! fac (*pl*: fácite) siléntium!;
 tacē! (*pl*: tacéte)!; **why don't you**
keep quiet? quīn tū tacēs?
quite ádmodum; **not quite** parum
quiz probātiúncul·a -ae *f* (*see exam*)
quote pōn·ō -ere pōsuī pōsitus, áffero
 afférre áttulī allátus

R

rabbi rabbín·us -ī *m*
rabbit cunícul·us -ī *m*

- race** (*lineage*) gen·us -eris *n*; (*foot race*) certām·en -inis *n* cursūs; (*horse race*) cursus -ūs *m* equórum, equíri·a -órum *npl*; (*of chariots*) currícul·um -ī *n*; (*of cars*) certām·en -inis *n* autocínētórum
- race car, racing car** autocínēt·um -ī *n* curíle
- race track** currícul·um -ī *n*, stádi·um -ī *n*; (*for horses*) hippódrom·us -ī *m*
- racket** (*noise*) strépit·us -ūs *m*; (*shouting*) clām·or -óris *m*; (*tennis*) rētícul·um -ī *n*; **raise a racket** clāmórem toll·ō -ere sústulī sublátus
- radiator** calóris radiátr·um -ī *n*
- radio** radiophón·um -ī *n*; **turn on (turn off) the radio** radiophónum excitáre *or* accénd·ō -ere -ī (expéd·iō -íre -ívī -ítus); **turn down (turn up) the radio** vim radiophónī remítt·ō -ere remísī (amplificáre)
- radio broadcast** émíssi·ō -ónis *f* radiophónica
- radio station** státi·ō -ónis *f* radiophónica
- radish** rádícul·a -ae *f*, ráphan·us -ī *m*
- raft** rat·is -is *f*
- rage** fur·or -óris *m*; **fly into a rage** irā éfferor éfferrī ēlātus *sum*
- raid** excúrsi·ō -ónis *f*
- railroad** ferrívi·a -ae *f*
- railroad car** curr·us -ūs *m* ferriviárius
- railroad station** státi·ō -ónis *f* ferriviária
- rain** *impers v* pluit plúere pluit; **rain buckets** urceátim plúere; **rain cats and dogs** cattīs canibúsque plúere; **rain hard** veheménter (*or* multum) plúere
- rain** *s* plúvi·a -ae *f*; (*heavy and stormy*) im·ber -bris *m*; **heavy, steady rain** magnī et adsíduī imbrēs; **the rain is letting up or is tapering off** imber détuméscit
- rain basin** (*in the atrium*) implúvi·um -ī *n*
- rainbow** plúvius arc·us -ūs *m*
- rain cloud** nimb·us -ī *m*
- raincoat** scórtē·a -ae *f*; (*hooded*) paénul·a -ae *f*
- rainy** plúvi·us -a -um
- raise** (*children, crops, animals*) ēducáre; (*lift up*) toll·ō -ere sústulī sublátus; (*prices*) aúg·eō -ēre auxī auctus
- raisin** (ūva) pass·a -ae *f*
- rake** *s* rastéll·us -ī *m*
- rake** *tr* rastéllō ērá·dō -dere -sī -sum
- RAM** (*comput*) memóri·a -ae *f* volátílis
- ram** ari·ēs -etis *m*; **rams bleat** aríetēs bālant
- rank** grad·us -ūs *m*
- rape** stupr·um -ī *n* per vim
- rape** *tr* per vim stupráre, stuprō violáre
- rapids** vad·um -ī *n* cándicāns
- rapist** stuprát·or -óris *m*
- rare** sēmicóct·us -a -um (*opp*: percóctus)
- rarely** rārō
- raspberry** mōr·um -ī *n* Ídaeum
- rat** mū·s -ris *m*, ratt·us -ī *m*; (*pej*) hom·ō -inis *m* nequam [*indecl*]; **I smell a rat** áliquid mihi súbolet; **like drowned rats** tamquam mūrēs ūdī; **rats squeak** rattī míntriunt
- rat on s.o.** áliquem déferō déferre détuli
- rate: at any rate** útique
- rather** pótius; (*somewhat*) aliquántō, paulō; **do you know this fellow?** huncne nōvísti? **rather!** fácie!
- ratify a bill** lēgem iúb·eō -ēre iussī iussus
- rattle off** cito volv·ō -ere -ī

- raven** corv·us -ī *m*; **ravens croak** corvī cróccitant (*see* **bird**)
- raze to the ground** solō aequáre
- razor** novácul·a -ae *f*; **electric razor** rāsóri·um -ī *n* ēléctricum
- reach** *s* out of **reach** extrā ictum; **within my reach** sub meō ictū
- reach** *tr* (*arrive at*) pervén·iō -íre ad or in (+ *acc*); **reach out the hand** manum pórrig·ō -ēre porréxī
- read** legō légere lēgī lēctus
- readily** (*willingly*) libénter
- reading** lécti·ō -ōnis *f*
- reading lamp** lamp·as -adis *f* lēctória
- reading room** oec·us -ī *m* lēctórius
- ready** parát·us -a -um, prompt·us -a -um
- real estate** rēs *fpl* solī; **piece of real estate** praédi·um -ī *n*
- real estate broker** praediá·tor -tōris *m*, (-trīx -trícis *f*)
- really** quidem, vērō
- reap** met·ō -ere méssuī messus
- reaper** mess·or -ōris *m*
- rear (end)** (*coll*) postíc·um -ī *n*
- reason** (*faculty, reasonable ground*) ráti·ō -ōnis *f*; (*cause*) caus·a -ae *f*; **for that reason** hāc dē causā; **for various reasons** multīs dē causīs; **what's the reason why ...** quid est enim, cūr ...
- reboot** (*comput*) redinitiáre
- rebut** dissólv·ō -ere -ī dissolútus
- rebuttal** dissolúti·ō -ōnis *f*
- recall** revocáre; (*to memory*) memóriā répet·ō -ere -ívi -ítus; **as I recall** ut mea memória est
- receipt** ápoch·a -ae *f*
- receiver** (*of a telephone*) auscultábul·um -ī *n*
- recent** rec·ēns -éntis
- recently** nūper, recēnter
- reception** salūtāti·ō -ōnis *f* pública; **hold a reception** salūtatiōnem públicam fácere
- recess** paus·a -ae *f*; **during (after, before)** recess inter (*post, ante*) pausam
- recitation** recitāti·ō -ōnis *f*
- recite** recitáre
- record** orb·is -is *m* phōnográphicus; phōnodísc·us -ī *m*; **play (listen to)** **records** orbēs phōnográphicōs exhíb·eō -ēre -uī (*aúd·iō -íre -ívi*)
- record player** mächínul·a -ae *f* phōnográphica; discophón·um -ī *n*
- recording secretary** (*in the Roman senate*) librári·us -ī *m*
- recover** *tr* recuperáre **||** *intr* (*recoverate*) revalésc·ō -ere, suam valētúdinem recípere; **recover from a serious illness** ē gravī morbō recreári
- recruit** *s* tír·ō -ōnis *m*; **raw recruit** tírō rudis
- recruit** *tr* **recruit troops** diléctum ágere
- recruitment** diléct·us -ūs *m*
- rectum** ān·us -ī *m*
- red** ru·ber -bra -brum; **be red** rúb·eō -ére
- red cent: I don't owe anyone a red cent** assem aerárium nēminī débeō; **I haven't a red cent** assem aerárium hábeō nullum
- redhead** ruf·us -ī *m*, rútil·us -ī *m*; ruf·a -ae *f*, rútil·a -ae *f*
- referee** árbi·ter -trī *m* (-tra -trae *f*)
- refined** hūmán·us -a -um

reform ēmendāre

refrigerator frīgidār·ium -ī *n*

regards: give him (her) my best

regards dīcītō eī plūrimam meīs
verbīs salūtem

regiment légi·ō -ōnis *f*

regimental commander legiōnis

legāt·us -ī *m*

region régi·ō -ōnis *f*

register (*at a hotel*) nōmen in tábulās

réferō reférre réttulī

regret *s* paenitēti·a -ae *f*

regret *tr* **I regret** mē paénitet (+ *gen*)

regularly assiduē

reindeer tarándr·us -ī *m*

reject a bill lēgem (*or* rogātiōnem)

antīquāre

relative *adj* relātív·us -a -um

relative *s* cognāt·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

relax sē remittō -ere remísī

relentless dīr·us -a -um

relief: be a relief levāméntō esse

relieve levāre; **relieve oneself** (*have a
bowel movement*) ventrem exonerāre

rely on cōnfīd·ō -ere cōnfīsus sum (+
dat); **relying on** frēt·us -a -um (+ *dat*
or *abl*)

remain mán·eō -ēre mānsī mānsúrus; **it
remains to** restat ut (+ *subj*)

remedy remédi·um -ī *n*; **apply a**

remedy remédium adhibēre

remember commemorāre; mēmin·ī -ísse
(+ *gen* *or* *acc*); memóriā tén·eō -ēre
-uī; **if I remember right** sī bene
mēminī

reminder: as a reminder memóriāe
causā

remote control moderātr·um -ī *n*
remótum

renown fām·a -ae *f*

rent *s* merc·ēs -édis *f*; **pay the rent for
this room** mercēdem huic cellae dare

rent *tr* condúcere; **rent out** locāre

repair shop officín·a -ae *f* reparātória

repeat répet·ō -ere -ívī -ítus, iterāre;

repeat after me eīsdem verbīs mihi
redde (*pl*: réddite)

repeatedly idéntidem

repetition repetítī·ō -ōnis *f*

reporter diurnári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

representative vīcári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

repress (*emotions*) cohíb·eō -ēre -uī
-itus

repression continéti·a -ae *f*

republican rēpúblic·us -a -um

republicans optimát·ēs -ium *mpl*

reputation fām·a -ae *f*; **bad reputation**
infāmi·a -ae *f*; **good reputation**
honést·ās -átis *f*

rescue ēríp·iō -ere -uī ēréptus

research *s* investigāti·ō -ōnis *f*,
indāgāti·ō -ōnis *f*

research *tr* investigāre, indāgāre

resentful irācúnd·us -a -um

resentment irācúndi·a -ae *f*

reservation reservāti·ō -ōnis *f*

reserve reservāre

resolute cōnfirmát·us -a -um

respect *s* observánti·a -ae *f*; **show
respect to** observāre

respect *tr* observāre

respectability honést·ās -átis *f*

respectable honést·us -a -um

respected honōrāt·us -a -um

- respectful** obs̄erv·āns -āntis
respectfully honōríficē, reverēter
responsibility for cūr·a -ae *f* (+ *gen*); **it is my responsibility to ...** est mihi cūrae (+ *inf*)
rest: the rest of the cēter·ī -ae -a
restaurant caupōn·a -ae *f*
restless inquiēt·us -a -um
restroom loc·us -ī *m* sēc̄rētus; (*public*) fórica -ae *f*, aumāti·um -ī *n*
retailer propól·a -ae *m*
retake (*e.g., a town*) recíp·iō -ere recēpī recēptus
retire (*from a job*) in ótium venīre
retirement óti·um -ī *n*; **go into retirement** in ótium venīre
return *tr* (*give back*) redd·ō -ere -idī -itus || *intr* (*go back*) rēd·eō -īre -īī or -īvī -itum
review *s* (*e.g., of a lesson*) retractāti·ō -ōnis *f*
review *tr* (*e.g., a lesson*) retractāre;
review the army exércitum recēns·eō -ēre -uī, lūstrāre
rhinoceros rhinócer·ōs -ótis *m*
rib cost·a -ae *f*
rib *tr* (*taunt*) taxāre
ribbon taéni·a -ae *f*
rice orýz·a -ae *f*
rich dív·es -itis
rich buck (*slang*) sacc·ō -ōnis *m*
riches dívíti·ae -ārum *fp*
rid: get rid of (*worries*) dílu·ō -ere -ī; (*persons*) āmól·ior -īrī āmólītus sum
ride *s* vécti·ō -ōnis *f*; **go for a ride** gestātiónem autocinētō fácere
ride *tr* (*a bike, a horse, etc.*) (bírotā, equō) veh·or -ī vectus sum
rider vect·or -óris *m*, vectr·īx -ícis *f*
ridge iug·um -ī *n*
ridiculous rídícul·us -a -um
rifle sclopēt·um -ī *n*; **automatic rifle** sclopētum automátum; **fire a rifle** sclopētāre
rifleman sclopētāt·or -óris *m*
right *adj* (*opp. of left*) dext·er -(e)ra -(e)rum; (*correct, proper*) rēct·us -a -um; **do the right thing** frūgem fácere; **on the right** ab dextrā, ā déxterā; **(to the) right** dextrórsum; **that's right** sīc est; **you're right** probē dīcis [*literally, you say correctly*], bene dīxístī or vēra dīcis.
right *adv* (*correctly*) rēctē; **right away** statim, contínuō; **right from the start** in prīncípīō ílicō; **right now** nunciam; **turn right** dextrórsum sē vértete
right *s* iūs, iūris *n*; **civil rights** iūs cīvīle; **you have every right to ...** omne fās tibi est (+ *inf*); **waive one's rights** dēcéd·ō -ere dēcēssī iūre suō
rim (*of a wheel*) vit·us -ūs *f*
rind (*thick skin of fruit*) córi·um -ī *n*
ring ānul·us -ī *m*; (*for boxing*) suggést·us -ūs *m* pugilātórius; **take off a ring** ānulum détrah·ō -ere détráxī; **wear a ring** ānulum gestāre
rise (*of a person, mountain*) surg·ō -ere surrēxī; (*of several persons, mountains*) cōnsúrgere; (*out of respect*) adsúrgere; (*of heavenly bodies*) ór·ior -īrī ortus sum; (*of a river, have its source*) (ex)órrior (ex)orírī; **the Tiber rising in the Apennines** Tíberis monte Apennínō (ex)óriēns
risk: at your own risk tuō perículō; **run the risk** perículum fácere; **take a risk** perículum ád·eō -īre -īvī

risky anceps, ancípitis

river flūm·en -inis *n*, amn·is -is *m* (*with no distinction as to size*)

river bed álve·us -ī *n*

roar (*of a lion*) rŭg·iō -īre -īi

roast *s* ass·um -ī *n*

roast *tr* assāre

roast beef búbul·a -ae *f* assa

roast pork porcĭn·a -ae *f* assa

roast veal vitulĭn·a -ae *f* assa

rob ráp·iō -ere -uī -tus; **rob s.o. of** áliquem spoliāre (+ *abl*)

robber latr·ō -ōnis *m*; (*home invader*) perfóss·or -ōris *m*

robbery latrōcĭni·um -ī *n*

robe vest·is -is *f*

robin rubécul·a -ae *f*; **robins chirp** rubéculae pírant (*see bird*)

rocket rochéť·a -ae *f*

rocking chair sell·a -ae *f* ōscilláris

role model exémpl·ar -áris *n*

roll pānicul·us -ī *m*, pānicĕll·us -ī *m*;
call roll nŏmina recitāre

roll call nŏminum recitāti·ō -ōnis *f*; **take roll call** nŏmina recitāre

rollerblade, rollerskate *intr* pedírotĭs lābor lābĭ lāpsus sum (*see Chapter V*)

rollerblades pedírot·ae -árum *fpl*

rollerskate *intr* rŏtulĭs patināre

rollerskate *s* cálce·us -ī *m* subrotátus, pátin·us -ī *m* rotális

rollerskating patināti·ō -ōnis *f* rotális (*see Chapter V*)

rolling pin fĭstul·a -ae *f*

ROM (*comput*) memóri·a -ae *f* fĭxa

Roman Rŏmán·us -a -um

Rome Rŏm·a -ae *f* (*often referred to simply as urbs*)

roof tĕct·um -ī *n*

roof tile tĕgul·a -ae *f*

room concláv·e -is *n*, cubícul·um -ī *n*;
(*small room*) cell·a -ae *f*; **room with bath** cubícul·um -ī *n* bálneō *or* lavácrō (pluviō) ĩnstrúctum

room key clāv·is -is *f* cubiculáris

roommate sóci·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*) cubiculáris

rooster gall·us -ī *m*; **roosters crow** gallĭ cŭcŭriunt, canunt (*see bird*)

rose ros·a -ae *f*

rouge purpurĭss·um -ī *n*, fŭc·us -ī *m*

rough asp·er -era -erum; (*weather*) túrbid·us -a -um; **rough guess** ĩnformāta cogitāti·ō -ōnis *f*

round (*in boxing*) congrĕss·us -ūs *m*

round up cŏg·ō -ere cŏégĭ coáctus

route certus curs·us -ūs *m*

row ōrd·ō -inis *m*; **three in a row** trĕs ex ōrdine

row *tr* rĕmigāre (*see Chapter V*)

rowboat scaph·a -ae *f* rĕmĭgera

row home aed·ĕs -ium *fpl* seriálĕs

rowing rĕmigāti·ō -ōnis *f*

rubbish! quisquĭliae!

ruckus: why are you raising such a ruckus? quid istum clāmŏrem tollis (*pl: tŏllitis*)?

rude (*character*) asp·er -era -erum

rug tapĕť·e -is *n*

rugby harpást·um -ī *n*; **play rugby** harpástō lŭdere

rugged asp·er -era -erum

rule *s* régul·a -ae *f*; **break the rule** régulam frang·ō -ere frĕgĭ fráctus;

follow (observe) the rule *régulam serváre*; **lay down rules** *régulās instítu·ō -ere -ī*

rule *tr* *reg·ō -ére rēxī rēctus*

ruler (instrument) *régul·a -ae f*
(*sovereign*) *rēct·or -ōris m*

rum *vīn·um -ī n* *Índicum*

rumor *rūm·or -ōris m*; **there's a rumor going around** *rūmor pervagátur*

rumpus: raise a rumpus *turbās dare*

run *tr* (*a business, shop*) (*negótiūm, tabérnam*) *exérc·eō -ére -uī -itus*; (*comput*) **run a program** *prográmma administráre*; **run up bills** *aes aliénum cōnfláre* || *intr* *curr·ō -ere cucurrī cursum*; **run around** *cursáre*; **run into s.o. on the street** *áliquem offénd·ō -ere -ī in platéā*; **run for (an office)** *pet·ō -ere petívī petítus*; **run low** *dēfíc·iō -ere dēfécī*; **run out (of time)** *exíre*; **run up and down** *modo hūc modo illūc cursáre*; (*comput*) **the program is running** *prográmma operátur*

running *cursúr·a -ae f*

runny nose *distillatiōn·ēs -um fpl*

runway *aeródrom·us -ī m*

S

Sabbath *sábbat·a -ōrum npl*

saber *ēns·is -is m* *falcátus*

sad *trist·is -is -e*; (*showing grief one one's face*) *maest·us -a -um*

saddle *ephípp·ium -(i) ī n*

sadness *tristítī·a -ae f, maestítī·a -ae f*

safe (from) *tūt·us -a -um (ab + abl)*; **safe and sound** *salv·us -a -um et sán·us -a -um*; **safe from danger** *tūtus ā perfcúlō*

safe-deposit box *dēpositóri·um -ī n*
syngraphárum

safety pin *fíbul·a -ae f*

sail *intr* *nāvigáre, nāve vehor vehī vectus sum*

sail *s* *vēl·um -ī n*

sail boat *scaph·a -ae f* *vēlífera*

sailing *vēlificáti·ō -ōnis f* (*see Chapter V*)

sailor *naut·a -ae m, náutri·a -ae f*

sake: for heaven's sake *obsécro (lit: I pray)*; **for the sake of** *causā (+ gen) (following the dependent genitive)*; **for your sake** *tuā (pl: vestrá) causā*

salad *acētári·a -ōrum npl*

salad dressing *see dressing*

salary *merc·ēs -édis f*; **pay s.o. a fair salary** *aequam mercédem álicui solv·ō -ere -ī solútus*

sale *vēndíti·ō -ōnis f*; **for sale, on sale** *vēnālíci·us -a -um, vēnāl·is -is -e*; **put up for sale** *vēnum dare*; **this house is for sale** *hae aedēs sunt vēnālēs*

saleslady (in a shop) *tabernári·a -ae f*;
(*in a clothing store*) *vestiári·a -ae f*

salesman (in a shop) *tabernári·us -ī m*;
traveling salesman *ínstit·or -ōris m*

saliva *salív·a -ae f*

salmon *salm·ō -ōnis m*

saloon *tabérn·a -ae f* *pōtória*

salt *sāl, salis n*

salt shaker *salín·um -ī n*

same *īdem éadem ídem (gen: eíusdem for all genders)*; **it's all the same to me** *meā nihil ínterest*; **the same thing** *ídem*

sandal (w. covered toes) *sandáli·um -ī n*;
(*simplest form of sandal, with the*

sole fastened to feet with thongs
 sóle·a -ae f; (*with thick leather sole,
 tied with straps, characteristically
 worn by Greeks*) crépid·a -ae f

sand trap (golf) harēnāri·a -ae f

sandwich pastíll·um -ī n fartum; **ham
 sandwich** pastíllum pernā fartum

sarcasm dicácit·ās -átis f

sarcastic dicácul·us -a -um, dic·āx -ácis

sardine sard·a -ae f

sash zōn·a -ae f

satisfaction: to your satisfaction ex tuā
 senténtiā

satisfied contént·us -a -um

satisfy satis fácere (+ dat); (*hunger,
 thirst*) expl·eō -ére -évī -étus; **you
 can't satisfy everyone** nōn potes
 ómnibus satis fácere

Saturday di·ēs -étī m Sātúrnī

sauce iūs, iūris n; (*a dressing, esp. one
 made with vinegar*) embámm·a
 -atis n

saucer páter·a -ae f

sauna sūdātóri·um -ī n

sausage farcím·en -inis n

save (*also comput*) serváre

savings account cómput·us -ī m
 conditórius

savings bank argentári·a -ae f pecúliis
 asservándīs

saw s serr·a -ae f

saw tr serrā sec·ō -áre -uī -tus || *intr*
 serram dúcere

saxophone saxophón·um -ī n

say dic·ō -ere dīxī dictus; **say hello to
 Rose** iubē (*pl iubéte*) Rosam salvére;
so they say ita aiunt

scale s (*of a fish*) squām·a -ae f; (*for
 weighing*) trútín·a -ae f

scale tr (*a fish*) dēsquāmáre

scaly squāmós·us -a -um

scam fraus, fraudis f

scammer fraudá·tor -tóris m (·trīx -trícis
 f)

scan (*poetry, also comput*) tr scand·ō
 -ere -ī scānsus; (*read over quickly*)
 cito perlégere

scandalous flāgitiós·us -a -um

scanner (*comput*) scānsóri·um -ī n

scare térr·eō -ére -uī -itus

scared térrit·us -a -um; **I am scared to
 death** exanimátus (-a) metū sum

scarf amictóri·um -ī n (colláre)

scenery aspéct·us -ūs m regiónis; (*theat*)
 apparát·us -ūs m scaénicus

schedule hōrári·um -ī n; **bus schedule**
 hōrarium autoraedárum longárum;
flight schedule hōrarium
 aëroplanórum; **train schedule**
 hōrarium tráminum

scholar ērudít·us -ī m (·a -ae f)

scholarly ērudít·us -a -um

school adj (*of or at a school*) scholár·is
 -is -e

school lūd·us -ī m; (*advanced*) schol·a
 -ae f; **attend school** scholam
 fréquentáre; **go to school** scholam
 óbeō obíre obīī or obívī; **skip school**
 íncsciīs paréntibus ā scholā abesse

school book lib·er -rī m scholáris

schoolboy discípul·us -ī m

school building aedifici·um -ī n
 scholáre

schoolgirl discípul·a -ae f

schoolmate condiscípul·us -ī m (·a -ae f)

school supplies ínstrúment·um -ī n
 scholáre

scissors forf·ex -icis f

- scold** obiurgāre
- scolding** obiurgāti·ō -ōnis *f*; **get a scolding** obiurgārī
- scooter** bírot·a -ae *f* pede pulsa
- scorching sun** flagrantíssimus sōl *m*
- score** *s* stat·us -ūs *m*, summ·a -ae *f* pūctōrum; (*in golf*) summa íctuum; **final score** status finális; **he doesn't know what the score is** (*fig*) nescit quid agátur; **keep score** ratiónem notāre; **the score is tied** summae pūctōrum sunt parēs
- score a goal** (*soccer*) follem pede pulsāre; (*lacrosse*) pilam per portam iáci·ō -ere iēcī iactus; **score a point** pūctum ferō ferre tulī lātus; **score a touchdown** calcem (*or* crētam) attíng·ō -ere áttigī attáctus
- scorn** contépti·ō -ōnis *f*
- scorpion** scórpi·ō -ōnis *m*; **scorpions sting** scropiōnēs ícunt
- scot-free: get off scot-free** impunít·us (-a) dímítt·or -ī dímíss·us (-a) sum
- scram!** ápage!
- scrape: scrape together the money** argéntum con·rādō -rādere -rāsī -rāsus
- screen** (*on television or computer*) quadr·um -ī *n* vísíficum; (*movie screen*) línte·um -ī *n* cínēmato·gráphicum
- screenplay** scrípt·um -ī *n* scaenárium
- screw** cóchle·a -ae *f*
- screw** (*cheat*) dēfraudāre; (*sexually*) dēbattúere
- screwdriver** cochleatórstr·um -ī *n*
- scribble** cōnscrībílāre
- scroll down** (*comput*) dēvól·ō -ere -ī
- scrub** térg·eō -ēre tersī tersus
- sculptor** sculpt·or -ōris *m*
- sculptress** sculpt·rīx -ícis *f*
- sculpture** sculptúr·a -ae *f*
- sea** mar·e -is *n*
- seacoast** ōr·a -ae *f* marítima
- sea gull** gávi·a -ae *f*
- seahorse** hippocámp·us -ī *m*
- seal** (*an envelope*) conglūtínāre
- seal** sign·um -ī *n*; (*of the sea*) phōc·a -ae *f*
- seam** sūtúr·a -ae *f*
- seamstress** (*making clothes*) vestífic·a -ae *f*; (*altering clothes*) sarcinātr·īx -ícis *f*
- searchlight** lūminár·e -is *n*
- seashore** act·a -ae *f*
- season** *s* temp·us -oris *n* annī; **in season** tempestív·us -a -um
- season** *tr* cónd·iō -íre -ívī *or* -iī -ítus
- seasoning** condímént·um -ī *n*
- seat** sēd·ēs -is *f*; (*on a fixed bench or chair*) sedíl·e -is *n*; (*in school*) subsélli·um -ī *n* (scholáre); **back seat** sēdēs postérior; **front seat** sēdēs antérior; **reserved seat** sēdēs reserváta
- seatbelt** cinctúr·a -ae *f* sēcūritátis; **fasten** (*or put on*) **one's seatbelt** cinctúram accín·gō -gere -xī -ctus; **unfasten one's seatbelt** cinctúram sēcūritátis laxāre
- second** *adj* secúnd·us -a -um
- second** *s* (*of time*) secúnd·a -ae *f*
- secretary** sēcŕētári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*); **corresponding secretary** ab epístulīs
- secretary of agriculture** adminíst·er -rī *m* agricultúrae prōvehendae
- secretary of education** adminíst·er -rī *m* ēruditiōnis

secretary of state adminíst·er -rī *m*
rērum externārum

secretary of the interior adminíst·er -rī
m rērum internārum

secretary of the treasury adminíst·er -rī
m fiscālis

section (of a city) régi·ō -ónis

seductive illecebrós·us -a -um

see vídeō vidére vīdī vīsus; (*look at*)
aspíc·iō -ere aspéxī aspéctus; **I see** (*I*
understand) iam téneō; **see again**
revidére; **see to it that** cūrā (*pl*:
cūrāte) ut (+ *subj*); **you see**
[*parenthetical*] enim

seem víd·eor -éři vīsus sum

self: he was not his usual self nōn fuit
cūius modī solet

self-confidence fidúci·a -ae *f*

self-confident cōnfíd·ēns -éntis; **be self-**
confident sibi cōnfíd·ō -ere cōnfísus
sum

self-control abstinénti·a -ae *f*

self-controlled comp·os -otis suī

self-respect dígnit·ās -átis *f*

sell vënd·ō -ere vëndidī vënditus; (*of a*
merchant) vënditāre

seller vëndit·or -óris *m*, vënditr·ix -ícis *f*

semester seméstr·e -is *n*

seminar sēminári·um -ī *n* académicum

senate senát·us -ūs *m*

senate building cúri·a -ae *f*

senate session senát·us -ūs *m*; **call**
(hold) a senate session senátum
vocāre (*habére*)

senator senát·or -óris *mf*

senatorial senátóri·us -a -um

senior séni·or -óris *mf*

sense of duty, of responsibility píet·ās
-átis *f*

sensible prúd·ēns -éntis; **be sensible**
sáp·iō -ere

sentence *s* (*gram*) sentéti·a -ae *f*,
ōráti·ō -ónis *f*; (*leg*) iúdici·um -ī *n*;
pass sentence on iúdícium fácere *dē*
(+ *abl*)

separate sēparāre

September mēns·is -is *m* Septēber; **in**
September mēnsē Septēbrī

sergeant ópti·ō -ónis *mf*

serious grav·is -is -e; **are you serious?**
sēriōne dícis tū?

seriousness grávit·ās -átis *f*

sermon homíli·a -ae *f*; **give a sermon**
homíliam habére

serpent serp·ēns -éntis *m*; **serpents bite**
(*crawl, hiss*) serpéntēs ícunt (*serpent,*
síbilant)

serve *s* (*tennis*) dēiéc·us -ūs *m*

serve *tr* (*a person*) sérv·iō -íre -īī (+
dat); (*food*) appón·ō -ere appósui
appósitus; (*mil*) stípéndia fácere,
(*stípéndium*) mér·eō -ére -uī; **serve a**
summons on diem dare (+ *dat*);
serve one's country dē rē públicā
merére **|| intr** (*tennis*) dēic·iō -ere
dēiécī; **serve as a soldier or sailor**
(*ut*) míles aut nauta merére

service: be at s.o.'s service álicui
praestō esse; **be of service to s.o.**
álicui prōsum prōdesse prōfui

serviceman militár·is -is *m*

service station státi·ō -ónis *f* benzínária

set *s* (*e.g., of tools*) ínstrúment·um -ī *n*

set *tr* (*to put*) pōn·ō -ere posui pósitus;
set a price prétium fácere *or* státu·ō
-ere -ī statútus; **set aside** pōnere; **set**
on fire incénd·ō -ere -ī incēnsus; **set**
the table mēnsam pōnere **|| intr** (*of*

- the sun*) óccid·it -ere -it; **set out** profic̄isc·ōr -ī profēctus sum
- seventh heaven: be in seventh heaven** in caelō esse
- sew** su·ō -ere -ī sūtus
- sewing machine** máchin·a -ae f sūtória
- sex** (*gender*) sex·us -ūs m; (*act*) stupr·um -ī n; **have sex with** stuprum fácere cum (+ abl)
- sh-h-h-h!** st, st!
- shabby** sórdid·us -a -um
- shake** quat·iō -ere (*no perf*) quassus; (*get rid of*) amól·ior -īrī -ītus sum; **shake the head** nūtāre; (*to dissent*) ábnūtāre; **shake hands** dextrae iúngere dextram *or* dextram iúngere (cum áliquō); (*when campaigning*) manūs prēnsāre; **shake up** commóv·eō -ēre commóvī commótus, perturbāre
- shallow** ténu·is -is -e
- shame** ignōmíni·a -ae f; **shame on you!** prō pudor!; **that's a darn shame** édepol fácinus ímprobum; **what a shame!** fácinus indígnum!; O rem indígnam!
- shameful** ignōminiós·us -a -um
- shameless** ímprob·us -a -um
- shampoo** lómént·um -ī n capillāre
- shape** fōrm·a -ae f; **be in bad (good)** **shape** malī (bonī) hábitus esse, in malō (bonō) hábitu esse
- share** (*stock*) ácti·a -ae f
- shark** pistr·is -is m; **a shark's dorsal fin** pistris pinn·a -ae f dorsális
- shave** s rāsúr·a -ae f
- shave** tr rād·ō -ere rāsī rāsus; **shave every day** fáciem cōtídiē rāsítāre
- shed tears** lácrimās effúnd·dō -ere effúdi
- sheep** ov·is -is f
- sheer** (*fabrics*) rall·us -a -um
- sheet** (*of paper*) sched·a -ae f, fóli·um -ī n chartáceum; (*for the bed*) strágul·um -ī n línteum
- shell** (*of clam, oyster*) test·a -ae f; (*of turtle*) testúd·ō -inis f; (*of peanut, egg*) putám·en -inis n
- shepherd** pāst·or -óris m
- sheriff** geraéf·a -ae m (·ria -riae f)
- shifting** (*wind, weather*) vári·us -a -um
- shifty** móbil·is -is -e; **shifty like the wind** ventós·us -a -um
- shinbone** tíbi·a -ae f
- shine** lúç·eō -ēre lúxī; **shine on** illúcēre (+ dat)
- ship** s nāv·is -is f
- ship** tr déveh·ō -ere dēvéxī dēvéctus
- shipyard** nāvál·ia -ium npl
- shirt** indúsi·um -ī n, camísi·a -ae f
- shiver** intr trem·ō -ere -uī
- shiver** s trem·or -óris m; (*severe*) membrórum quassáti·ō -ónis f
- shock** élétricus íct·us -ūs m
- shock** (*emotionally*) áttōn·ō -áre -uī -itus
- shoe** (*worn with toga*) cálce·us -ī m; (*oxfords*) cálceus subtālāris; (*fancy low shoe, of different colors, gold, yellow, decorated with pearls, etc.*) socc·us -ī m, sóccul·us -ī m; (*red shoes of senator*) cálceus múlleus
- shoelace** corrígi·a -ae f
- shoemaker** sūt·or -óris m
- shoemaker's shop** sūttrín·a -ae f
- shoe polish** cēróm·a -atis n sūtórium
- shoe store** tabérn·a -ae f sūttrína
- shook: all shook up** vehemēnter perturbát·us -a -um

shoot (*a person*) sclopétō trānsfīg·ō -ere trānsfīxī trānsfīxus; **I shot myself in the foot** mihi ásciam in crūs impégī

shop *s* tabérn·a -ae *f*; (*workshop*) officín·a -ae *f*

shop *intr* (*at a grocery store*) obsōnáre; **go shopping** ēmptum eō ire īvī; **I shopped for clothes** per tabérnās lustrāvī ut vestēs émerem

shopkeeper tabernári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

shopper ēmpt·or -óris *m*, ēmpt·īx -ícis *f*; (*for groceries*) obsōnát·or -óris *m*, obsōnát·īx -ícis *f*

shopping émpti·ō -ónis *f*; (*for groceries*) obsōnát·us -ūs *m*

shop window fenéstr·a -ae *f* mercátória

shore ōr·a -ae *f* marítima

short *adj* brev·is -is -e; (*vowel*) corrépt·us -a -um

short *s* in **short** in summā, ad summam

shortcut compendári·a -ae *f*; **take a shortcut** compendáriā eō ire īī

shorts subligácul·um -ī *n*; (*street wear*) decurtátae brác·ae -árūm *fpl*

shortstop intermédius basiári·us -ī *m*, intermédia basiári·a -ae *f*

shorty brevícūl·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*), pūmíli·ō -ónis *mf*

shotgun focíl·e -is *n* (bifistulátum)

shoulder (h)úmer·us -ī *m*; **shrug the shoulders** úmerōs allevāre

shoulder bag pēr·a -ae *f*

shoulder blade scápul·a -ae *f*

shovel pāl·a -ae *f*

show mōnstrāre, ostén·dō -dere -dī -sus or -tus; **show off** sē iactāre; **show up** appár·eō -ére -uī; **this shows that ...** indicíō est (+ *acc* & *inf*)

shower balnéol·um -ī *n* plúvium; (*rain*) im·ber -bris *m*; **take a shower** balnéolō plúviō ūtor ūtī ūsus sum

shrewd astút·us -a -um, cállid·us -a -um

shrimp squill·a -ae *f*; (*a little guy*) pūmíli·ō -ónis *mf*

shrine sacrári·um -ī *n*

shrub frūt·ex -icis *m*

shuffle (*cards*) mísc·eō -ére -uī mīxtus

shun publicity forum ac lūcem fúg·iō -ere fūgī

shut claud·ō -ere clausī clausus; **shut down** (*comput*) claudere; **shut up!** óbserā ōs tuum!; **why don't you just shut up?** quīn tū tacēs modo?

shutter forícūl·a -ae *f*

shy tímíd·us -a -um

sick (*of body or mind*) ae·ger -gra -grum; (*of body*) aegrót·us -a -um; **get sick in morbum** íncid·ō -ere -ī; **I am sick and tired of hearing the same thing over and over** (mē) valdē pertaédet iam audīre éadem idéntidem; **I am sick and tired of the business** mē negótī valdē pertaédet

sickly male válid·us -a -um

sickness morb·us -ī *m*

side *intr* **side with** stāre ab (+ *abl*), partēs (+ *gen*) sequ·or -ī secútus sum

side *s* (*of a body, hill, camp, ship, etc.*) lat·us -eris *n*; (*quarter, direction*) par·s -tis *f*; (*faction*) part·ēs -ium *fpl*; (*party*) par·s -tis *f* (*mostly plural*); **be on the side of** stāre ab (+ *abl*), sént·iō -íre sēnsī cum (+ *abl*); **from** (*or on*) **all sides** úndique; **on both sides** utrímque; **on his mother's side** mātérnō génerē; **on the other side of** ultrā (+ *acc*); **on the right side of** ā

- látère dextrō (+ *gen*); **on this side of** cis or citrā (+ *acc*)
- sideline** (*sports*) líne·a -ae *f* laterális
- side street** dēvertícul·um -ī *n*, vi·a -ae *f* laterális, via secundária
- sidewalk** crepíd·ō -inis *f* viária
- sieve** cribr·um -ī *n*
- sigh** *s* gémit·us -ūs *m*
- sigh** *intr* gem·ō -ere -uī -itum; **sigh over** gémere
- sight** (*sense*) vīs·us -ūs *m*; **at first sight** (*on the first appearance of a person or thing*) primā spēcīē; (*view subjectively*) primō aspéctū; **catch sight of** cōspíc·iō -ere cōspéxī; **lose sight of** ē cōspéctū amítt·ō -ere amísī
- sign** (*a document*) subscríb·ō -ere subscrípsī subscríptus
- silence** silénti·um -ī *n*; **call for silence** siléntium fácere
- silent** tácit·us -a -um; **become** (*or fall*) **silent** conticésc·ō -ere; **be silent** tác·eō -ére -uī; **keep s.th. silent** áliquid tacére
- silk** *adj* séric·us -a -um; **silk clothes** séric·a -órum *npl*
- silk** *s* séric·um -ī *n*
- silliness** inépti·a -ae *f*
- silly** dēsípi·ēns -éntis; **be silly** dēsíp·iō -ere, inépt·iō -ire; **don't be silly** nōlī ineptíre
- silverware** argénte·a -órum *npl*
- simple** simpl·ex -icis [*single-ending adj*]
- simply** (*in a simple manner; merely*) simplíciter; (*only*) tantúmmodo; **I simply don't know what he is thinking of** iam plānē quid cōgitet nésciō; **simply not** nōn omnínō
- since** *conj* (*because*) quia, quóniam, cum; **since** (*temporal*) ut (+ *indic*), postquam (+ *indic*), ex quō témpore (+ *indic*)
- since** *prep* ex (+ *abl*), ab (+ *abl*); **ever since** ūsque ab (+ *abl*), ex quō témpore
- sincere** sincér·us -a -um
- sing** canō cánere cécinī cantus, cantáre
- singer** cantát·or -óris *m*, cantátr·ix -ícis *f*
- single** sōl·us -a -um; (*unmarried male*) caeleb·s -is; (*unmarried female*) innúpta
- single room** cubícul·um -ī *n* uníus lectī
- singular** *adj* singulár·is -is -e (*opp: plūrál·is -is -e*); **in the singular** singuláriter
- sink** (*in a bathroom*) labéll·um -ī *n*; (*in a kitchen*) fusóri·um -ī *n*
- sip** sorbilláre
- sir!** bone vir!; (*to a superior*) dómine!
- sister** sor·or -óris *f*; **little sister** sorórcul·a -ae *f*
- sister-in-law** glos, glōris *f*; (*sister of husband*) soror -óris *f* marítī; (*wife of brother*) ux·or -óris *f* frātris
- sit** séd·eō -ére sēdī sessúrus; **sit down** cōnsíd·ō -ere cōnsédī; **sit up!** rēctē sedē (*pl: sedéte!*)
- site** sit·us -ūs *m*, loc·us -ī *m* (*pl: loc·a -órum npl*)
- sitting room** exédr·a -ae *f*, sessóri·um -ī *n*
- situated** sit·us -a -um; **situated on, near** appósit·us -a -um (+ *dat*)
- situation: that's the situation here in Rome** híc Rōmae rēs sē sic habent; **you see what the situation is** vidēs quō in locō haec rēs sit

- situps: do situps** idéntidem resíd·eō -éře reséđi
- size** magnítúd·ō -inis *f*, amplitúd·ō -inis *f*
- skate** *intr* (rótulīs) patináře
- skate** *s* cáłce·us -ī *m* subrotátus (*see Chapter V*)
- skateboard** tábul·a -ae *f* subrotáta
- skater** patináť·or -óris *m*, patináťr·īx -ícis *f*
- skating** *s* patináťi·ō -ónis *f*
- ski** *intr* nartáře
- ski** *s* nart·a -ae *f*; **put on skis** nartās péđibus aptáře, nartās adstrín·gō -gere -xī; **take off the skis** nartās dēstrínġere; **wax the skis** nartās inceráře (*see Chapter V*)
- ski boot** cálig·a -ae *f* nartātória
- ski instructor** nartándī magís·ter -trī *m* (·tra -trae *f*)
- ski jump** suggést·us -ūs *m* dēsultórius
- ski jumping** dēsultúr·a -ae *f* nartātória
- ski lift** anabáťhr·um -ī *n* nartātórium
- ski lodge** cas·a -ae *f* nartátórum
- ski pole** bácul·um -ī *n* nartátórium
- ski run** currícul·um -ī *n* nartátórium
- ski slope** clīv·us -ī *m* nartátórius, nartātória dēcúrsi·ō -ónis *f*
- skier** nartát·or -óris *m*, nartáťr·īx -ícis *f*
- skiing** *s* nartáťi·ō -ónis *f*
- skill** artífici·um -ī *n*
- skilled** cállid·us -a -um
- skillful** artificiós·us -a -um; **skillful in** scīt·us -a -um (+ *gen*)
- skillfulness** callídít·ās -átis *f*
- skin** cut·is -is *f* (**pale** pállida; **dry** árida; **soft** móllis; **tough** dūra; **wrinkled** rŭġósa)
- skirt** gunn·a -ae *f*, cástul·a -ae *f*
- skull** calvári·a -ae *f*; **I'll break your skull** dimínuam ego tibi caput
- skunk** vivérr·a -ae *f* pútida; (*slang*) hom·ō -inis *mf* pútíd·us (-a)
- sky** cael·um -ī *n*
- skycap** (*at airport*) bául·us -ī *m*
- skylight** complúvi·um -ī *n*
- skyscraper** multizóni·um -ī *n*
- slalom** dēcúrsi·ō -ónis *f* flexuósa
- slam dunk** tuxtax immíssi·ō -ónis *f*
- slap** *s* álap·a -ae *f*
- slap** *tr* álapam dare (+ *dat*)
- sled** tráhe·a -ae *f*, sclóđi·a -ae *f* (lŭsória)
- sledgehammer** marc·us -ī *m*
- sleep** *intr* dórm·iō -íře -ívī or -iī -ítum; **go to sleep** dormítum eō íře iī or ívī; (*doze off*) obdormísc·ō -ere, obdormívī; **put to sleep** in sumnum collocáře
- sleep** *s* somn·us -ī *m*; **deep sleep** sop·or -óris *m*
- sleeping bag** sacc·us -ī *m* dormitórius
- sleeping car** curr·us -ūs *m* dormitórius
- sleepwalk** dórmíēns ambuláře
- sleepy** somniculós·us -a -um
- sleet** im·ber -bris *m* grándine mīxtus
- sleeve** (*reaching to the hand*) mánic·a -ae *f*; **with long sleeves** manicát·us -a -um
- sleeveless** sine mánicīs
- sleigh** tráhe·a -ae *f*; **go sleigh riding** tráheā veh·or -ī vectus sum
- slice** segmént·um -ī *n*
- slide** *intr* lāb·or -ī lāpsus sum
- slide** *s* imág·ō -inis *f* trāslúcida; **show slides** imáġinēs trāslúcidās exhíb·eō -éře -uī -itus

- slide projector** prōiectōri·um -ī *n*
imāginum trānslūcidārum
- slim** grācil·is -is -e (*opp.*: obēsus)
- slip** *s* (clothing) indūcul·a -ae *f* infērior,
hypožōni·um -ī *n*; (*of paper*)
schēdul·a -ae *f*; (*error*) peccāt·um -ī
n; **a slip of the tongue** laps·us -ūs *m*
linguae
- slip** *tr* (*give furtively*) fūrtim dare; **it
slipped my mind** ē memoriā ēxcidit;
it slipped my mind to ... fūgit mē
(+ *inf*) **|| intr** lāb·or -ī lāpsus sum;
(*leave furtively*) **slip out** sē subdūcere
- slipper** socc·us ī *m*; (*of felt*) ūd·ō -ōnis
m
- slippery** lūbric·us -a -um
- slope** *intr* verg·ō -ere; **sloping toward
the sea** vergēns ad mare
- slope** *s* clīv·us -ī *m*; **steep (gentle) slope**
ārduus (lēnis) clīvus
- sloppy** (*weather*) spurc·us -a -um;
(*person*) néglig·ēns -éntis; (*road*)
lutulént·us -a -um
- slow** *adj* (*physically, mentally*) lent·us -a
-um; **slow to learn** segn·is -is -e
- slow down** cursum réprimō reprimere
représsī
- sluggish** heb·es -etis; **be sluggish**
héb·eō -ére
- sly** astūt·us -a -um; **on the sly** clam
- small** parv·us -a -um; párvul·us -a -um
- smaller** min·or -or -us
- small-mindedness** humílit·ās -átis *f*
- smallpox** variol·ae -ārum *fpl*; **have
smallpox** variolīs labōrāre; **smallpox
vaccination** variolārum vaccināti·ō
-ōnis *f*
- smart** (*clever*) cállid·us -a -um;
(*talented*) ingeniōs·us -a -um;
(*impertinent*) ínsol·ēns -éntis; **don't**
- talk smart to me** nōlī male mihi
dícere; **she is smart** ingeniōsa est
- smell** (*sense*) odōrāt·us -ūs *m*; (*odor*)
od·or -ōris *m*
- smell** *tr* olfác·iō -ere olfēci **|| intr** (*good,
bad*) (bene, male) ól·eō -ére -uī;
(*stink*) obolére
- smile** subríd·eō -ére subrísi
- smoke** fumāre; (*a cigarette, cigar,
marijuana*) fūmum (sigarēllī, sígarī,
cānnabis) sūg·ō -ere sūxī
- smoker** fūmā·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -ícis *f*)
- smooth-talking** blandíloqu·us -a -um
- smug** cōnfíd·ēns -éntis
- smugness** cōnfidēnti·a -ae *f*
- snack** merénd·a -ae *f*; **have a snack**
meréndam cápere
- snack bar** vorātrín·a -ae *f*
- snail** cóchle·a -ae *f*
- snake** angu·is -is *mf*
- snarl** (*of an animal*) gánn·iō -íre
- sneakers** cálcē·ī -ōrum *mpl* gýmnici
- sneak off** clānculum áb·eō -íre ábiī
- sneeze** *intr* stérnu·ō -ere -ī
- sneeze** *s* sternūmént·um -ī *n*
- sniff** *s* get a sniff of olfácere
- sniff** *tr* **sniff out** (*e.g., trouble*) odór·or
-ári -átus sum
- snobbish** fastídiós·us -a -um
- snore** stert·o -ere
- snow** *impers* *v* ningit níngere nīnxit
- snow** *s* nix, nivis *f*
- snowball** pil·a -ae *f* nívea
- snowdrift** agg·er -eris *m* níveus
- snowed: I am snowed under with**
óbru·or -ī óbrutus, tamquam fluctū,
sic ego (+ *abl*)

snowfall nivis cās·us -ūs *m*

snowstorm ning·or -ōris *m*

snowy nivōs·us -a -um, nivāl·is -is -e

so (*with adj or adv*) tam, ita; (*with verb*) ádeō, sic; **and so** itaque; **how so?** quid ita?; **is it really so?** itane vērō?; **is that so?** itane?; **so far so good** bellē adhūc; **so many** tot; **so much** tant·us -a -um; **so much for that** eátenus; **so so** (*tolerably well*) ita tenúiter; **so to speak** ut ita dīcam; **that's not so!** haud ita est!

soak made·fáciō -fácere -fēcī -fáctus

soaking rain largus im·ber -bris *m*

soap sap·ō -ōnis *m*; **bar of soap** sapónis quádrul·a -ae *f*; **liquid soap** sapō líquidus

sober (*not drunk*) sōbri·us -a -um (*opp:* ébrius)

soccer pedifólli·um -ī *n*, pedilúdi·um -ī *n*; **play soccer** pedifólle lúdere (*see Chapter V*)

soccer ball pedifóll·is -is *m*

soccer field camp·us -ī *m* pedifóllī, campus lūsōrius

soccer player lūs·or -ōris *m* pedifóllī

soccer shoes calceámént·a -órum *npl* pedifóllī

soccer stadium stádi·um -ī *n* pedifóllī

sociable sociábil·is -is -e

social security assēcūrāti·ō -ōnis *f* sociális

socket contáct·um -ī *n* (ēléctricum)

socks imp̄li·a -órum *npl*

soda aqu·a -ae *f* Selterána

sofa tor·us -ī *m* tōméntō fartus

soft moll·is -is -e

softly (*in a low voice*) summíssā voce

software (*comput*) part·ēs -ium *fpl* programmatiōnis

soldier mīl·es -itis *mf* (*see chapter on War and Peace*)

sole (*of shoe or foot*) sol·um -ī *n*, plant·a -ae *f*

solution solúti·ō -ōnis *f*

some *adj* áliquī áliqua áliquod (*pl:* áliquī áliquae áliqua); **some** (*a number of*) áliquot (*indecl*); **some (amount of)** áliquid (+ *gen*); **some meat** áliquid carnis; **some ... or other** nésciō quī, nésciō quae, nésciō quod; **some senator or other** nésciō quī senátor

someday (*in indef fut*) aliquándō

someone áliquis, alicúius

sometime (or other) aliquándō;

sometime ago dūdum, prīdem

sometimes nōnnúmquam; intérdum;

sometimes ... sometimes modo ... modo, intérdum ... intérdum

somewhat *adv* aliquántō; **feel somewhat better** (*of a patient*) meliúscul·us -a -um esse

son fīli·us -ī *m*

song cant·us -ūs *m*, cántic·um -ī *n*

son-in-law gen·er -erī *m*

soon mox; (*in a minute*) iam; (*at any moment*) iam iam; **as soon as** cum prīmum; **as soon as possible** quam prīmum; **how soon?** quam mox?; **soon thereafter** mox deinde; **too soon** nímium cito; **very soon** pérbrevī témpore

sooner: no sooner said than done dictō cítius *or* dictum factum; **sooner or later** sērius ócius

sophomore sophomór·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

soprano suprānist·a -ae *f*

sore throat exasperátae fauc·ēs -ium *fpl*

sorority sodálit·ās -átis *f* alumnárum

sorry: I feel sorry for the others mē
miseret aliórum; **I'm (you're) sorry**
mē (tē) paénitet

sound *adj* ínte·ger -gra -grum

sound *s* son·us -ī *m*

soundly (*to sleep*) artē; (*to defeat*)
ēgrégīē

soup iúscul·um -ī *n*, sorbíti·ō -ónis *f*

soup bowl mágid·a -ae *f*

soup spoon cóchle·ar -áris *m* capácius

source fōn·s -tis *m*, cap·ut -itis *n*

south *adj* ínfēr·ior -ior -ius, merídián·us
-a -um; **on the south side** látere
merídiánō; **south of** infrā (+ *acc*)

south *adv* ad merídiem

south *s* merídi·ēs -éī *m*, merídián·um -ī
n; **in the south** ā merídiē

southern merídiōnāl·is -is -e,
merídián·us -a -um, ínfēr·ior -ior -ius

southward in merídiem versus [versus *is*
an adverb]

south wind Aus·ter -trī *m*

sow porc·a -ae *f*; sū·s -is *f*; **sows oink**
sūēs grúnniunt

spacious ampl·us -a -um

spaghetti spacéll·ī -órum *mpl*

Spain Hispáni·a -ae *f*

spam (*comput*) sagināti·ō -ónis *f*

spare time temp·us -oris *n* subsicířvum

spark plug candél·a -ae *f* accēnsířva

sparrow pass·er -eris *m* (*see bird*)

spasm spasm·us -ī *m*; **have a muscle**
spasm ā músculī spasmō labōřáre

speak *tr* & *intr* loqu·or -ī locútus sum;
dic·ō -ere dixī dictus; **speak Latin,**
speak correct Latin Latínē loquī; **so**
to speak ut ita dicam; **speak! I'm**

listening lóquere! áudiō; **speak of**
the devil lupus in fábulā; **well, speak**
up! quín tū ēlóquere!

speaker megaphón(i)·um -ī *n*

special delivery letter epístul·a -ae *f*
acceleráta

speech oráti·ō -ónis *f*; **make a speech**
orátiónem habére

speed limit vēlōcítátis mod·us -ī *m*

spell *tr* scríb·ō -ere scríp̄sī scríptus; **spell**
correctly rēctē scríb̄ere; **spell with**
scríb̄ere per (+ *acc*); **some spell**
“cum” with a “q” if it signifies time
quídā scríbunt “cum” per “q”
litteram, sī tempus significat

spelling *s* orthográphi·a -ae *f*

spend (*time*) agō ágere ēgī āctus,
cōnsúm·ō -ere -psī -ptus; **spend the**
night pernoctáre; **spend the summer**
aestíváre; **spend the winter** hiemáre;
spend time (effort, money) on
tempus (óperam, pecúniam)
impénd·ō -ere -ī impēnsus (in + *acc*)

spicy ācer ācris ācre

spider aráne·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

spider web aráne·a -ae *f*

spill *tr* effúnd·ō -ere effúdi effúsus **ll**
intr effúndor effúndī effúsus sum

spinach spináci·a -ae *f*

spine (*anat*) spīn·a -ae *f* dorsī

spirit: spirit of the law volúnt·ās -átis *f*
lēgis; **that's the right spirit now**
nunc tū frūgī bonae es

spit *s* spūt·um -ī *n*

spit *tr* & *intr* spu·ō -ere -ī spūtus;
(*frequentative*) sputáre

splendid: absolutely splendid! nimis
factum bene!; **splendid!** euge!

split one's sides laughing ília sua rīsū
dissól̄v·ō -ere -ī

sponge *s* spóngi·a -ae *f*; **sponge stick**
(used by Romans for the same
purpose as modern toilet paper)
xilospóngi·um -ī *n*

sponge *tr* **sponge a meal** cēnam captāre

spoon cóchle·ar -āris *n*

sport athlētīc·a -ae *f*, dispórt·us -ūs *m*

sport shirt camísi·a -ae *f* campéstris

sportswear vest·is -is *f* campéstris

spouse con·iūnx -iugis *mf*

sprain *tr* luxāre

sprain *s* luxātūr·a -ae *f*

spread sheet (*comput*) chart·a -ae *f*
computātiva

spring fōn·s -tis *m*; (*season*) vēr, vēris *n*

spring break féri·ae -ārum *fpl* vernae;

spend the spring break fériās vernās
agō ágere egī áctus

sprint curs·us -ūs *m* brevis

spunk alácrit·ās -átis *f*

spunky ála·cer -cris -cre

squabble *intr* rīx·or -ārī -átus *sum*

squabble *s* rīx·a -ae *f*

squad turm·a -ae *f*

square *intr* **this simply doesn't square**
nōn sánē quadrat

square *s* quadrāt·um -ī *n*; (*rectangular*
space surrounded by buildings or
streets) áre·a -ae *f*; (*carpenter's tool*)
norm·a -ae *f*

squeak (*of mice, rats*) míntr·iō -īre

squeeze the flesh (*when campaigning*)
prēnsāre

squirrel sciúr·us -ī *m*

stability fírmit·ās -átis *f*

stable *adj* fírmit·us -a -um

stable *s* stábul·um -ī *n*; (*for horses*)
equíl·e -is *n*; (*for cows*) bovíl·e -is *n*;

(*for sheep*) ovíl·e -is *n*; (*for pigs*)
suíl·e -is *n*

stadium stádi·um -ī *n*

staff member, staff officer
contubernál·is -is *mf*

stag cerv·us -ī *m*

stage scēn·a -ae *f*, proscēni·um -ī *n*;
(*step in progress*) grad·us -ūs *m*; **go**
on the stage in scēnam pród·eō -īre
-īī; **stage of life** aetātis grad·us -ūs *m*

staircase scāl·ae -ārum *fpl*

stairs scāl·ae -ārum *fpl*; **climb the stairs**
per scālās ascénd·ō -ere -ī

stair well scālári·um -ī *n*

stamp pittáci·um -ī *n* cursuále

stand *tr* **I can't stand him** istum ferre
nōn queō; **I can't stand the cold**
frígoris impátiēns *sum* **I** *intr* stō stāre
stetī; **I'd like to know how matters**
stand velim scīre quō modō rēs sē
hábeant

standing ovation: give s.o. a standing
ovation álicui stantēs plau·dō -dere
-sī

stands (*bleachers*) for·ī -órum *mpl*

staple *s* uncínul·us -ī *m* (metállicus)

staple *tr* cōns·uō -súere -suī -sútus

stapler uncinātóri·um -ī *n*, cōnsūtóri·um
-ī *n* (chartárum)

starling sturn·us -ī *m* (*see* **bird**)

start iníti·um -ī *n*; **at the start of the**
year annō ineúnte; **you've made a**
good start bene hábent tibi príncípia

starter (*on a car*) incitátr·um -ī *n*; **for**
starters príncipiō

starvation fam·ēs -is *f*

starve *tr* fāme cōn·fíciō -fícere -fēcī
-fécus **I** *intr* fāme cónfici; **I'm**

starved fame ēnéctus *sum*

- state** (*the state as a community*) cīvit·ās
-ātis *f*; **state of mind** affēcti·ō -ōnis *f*
ānimī
- statesman** vir, virī *m* cīvīlis
- stationery** chart·a *f* epistolārīs
- stationery store** tabérn·a -ae *f* chartāria
- statue** stātu·a -ae *f*, sign·um -ī *n*
- status** stat·us -ūs *m*
- statute** lēx, lēgis *f*
- stay** mán·eō -ére -sī -sūrus;
(*temporarily*) mor·or -ārī -ātus *sum*
- steak** frūst·um -ī *n* búbulae
- steal** fūr·or -ārī -ātus *sum*; clep·ō -ere -sī
-tus; toll·ō -ere sústulī sublātus
- steep** turr·is -is *f* campānāria
- steer** *s* iuvēnc·us -ī *m*
- steer** *tr* gubernāre
- steering wheel** rot·a -ae *f* moderátrīx
- step** *s* grad·us -ūs *m*; **step by step**
gradātīm; **steps** (*of stairs*) grad·ūs
-uum *mpl*; **take steps** (*take*
measures) ratiōnem infre
- step** grádi·or -ī gressus *sum*; **step on it!**
mātūrā! (*pl*: mātūrāte!)
- stepbrother** (*on father's side*) vītricī
fīli·us -ī *m*; (*on mother's side*)
novércae fīlius
- stepdaughter** prīvīgn·a -ae *f*
- stepfather** vītric·us -ī *m*
- stepmother** novérc·a -ae *f*
- stepsister** (*on father's side*) vītricī fīli·a
-āe *f*; (*on mother's side*) novércae
fīlia
- stepson** prīvīgn·us -ī *m*
- stereo** stereophōni·um -ī *n*
- stern** asp·er -era -erum
- stew** *s* iūrulént·um -ī *n*; **be in a stew**
over aestuāre (*w causal abl*)
- stew** *tr* lentō igne coqu·ō -ere coxī
coctus **II** *intr* aestuāre; **I stewed over**
it for a long time in eō aestuāvī diū
- steward** hosp·es -itis *m* aērius
- stewardess** hōspit·a -ae *f* aēria
- stewed** iūrulént·us -a -um; (*drunk*)
ēlīx·us -a -um
- stick to one's guns** in sententiā stō stāre
stetī; **stick to the truth** in vērītāte
mán·eō -ére mānsī
- still** (*till now*) adhūc
- sting** *s* (*on a bee*) acūle·us -ī *m*; (*bite*)
ict·us -ūs *m*
- sting** *tr* īc·ō -ere īcī ictus
- stingy** sórdid·us -a -um
- stink** foét·eō -ére
- stinky** foétid·us -a -um
- stock** ácti·a -ae *f*
- stock broker** chrēmátíst·a -ae *m* (-ria
-riae *f*)
- stock exchange** burs·a -ae *f*
- stocking** tūbiál·e -is *n*; (*of felt and*
covering part of the legs) impīli·um
-ī *n*
- stock market** chrēmátístéri·um -ī *n*,
burs·a -ae *f*
- stomach** stómach·us -ī *m*, ven·ter -tris *m*
- stomach ache** dol·or -óris *m* stómachī
- stone: I will leave no stone unturned**
nihil praetermíttam
- stoned** (*drunk*) ēlīx·us -a -um
- stool** scabéll·um -ī *n*; (*for sitting or*
mounting) scamn·um -ī *n*
- stool pigeon** ind·ex -icis *mf*
- stop** (*come to a stop*) sist·ō -ere stitī;
(*desist from*) dēsīn·ō -ere dēsívī *or*
dēsīi (+ *inf*); **does the bus (train)**
stop in ... subsístitne autoraēda
longa (trāmen) in (+ *abl*)?; **stop!**

astā!; **stop off at** dēversārī apud (+ *acc*); **stop off at s.o.'s house** apud āliquem dēversārī (*or* dēvērt·ō -ere -ī); **stop right there!** stā fīlicō!; **stop talking!** dēsine (*pl:* dēsīnite) loquī! **they finally stopped talking** finem loquēndī dēmum fēcērunt

stop-over commorāti·ō -ōnis *f*; **make a stop-over** commór·or -ārī -ātus sum

stop sign sign·um -ī *n* subsistēndī

stop watch chronoscōpi·um -ī *n*

store tabern·a -ae *f*; (*supply*) cōpi·a -ae *f*

storeroom cell·a -ae *f*

stork cicóni·a -ae *f* (*see* bird)

storm tempést·ās -ātis *f*; procéll·a -ae *f*;
a storm arose tempéstās coórta est

stormy procellós·us -a -um, turbulént·us -a -um

story (*tale*) fábul·a -ae *f*; (*rumor*) fām·a -ae *f*; (*floor*) tabulát·um -ī *n*, contignāti·ō -ōnis *f*; **to make a long story short** nē longus sim *or* nē longam fáciam

stove foc·us -ī *m*, fócūl·us -ī *m*; **electric (gas) stove** focus eléctricus (gáseus)

straight dírect·us -a -um; **go straight home!** ī (*pl:* íte) rēctā domum!

straighten out a matter rem explicáre

strait frēt·um -ī *n*; **Strait of Messina** frētum Sículum

strange mír·us -a -um; **strange to say** mírábile dictū

strap lór·um -ī *n*; (*for shoe or sandal, sometimes decorated with gems*) obstrágul·um -ī *n*

straw strāmént·um -ī *n*; (*for drinking*) sīph·ō -ōnis *m*

strawberry frāg·um -ī *n*

stray (*dog, cat, etc.*) extrári·us -a -um

stream rīv·us -ī *m*

street vi·a -ae *f*; (*with houses*) platē·a -ae *f*; (*paved*) strāt·a -ae *f*; **across the street from** exadvērsum (+ *acc*)

streetcar curr·us -ūs *m* eléctricus

street clothes foréns·ia -ium *npl*

street map tábul·a -ae *f* viária

stretch *see* extend

stretch spāti·um -ī *n*

strict sevēr·us -a -um; (*person in authority*) acérb·us -a -um

strictly speaking própiē

strike (*work stoppage*) operistíti·um -ī *n*; **be or go on strike** opus inter·míttō -míttēre -mísi; **make a strike** (*in bowling*) omnēs cōnōs simul prōstérn·ō -ere prōstrávi

string chord·a -ae *f*, fīl·um -ī *n*;
(*comput*) seri·ēs -ēi *f*

strip (*e.g., of bacon*) segmént·um -ī *n*

stroke of luck lūs·us -ūs *m* fortúnae

stroll *intr* spāti·or -ārī -ātus sum, dēambuláre

stroll *s* **would you like to take a stroll?** velísne spatiári?

strong válid·us -a -um (*opp:* imbēcíl·us -a -um)

stubborn obstinát·us -a -um

stuck: he is stuck on some girl or other in amóre haeret apud nésciō quam vírginem; **be stuck on** haér·eō -éere haesi in (+ *abl*); **I'm stuck** (*out of ideas*) haéreō

stuck-up vultuós·us -a -um; fastidiós·us -a -um; **be stuck-up** fastíd·iō -íre

student discípul·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*), stud·ēns -éntis *m*, studentíss·a -ae *f*

studies stúdi·a -órum *npl*

study (*a room*) studíol·um -ī *n*

study stúd·eō -ére -uī (+ *dat*) || *intr*
studére

study period spátí·um -ī *n* studiósūm

stuff (*junk*) nūg·ae -árūm *fpl*

stumble over new words nova verba
offénd·ō -ere -ī

sturgeon accipéns·er -eris *m*

style mod·us -ī *m*; **go out of style**
exolésc·ō -ere exolévī

subdirectory (*comput*) plicárum
subínd·ex -icis *m*

subject (*e.g., history, math, etc.*)
disciplín·a -ae *f*; (*topic*)
argúment·um -ī *n*; (*gram*) subiéct·um
-ī *n*; (*topic studied*) gen·us -eris *n*
studiórum, doctrín·a -ae *f*

subject matter mātéri·a -ae *f*

subjunctive *adj* subiūnctív·us -a -um;
subjunctive mood subiūnctívus
mod·us -ī *m*

subjunctive *s* subiūnctív·us -ī *m*

submarine nāv·is -is *f* submarína

subordinate conjunction *s* subiūnctíva
coniūcti·ō -ónis *f*

subscribe subscríb·ō -ere subscrípī

substitute *adj* vicári·us -a [*not neuter*]

substitute *s* succēdāne·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

substitute *tr* (**for**) substítu·ō -erē -ī -tus
(prō + *abl*)

subtract dētrah·ō -ere dētráxī dētráctus

suburb subúrbi·um -ī *n*

subway ferrívi·a -ae *f* subterránea

success rēs, reī *f* fēliciter gesta, rēs bene
gesta, succēss·us -ūs *m*

such a tāl·is -is -e; **such a big** tant·us -a
-um; **such is the case** rēs sē ita habet

sucker (*fool*) bārcal·a -ae *mf*; **take s.o.**
for a sucker álicui ōs súblinō
sublínere sublévī

suddenly statim, súbitō, repénte

sue s.o. litem álicui ínferō ínférre íntulī
illátus

suffer *tr* ferō ferre tulī látus; **suffer**
punishment poenam dare || *intr*
pát·ior -ī passus sum; **suffer from**
dól·eō -ēre -uī (+ *abl of ailment or*
affected part), labōrāre (+ *abl*);
suffering from opprés·us -a -um (+
abl)

sugar sácchar·um -ī *n*; **cube of sugar**
cub·us -ī *m* sáccharī

sugar bowl vāscul·um -ī *n* sáccharī

suggest sub·íciō -ícere -iécī -iécus; **as**
you suggest quemádmōdum suādēs

suggestion: at your suggestion tē
auctóre

suit sýnthē·is -is *f*; (*leg*) ácti·ō -ónis *f*;
bring a suit against s.o. áctiōnem
álicui intén·dō -dere -dī

suitcase risc·us -ī *m*; (*small suitcase*)
ríscul·us -ī *m*

suite (*of rooms*) diaét·a -ae *f*

sultry aestuós·us -a -um

sum: to sum up ad summam *or* in
summam *or* in summā

summary summári·um -ī *n*, breviári·um
-ī *n*

summer *adj* aestív·us -a -um

summer *s* aest·ās -átis *f*

summer vacation fēriae aestívae; **spend**
the summer vacation fēriās aestívās
ágere

summit cacúm·en -inis *n*

sun sōl, sōlis *m*; **full sun** plúrimus sōl

sunbathe apríc·or -árī

sunbathing aprícáti·ō -ónis *f*

Sunday di·ēs -éī *m* Sōlis; (*eccles*)
Domínica *f*

sun glasses perspicill·a -órum *n* sōlária
(*or* īnfuscāta)

sunny apríc·us -a -um

sunrise ort·us -ūs *m* sōlis; **at sunrise**
sōle ortō

sunset occās·us -ūs *m* sōlis

sunshine sōl, sōlis *m*

suntan adústus col·or -óris *m*; **get a**
suntan colōrāre

superintendent (*of a school district*)
superinténd·ēns -entis *mf*; (*of a*
building) prōcūrāt·or -óris *m*

superlative *adj* superlātv·us -a -um

superlative *s* grad·us -ūs *m* superlātvus;
in the superlative superlātvē; **give**
me “laetus” in the superlative dīc
“laetus” superlātvē

supermarket superīnstītōri·um -ī *n*

supine *s* supín·um -ī *n*

supper cēn·a -ae *f*; **for supper** in cēnam

supplies commeāt·us -ūs *m* (*used both*
as collective singular and in the
plural); **cut off the enemy’s supplies**
inter·clūdō -clūdere -clūsī hostēs
commeātibus

supply: supply s.o. with men and arms
álicui virōs et arma ministrāre

suppose opín·or -ārī -átus sum; **I**
suppose [*parenthetical*] ut opínor

sure *adj* cert·us -a -um; **be sure to come**
fácītō (*or* fac) modo ut véniās; **for**
sure prō certō; **I am sure that** certus
(-a) sum (+ *acc & inf*); **know for**
sure certum (*or* prō certō) sciō scīre
scīvī scītus; **I think but don’t know**
for sure opínor sed certō nesciō; **to**
be sure nempe

surely certē, quidem, sánē

surf *intr* tábulā flūctívagā per summās
undās prōláb·or -ī prōlāpsus sum

surfboard tábul·a -ae *f* flūctívaga

surgeon chīrúrg·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*); **the**
surgeon operated on her chīrúrgus
eam sécuit

surgery (*the art*) chīrúrgi·a -ae *f*;
(*practice*) man·us -ūs *f*; **use surgery**
manum adhibēre

surly morós·us -a um et difícil·is -is -e

surprise mīr·um -ī *n*

surprised: be surprised that mīr·or -ārī
-átus sum (*w acc + inf*)

surrender *intr* sē dē·dō -dere -didī;
force an enemy to surrender
hostem in dēditiōnem venīre cōg·ō
-ere cōégī cōactus

surrender *s* dēditi·ō -ónis *f*

suspect *s* suspéct·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

suspect *tr* suspíc·iō -ere suspéxī
suspéctus

suspense: be in suspense in suspénsō
esse; **not to keep you any longer in**
suspense nē diútius in suspénsō
péndeās

suspicion suspíci·ō -ónis *f*; **come under**
suspicion in suspiciōnem venīre

suspicious súspic·āx -ācis; (*suspected*)
suspéct·us -a -um

swallow hirúnd·ō -inis *f* (*see bird*)

swamp pal·ūs -údis *f*

swan cycin·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)

swap permūtāre; **swap places** loca inter
sē permūtāre

swarm (*of bees, wasps, locusts*)
exām·en -inis *n*

swear in the soldiers mīlītēs sacrāmētō
ádig·ō -ere adégī adactus

sweat *intr* sūdāre

sweat *s* sūd·or -óris *m*; **break a sweat**
īnsūdāre; **no sweat!** nōn labōrō!

sweat suit vest·is -is *f* gýmnica
sweater thōr·āx -ācis *m* lánius
sweep the floor pavíméntum verr·ō -ere
 -ī versus
sweeper (*soccer*) lūs·or -ōris *m* liber,
 lūs·īx -īcis *f* líbera
sweet dulc·is -is -e
sweetheart: my sweetheart volúptās
 mea; óculus meus, océllus meus; (*in*
address) mea volúptās, mī ócule, mī
 océlle
swell (up) (*of limbs*) túrg·eō -éere tursī,
 sē attóll·ō -ere (*opp*: sē summíttere)
sweltering aestuós·us -a -um
swim natáre
swimming *s* natáti·ō -ónis *f* (*see*
Chapter V)
swimming instructor natándi magís·ter
 -trī *m* (·tra -trae *f*)
swimming meet certám·en -inis *n*
 natátórium
swimming pool piscín·a -ae *f*
swimsuit vest·is -is *f* balneáris
swim trunks subligácul·um -ī *n*
 balneáre
swindle fraudáre; **swindle s.o. out of**
 áliquem fraudáre (+ *abl*)
swindler plān·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*),
 fraudá·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)
swing *intr* oscilláre
swing *s* oscíll·um -ī *n*
swipe (*steal*) surr·ípiō -rípere -rípuī
 -réptus
Swiss Helvéti·us -a -um
switch (*electrical*) mūtátr·um -ī *n*
Switzerland Helvétī·a -ae *f*
swivel chair sell·a -ae *f* versátilis
swollen túmid·us -a -um

swordfish xíphi·ās -ae *m*
syllable *s* sýllab·a -ae *f*; **syllables form**
words sýllabae fáciunt dictiúnēs
sympathy: show sympathy for
 commiser·or -ārī -ātus sum (+ *acc*)
symphony symphóni·a -ae *f*
symptom not·a -ae *f*, indíci·um -ī *n*
synagogue synagóg·a -ae *f*
syntax *s* sýntax·is -is *f*

T

T-shirt tunícul·a -ae *f*
table mēns·a -ae *f*; **set the table**
 mēnsam pōn·ō -ere pōsuī; **sit down**
at the table mēnsae ad·sídō -sídere
 -sédī; **wipe off the table** mēnsam
 pertérg·ō -ere pertérsī
tablecloth mantél·e -is *n*
table of contents ind·ex -icis *m* cápitum
tablet (*for writing*) tábul·a -ae *f*; (*of*
medication) pastíll·us -ī *m*
table tennis (*see Ping-Pong*)
tableware ínstrúmēt·a -órum *npl*
 escária
tactics: change one's tactics ratiónem
 bellī geréndi mūtáre
tail caud·a -ae *f*
taillight lūmin·áre -áris *n* postícum
tailor (*making clothes*) vestífic·us -ī *m*
 (·a -ae *f*); (*altering clothes*)
 sarcinát·or -ōris *m*
tailor shop vestificín·a -ae *f*
take *tr* (*accept*) accíp·iō -ere accépī
 accéptus; (*to a person or place*)
 áfferō afférre áttulī allátus; (*to escort,*
lead) dūc·ō -ere dūxī ductus; **here,**
take it em, áccipe; **I can't take it**
anymore patī néqueō ámplius; **I take**
it (*parenthetical*) ut opínor; **take**

away (*hope, freedom, sleep, life*) ádim·ō -ere adēmī adēmp̄tus; **take down** (*notes, lecture*) excípere; (*unfasten*) refīg·ō -ere refīxī; **take for** (*regard as*) habére; **take** (*a dog*) **for a walk** dúcere; **take in s.o.** (*con s.o.*) álicui verba dare; **take into consideration** respíc·iō -ere respéxī; **take it easy!** parce! (*pl:* párcite!); **take it hard that** gráviter ferō ferre tulī (+ *acc & inf*); **take off** (*clothes*) éxuō exúere éxui exútus; (*clothes, shoes, ring*) détrahō détráhere détráxī; **take pains to** in magnō negótiō habére (+ *inf*); **take place** fiō fīerī factus sum; **take pleasure in** cápere laetítiam ex (+ *abl*); **take upon oneself (to)** in sē conférre (+ *inf*); **the preposition “ad” takes the accusative case** “ad” praepositiō cásuī accūsáti·vō servit; **they know that they were taken in** sciunt sibi data esse verba; **this verb takes the accusative case** hoc verbum coniúngitur (*or* adiúngitur) cásuī accūsáti·vō **|| intr take after** símilis esse (+ *gen*); **take off** (*lit:* go away) áb·eō -íre -ívi *or* -ii; (*coll*) apocoláre; (*of a plane*) avoláre

take-off (*of a plane*) avoláti·ō -ónis *f*

talent ingéni·um -ī *n*

talented ingenió·us -a -um

talk *s* serm·ō -ónis *m*; (**childish, silly, everyday**) **talk** (puerílis, stultus, quotidíānus) sermō; **give a talk** sermónem habére; **have a talk with s.o.** cum áliquo díligēter cólloqu·or -ī collocútus sum; **small talk** sermúncul·us -ī *m*; **that’s mere talk** verba istaec sunt

talk *tr & intr* loqu·or -ī locútus sum;

talk back (to) insolēter respónd·eō -ére -ī (+ *dat*); **talk s.th. over with s.o.** áliquid cum áliquo comunicáre

talkative loqu·āx -ácis

talk show spectácul·um -ī *n*
disputáti·vum; (*on radio*) disputáti·ō -ónis *f* radiophónica

tall prōcēr·us -a -um; **be a head taller than** tōtō vértice esse suprā (+ *acc*); **he is tall** statūrā prōcērā est, prōcérus est

tank lac·us -ūs *m*; (*mil*) autocúr·us -ūs *m* armátus

tape *s* (*adhesive*) taéni·a -ae *f* adhaesíva; (*audiotape*) phōnotaeniól·a -ae *f*; (*audiocassette*) phōnocasét·a -ae *f*; **make a tape** phōnotaeniólam cōnfícere

tape *tr* in phōnotaeniólā imprim·ō imprímere impréssi impréssus

tape recorder magnētophón·um -ī *n*,
casētophón·um -ī *n*

target scōp·us -ī *m*

tariff portóri·um -ī *n*

task op·us -eris *n*, pēns·um -ī *n*

taste *s* (*sense*) gustát·us -ūs *m*; (*flavor*) sap·or -óris *m*; (*foretaste, sample*) gust·us -ūs *m*; **lack of good taste** defórmit·ās -átis *f*; **this is not to my taste** hoc nōn meī stómachī est

taste *tr & intr* sáp·iō -ere -ívi *or* -ii;
taste like sápere (+ *acc*)

tax vectíg·al -ális *n*; **collect taxes** vectígália éxig·ō -ere éxēgi éxáctus; **impose a tax on** vectígal impón·ō -ere impósuī impósitus (+ *dat*); **pay taxes** vectígália pēnsitáre

tax collector exáct·or -óris *m*,
públicán·us -ī *m*

taxi raéd·a -ae *f* meritória

tea the·a -ae *f*

teach (*w. double acc*) dóc·eō -ére -uī -tus; **teach Latin** Latínē docére

teacher magís·ter -trī *m* (·tra -trae *f*)

teachers' room oec·us -ī *n* magistrōrum
(*or* magistrārum)

teaching assistant magístrae (*or*
magístri) adiú·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx
-trícis *f*)

teaching method docéndī ráti·ō -ōnis *f*

teacup pocíll·um -ī *n* theánum

team turm·a -ae *f*

teapot hírni·a -ae (*or* hirníol·a -ae) *f*
theána

tear *s* lácrim·a -ae *f*; **shed tears**
lácrimās profúnd·ō -ere profúdi
profúsus

tear *tr* scind·ō -ere scidī scissus; **I can't
tear myself away from my books** in
librīs haér·eō -ére haesī; **tear down**
(*building*) díru·ō -ere -ī dirútus; **tear
to bits or pieces** laniáre, dílaceráre;
tear up (*paper*) discíndere **|| intr** (*to
rush*) ru·ō -ere -ī; (*of clothes, etc.*)
scind·or -ī scissus sum; **tear along
the road** viam voráre

tease taxáre

teaspoon parvum cóchle·ār -áris *n*

telephone *adj* tēlephónic·us -a -um

telephone *s* tēlephón·um -ī *n*; **by
telephone** tēlephónicē; **call s.o. on
the telephone** áliquem per
tēlephónum vocáre; **dial a number**
númerum (tēlephónicum) sélíg·ō -ere
sélégī sēléctus; **dial the area code**
númerum praesēléctórium sélígere;
speak with s.o. on the telephone
cum áliquō tēlephónicē cólloquor
cólloquī collocútus sum; **the
telephone is ringing** tēlephónum
tinnit; **use a pay phone** tēlephónō
monētáli ūtor ūtī ūsus sum

telephone *tr* per tēlephónum vocáre,
tēlephónō compelláre

telephone book tēlephónicus ind·ex
-icis *m*; **look in the telephone book**
tēlephónicum índicem ínspic·iō -ere
ínspéxī

telephone booth cell·a -ae *f* tēlephónica

telephone call (local, long-distance)
tēlephóném·a -atis *n* (locále,
longínquum)

telephone conversation tēlephóném·a
-atis *n*

telephone line cōnéxi·ō -ōnis *f*
tēlephónica

telephone number númer·us -ī *m*
tēlephónicus

telephone receiver auscultábul·um -ī *n*;
pick up the receiver auscultábulum
toll·ō -ere sústulī

telephone ring tinnít·us -ūs *m*
tēlephónicus

telescope tēlescópi·um -ī *n*

television tēlevísi·ō -ōnis *f*; (*set*)
tēlevísóri·um -ī *n*; **turn on (turn off)**
the television tēlevísórium excitáre
(exstíngu·ō -ere exstínxī exstíntus);
turn down (up) the television vim
tēlevísóriī remítt·ō -ere remísī
(aúg·eō -ére auxī); **watch television**
tēlevisiónem spectáre

television audience tēlevísór·ēs -um *mpl*

television broadcast émíssi·ō -ōnis *f*
tēlevísífica

television channel tēlevísórius canál·is
-is *m*

television news tēledíurn·a -órum *npl*

television program prográmm·a -atis *n*
tēlevísíficum

television screen quadr·um -ī *n*
tēlevísíficum

television series séri·ēs -éī *f* tēlevísífica

television set tēlevísóri·um -ī *n*

television viewer tēlevís·or -óris *m*
(·trīx -trícis *f*)

tell nārrāre; **tell about** nārrāre dē (+
abl); **tell a lie** mendācium dīcere; **tell**
a secret sēcrētum ēloqu·or -ī
ēlocūtus sum; **tell the truth** vērūm
dīcere

temper irācūndi·a -ae *f*; **have a bad**
temper summā irācūndiā esse; **keep**
one's temper irācūndiam cohīb·eō
-ēre -uī; **lose one's temper** irācūndā
ēfferor efferrī ēlātus sum

temperature temperātūr·a -ae *f*; **the**
temperature fell below thirty-two
degrees temperātūra lāpsa est subter
duōs et trīgintā gradūs; **the**
temperature is two degrees above
freezing temperātūra est ad duōs
gradūs suprā pūctum glaciāle; **what**
is the temperature? quō gradū stat
temperātūra?

temple templ·um -ī *n*, aed·ēs -is *f*;
(*anat*) temp·us -oris *n*

ten decem [*indecl*]; **ten times** déciēs

tendon nerv·us -ī *m*

tennis tenilūdi·um -ī *n*, tenísi·a -ae *f*;
play tennis tenísiā lūdere (*see*
Chapter V)

tennis ball pil·a -ae *f* tenísiāe

tennis court camp·us -ī *m* tenilūdī

tennis doubles lūd·us -ī *m* bis bīnórum

tennis match certām·en -inis *n* tenilūdī

tennis net rēt·e -is *n* tenísiāe

tennis player tenilūdi·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

tennis racket rētīcul·um -ī *n*
(manubrīātum)

tenor cant·or -óris *m* vōcis médiāe

tense *adj* intént·us -a -um; (*mentally*)
ānxi·us -a -um

tense *s* (*gram*) temp·us -oris *n*

tension contéti·ō -ónis *f*; (*anxiety*)
ānxiēt·ās -átis *f*

tent tentóri·um -ī *n*

tenterhooks: be on tenterhooks ánimī
pénd·eō -ēre pepéndī

term (*expression*) verb·um -ī *n*;
(*semester*) studiórum spāti·um -ī *n*,
sēmēstr·e -is *n*; **term of office**
spāti·um -ī *n* (témporis) magistrátus

terminal státi·ō -ónis *f* terminális;
(*comput*) terminál·e -is *n*

terms condición·ēs -um *fpl*; **be on**
friendly terms with a country in
amícitiā pópulī esse; **I'm on good**
terms with in grátīā sum cum (+
abl); mihi cum (+ *abl*) magna
necessitūdō est; **on these terms** hīs
condiciónibus, hīs légibus; **stick by**
the terms in condiciónibus mán·eō
-ēre mānsī

terms of peace pācis condición·ēs -um
fpl; **accept terms of peace** pācis
condiciónēs accēpere (*opp*:
repudiāre); **dictate terms of peace to**
pācis condiciónēs dīcere (+ *dat*);
propose terms of peace pācis
condiciónēs ferō ferre tulī lātus

terrace xyst·us -ī *m*

terrain nātūr·a -ae *f* locī

terrible terríbil·is -is -e

terrific exími·us -a -um; **terrific!** euge!

terrify terrificāre, térr·eō -ēre -uī -itus

terror terr·or -óris *m*

test probāti·ō -ónis *f*; **flunk a test** cad·ō
-ere cécidi in probatióne; **pass a test**
probatióne[m] sustín·eō -ēre -uī

testicle testícul·us -ī *m*

testy irācūnd·us -a -um

text (*comput*) text·us -ūs *m*

textbook li·ber -brī *m* scholāris, ars,
artis *f*

than (*in comparisons*) quam

thank grātiās āgere (+ *dat*); **no, thank you** benīgnē; **no, thank you just the same** tam grātia est; **thank heaven!** sit dīs grātia!; **thank you** (*familiar form*) (*for a future favor*) amābō tē; (*for a favor done*) amō tē; **thank you for** tibi grātiās āgere quod (+ *indic*); **thank you for helping me** grātiās tibi agō quod mē iūvistī

thankful: I am thankful to you grātiām tibi hábeō; **you ought to be thankful to me** grātiām hábeās mihi

thanks grātiās!; **thanks, but no, thanks** sed grātia est; **thanks a lot!** multās grātiās!; **no, thanks** benīgnē; **thanks a lot for** tē multum amō quod (+ *indic*); **thanks a million!** rescētās grātiās!; **thanks for your gifts** grātiās tibi dē dōnis tuis; **thanks to me (you, etc.)** meā (tuā, etc.) óperā

Thanksgiving Day di·ēs -ēī *m*
Grātulātiōnis; **Happy Thanksgiving!**
Fēlīcem Diem Grātulātiōnis (optō)!

that ill·e -a -ud; (*sometimes pej*) ist·e -a -ud; **is that so?** ítane est?; **that'll do** sat est; **that's it!** (*enough!*) tantum est!; **that's right** (*in response to a question*) sīc est; **that's so** ita est

thaw *tr* dissólv·ō -ere -ī *ll intr* tabésc·ō -ere tábuī

theater theátr·um -ī *n*; **theater of war** bellī sēd·ēs -is *f*

theft fūrt·um -ī *n*

theme (*topic*) mātéri·a -ae *f*,
argūmént·um -ī *n*; (*essay*) tractát·us -ūs *m*; **write a theme** tractátum cōnscríbere

then (*and so*) ítaque; (*at that time*) tum; (*in that case*) ígitur; (*next*) deínde, deinceps; (*therefore*) ergō; **just then**

tunc máximē; **then and there** ílicō,
ibi contínuō

therapist therapeút·a -ae *m* (·ria -riae *f*)

therapy therapí·a -ae *f*; **therapy treatment** cūrátī·ō -ōnis *f*
therapeútica

there (*position*) ibi; (*direction*) illūc

therefore ergō, ígitur

thermometer thermómetr·um -ī *n*

thick dēns·us -a -um

thief fūr, fūris *mf*

thigh fem·ur -oris *n*

thimble digitál·e -īs *n*

think putāre, cēns·eō -ēre -uī, aestimāre;
I don't think so ego nōn putō; **I think so** id opínor; **think s.th. over** áliquid sēcum reputāre; **think up** excogitāre; **that is exactly what I think** ita prōsus exístimō; **what do you think?** quid cēnsēs?

thirty trīgíntā

this hic haec hoc

thought: on second thought cum ego recógitō

thread fil·um -ī *n*; (*comput*) sér·iēs -ēī *f*
epistulárum ēlectronicárum; **hang by a thread** (*fig*) filō pénd·eō -ēre pepéndī

thrifty frūgál·is -is -e, frūgī [*indecl*]

throat fauc·ēs -ium *fpl*

throw coníc·iō -ere coníecī coníectus;
throw out of the game ā campō relegāre; **throw the book at s.o.** (*fig*) summō iūre cum áliquō āgere

throw-in (*soccer*) iniéct·us -ūs *m*
(laterális)

thrush turd·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)

thumb poll·ex -icis *m*

thumb tack cuspidiōl·a -ae *f* póllice
infixa

thunder *impers v* tonat tonáre tónuit

thunder *s* tónitr·us -ūs *m*

thunderbolt fulm·en -inis *n*

Thursday di·ēs -ēī *m* Iovis

Tiber Tíber·is -is (*acc.*: Tíberim) *m*

ticket tésser·a -ae *f* (itinerária); **first-class (second-class) ticket** téssera
prīmae (secúndae) classis; **one-way
ticket** téssera únŭs cursūs; **return
ticket** téssera réditūs; **round-trip
ticket** téssera ítūs reditúsque

ticket agent tesserári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

ticket window oŝtiol·um -ī *n*
tesserárium

tide aest·us -ūs *m*; **high tide** aestūs
accéss·us -ūs *m*; **low tide** aestūs
recéss·us -ūs *m*

tidy *adj* mund·us -a -um

tidy up órđináre

tie (necktie) fōcál·e -is *n*

tie *adj* (in a game) **be tie** parēs esse

tie *tr* ligáre, alligáre; (in a knot) nodáre;
be tied down (e.g., with business)
impéd·ior -īrī -ítus sum; **my money
is tied up** argéntum occupátum est;
tie back revínc·iō -íre revínxī,
revíntus; **tie up** (in work, etc.)
impéd·iō -íre -ívī -ítus

tie-up (on the highway) affluénti·a -ae *f*
vehiculária

tiger tigr·is -is or -idis *m*; **tigers growl**
tigrēs fremunt

tight (knot, clothes) stríct·us -a -um;
(shoe) restríct·us -a -um; (stingy)
sórdid·us -a -um

tight-fisted adstríct·us -a -um

tight spot: be in a tight spot in
angústiiis esse

tile lámīn·a -ae *f* fíctilis

till *prep* ūsque ad (+ *acc.*), in (+ *acc.*); **till
late at night** ad multam noctem; **till
late in the day** ad multum diem; **till
the month of July** in mēsem Iúlium

till *tr* (the soil) col·ō -ere -uī cultus

time temp·us -oris *n*; (leisure) óti·um -ī
n; (age, period) aet·ās -átis *f*; (of
day) hōr·a -ae *f*; **ahead of time** ante
tempus; **a long time already** (+
present tense) iam dūdum, e.g., **I've
been here a long time already** iam
dūdum adsum; **around the time of**
sub tempus (+ *gen.*); **ask the time**
quaerere hōrās; **ask what time it is**
hōrās inquirere; **at about the same
time** sub idem tempus; **at another
time** áliās; **at one time ... at
another** áliās ... áliās; **at that time**
ad id témporis, tum; **at the right
time** tempestívē; **at the time when**
quā tempestáte; **at the wrong time**
intempestívē; **at times** intérdum; **a
very short time ago** modo; **before
time (prematurely)** ante tempus; **for
a long time** iam diū; **for a short
time** brevī témpore; **for some time**
aliquámdiu; **for the first time**
prīmum; **for the last time** extrémum;
for the time being in tempus, prō
témpore; **from that time on** ex eō;
from time to time subínde; **he's
having a good time by himself** eī
bene est sōlī; **I always have time for**
semper vacō (+ *dat.*); **I haven't the
time** haud mihi ótium est; **I'm
having a good (lousy) time** mihi
bene (male) est; **in my spare time**
cum tempus subsicívum mihi est; **in
Roman times** aetáte Rómánā; **I have
no time** tempus nōn est mihi; **in a
short time** in brevī spátio; **in good
time, in plenty of time** mātūrē; **in
(the course of) time** témpore,
prōcédente témpore; **it is high time**

- for you to** tempus máximē est ut tū (+ *subj*); **make up for lost time** cessáta témpora córrig·ō -ere corréxī; **not to have the time to** ótium nōn habére (*w. dat ger*); **once upon a time** ólim; **one time** (*once*) semel; **on time** témperī; **postpone to another time** différre in áliud tempus; **see what time it is** hōrās inspícere; **spend time** tempus sūmere (*or ágere or agitáre*); **some time ago** dūdum, prīdem; **there is no time to study** nōn vacat studére; **there is no time to waste** matūrātō opus est; **there was a time when** (tempus) fuit cum; **waste time** tempus per·dō -dere -didī; **what time is it?** quota hōra est? *or* quot hōrae sunt? **while away the time** tempus fall·ō -ere feféllī
- times** (*use numeral adverbs*) e.g., **ten times** déciēs; **no more than three times** ter nec ámplius
- timetable** hōrári·um -ī *n*
- tin** plumb·um -ī *n* album, stann·um -ī *n*
- tip** ap·ex -icis *m*; (*money*) stip·s -is *f*; **it was on the tip of the tongue** erat in labrīs prīmóribus
- tipsy** ēbríol·us -a -um
- tire** cúmmeus canth·us -ī *m*; **put air in the tire** cúmmeum canthum ínfláre
- tired** fess·us -a -um
- tireless** assídu·us -a -um
- tissue** mūcínni·um -ī *n* chartáceum
- title** (*of a book*) ínscrípti·ō -ónis *f*; (*of a person*) appelláti·ō -ónis *f*
- toad** bŭf·ō -ónis *m*
- toast** *s* pān·is -is *m* tostus; (*in drinking*) propīnāti·ō -ónis *f*; **drink a toast to** propīnāre (+ *dat*); **here's to you!** (*as a toast*) bene tē! (*pl*: bene vōs)!
- toast** *tr* (*bread*) tórr·eō -ére -uī tostus; (*drink to*) propīnāre (+ *dat*)
- toaster** tostr·um -ī *n*
- toboggan** sclódi·a -ae *f*
- toboggan run** dēcúrs·us -ūs *m* sclódiae
- today** hódíē; **before today** ante hunc diem; **starting today** ex hōc diē
- toe** dígit·us -ī *m* pedis; **big toe** poll·ex -icis *m*
- toenail** ungu·is -is *m* pedis
- toga** tog·a -ae *f*; (*bright-white toga, worn by candidates*) toga cándida; (*worn by men and boys after the age of about fifteen*) toga virílis *or* pūra; (*toga with purple border, worn by curule magistrates, by boys up to the age of manhood, and by girls until marriage*) toga praetéxta; (*toga embroidered with silver stars*) toga pīcta; (*toga of smooth cloth*) toga rāsa; **receive the toga of manhood** togam virílem sūm·ō -ere -psī -tus
- toilet** látrín·a -ae *f*; (*public*) fóric·a -ae *f*; **flush the toilet** látrínam próluō prólúere prólui; **I must go to the toilet** mihi eúndum est in látrínam; **may I go to the toilet?** licetne íre in látrínam?; **sit on the toilet** (*hopper*) in sellā familiáricā sedére
- toilet bowl** lābéll·um -ī *n* íntimum
- toilet paper** chártul·a -ae *f* hygiénica
- toilet seat** sell·a -ae *f* familiárica
- toll** (*highway fee*) vectíg·al -ális *n* rotáre
- toll booth** tabérn·a -ae *f* vectígális rotáris; rotári·um -ī *n*
- toll call** tēlephóném·a -atis *n* longínquum
- toll road** vi·a -ae *f* vectígális rotáris
- tomato** lycopérsic·um -ī *n*
- tomorrow** crās, di·ēs -éī *m* crástinus; **day after tomorrow** peréndíē; **tomorrow morning** crās máne;

tomorrow night crās nocte; **until tomorrow** in crāstinum

tongue lingu·a -ae *f*

tonight hāc nocte

tonsils tonsíll·ae -árum *fpl*

too (*excessively*) nimis; (*also*) quoque (*comes after the word it emphasizes*); **too bad about** male (mehércule) dē (+ *abl*); **too bad about Marcus!** male dē Mārcō!

tool instrūmēt·um -ī *n*; **tools** (*comput*) instrūmēt·a -órum *npl*

toolbar instrūmētōrum tabell·a -ae *f*

tooth dēns, dentis *m*; **tooth and nail** (*fig*) tōtō corpore et ómnibus úngulis

toothache dol·or -óris *m* déntium

toothbrush pēnícil·us -ī *m* dentárius

toothpaste past·a -ae *f* dentária

toothpick dentiscálpī·um -ī *n*

top *adj* summ·us -a -um

top *tr* superāre; **to top it off** in summō

top *s* ap·ex -icis *m*; (*of house*) fastígi·um -ī *n*; (*of tree*) cacúm·en -inis *n*; **at the top of one's voice** summā vōce; **at the top of the page** ab summā páginā; **on (the) top** suprā; **on top of that** quīn et, ínsuper; **top of the mountain** summus mōn·s -tis *m*

topaz topázi·us -a -um

topcoat superindūmēt·um -ī *n*

topic mātéri·a -ae *f*, rēs, reī *f*

topography locōrum dēscrípti·ō -ónis *f*

topsy-turvy: everything was topsy-turvy ómnia erant sūrsūm deórsum; **turn everything topsy-turvy** ómnia sūrsūm deórsum versāre

tornado turb·ō -inis *m*

touch *tr* tang·ō -ere tétigī tāctus; (*to stir*) móv·eō -ēre mōvī mōtus; **touch deeply** commovēre

touch (*sense*) tāct·us -ūs *m*; **put the final touches to** últimam (*or* summam) manum impōn·ō -ere impósuī impósitus (+ *dat*)

touch-and-go anceps, ancípitis

touchdown: make a touchdown calcem (*or* crētam) atting·ō -ere áttigī attāctus

touchy (*irritable*) stomachós·us -a -um; (*matter*) lúbri·c·us -a -um

tough dūr·us -a -um

toupee galerícul·um -ī *n*; **wear a toupee** gelerículō ūtor, ūtī ūsus sum

tour *s* (*in a foreign country*) peregrínāti·ō -ónis *f*; (*e.g., of a factory*) iter, itíneris *n*; **complete a three-year tour of duty** triénnium milítiae éxpl·eō -ére -éví -étus; **tour of duty** milítī·a -ae *f*

tour bus coenautocínēt·um -ī *n* perigéticum

tour guide mystagóg·us -ī *m*, dux, ducis *mf* itinerári·us (-a)

tourist peregríná·tor -tōris *m* (-trīx -trícis *f*)

tourist class class·is -is *f* tūristica

tow truck carr·us -ī *m* remulcándī

towel gausapín·um -ī *n*; **bath towel** gausapínūm balneárium; **hand towel** manutérgi·um -ī *n*

tower turr·is -is *f*

town óppid·um -ī *n*; (*in Italy, subject to Rome, but self-governed*) mūnicípi·um -ī *n*; **small town** oppídul·um -ī *n*

town hall cúri·a -ae *f* mūnicipális

toy lūdífri·um -ī *n*

trace *s* vestígi·um -ī *n*

trace *tr* indāgāre; (*outline*) dēlineāre;

trace back répet·ō -ere -īvī -ītus

track indāgāre; **track down s.th.** áliquíd indāgāre

track vestígi·um -ī *n*; (*wheel-track, rut*) órbit·a -ae *f*; (*path*) sémit·a -ae *f*; (*the sport*) cursúr·a -ae *f*; (*course laid out for runners*) currícul·um -ī *n* (*see Chapter V*), (*of a railroad*) órbit·a -ae *f* ferriviária

tractor tractr·um -ī *n*

trade mercātúr·a -ae *f*; (*profession*) artifici·um -ī *n*

trade union sindicát·us -ūs *m*

traffic commeát·us -ūs *m* vehiculórum; **heavy traffic** celébrit·ās -átis *f* viae (*or* viárum); frequénti·a -ae *f* vehiculórum

traffic cop vigil -is *mf* viātóri·us (-a)

traffic jam affluénti·a -ae *f* vehiculária

traffic light sēmáphor·um -ī *n* (**red** rubrum; **yellow** flāvum; **green** víride)

trailer home habitácul·um, -ī *n* remulcátum

train *s* trām·en -inis *n* (ferriviárium); **a through train** trāmen dířectum

train *tr* (*for physical proficiency*) exercitāre || *intr* sē exercitāre

trainer (*of athletes*) exércit·or -óris *m*, exércitr·ix -ícis *f*

train schedule hōřári·um -ī *n* tráminum

train station státi·ō -ónis *f* ferriviária

train ticket tésser·a -ae *f* ferriviária

tramp larífug·a -ae *m*

trampoline dēsultóri·um -ī *n*

transfer to (*another train, etc.*) trāscénd·ō -ere -ī in (+ *acc*)

transitive trānsitív·us -a -um

translate *tr* (con)vért·ō -ere -ī

(con)vérsus, trānsferō trānsférre trānstulī trānslátus; **translate from Latin to English** ex Latínō in Ánglicum (con)vértere

translation *s* trānslát·a -órum *npl*; (*act of translating*) trānslāti·ō -ónis *f*

transparency págin·a -ae *f* pellúcida

transportation vectúr·a -ae *f*

travel iter fácere; **travel by car (train, plane, ship)** autocínētō (trámīne, aēróplanō, návī) vehor vehī vectus sum

travel agency sēd·ēs -is *f* periēgética

travel agent itínerum prōcūrā·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)

traveler viát·or -óris *m*, viátr·ix -ícis *f*; (*abroad*) peregrínát·or -óris *m*, peregrínátr·ix -ícis *f*

tray fércul·um -ī *n*

treason prōdíti·ō -ónis *f*

treat (*person, subject*) tractāre; (*medically*) cūrāre

treatment tractāti·ō -ónis *f*; (**for**) cūrāti·ō -ónis *f* (+ *gen of illness*)

treaty foed·us -eris *n*; **according to the terms of the treaty** ex pactō, ex foédere; **break a treaty** foedus frang·ō -ere frēgī fractus; **conclude a treaty with** foedus ícō ícere íci ictus *or* fēr·iō -ire cum (+ *abl*); **violate a treaty** foedus violāre

tree arb·or -oris *f*

treetop cacúm·en -inis *n*

tremble trem·ō -ere -uī; **tremble all over** cóntrem·ō -ere -uī

trend inclināti·ō -ónis *f*

trial quaésti·ō -ónis *f*, iūdící·um -ī *n*; **be on trial for** iūdícium dē (+ *abl*) súb·eō -íre -ívī *or* -īi; **be on trial for**

one's life iūdícium dē cápite subíre;
conduct a trial quaestiōnem
 exérc·eō -ére -uī -itus; **go on trial** in
 iūs eō íre iī *or* iīvī

trial lawyer causídíc·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

tribune of the people tribún·us -ī *m*
 plēbis

tribunician power tribūnícia potést·ās
 -átis *f*

tributary flúví·us -ī *m*; **the Allia is a
 tributary of the Tiber** Állia Tíberim
 ínfluit

trick dol·us -ī *m*; **be up to some tricks**
 lascív·us -a -um esse; **is this a trick?**
 num hoc est cáptiō?; **play tricks on**
 lūdōs fácere (+ *dat*)

tricky dolós·us -a -um

tricycle trírot·a -ae *f*

trip iter, ítíneris *n*; **take a trip** iter
 fácere

tripod trip·ēs -edis *m* phōtográphicus

trolley curr·us -ūs *m* eléctricus

trombone tub·a -ae *f* dúctilis

trouble sollicitáre; **I don't want to
 trouble you** nōlō tibi moléstus (-a)
 esse

trouble *s* (annoyance) molésti·a -ae *f*,
 mal·um -ī *n*; (when the idea of
 difficulty predominates) lab·or -óris
m; (effort, pains) óper·a -ae *f*; **be in
 trouble** labōráre; **cause s.o. big
 trouble** moléstiam gravem álicui
 adhíb·eō -ére -uī *or* exhíbeō; **have
 stomach trouble** stómachō labōráre;
get s.o. into trouble áliquem in
 aerúmnam óbser·ō -ere obsévi; **if it is
 no trouble** sī grave nōn erit; **I'm
 expecting some big trouble** nesciō
 quod magnum malum expéctō; **it's
 not worth the trouble** nōn est
 prétium óperae; **make big trouble
 for s.o.** dare magnum malum álicui;

more trouble ámplius negótī; **what's
 the trouble?** quid illuc malī est? *or*
 quid est negótī?

troubled exercitát·us -a -um

trousers brác·ae -árum *fpl*

trout truct·us -ī *m*, truct·a -ae *f*

trowel trull·a -ae *f*

truce indúti·ae -árum *fpl*; **a six-years'
 truce** indútiāe annōrum sex; **break a
 truce** indútiās violáre; **make a truce**
 indútiās fácere

truck autocínét·um -ī *n* onerárium,
 autocárr·um -ī *n*

truck driver, trucker autocínétī oneráriī
 gubernát·or -óris *m*

true vēr·us -a -um; **that's true** rēs ita
 est *or* ita proféctō est

trumpet (musical instrument) tub·a -ae
f; (of an elephant) barrít·us -ūs *m*

trumpet intr (of an elephant) bárr·iō -íre

trunk (of a tree) trunc·us -ī *m*; (of a
 car) receptácul·um -ī *n* sarcinárum;
 (for clothes) cist·a -ae *f*; (of an
 elephant) man·us -ūs *f*

trust *s* fid·ēs -éi *f*, bona fid·ēs -éi *f*; **put
 one's trust in** (cōn)fidere (+ *dat*)

trust *tr* fid·ō -ere físus sum (semi-
 deponent) (+ *dat or abl*)

trusting cōnfíd·ēns -éntis

trustworthiness fidúci·a -ae *f*

trustworthy lócupl·ēs -étis

trusty fíd·us -a -um, firm·us -a -um

truth vēr·um -ī *n*; **to tell the truth** ut
 vēra (*or* vērūm) dīcam (*or* loquar)

truthful vērídíc·us -a -um

try temptáre, con·or -ári -átus sum; **try
 a case (of)** causam cognósc·ō -ere
 cognóvi cōgnitus (dē + *abl*); **try on**
 (clothes) induéndō probáre; **try one's**

- best to (not to)** óperam dō dare dedī ut (nē) (+ *subj*); **try one's patience** patiētiā abūt·or -ī abūsus sum
- trying (tough)** exercitāt·us -a -um; (*annoying*) molést·us -a -um
- tuberculosis** phíthis·is -is *f*
- tuck up** succíng·ō -ere succínxī succínctus
- Tuesday** di·ēs -ēī *m* Mārtis
- tuna** thunn·us -ī *m*
- tunnel (for trains, cars)** spec·us -ūs *m* (ferriviárius, autocínēticus)
- turkey** gallopáv·ō -ónis *m*; **talk turkey with** Latínē loqu·or -ī locútus sum cum (+ *abl*)
- turn** *s* (in the road) flex·us -ūs *m* viae; **a good turn** benefíci·um -ī *n*; **in turn** ínvicem; **it's your turn now** nunc tē ordō vocat; **out of turn** extrā órđinem; **take a turn for the worse** in dētérius inclínārī; **take turns driving** ínvicem (*or* per vicēs, in vicēs) gubernāre
- turn** *tr* (con)vért·ō -ere -ī; **turn down** (*reject*) repudiāre; **turn in weapons** arma trád·ō -ere trádídī tráditus; **turn off (a light, computer)** exstíngu·ō -ere exstínxī exstínctus; **turn on (a light)** accénd·ō -ere -ī; (*a computer*) excitāre; **turn upside down** subvértere || *intr* vert·or -ī versus sum; **turn around** convertī; **turn into** mūtārī in (+ *acc*); **turn out fine** bellē cadō -ere cécídī cāsúrus; **something will turn up, I hope** fiet áliquid, spērō
- turn-off** dēvertícul·um -ī *n*
- turnpike** autocínētica vi·a -ae *f* quadriperfíta
- turn signal** ind·ex -icis *m* dīrēctiōnis
- turquoise** túrcic·us -a -um
- turtle** testúd·ō -inis *f*
- tutor** *s* domésticus praecépt·or -ōris *m*, doméstica praecéptr·īx -ícis *f*
- tutor** *tr* prívátim ínstitú·ō -ere -ī -tus
- TV (see television)**
- TV room** concláv·e -is *n* tēlevísóriō ínstrúctum
- tweezers** volséll·a -ae *f*
- twilight** crepúscul·um -ī *n*
- two** duo, duae, duo; **two each** bīn·ī -ae -a
- two-faced** dupl·ex -icis, bílínqu·is -is -e
- two-time** fraudāre
- two-timer** ínfidél·is -is *mf*
- type** *s* gen·us -eris *n*; (*print*) typ·us -ī *m*; **that type of person** istíus géneris homō
- type** *tr* dactylographāre
- typesetter** typóthet·a -ae *m*
- typewriter** dactylográphi·um -ī *n*
- typewriter key** malléol·us -ī *m*; **press a key** malléolum déprim·ō -ere dépressī (*or* pulsāre)
- typing** dactylográphica ar·s -tis *f*
- typist** dactylógraph·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
- ## U
- udder** ūb·er -eris *n*
- ugh!** vah!; heu!
- ugliness** dēfórmit·ās -átis *f*
- ugly** dēfórmi·is -is -e, turp·is -is -e
- uh-oh! (when taken by surprise)** attat!; áttatae!
- umbrella** umbéll·a -ae *f*
- umpire** árbit·er -rī *m* (·ra -rae *f*)
- unanimous** ūnánim·is -is -e

unanimously ūnā vōce, ómnibus
senténtiīs

unattractive invenúst·us -a -um

uncle (*father's brother*) pátru·us -ī *m*;
(*mother's brother*) avúncul·us -ī *m*

uncontrolled effrēnát·us -a -um

uncouth hórrid·us -a -um

underbrush dūmēt·a -órum *npl*

underpants brāc·ae -árum *fpl* interiórēs

underpass viaedúct·us -ūs *m*

undershirt (*worn by both sexes*)
subúcul·a -ae *f*

understand intélleg·ō -ere intelléxī
intelléctus; **do you understand now?**
iam tenēs?; **I don't quite**

understand nōn satis intéllegō;

“ego” is understood if I should say,
“sum philósophus” subaudítur “ego”
sī dīcam “sum philósophus”

undertaker pollíñct·or -óris *m* (·rīx
-rícis *f*)

underwear subúcul·a -ae *f*

undress éxuō exúere éxuī exútus; **get**
undressed sē exúere, vestiménta
exúere

uneducated inērudít·us -a -um,
indóct·us -a -um

unfair iníqu·us -a -um

unfairly iníquē

unfaithful infidél·is -is -e

unfriendly inimíc·us -a -um

ungrateful ingrát·us -a -um

unhappiness infēlícit·ās -átis *f*

unhappy infél·ix -ícis [*single-ending*
adj]

uniform ornát·us -ūs *m*; **in uniform**
subörnát·us -a -um; **military**
uniform ornát·us -ūs *m* militáris

United States (of America) Ūnítī Statūs
(Américae) (*gen*: Ūnítórum Státuum)
mpl; Cívítát·ēs -um *fpl* Foederátāe
Américae

universe ūnivérs·um -ī *n*, ūnivérsit·ās
-átis *f*

university (studiórum) ūnivérsit·ās
-átis *f*

unpleasant iniūcúnd·us -a -um

unprovoked ultrō

unrestrained effrēnát·us -a -um,
effús·us -a -um

unstable ĩnstábil·is -is -e

unsteady (*tottering*) cadúc·us -a -um

unsubscribe (*comput*) cessáre

until *conj* dōnec

until *prep* ūsque ad (+ *acc*)

untrustworthy ĩnfíd·us -a -um

up sūrsum; **up in the air** (*in*
uncertainty) in médiō relíct·us -a
-um; **be up in the air** (*to be*
undecided) pēndeō pendēre pepéndī;
up till now ántehāc

upbringing ēducáti·ō -ónis *f*

uphill *adj* acclív·is -is -e; **have an**
uphill struggle clīvō labōráre

uphill *adv* advérsus clívum, in collem

upholstery tōmément·um -ī *n*

uproar tumúlt·us -ūs *m*; **be in an**
uproar tumultuári

ups and downs: he has his ups and
downs eī modo bene, modo male est;
there are ups and downs est modo
síc, modo síc

upset *adj* commót·us -a -um; **don't be**
upset nōlī (*pl*: nōlíte) perturbári

upset *s* (*at the polls*) offēnsi·ō -ónis *f*;
suffer an upset offēnsiónem ferō
ferre tulī látus

upset *tr* commóv·eō -ére commóvī
commótus, perturbáre

upsetting: that was more upsetting to me than to you illud mihi máiorī stómachō erat quam tibi

upside down: everything was upside down ómnia erant sūrsum deórsum;
turn upside down sūrsum deórsum versáre

upstairs (*direction*) sūrsum; (*position*) in superiøre tabulátō; **go upstairs** scālis (*or per scālas*) ascénd·ō -ere -ī;
the upstairs dom·us -ūs *f* superior

upstairs bedroom cubícul·um -ī *n*
supérius

urge *s* ánimī ímpet·us -ūs *m*

urge *tr* úrg·eō -ére ursī

URL Ūniversále Rērum Locátr·um -ī *n*,
ínscrípti·ō -ónis *f* interrētiális

use *s* **it's no use** ílicet; **make the best use of** óptimē ūtor ūtī ūsus sum (+ *abl*); **what's the use?** quid opus est?

use *tr* ūtor ūtī ūsus sum (+ *abl*); (*e.g. a word in a sentence*) pōnō pōnere pōsuī pōsitus; **use "legō" in a sentence** pōne "legō" in sentétiā.

usual *adj* sólit·us -a -um; **you were wrong as usual** errábās ut solébas (*or ex cōnsuetúdi-ne tuā*)

usually plērúmque

utter *adj* tōt·us -a -um

utter *tr* émítt·ō -ere émísi émíssus, próferō próferre prótulī prólátus; **she never uttered a word** nullum verbum émísit.

V

vacation vacáti·ō -ónis *f*, féri·ae -árum *fpl*; **at the end of vacation** fériis peráctis; **be on vacation** fériát·us -a -um esse; **spend the vacation** fériās

ágere; **summer vacation** fériae aestívae, vacátiō aestíva

vaccinate vaccínáre

vaccination vaccínáti·ō -ónis *f*

vaccine vaccín·um -ī *n*

vacuum cleaner púlveris haurítōri·um -ī *n*

valley vall·ēs (*or vall·is*) -is *f*

valuable pretiós·us -a -um; **be valuable** prétium habére

vampire sanguisúg·a -ae *m*

various vári·us -a -um

vary variáre

VCR magnētoscópi·um -ī *n*

veal vitulín·a -ae *f*

vegetable hol·us -eris *n* [*also collective for vegetables*]

vegetable garden hort·us -ī *m* holitórius

vegetarian holerárius -a -um

Veii Vēi·ī -órum *mpl*

veil vĕl·um -ī *n*

vein vĕn·a -ae *f*; **in a similar vein** ad símílem senténtiam

Venetian blinds trānsénn·a -ae *f* volúbilis; **open (close, let down, raise** aperíre, cláudere, dĕmíttere, subvólvere)

venison vĕnāti·ō -ónis *f*

verb *s* verb·um -ī *n*

verbal verbál·is -is -e

verdict sentéti·a -ae *f*; **give a guilty verdict** condemnátōriam senténtiam ferō ferre tulī látus; **give a verdict of acquittal** absolútōriam senténtiam ferre

vertebra vétrebr·a -ae *f*

very ádmodum, valdĕ; **very good** óptim·us -a -um; **very good!**

- óptimē!; **very well!** (*in agreement*)
fiat!
- vestibule** vēstíbul·um -ī *n*
- veteran** veterān·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*),
ēmérit·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
- veterinarian** veterinári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
- veto** *s* intercēssi·ō -ōnis *f*; **interpose a veto** intercēd·ō -ere intercēssī
- veto** *tr* intercēd·ō -ere intercēssī (+ *dat*)
- vice** víti·um -ī *n*, právit·ās -átis *f*; (*tool*)
retinácul·um -ī *n*
- vice principal** *see* **principal**
- victorious** vict·or -ōris *m*, victr·ix -ícis
f; **be victorious** vinc·ō -ere vícī
- victory** victóri·a -ae *f*; **gain (or win) a victory** victóriam adipísc·or -ī
adéptus sum; **gain (or win) a victory over the enemy** victóriam reportāre
ab hoste
- video cassette** casét·a -ae *f*
magnētoscópicā; **listen to (play) a video cassette** aúd·iō -íre -ívī *or* -īī
-ítus (ēvól·v·ō -ere -ī) casétam
magnētoscópiam
- video cassette recorder (VCR)**
magnētoscópi·um -ī *n*
- video game** lūs·us -ūs *m*
magnētoscópicus; **play video games**
lūsūs magnētocópicōs lúdere
- videotape** taeníol·a -ae *f*
magnētoscópicā
- vigorous** álac·er -ris -re
- villa** víll·a -ae *f*
- village** víc·us -ī *m*
- vinegar** acét·um -ī *n*
- vinegar bottle** acētábul·um -ī *n*
- violence** violéti·a -ae *f*
- violent** violént·us -a -um
- violin** fidícul·a -ae *f*, violín·a -ae *f*; **play the violin** violínā canō cánere cécinī
- violinist** violíníst·a -ae *m* (·ria -riae *f*)
- virtual** vēr·us -a -um
- virtually** propémodum
- visit** vīs·ō -ere -ī -us, vīsítāre; **go to visit, pay a visit to** vīsere
- visitor** hosp·es -itis *mf*
- vitamin** vitamín·um -ī *n*
- vocabulary** vocábul·a -órum *npl*, cópi·a
-ae *f* verbórum
- vocative** *s* vocátívus -ī *m*, cās·us -ūs *m*
vocátívus
- voice** *s* vōx, vōcis *f*; (*of a verb*) gen·us
-eris *n*; **what voice is “audímur”?**
passive cūius géneris est “audímur”?
passívī [NOTE—“genus,” *in connection with nouns and adjectives means “gender,” and in connection with verbs means “voice”*]
- volleyball** foll·is -is *m* volátilis; (*game*)
lūs·us -ūs *m* follis volátilis; **play volleyball** folle volátilī lúdere (*see Chapter V*)
- volt** vólti·um -ī *n*
- volunteer** *intr* (*mil*) sponte nōmen dare;
volunteer to do s.th. áliquid ultrō
fácere
- volunteer** *s* voluntári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*);
(*mil*) mīl·ēs -itis *mf* voluntári·us (-a)
- vomit** vom·ō -ere -uī vómitum
- vote** *intr* suffrágium ferō ferre tulī lātus;
(*of a senator*) cēns·eō -ére -uī; **vote for** suffrágārī (+ *dat*); **vote for s.o.’s motion** (*of an individual senator*) in
alicúius senténtiam eō íre íī *or* ívī
- vote** *s* suffrági·um -ī *n*; **a vote was taken on his motion** (*in the senate by moving to one side of the chamber*) discēssiō facta est in eius senténtiam; **call for a vote** (*in the*

senate) discessiōnem fācere; **cast a vote** suffrāgium ferō ferre tulī lātus; **give s.o. a vote of confidence** ālicui cāculum album ferō ferre tulī lātus

voter suffrāgā•tor -tōris *m* (•trīx -trīcis *f*)

voting booth saept•um -ī *n*

vowel vocāl•is -is *f*

vulture vult•ur -uris *m* (*see* **bird**)

W

waffle vāfl•um -ī *n*

wages merc•ēs -ēdis *f*; **receive (fair, good, low, poor, unfair) wages** (aequam, magnam, parvam, inīquam) mercēdem accīpere; **pay wages** mercēdem trību•ō -ere -ī

wagon carr•us -ī *m*; (*for agricultural purposes*) plaustr•um -ī *n*

wait exspectāre; **wait a minute, please!** manē; manē dum, quaesō!; **wait for** exspectāre (+ *acc*); **wait on** ministrāre (+ *dat*); **wait on tables** ministrāre

waiter miníst•er -rī *m*

waiting room oec•us -ī *m*
praestōlātōrius

waitress ministr•a -ae *f*

wake up *tr* (ē somnō) excitāre **||** *intr* expergīsc•or -ī experrēctus sum; ēvigilāre

walk *intr* ambulāre; **walk up and down** dēambulāre

walk *s* (*act*) dēambulāti•ō -ōnis *f*;
(*place*) ambulācr•um -ī *n*; **go for a walk** dēambulāre, dēambulātum eō ire īvī

wall mūr•us -ī *m*; (*inner or outer wall of a house*) páriēs, parietis *m*; **walls** (*of a town*) moén•ia -ium *npl*

wall clock hōrológi•um -ī *n* parietárium

wallet pēr•a -ae *f*

wallop (*coll*) percolopāre; **get walloped** vapulāre

wallow volūt•or -ārī -ātus sum

walnut iūgl•āns -āndis *f*

waltz *intr* saltāre in gyrum

waltz *s* saltāti•ō -ōnis *f* in gyrum

want cúp•iō -ere cupívī cupítus; volō velle vólui; **now what do you want?** quid nunc tibi vīs?

war (against or with) bell•um -ī *n*
(*contrā or advērsus* (+ *acc*) *or* cum (+ *abl*); **be involved in a war** bellō implicāri; **bring a war to a successful conclusion** bellum cōnfíc•iō -ere cōnfēcī cōnfēctus; **carry on war with** bellum ger•ō -ere gessī gestus cum (+ *abl*); **cause a war** bellum mōv•eō -ēre mōvī mōtus; **civil war** bellum cīvīle *or* domésticum; **conduct a war** (*of a general*) bellum administrāre; **declare war on** bellum indíc•ō -ere indíxī indíctus (+ *dat*); **drag out a war** bellum trah•ō -ere traxī tractus; **end a war** bellum perfíc•iō -ere perfēcī perfēctus; **fight a war with** bellum ger•ō -ere gessī gestus cum (+ *abl*); **fight a war of aggression with** bellum *or* arma ultrō ínferō ínferre íntulī illātus (+ *dat*); **foreign war** bellum extérnum; **go off to war** profícisc•or -ī profēctus sum ad bellum; **go to war with** bellum ínferō ínferre íntulī illātus (+ *dat*); **guerilla war** bellum clandestínium; **in war** bellō, bellī témpore; **in war and in peace** pāce bellóque; **offensive war** (*of war yet to be begun*) bellum ultrō ínferéndum; (*of war already begun*) bellum ultrō illātum; **prepare for war** bellum (com)parāre; **start a war with** bellum ín•eō -íre -ívī *or* -iī cum (+ *abl*); **stir up a war** bellum

incitáre; **take part in a war** bellum capéss·ō -ere; **terminate a war by diplomacy** bellum compón·ō -ere compósuī compósitus; **wage war with** bellum ger·ō -ere gessī gestus cum (+ *abl*); **war against pirates** bellum pīráticum; **war against slaves** bellum servíle; **war is imminent** bellum ímminet *or* impéndet *or* ínstat; **war of extermination** bellum internecínium; **war breaks out** bellum exárdéscit

wardrobe (*place to keep clothes*) vestiári·um -ī *n*; (*clothes*) vestimént·a -órum *npl*

warehouse apothéc·a -ae *f*

wares merc·ēs -ium *fpl*

warfare bell·um -ī *n*, mílfti·a -ae *f*

warm *adj* (*quite warm*) cálid·us -a -um; (*lukewarm*) tépid·us -a -um; (*fig*) férvid·us -a -um; **it is getting warm** tepéscit

warm *tr* calefáceré, tepefáceré

warm-hearted am·āns -ántis

warmly dressed spissīs véstibus involút·us -a -um

warm-up exercitáti·ō -ónis *f*

warship nāv·is -is *f* béllica

wash *s* lavandári·a -órum *npl*

wash *tr* lav·ō -áre lāvī lautus **||** *intr* lavári, sē laváre

washcloth drapp·us -ī *m* lavātórius

washer, washmachine máchin·a -ae *f* lavātória

wasp vesp·a -ae *f*

waste *s* (*of time, money*) iactúr·a -ae *f*

waste *tr* (*time, effort*) perd·ō -ere pérdidī pérditus; **I'm wasting my time** frustrā tempus cónterō; **waste one's breath** (*fig*) óperam pérdere; **waste**

time and effort labórem ac témpora pérdere

waste basket scirpícul·us -ī *m* chartárius

watch *s* hōrológi·um -ī *n*

watch *tr* (*guard*) custód·iō -íre -ívī -ítus; (*observe*) spectáre, observáre; **hey you, watch out!** heus tū, cavē!

water *s* aqu·a -ae *f*

water pipe fístul·a -ae *f* aquária

water-ski *intr* per summās undās nartáre

water-ski *s* nart·a -ae *f* aquática (*see Chapter V*)

water *tr* (*flowers, etc.*) adaquáre

waterfall cataráct·a -ae *f*

watering can nassitérn·a -ae *f*

watermelon mēlópep·ō -ónis *m*

watt vátti·um -ī *n*

wave a flag vexíllum quassáre

wax cēr·a -ae *f*

wax *tr* inceráre

wax paper chart·a -ae *f* cērāta

way (*road*) vi·a -ae *f*; (*route*) iter, itíneris *n*; (*manner*) mod·us -ī *m*; **all the way from** úsque ab (+ *abl*); **all the way to** úsque ad (+ *acc*); **be a long way off** longē distáre; **be in the way** óbvi·us -a -um esse; (*to hinder*) ob·stō -stáre -stetī; **be on the way to** iter habére ad (+ *acc*); **by the way** óbiter; **by way of** viā (+ *gen*); **get out of the way!** Ápage!; **have it your way!** estō ut lubet!; **have one's own way** rēs prō arbítriō ger·ō -ere gessī; **he must always have his own way** semper faciéndum est quod vult; **if it's not too much out of the way for you** sī tibi nōn sánē dévium erit; **I'm in a bad way** mihi male est; **in the same way** eódem modō; **is that the way you help me?** istócine pactō mē ádiuvās?; **no way!** nullō modō;

- on one's way** inter viās; **what is the quickest (best) way to ... ?** quae est via brevissima (óptima) ad (+ *acc*)?
- weak** infirm·us -a -um, imbēcill·us -a -um, inválid·us -a -um; **weak constitution** ténuis valetúd·ō -inis *f*;
weak voice exílīs vōx, vōcis *f*
- wealth** divítī·ae -árum *fpl*
- wealthy** div·es -itis
- weapons** (*offensive*) tēl·a -árum *npl*;
(*defensive*) arm·a -órum *npl*
- wear** ger·ō -ere gessī gestus, gestáre;
(*wear regularly*) ūtor ūtī ūsus sum (+ *abl*); **wearing a belt** zōnā incínct·us -a -um; **wear out** (*clothes, a person*) cónter·ō -ere contrívī contrítus
- weasel** mustél·a -ae *f*
- weather** *s* (*good or bad*) tempést·ās -átis *f*, cael·um -ī *n*; **kinds of weather** tempestátēs; **owing to changes in the weather** propter caelī varietátēs;
beautiful (clear, cloudless, cloudy, fine, foul, lousy, rainy) weather egrégia (clāra, sūda, nebulósa seréna, foeda, spurca, pluviósa) tempéstās
- weather** *tr* **weather the storm** procéllam dūrāre; (*fig*) rēs advérsās superāre
- weather conditions** tempestát·ēs -um *fpl*
- weather forecast** praenūntiáti·ō -ónis *f*
tempestátis, praesági·um -ī *n*
tempestátis
- weather report** renūntiáti·ō -ónis *f*
tempestátis
- web** rēt·e -is *n*
- website** sit·us -ūs *m* interrētiális
- wedding** *adj* nūptiál·is -is -e; **wedding day** di·ēs -ēī *m* nūptiárum; **wedding gown** vest·is -is *m* nūptiális;
wedding present nūptiále dōn·um -ī
- n*; **wedding reception** convívi·um -ī
n nūptiále
- wedding** *s* nūpti·ae -árum *fpl*
- Wednesday** di·ēs -ēī *m* Mercúrii
- week** hébdom·as, hebdomadis *f*,
septimán·a -ae *f*
- weekday** di·ēs -ēī *m* prōfěstus
- weekend** fin·is -is *m* hebdomadis; **on the weekend** exeunte hebdomade
- weekly** *adv* (*every week*) síngulīs hebdomádibus
- weekly** hebdomadál·is -s -e; **weekly newspaper** diári·um -ī *n*
hebdomadále; **weekly wages** mer·cēs -cédīs *f* per síngulās hebdomadēs solúta
- weight lifting** sublāti·ō -ónis *f* pónderis
- welcome** *adj* grāt·us -a -um; **welcome!** advéntus tuus grátíssimus est! *or* salvē!; **you're welcome** libénter
- welcome** *tr* benígñē ex·cípiō -cípere -cēpī -cēptus
- well** *adj* salv·us -a -um; **get well again** convalēsc·ō -ere conváluī
- well** *adv* bene, rēctē; **I am doing well** mihi bene est; **well done!** factum óptimē!; **well said!** facētē dictum!
- well** *interj* em, immō, quīn; (*be it so*) estō; **well, well** enim vērō
- well-born** honést·us -a -um
- well-heeled** bene aerát·us -a -um
- well-mannered** bene mōrát·us -a -um
- well-off** bene aerátus -a -um
- west** óccid·ēns -éntis *m*; **in the west** ab occidēte; **to the west** in occidētem versus [versus *is an adverb*]
- western** occidentál·is -is -e
- westward** in occidētem versus [versus *is an adverb*]

west wind Zéphyr·us -ī *m*

whack (*coll*) percolopáre

whale balaén·a -ae *f*

what quid, cūius; **what about me?** quid dē mē?; **what about the dough (money)?** quid dē argéntō?; **what a mess!** eu édepol rēs turbulētās!; **what do you take me for? for a fool?** prō quō mē habēs? prō stultō?; **what else** quid ámplius; quid áliud; **what else can I do for you?** quid est quod tibi effícere possum ámplius?; **what for?** quam ob rem? *or* quā causā? **what is it?** (*what's the problem?*) quid est negōtī?; **what is it? out with it!** quid id est? cedo!; **what (is the trouble) now?** quid iam?; **what kind of** quál·is -is -e; **what next?** quid deínde? **what sort of** quāl·is -is -e; **what's it to me how you ...** quid istuc ad mē áttinet, quōmodo tū (+ *subj*)?; **what's that?** (*what did you say?*) quid id est?; **what's that to you?** quid ad tē áttinet?; **what's the matter?** quid est?; **what's the reason why ...** quid est quod (+ *indic*); **what's up?** quid reī est?; **what's wrong?** quid est?

whatever quidquid; **whatever!** quidvīs!

wheat trític·um -ī *n*

wheel rot·a -ae *f*

wheelbarrow pab·ō -ónis *m*

wheelchair sell·a -ae *f* rotális

when *conj* cum, quandō, ubi, ut; (*interrog*) quandō?

whenever quandōcúmque, utcúmque, quótiēns, quotiēscúmque

where (*direction*) quō; (*position*) ubi; **from where** unde; **where are you from?** unde es?; **where on earth** ubi terrárum; úbinam géntium

whiff *s* (*slight smell*) od·or -óris *m*; **get a wiff of** suból·eō -ére -uī

while *conj* dum (*with pres indic to indicate an action going on in the past*)

while *s* **after a little while** paulō post; **a little while before** paulō ante; **a short while ago** paulō ante

while *tr* **while away the time** fall·ō -ere fefélli tempus

whimper (*of pups*) gánn·iō -íre

whine ploráre

whip *s* flagéll·um -ī *n*

whip *tr* flagelláre; **whip out** érip·iō -ere -uī éréptus

whipped cream crēm·um -ī *n* battútum

whipping: get a whipping vapuláre

whiskers vibríss·ae -árum *fpl*

whisky víschi·um -ī *n*

whisper *s* susúrr·us -ī *m*

whisper *tr* & *intr* susurráre

whistle *s* (*sound*) síbil·us -ī *m*; (*pipe*)

fístul·a -ae *f*; **blow the whistle**

fístulā sibiláre; **final (starting)**

whistle finális (inítiális) síbilus (*see Chapter V*)

whistle *tr* **whistle a tune** fistulátō ōre can·ō -ere cécinī || *intr* sibiláre; (*of the wind*) stríd·eō -ére -ī

white alb·us -a -um; (*shiny white*)

cándid·us -a -um; **white bread**

pān·is -is *m* cándidus

who quis, cūius; **who are you?** quis tū homō es?; **who is he (she)?** quis homō est?; **who is it? it's I.** quis homō est? ego sum; **who says so?** quis hoc dicit factum?; **who the devil** quis malum

whoa! eho!

- whole** tōt·us -a -um, cūnct·us -a -um;
taken as a whole in summam
- wholesale** magnāri·us -a -um
- wholesaler** magnāri·us -ī m (·a -ae f)
- whole-wheat bread** autopýr·us -ī m
- why** (*interj*) quīn; **why, this very day**
 quīn hódīē
- why** (*interrog*) cūr, quam ob rem, quā
 causā, quārē; **why is it that ...** quid
 est quod (+ *indic*); **why not?**
 (*challenging what has been said*)
 quid ita nōn? (*as an expression of*
assent: of course) quíppinī? or
 quidnī?; **why say more?** quid plūra?;
why so? because ... quid ita? quia
 ... ; **why the devil** cūr malum
- wicked** ímprob·us -a -um
- wickedness** impróbit·ās -átis f
- wide** lāt·us -a -um
- widen** tr dilatāre || *intr* (*of a country*) sē
 pand·ō -ere
- width** lātítúd·ō -inis f; **in width** in
 lātítúdinem
- wife** ux·or -óris f
- wig** capillāmént·um -ī n
- wild** (*animal*) fer·us -a -um; (*growing in*
the wild) agrést·is -is -e;
 (*uncontrolled*) efferát·us -a -um
- willing; be willing** vol·ō velle volūi
- willy-nilly** nōlēns volēns
- wily** dolós·us -a -um, súbdol·us -a -um,
 va·fer -fra -frum
- win** s victóri·a -ae f; **a win on points**
 praevalénti·a -ae f pūnctórum
- win** tr vinc·ō -ere vícī victus; (*office*)
 ádsequ·or -ī adsecútus sum,
 adipísc·or -ī adéptus sum; **win a**
battle proéliō víncere; **win a bet**
 sponsiōne víncere; **win a case in**
court iudíciō víncere; **win over** (sibi)
- conciliáre || *intr* víncere; **win out**
 (*prevail*) paevál·eō -ére -uī
- wind** (*a clock, watch*) intén·dō -dere -dī
 -tus or -sus
- wind** vent·us -ī m; **head wind** ventus
 advérsus; **tail wind** ventus secúndus;
wind storm procéll·a -ae f; **I got**
wind of it long ago iam prīdem id
 mihi subolēbat
- winding** flexuós·us -a -um; **winding**
route ámbit·us -ūs m
- window** (*an opening for light and air,*
closed by shutters) fenéstr·a -ae f;
 (*glass window*) fenéstra vítrea;
 (*comput*) fenestéll·a -ae f
- window pane** vitr·um -ī n fenéstrae,
 quadr·um -ī n vítreum
- window seat** sēd·ēs -is f fenestrális
- windpipe** artéri·a -ae f áspera
- windshield** vitr·um -ī n antiáerium
- windshield wiper** vitritérgi·um -ī n
- windy** ventós·us -a -um
- wine** vín·um -ī n (**dry** austérum; **sweet**
 dulce; **red** sanguíneum; **light** ténue;
white album)
- wine cellar** cellári·um -ī n vínárium
- wine glass** hýal·us -ī m vínárius
- wing** (*of a bird, of an army*) ál·a -ae f;
 (*of a building*) lat·us -eris n
- wink** nictáre; **wink at** nictáre (+ *dat*)
- winter** adj hībérn·us -a -um
- winter** s hiem·s -is f; **at the beginning**
of winter híeme ineúnte; **at the end**
of winter híeme exeúnte; **because of**
the severity of the winter propter
 híemis magnitúdinem; **spend the**
winter hiemáre; **winter time**
 temp·us -oris n hiemále
- wire** fil·um -ī n

wise guy! ímpudēns! **don't be a wise guy!** nē sīs ímpudēns!

wish cúp·iō -ere -ívī -ítus, optáre; **wish earnestly** exoptáre

wish *s* (act of wishing) optáti·ō -ónis *f*;
(object wished) optát·um -ī *n*;
according to your wishes secúndum
voluntátem tuam; **I give you three
wishes** trēs optātióñēs tibi dō

witch ságan·a -ae *f*, strig·a -ae *f*; **the
witches are howling** strigae strident

witchcraft ar·s -tis *f* mágica

without sine (+ *abl*)

witness test·is -is *mf* (**for** *prō* + *abl*;
against *in* + *acc*); **be called as a
witness** contést·or -árī -átus *sum*;
trustworthy witness testis lócuplēs
(*gen*: testis locuplētis) *m*

wolf lup·us -ī *m*, lup·a -ae *f*; **wolves
howl** lupī úlulant

wolf cub lupae cátul·us -ī *m*

woman múli·er -eris *f*; **old woman**
an·us -ūs *f*; **young woman**
muliercul·a -ae *f*

womb úter·us -ī *m*; (*belly*) ven·ter -tris
m

wonder *s* and **no wonder** nec mīrum;
seven wonders of the world septem
mírácula mundi

wonder *tr* mīr·or -árī -átus *sum*; **I
wonder what's up** mīror, quid hoc
sit negótī; **I wonder where he is** ubi
sit dēmíror

wonderful (ad)mírábil·is -is -e

wooden spoon cócle·ar -áris *n*
coquinárium

woodpecker pīc·us -ī *m* (*see* **bird**)

woods silv·a -ae *f*

wool lán·a -ae *f*

woollen láne·us -a -um

word processor (*comput*) prográmm·a
-atis *n* ēditórium

word *s* verb·um -ī *n*; (*gram*) dícti·ō
-ónis *f*; [**Note**—In Roman grammars,
“verbum” is used only for “verb”];
break one's word fidem frang·ō
-ere, frēgī; **give one's word** fidem
dare; **in a word** bréviter, ad
summam; **I want a word with you**
paucīs tē volō; **keep one's word**
fidem serváre; **syllables form words**
sýllabae fáciunt dictiúnēs; **why
should I take your word for it?** cūr
tibi crēdam?; **word for word** verbum
prō verbō; **word of honor** fid·ēs -eī
f; **words fail me** mihi verba dēsunt;
**you took the words right out of my
mouth** tū quidem ex ore orātióñem
mihi ēripuístī

wordy verbós·us -a -um

work lab·or -óris *m*, óper·a -ae *f*; (*piece
of work, literary work*) op·us -eris *n*

work *tr* (*to exercise*) exérc·eō -ére -uī
-itus; (*the soil*) col·ō -ere -uī cultus;
(*a machine*) administráre || *intr*
labōráre, operáři; (*to function*)
fung·or -ī fūñctus *sum*

worker operáři·us *m* (·a -ae *f*)

workshop officín·a -ae *f*

world mund·us -ī *m*; (*earth*) orb·is -is *m*
terrárūm; **where in the world?** ubi
terrárūm?; **where in the world are
we?** úbinam géntium sumus?; **worst
poet in the world** péssimus poéta
ómnium

world war bell·um -ī *n* mundánūm

World Wide Web (WWW) Tēl·a -ae *f*
Tōtūus Terrae (TTT)

worm verm·is -is *m*; (*earth worm*)
lumbríc·us -ī *m*

worn out (*person*) fatigát·us -a -um;
(*clothes*) trīt·us -a -um

worry cūr·a -ae *f*, sollicitūd·ō -inis *f*

worry *tr* sollicitāre || *intr* sollicitārī;
don't worry! nōlī (*pl*: nōlīte)
sollicitārī!

worse pēi·or -or -us; dētēri·or -or -us;
(*more severe*) grāvī·or -or -ius; **get
worse** ingravēsc·ō -ere; **make
matters worse** rēs exasperāre; **turn
out for the worse** in pēiōrem partem
vertor vertī versus sum

worth: he's worth a lot of money
divitiās máximās habet; **he's worth
nothing** nihil est; **it isn't worth it**
nōn est óperae prētium; **it's not
worth all that** tantī nōn est

worthless inútil·is -is -e; (*containing
nothing of value*) inán·is -is -e;
(*person*) nequam [*indecl*]; **worthless
fellow** nequissimus hom·ō -inis *m*

worthlessness inánit·ās -átis *f*

worthwhile: it is worthwhile óperae
prētium est

worthy (of) dign·us -a -um (+ *abl*)

wow! (*in shocked surprise*) vāh!; hui!;
(*in astonishment*) papae!; babae!;
vah!

wrap *s* amíct·us -ūs *m*

wrap *tr* invól·ō -ere -ī involútus; **wrap
up** obvólvere

wrapper involúcr·um -ī *n*

wreath corón·a -ae *f*

wrestle luct·or -árī -átus sum (*see
Chapter V*)

wrestler luctát·or -ōris *m*

wrestling luctāti·ō -ōnis *f*

wrestling match certám·en -inis *n*
luctātiónis

wrinkle rŭg·a -ae *f*

wrinkled rŭgós·us -a -um

wrist prīmóris man·us -ūs *f*; **sleeves
reaching all the way to the wrists**
mánicae prōlŭxae ūsque in primórēs
manūs

wrist bone carp·us -ī *m*

wrist watch hōrológi·um -ī *n* armillāre

write *tr* scrībō scrĭbere scrĭpsī scrĭptus;
write a book librum cōn·scrĭbō
-scrĭbere -scrĭpsī; **write a program**
(*comput*) prográmma compón·ō -ere
compósuī compósitus; **write Latin**
Latŭnē scrĭbere

writer scrĭpt·or -ōris *m*, scrĭptr·ix -ícis *f*

writing (act) scrĭpti·ō -ōnis *f*; (*result*)
scrĭpt·um -ī *n*, scrĭptŭr·a -ae *f*;
writings scrĭpt·a -ōrum *npl*

writing paper chart·a -ae *f* epistuláris

wrong *adj* (*incorrect, mistaken*) fals·us
-a -um; (*faulty*) vitiós·us -a -um;
(*unfair*) inŭqu·us -a -um; (*morally*)
nefas [*indecl*]; **be wrong** errāre; **if I
have done anything wrong, I'm
sorry** sī quid pērperam fēcī, mē
paénitet; **what's wrong with you?**
quid est tibi? *or* quid est tēcum?

wrong *adv* pērperam

Y

yard áre·a -ae *f* domūs; (*measure*) uln·a
-ae *f*; **back yard** área postĭca

yawn ōscitāre, híare

year: annus -ī *m*; **a hundred years**
from now ad centum annōs; **at the
beginning of the year** ineúnte annō,
prĭncĭpiō annī; **at the end of the
year** exeúnte annō; **a year from now**
ad annum; **every year** quotánnis; **for
a year** in annum; **in my twenty-first
year** annum prĭmum et vicésimum
ag·ēns -éntis ego . . . ; **I wish you a
happy New Year** Novum Annum
laetum tibi exóptō; **last year** annō

superiōre; **the following year**
 prōximus annus; **the previous year**
 supērior annus; **twice a year** bis (in)
 annō; **up in years** aetāte prōvēct·us
 -a -um

yearn for dēsīderāre

yell *intr* ululāre; (*in pain*) ēiulāre

yell *s* ululāt·us -ūs *m*; (*in pain*) ēiulāti·ō
 -ōnis *f*

yellow flāv·us -a -um; **deep yellow**
 fulv·us -a -um; **pale yellow** lūrid·us
 -a -um, gilv·us -a -um

yellowish subflāv·us -a -um

yes étiam, sãnē, ita, immō; **I say yes;**
you say no ego aiō; tū negās (*see*
Appendix I)

yesterday herī; **the day before**
yesterday núdius tértius [*adv, also*
written as one word]

yipes! (*to express surprise, fear, dismay*)
 eheu!

yippee! (*to express joy, elation*) ehem!

yokel rústic·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

you tū; (*pl*: vōs)

you see (*parenthetical*) enim

young parv·us -a -um (nātū), párvul·us
 -a -um (nātū); **younger** iūni·or -or
 -us; min·or -or -us (nātū); **youngest**
 mínim·us -a -um (nātū)

young boy puércul·us -ī *m*

young daughter filíol·a -ae *f*

young lady muliércul·a -ae *f*

young man adulēsc·ēns -éntis *m*;
 (*between approximately the ages of*
20 and 40) iúven·is -is *m*

young son filíol·us -ī *m*

youngster adulēscéntul·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

your tu·us -a -um, vest·er -ra -rum

youth (*age*) adulēscénti·a -ae *f* (*between*
puer and iúvenis, between 15 and 30
years and even beyond); (*young men*
collectively) iuvént·ūs -útis *f*; (*young*
person) iúven·is -is *mf*

youthful iuveníl·is -is -e; iúven·is -is -e

Z

zeal stúdi·um -ī *n*

zealous studiós·us -a -um

zero zer·um -ī *n*

zig-zag tortuós·us -a -um; **zig-zag**
streets anfráct·ūs -uum *mpl* víárūm

zip code númer·us -ī *m* cursuális (*or*
 dirēctórius)

zipper clausúr·a -ae *f* tráctilis

zoo vīvári·um -ī *n*

Selected Bibliography

- Albert, Sigrid. *Imaginum Vocabularium Latinum*. Saarbrücken: Verlag der Societas Latina, 1998.
- Bacci, A. *Lexicon Vocabulorum quae difficiliter Latine redduntur*. 4th edition. Rome, 1963.
- Beech, Goodwin B., and Ford L. Battles. *Locutionum Cotidianarum Glossarium*. 3rd edition. Hartford Seminary Press, 1967.
- Diamond, Wilfred J. *Dictionary of Liturgical Latin*. Milwaukee: Bruce Pub. Co., 1961.
- Du Cange, Charles D. *Glossarium ad Scriptores Mediae et Infimae Latinitatis*. Graz, 1954.
- Egger, Carolus. *Lexicon Recentis Latinitatis*. Vatican, Rome, 1992–1997.
- Eichenseer, C. *Vox Latina: Commentarii Periodici Latini*. Saarbrücken, 1976–present.
- Helfer, Christian. *Lexicon Auxiliare: Ein Deutsch-Lateinisches Wörterbuch*. 3rd edition. Saarbrücken: Verlag der Societas Latina, 1991.
- Mir, J. M. *Nova Verba Latina*. Vatican: Rome, 1969.
- Mariucci, Tommaso. *Latinitatis Nova et Vetera*. Vatican: Rome, 1986.
- Meissner, C. *Latin Phrase Book*. London: MacMillan and Co. Ltd., 1929. Reprinted by Longwood Academic Press.
- Niemeyer, Mediae. *Latinitatis Lexicon Minus*. Leiden 1960–64.
- Schwieder, Georg. *Latine Loquor*. Editio Altera. Rome: Herder, 1962.
- Shelton, John. *A Dictionary of Ecclesiastical Terms*. Detroit: Gale Research Co., 1969.
- Smith, William. *A Smaller English-Latin Dictionary*. London: John Murray, 1870.
- Smith, William, and Theophilus D. Hall. *A Copious and Critical English-Latin Dictionary*. London, 1870. Reprinted by Bolchazy-Carducci Publishers, 2000.
- Souter, A. *A Glossary of Latin to 600 AD*. Oxford, 1949.
- Tondini-Mariucci, H. *Lexicon Novorum Vocabulorum*. Rome, 1964.
- Wilby, S. W. *Guide to Latin Conversation*. Baltimore and New York: John Murphy Co., 1892.